

FOMA® D705iμ

ISSUE DATE:

'08.1

NAME:

PHONE NUMBER:

MAIL ADDRESS:

INSTRUCTION MANUAL

Easy Search/Contents/Precautions

Before Using the Handset

Voice/Videophone Calls

Phonebook

Sound/Screen/Light Settings

Security Settings

Camera

i-mode/i-motion/i-Channel

Mail

i-αppli

Osaifu-Keitai/ToruCa

Full Browser

Data Display/Edit/Management

Music Playback

Other Convenient Functions

Character Entry

Network Services

PC connection setting

Overseas Use

Appendix/External Devices/
Troubleshooting

Index/Quick Manual

DoCoMo W-CDMA System

Thank you for selecting the FOMA D705iμ.

Carefully read this manual and other manuals delivered with optional devices, before using your FOMA D705iμ, and consult the corresponding manuals while using the phone so that you are able to use it correctly and effectively. If you are unclear as to any point indicated in any of these manuals, contact the DoCoMo Information Center that is listed on the back of this manual.

Your FOMA D705iμ is a valuable asset. Handle it with care and it will be your trusted partner for years to come.

Before using your FOMA terminal

- The FOMA terminal is cordless so you may not be able to use it in certain locations where signals cannot penetrate, such as in tunnels, underground, in some buildings or outdoors if the signal is weak or you are outside the service area. You also may not be able to use your FOMA terminal on the upper floors of some highrise building, even though there is nothing around you that interferes with the signal. Please note that your call may be disconnected even when the signal is strong (when the signal strength indication shows 3 bars) and you are not moving.
- When using the FOMA terminal in public, busy or quiet places, be careful not to disturb others.
- Since the FOMA terminal relies on radio transmission, it is theoretically possible for third parties to intercept a call; however, because the W-CDMA system automatically employs a secrecy function for all calls, a third party will pick up nothing but signal noise.
- Since the FOMA terminal operates by the wireless transmission of voices converted to digital signals, if you are in a location where the signal is weak, the original voice may not be accurately reproduced from the received digital signal, therefore, the voice you hear may differ from the original sound of the speaker's voice.
- DoCoMo asks that you keep a separate record (e.g. written copy) of all data you store in your FOMA terminal (such as phonebook data, schedules, notes, recorded messages, voice memos or movie memos).
DoCoMo accepts no responsibility whatsoever for any loss of the data, should it occur due to failure, repair, changing to new model or other handlings of the FOMA terminal.
- It is recommended that you back up the important data to a microSD memory card. If you have a PC, you can use the DoCoMo keitai datalink to transfer and save the data such as phonebook data, mails and schedules to your PC.
- The user hereby agrees that the user shall be solely responsible for the result of the use of SSL. Neither DoCoMo nor the certifier as listed herein makes any representation and warranty as for the security in the use of SSL. In the event that the user shall sustain damage or loss due to the use of SSL, neither DoCoMo nor the certifier shall be responsible for any such damage or loss. Certifier: VeriSign Japan K.K., Cybertrust Japan Co., Ltd., GlobalSign K.K., RSA Security Japan Ltd., SECOM Trust Systems Co., Ltd.
- The FOMA terminal can be used in the FOMA Plus-Area.
- The FOMA terminal can be used only via the FOMA network provided by DoCoMo and DoCoMo's roaming area.

For first time user of the FOMA terminal

If this is your first FOMA terminal, read this manual in the following order. You can understand the preparations for using the FOMA terminal and its basic operations.

1. Read "SAFETY PRECAUTIONS". ●P12
2. Install the battery pack and charge it. ●P33, P34
3. Turn the power on, make initial settings, and confirm your phone number. ●P37, P38, P40
4. Check the functions of keys on the terminal. ●P24
5. Check the meaning of icons displayed on the screen. ●P26
6. Learn how to use the menus. ●P29
7. Learn how to make and receive calls. ●P42, P53

The latest information about this manual can be downloaded from the DoCoMo website.

● User's Manual Download

(<http://www.nttdocomo.co.jp/english/support/manual/index.html>)

Note: The URL and site contents are subject to change without prior notice.



How to use and refer to this manual

You can look for functions or operation procedures that you want to know using various searching ways.

Search on Index

▶ See the next page for details.

P420

Search for a function name or service name.

Use Easy Search

▶ See the next page for details.

P4

Search for frequently-used or useful functions using easy-to-understand words.

Use Front Cover Indexes

▶ See the next page for details.

Front Cover

Search by turning over the pages on this manual using the front cover indexes.

Use Contents

P6

Refer to the contents classified into chapters on an objective basis.

Refer to Features and Functions

P8

Search for the features or new functions of D705ij.

Use Menu List

P372

Refer to the table that contains the menus displayed on the screen of FOMA D705ij and the default settings.

Use Quick Manual

P426

“Quick Manual” describes how to operate frequently-used functions. “Quick Manual (For Overseas Use)” is also attached to provide the procedures when you use the FOMA terminal overseas. Use it by separating from this instruction manual.

- In the manual for FOMA D705ij, the FOMA D705ij is usually referred to as “FOMA terminal”.
- This manual explains functions performed with a microSD memory card. A microSD memory card is required separately.
For microSD memory card ◀P265
- In this manual, “Osaifu-Keitai compatible i-appli supporting the IC card function” is described as “Osaifu-Keitai compatible i-appli”.
- The design of screen displays has been initialized according to the color of the FOMA terminal from the combinations preset in the FOMA terminal (Style Theme ◀P99). In this manual, the procedure is explained mainly in case that Style Theme is set to *Mr.BarCode* and Color Scheme is set to *LightWhite*.
- In this manual, the words and phrases displayed on the screen are written in italic characters.
- Some screens do not support the bilingual function and items or keys may be displayed in Japanese. In this manual, these Japanese words are written both in Japanese and English only for the first time in a chapter or a section.
- Unauthorized copying of a part or all of the contents of this manual is prohibited.
- The contents of this manual are subject to change without prior notice.



How to use and refer to this manual

Shown below is an example when you search for the page where “My Picture” is described.

Searching on Index

Use the index if you have already known a function or service name.

1 My Picture	My Menu 147	Bookmark/mark.....
2 Camera	My Picture 248	Converting.....
3 Mode	Deleting 281	Deleting.....
4 Deco-mail picture	Sort 282	Displaying.....
5 Deco-mail pict	Use albums..... 278	Downloading.....
6 Item		Moving.....
7 Preinstalled		Sort.....
8 Data transfer		Use folders.....

Using Easy Search

You can easily search for frequently-used or useful functions.

Advanced functions for camera

- Change the size of image to shoot 138 [Image size](#)
- Save data into the microSD memory card 138 [Save to](#)
- Display the shot images..... 248 [My Picture](#)

Using Front Cover Indexes

You can find a target page by proceeding from the front cover to the cover of a chapter (the first page of the chapter) and the page where a function is described.

Full Browser

Data Display/Edit/Management

Music Playback

Other Convenient Functions

Character Entry

Network Services

Data Display/Edit/Management

Making full use of images

Displaying images [My Picture 248](#)

Editing still images 290

Saving images in the Data Center [Data Security Service 253](#)

Making full use of movie/i-motion

Playing movie/i-motion [i-motion 254](#)

Editing movie/i-motion 257

Managing/using the playlist 259

- The screens and illustrations provided in this manual are for information purposes only and may be different from the actual products.
- In this manual, the keys are simplified.

Actual key	Description in this manual

- In this manual, the operation procedures are described as follows:

Description	Meaning
Enter the terminal security code	Press on the standby display and then press . Continuously, enter the terminal security code and press .

Displaying images

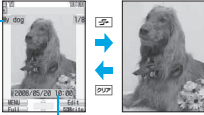
My Picture

You can display images (still image, animation, Flash movie and created animation) saved in *My Picture* of *Data Box* of the FOMA terminal.

- GIF images and animations larger than 480 x 640 or 640 x 480 and JPEG images larger than 1728 x 2304 cannot be displayed.

- Highlight a folder**
 - To switch to the folder list display of the microSD memory card: [F2] on the folder list [1] - [3]
 - For details about the microSD memory card P272
- Highlight an image**

The image is displayed. Pressing [F2] allows you to view the image on the full screen.



Display name Comment

 - Press [F2] to display the previous or next image.
 - When an animation, created animation or Flash movie is displayed, it will be played automatically. The following operations are available (except for the full-screen display):
 - Pause/replay: [F2]
 - Retry (replay from the beginning): [MENU] [7]
 - Slow-down playback: [F2] (only while created animation is paused)

Displaying images in their actual size:

 - It is available for only the still image larger than 240 x 320.
 - To end actual size display: [F2]

Sorting data

Sort

You can change the order of data items on the list screen.

- To sort music files in *Music* P300

Example *Sorting data in My Picture*

- Highlight a folder**

- Set each item**

By : Sets the sorting method (the default is *Saved date & time*).

Order : Sets the sorting order of data (the default is *Descending*).

INFORMATION

 - On the screen of the movie/i-motion list, melody list, PDF data list, Chara-den list, Machi-chara list or Kisekai tool list: [MENU] > *Sort*
 - If one-byte and two-byte characters are mixed in the display names, the sorted result may not correspond to Japanese syllabary.

Image list screen and available operations

Example *Thumbnail display*



- Originated**
 - Camera
 - Preinstalled
 - Data transfer
 - i-mode
 - Item
 - Chara-den
- Type of image**
 - No icon: Still image
 - Created animation
 - Animation/Flash movie
- File format**
 - GIF: GIF format
 - JPG: JPEG format
 - SWF: SWF (Flash movie)
 - No icon: Created animation

Title & function name:
Function names are listed on the index.

Functional overview and notes for operation

Operation procedure

INFORMATION:
In this manual, information items are categorized as follows:

- Alternative operation procedures
- General notes
- Detailed description of the function

Column:
Useful information

The page shown here is an example. It may differ from the actual page.

Chapter title Supplement to the operation

- If there is especially no notice, the operation procedures from the standby display are mentioned.
- The operation procedure is mainly explained in shortcut operations using the normal menu (except for simple menu). When there are two or more possible procedures, the simplest one is mentioned.
- In this manual, to place the cursor at an item with [F2] (Easy Selector Plus) is referred to as "highlight".
The step of pressing [F2] (Enter key) which is required after entering characters in the entry field is omitted in description.



Easy Search

Use this Easy Search to search for a function using easy-to-understand words.

Useful functions for phone calls



- Notify/not notify your phone number 40 [Caller ID Notification](#)
- Put the current call on hold 44 [On-hold](#)
- Switch to videophone call during voice call 45 [Switch to videophone](#)
- Adjust the volume of the other party's voice 55 [Listen Volume](#)

When unable to answer an incoming call



- Put the incoming call on hold 56 [Response and Hold](#)
- Inform the caller that you should not use the phone.. 57 [Public mode \(Driving mode\)](#)
.....58 [Public mode \(power off\)](#)
- Record caller's messages.....59 [Answer Machine](#)

How to change melodies or lighting patterns



- Adjust the volume of ring alerts 56 [Ring Alert Volume](#)
- Use a personal ring alert for each caller 70 [Alert by Contact](#)
- Use your favorite ring alerts.....85 [Sound Setting](#)
- Mute the sound heard when pressing keypad 87 [Keypad sound](#)
- Use the vibrator for incoming calls.....88 [Vibrator Setting](#)
- Turn Silent Mode on 89 [Silent Mode](#)
- Customize the incoming lighting pattern 101 [Light Alert Setting](#)

How to change the screen displays



- Learn the meaning of icons on the screen.....26 [Reading display](#)
- Change the menu display format.....29 [Selecting menu](#)
- Customize the standby display (wallpaper) 90 [Standby Display Setting](#)
- Show a calendar on the standby display 93 [Calendar](#)
- Change the size of characters 102 [Font Size Setting](#)

Advanced functions for mail



- Send your original Deco-mail 172 [Deco-mail](#)
- Send images with mail 175 [Attaching files](#)
- Sort and save mail automatically 196 [Sort Method](#)

Advanced functions for camera



- Change the size of image to shoot 138 [Image size](#)
- Save data into the microSD memory card 138 [Save to](#)
- Display the shot images 248 [My Picture](#)

Settings for your phone safety



- Keep your phonebook data secret 80 [Secret Attribute](#)
- Lock your phone remotely when it is lost, etc. ... 110 [Omakase Lock](#)*1
- Reject calls without caller ID 117 [Anonymous Caller](#)
- Reject callers not registered in the phonebook ... 118 [Reject Unregistered Caller](#)
- Save the phonebook and other data to prevent data loss 119 [Data Security Service](#)*2

*1 Locking with Omakase Lock is charged.

*2 This is a pay service and requires a subscription.

Other useful functions



- Increase the life of the battery 95 [Display Light Setting](#)
- Read a QR code or barcode 139 [Bar Code Reader](#)
- Use the microSD memory card 265 [microSD memory card](#)
- Send/receive data via infrared communication 283 [Infrared communication](#)
- Listen to music 294 [Playing music](#)
- Use your phone as an alarm clock 308 [Alarm Clock](#)
- Use your phone as a calculator 324 [Calculator](#)
- Use your FOMA phone overseas 362 [Overseas use](#)
- Update software 406 [Software Update](#)
- Update the security 412 [Virus Scan Function](#)

● The operation procedures of frequently-used functions are described in Quick Manual.



Contents

How to use and refer to this manual	1	SAFETY PRECAUTIONS (Always follow these directions)	12
Easy Search	4	Handling instructions	18
Features and functions of FOMA D705ij	8	Intellectual property rights.....	20
Making full use of D705ij	10	Basic package and optional accessories.....	22

Before Using the Handset

23

Names and functions of parts Reading the display Selecting the menu Using the UIM (FOMA card)
 Attaching/removing the battery pack Charging Power ON/OFF Initial Setting Select Language
 Date and Time Setting Caller ID Notification Own Number etc.

Voice/Videophone Calls

41

Making calls Redial/Received Calls Chaku-moji WORLD CALL Receiving calls Any Key Answer
 Listen Volume Ring Alert Volume Response and Hold Public mode (Driving mode/power off)
 Answer Machine Using Chara-den Videophone Settings etc.

Phonebook

67

Phonebook New Entry Group Setting Phonebook Search Edit Phonebook Delete Phonebook
 Secret Attribute Quick Dial Choku-den etc.

Sound/Screen/Light Settings

83

Sound Setting Adjust Volume Vibrator Setting Silent Mode Standby Display Setting
 Call Image Mail Image Display Light Setting Menu Setting Style Theme Kisekae tool
 Machi-chara Setting Light Alert Setting Indicator Light Clock Display Format etc.

Security Settings

105

Security code Change Security Code PIN code All Lock Omakase Lock Self Mode
 Personal Data Lock Keypad Dial Lock Privacy Mode Key Lock Secret Mode
 Data Security Service etc.

Camera

121

Still Camera Movie Camera Sound Recorder Settings for shooting or recording
 Bar Code Reader etc.

i-mode/i-motion/i-Channel

143

What's i-mode? Displaying sites Change i-mode Password Internet Connection Bookmark
 Screen Memo Downloading various data i-mode Setting Message R/F Operating certificates
 i-motion Downloading i-motion i-Channel etc.

Mail

169

Composing and sending i-mode Mail Deco-mail Attaching files Receiving i-mode Mail
 Check i-mode Message Displaying, playing and saving attachments Using mail box Mail setting
 Composing and sending chat mails Composing and sending SMS etc.

i-appli

209

i-appli Downloading Starting i-appli i-appli Standby Display etc.

Osaifu-Keitai/ToruCa 229

Osaifu-Keitai iC transfer service Starting Osaifu-Keitai compatible i-αappli ToruCa
Obtaining ToruCa Displaying ToruCa IC Card Lock etc.

Full Browser 239

Full Browser Browser Setting

Data Display/Edit/Management 247

Displaying and editing images Playing and editing movie/i-motion Chara-den Machi-chara
Playing melodies microSD memory card Infrared communication iC Communication
PDF Viewer etc.

Music Playback 293

Music Player Saving music data etc.

Other Convenient Functions 305

Multiaccess Multitask Auto Power ON/OFF Timer Alarm Clock Scheduler Custom Menu
Speed Menu Own Number Voice Memo/Movie Memo Call Duration/Call Cost Calculator Notepad
Electronic dictionaries Dekanji Earphone/Microphone with Switch Reset Delete All Data etc.

Character Entry 333

Entering characters Input Method Setting 5-touch Input Method Save Phrase Copy Character
KUTEN Code Input Save Word Downloaded Dictionary Slot Input Method

Network Services 343

Voice Mail Service Call Waiting Service Call Forwarding Service Nuisance Call Blocking Service
Caller ID Request Service Dual Network Service English Guidance Remote Control Multi Number
2in1 etc.

PC connection setting 355

Data communication AT command etc.

Overseas Use 361

Overview of WORLD WING international roaming service Available services Check before use
Making and receiving calls Network Search Mode etc.

Appendix/External Devices/Troubleshooting 371

Menu list List of character assignments Options and related devices Troubleshooting
Error Message Warranty and After-Sales Service Software Update Virus Scan Function
Main specification etc.

Index/Quick Manual 419

Index Quick Manual Quick Manual (For Overseas Use)



Features and functions of FOMA D705i

FOMA is the name of a set of services provided by DoCoMo based on W-CDMA, one of the global standards for the third generation mobile communication system (IMT-2000).

It's amazing because it's i-mode!

i-mode is an online service that allows you to access i-mode sites (programs) or i-mode compatible websites for a variety of useful information and also allows you to exchange i-mode Mail.

i-mode Mail/Deco-mail/Deco-mail pictogram

In addition to the message text, up to 10 files (JPEG, ToruCa, PDF data, etc.) or up to 2 Mbytes of files can be attached to a mail.

☛P175

Deco-mail and Deco-mail pictograms allow you to change the character color, size and background color of the message. You can also insert images and moving pictograms.

☛P172

Mega i-appli/i-appli DX

☛P210

You can download i-appli from sites to enjoy various games or to automatically update stock prices and weather information on your FOMA terminal. This FOMA terminal supports large volume mega i-appli, such as high-definition 3D games and full-length RPG games.

i-appli DX enhances the use of i-appli by referring to the information stored in the i-mode terminal such as phonebook data and mails.

International roaming

☛P362

You can use the FOMA terminal, phone number and mail address that you use in Japan overseas (only in a 3G area). You can use voice calls, videophone calls, i-mode, i-mode Mail, SMS and network services.

Chaku-Uta Full®/Uta-hodai/Video clip

This FOMA terminal supports Chaku-Uta Full® that allows you to download an entire full-length song. It also supports Uta-hodai that enables you to download as many songs as you want for a monthly flat rate. ☛P294 In addition, i-motion of up to 10 Mbytes is supported on the FOMA terminal. You can play video clips of full-length songs. ☛P164

• "Chaku-Uta Full" is a registered trademark of Sony Music Entertainment (Japan) Inc.

Osaifu-Keitai/ToruCa

☛P230, P231

Downloading Osaifu-Keitai compatible i-appli enables you to charge electronic money from sites to the IC card of your FOMA terminal or check the balance and usage history. The i-appli for the DoCoMo's credit service "DCMX" is preinstalled.

In addition, iC transfer service is supported so that you can easily move the data in the IC card to a new FOMA terminal when you change your mobile phone model.

ToruCa is an electronic card obtained through a reader/writer or from a site, and can be easily exchanged using mail or infrared communication.

Kisekai tool

☛P99, P155

Download screen images of your favorite character from i-mode sites to set them for the standby display, menu screen and other screens at one time.

Useful functions

Choku-den

☛P82

Register phone numbers and mail addresses that are saved in the phonebook to Choku-den to easily make a call or send a mail.

• Up to 5 entries can be registered.

Lighting

☛P101

The keys on the terminal light up in various patterns when a call or mail arrives, etc.

Dekanji

P328

Display characters in extremely large font. You can check how to write complex characters such as kanji. Up to 12 one-byte or two-byte characters can be entered.

Built-in camera

P122

You can shoot a still image of up to 960 x 1280 (SXGA). In addition to a maximum 10x zoom, various modes are available for shooting including macro, framed shooting and continuous shooting.

- Effective pixels: Approx. 1.3 M (Maximum recorded pixels: Approx. 1.2 M)

Machi-chara

P101, P155

A moving animated character can be displayed on the standby display, etc. You can download Machi-chara from compatible sites.

Infrared/iC communication

- You can exchange data with other FOMA terminals using infrared or iC communication. P283, P288
- You can also operate devices that support TV infrared remote control from the FOMA terminal. P287

Support for microSD memory card

P265

- You can save shot still images and recorded movies.
- The microSD memory card enables you to back up data in your FOMA terminal such as images, melodies, phonebook data and mails.
- By connecting your FOMA terminal to a PC with the FOMA USB Cable with Charge Function 01 (optional), the microSD memory card in your FOMA terminal can be used as an external memory of the PC.

Speed Menu

P319

Use your voice to quickly start Music Player, Full Browser or the camera.

Electronic dictionaries

P327

Handy Japanese, English-Japanese and Japanese-English dictionaries are preloaded.

Security settings**Omakase Lock (Remote Lock)**

P110

When your FOMA terminal is lost, you can request DoCoMo to lock the lost terminal. You can also request unlocking of the terminal. For contact information, refer to the back of this manual.

- Locking with Omakase Lock is charged*1.

*1 Charge is free if you make a request for locking at the same time as application for service suspension or during service suspension.

- Note that the FOMA terminal is locked when a request is made by the subscriber even if the subscriber is not the user of the FOMA terminal.

Data Security Service

P119

You can back up the phonebook data, images and mails stored in the FOMA terminal to the Data Center. When your FOMA terminal is lost or damaged, you can restore the backup data to a new FOMA terminal. In addition, you can edit and manage the backup data in the Data Center from a PC, and save the edited data to your FOMA terminal.

For important notes on using Data Security Service and detail information about how to use the service, see "Mobile Phone User's Guide [i-mode] FOMA version". For contact information, refer to the back of this manual.

- Data Security Service is a pay service and requires a subscription.

Wide array of network services

- Voice Mail Service (charged)*1 P344
- Call Forwarding Service (free of charge)*1 P346
- SMS (free of charge) P204
- Call Waiting Service (charged)*1 P345
- Nuisance Call Blocking Service (free of charge) P347
- Dual Network Service (charged)*1 P347
- 2in1 (charged)*1 P350

*1 A separate subscription is required.



Making full use of D705ip

A variety of functions of D705ip visual communications are explained here.

Videophone

You can see the image of the other party while talking over the phone. As your image, a Chara-den image appears on the screen of the other party's terminal. You can also send an image of the surrounding scene by switching to the camera image.

Your terminal



Other party's terminal



Other party's terminal



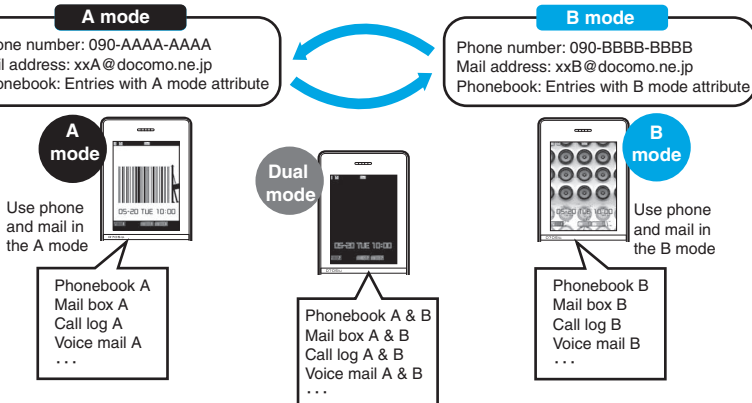
Talk while seeing the other party's image. ◀P43, P54
A Chara-den image is displayed on the other party's terminal.
You can switch the image to send between Chara-den and still image. ▶P64

Image of your surroundings is displayed. ▶P62

2in1

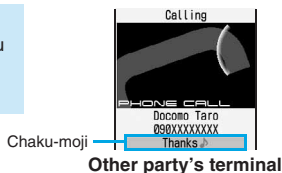
This service provides 2 phone numbers and 2 mail addresses to 1 mobile phone, allowing you to use the phone just like two different phones by switching the mode. You can also manage the phonebook, mail boxes, call logs, standby display etc. separately for the A mode and the B mode on 1 mobile phone. In addition, setting the dual mode allows you to manage both of the A and B modes simultaneously. ▶P350

* 2in1 is a pay service and requires a subscription.



Chaku-moji

When you call someone, you can have a message be displayed on the incoming screen of his or her terminal. You can use this Chaku-moji message to notify the called party of the purpose of your call. ●P48



i-Channel

You can receive graphical information such as news and weather information. You can also get rich, detailed information by selecting a desired channel in the channel list. ●P166

* i-Channel is a pay service and requires a subscription.



Music Player

- Music Player supports Chaku-Uta Full[®] that allows downloading of an entire full-length song. It also supports Windows Media Audio (WMA) that enables you to obtain music from CDs and various music-distribution sites. Downloaded music can be played on Music Player. ●P294



SAFETY PRECAUTIONS (Always follow these directions)

- Read the following SAFETY PRECAUTIONS to ensure that the phone is used correctly. Also, store this manual in a convenient location for future reference.
- It is essential that these precautions be observed to prevent injury to the user and third parties as well as damage to property.
- The following symbols are used to indicate the degree of danger or damage that may result from failing to follow the specified precautions.



DANGER

Indicates an imminently hazardous situation, which, if not avoided, will result in death or serious injury.



WARNING

Indicates a potentially hazardous situation, which, if not avoided, could result in death or serious injury.



CAUTION

Indicates a potentially hazardous situation, which, if not avoided, may result in injury or property damage.

- The following symbols are used to highlight instructions that are very important and that must be strictly followed.



This indicates the action is prohibited.



This indicates disassembly is prohibited.



This indicates that handling with wet hands is prohibited.



This indicates the part must not be exposed to water.



This indicates the action must be performed in accordance with the directions.



This indicates you must remove the plug from the power outlet.

- SAFETY PRECAUTIONS is separated into 6 categories.

Handling the FOMA terminal, battery pack, adapter (and charger) and the UIM (general information).....	P12
Handling the FOMA terminal	P14
Handling the battery pack.....	P15
Handling optional devices (AC adapter/DC adapter/Desktop Holder/In-Car Holder)	P16
Handling the UIM (FOMA card)	P17
Handling the FOMA terminal in the vicinity of medical devices	P17

Handling the FOMA terminal, battery pack, adapter (and charger) and the UIM (general information)



DANGER



Do not use, store or leave in a high-temperature place such as near fire, in direct sunlight or in a sun-heated car.

Otherwise, the equipment will get deformed or troubled. The battery pack may leak, overheat, rupture or ignite, and a reduction in performance and life may result.

Sometimes, the casing will partly get heated, resulting in an extremely high temperature to get you burnt.



Do not attempt to disassemble or remodel. In addition, do not attempt to solder.

Attempting to do so will lead to an accident, such as a fire, injury or electric shock and damage the equipment. Doing so may also cause the battery pack to leak, overheat, rupture or ignite.



Do not expose to water.

The equipment may overheat, cause electric shock, fire, damage or injury if exposed to water, pet urine or other liquids. Do not use the equipment in locations where it could get wet.

**Use only DoCoMo-certified battery packs and adapters (and chargers) with the FOMA terminal.**

Use of non-specified items could cause the FOMA terminal, battery pack and other devices to leak, overheat, rupture, catch fire or malfunction.

Battery Pack D08

Desktop Holder D11

FOMA AC Adapter 01/02

FOMA DC Adapter 01/02

FOMA Dry Battery Adapter 01

FOMA Portable Charging Adapter 01

FOMA USB Cable with Charge Function 01

FOMA AC Adapter 01 for Global use

• For additional items related to the compatible products, contact the nearest DoCoMo Shop.



If there is anything wrong (such as strange odor, heat generation, color change, deformation, or the like) during use, battery charge or storage, you should take the following steps immediately.

1. Remove the power plug from the wall outlet or cigarette lighter socket.
2. Turn off the FOMA terminal.
3. Remove the battery pack from the FOMA terminal.

Continuing to use the equipment without taking these steps will cause it to overheat, rupture or ignite, or cause the battery pack to leak.

**WARNING**

Do not place the battery pack, FOMA terminal, adapter (and charger) or UIM in the microwave oven, high-pressure cooker or other cooking appliances.

Doing so could cause the battery pack to leak, overheat, rupture or ignite, and could damage the circuitry of the FOMA terminal and adapter (and charger), causing overheating, smoke or fire.



Do not expose to strong shocks by dropping or throwing.

Doing so could cause the battery pack to leak, overheat, rupture or ignite, and damage the equipment, resulting in fire.



Do not let the recharging terminal and external device terminal touch any conductive material, such as a piece of metal or lead. Also do not put any conductive material into the recharging terminal and external device terminal.

The battery can short-circuit, causing fire and damage.



Be sure to turn off the FOMA terminal before entering a place such as a gas station that is subject to flammable gases. Do not charge in such a place. Flammable gases could cause fire.

When using Osaifu-Keitai inside a gas station, make sure to turn off the FOMA terminal in advance. (If IC Card Lock is set, cancel the lock and then turn the power off.)

**CAUTION**

Do not place on an unstable or tilted surface.

Doing so could cause the equipment to slide off, possibly causing personal injury or damaging the equipment.



Do not store in locations subject to high temperature, humidity or excessive dust.

Doing so could damage the equipment.



When a child uses the FOMA terminal, first be sure an experienced adult teaches proper usage methods and techniques. Observe to determine that the child is using the FOMA terminal correctly.

Failure to do so could result in injury.



Keep out of the reach of small children.

The components can be accidentally swallowed, resulting in injury.



Be especially careful when you use the FOMA terminal connected to an adapter (and charger) continuously for a prolonged period.

The temperature of the FOMA terminal, battery pack or adapter (and charger) may become high when using i-appli or videophone while charging the battery for a long period of time.

If you touch the part with a high temperature directly for a long period of time, skin redness, itchiness, rash, etc. may occur depending on your constitution or condition. Or it could cause a low-temperature burn on the skin.

Handling the FOMA terminal

WARNING



Do not aim the infrared port at eyes and attempt to transmit.
Eyes could be affected. Aiming at other infrared devices and transmitting could cause other devices to malfunction.



Do not place the FOMA terminal in an area over an air bag or in an air bag deployment area such as on a dashboard in a vehicle.
If the air bag inflates, the FOMA terminal may hit you or injury or damage to itself could result.



Do not place the FOMA terminal in a breast or inner pocket if you are using electronic medical equipment.

The FOMA terminal could cause any medical equipment in its vicinity to malfunction.



Do not allow water or other liquids, pieces of metal or other foreign material to enter into the UIM slot and microSD memory card slot of the FOMA terminal.
Doing so could cause fire, electric shock or damage to the phone.



Turn off the FOMA terminal inside an aircraft, hospital or other location where use of mobile phones is prohibited.

The FOMA terminal may interfere with the correct functioning of electronic equipment. If the automatic power on function is used, cancel the setting and turn the power off.

Observe any regulations posted in medical facilities.

If you have done prohibition acts such as using the FOMA terminal inside an aircraft, you may be punished as stipulated by law.



When you talk under handsfree settings, be sure to keep a distance between the FOMA terminal and your ear.
When you connect an earphone/microphone to the FOMA terminal to play games or music, adjust the earphone volume to a moderate level.

Extremely loud volume setting could cause the hearing loss.

In addition, if the ambient sound is difficult to hear, it could lead to an accident.



People with weak hearts should take care with respect to the setting of the incoming vibrator and ring volume.

The FOMA terminal may affect hearts.



If you hear thunder while using the FOMA terminal outdoors, turn the power off immediately and move to a safe location.

Use of the phone in such a situation could expose you to lightning strikes or electric shock.



Turn off the FOMA terminal in the vicinity of electronic equipment that relies on high-precision control or faint signals.

The FOMA terminal may interfere with the correct functioning of such electronic equipment.

- Examples: hearing aids, implanted cardiac pacemakers, implanted defibrillators, other medical devices, fire alarms, automatic doors and other automatically controlled equipment. Users of such medical equipments should check with the electronic equipment or device manufacturer with respect to the effect of electromagnetic interference.



If the display or the camera lens is broken, be careful of broken glass and exposed internal parts.

A plastic panel to prevent broken glass from scattering covers the display and the camera lens. However, accidentally touching the broken or exposed parts may hurt you.

CAUTION



Do not swing the FOMA terminal around by the antenna or strap.

The FOMA terminal may hit you or another person and injury or damage to the phone could result.



Do not bring magnetic cards near the FOMA terminal.

Magnetic data stored on bank cards, credit cards, telephone cards, and floppy disks may be corrupted or lost.



Do not bring magnetic materials near the FOMA terminal.

Doing so could cause the FOMA terminal to malfunction.



If you accidentally damage the display and the liquid leaks from the LCD, do not drink or touch the liquid.

If the liquid gets in your eyes or mouth, immediately rinse with clean water and seek medical attention.

Also, if the liquid comes into contact with your skin or clothing, immediately wipe with alcohol and wash your skin or clothing with soap and water.

Doing so could cause the loss of vision or skin injuries.



Do not bring your ears close to the speaker when the FOMA terminal is ringing or playing melodies.

Doing so could cause the hearing loss.



Use in certain makes of vehicles may affect onboard electronic equipment.

Continued use under such conditions could cause unsafe driving. Do not use the FOMA terminal in such a case.



Rarely, some FOMA terminal users may develop itching, skin irritation or eczema. If such a condition occurs, stop using the FOMA terminal immediately and seek medical attention.

Metal is used in the following components:

Part	Material	Surface treatment
Bar with the model name printed (below the display)	Aluminum	Alumite treatment

Handling the battery pack

- Check the battery type indicated on the battery pack label.

Indication	Battery type
Li-ion	Lithium ion battery



— DANGER —



Do not attach metallic materials such as wire to the port. Do not carry or store the battery pack together with a necklace or other metallic items.

Doing so could cause the battery pack to leak, overheat, rupture or catch fire.



When you attach the battery pack to the FOMA terminal, never attempt to forcefully insert, because it should slide in easily and fit correctly. Check the direction of the battery pack and try again.

Doing so could cause the battery pack to leak, overheat, rupture or catch fire.



Do not throw the battery pack into a fire.

Doing so could cause the battery pack to leak, overheat, rupture or catch fire.



Do not pierce the battery pack with nails, hammer on it or step on it.

Doing so could cause the battery pack to leak, overheat, rupture or catch fire.



If battery fluid gets in your eyes, do not rub; instead, rinse immediately with copious amounts of clean water and seek medical attention.

Failure to do so could cause the loss of vision.



— WARNING —



Giving strong shocks such as dropping may deform or damage the battery pack. If there is anything wrong with the battery pack, immediately stop using it.

Failure to do so could cause the battery pack to leak, overheat, rupture or ignite, and damage the equipment, resulting in fire.



Stop charging if it is not possible to fully charge the battery pack within the specified time.

Failure to do so could cause the battery pack to leak, overheat, rupture or catch fire.



If the battery pack leaks or emits strange odors, immediately stop using it, and always keep away from sources of fire.

Failure to do so could cause the leaked battery fluid to catch fire, and the battery pack itself to rupture.



Be careful not to let pets chew on the battery pack.

Failure to do so could cause the battery pack to leak, overheat, rupture or ignite, and damage the equipment, resulting in fire.

CAUTION



Do not dispose of the battery pack with other regular household waste.

Failure to properly dispose of the battery pack in an environmentally sensitive manner could cause the battery pack to catch fire and damage the environment. Use adhesive tape to cover the terminal of battery pack when it is no longer used and bring it to a DoCoMo Shop after the insulation. Alternatively, you can also dispose of the battery pack in accordance with local regulations.



Do not charge the wet battery pack.

Doing so could cause the battery pack to overheat, ignite or rupture.



Should battery fluid come into contact with your skin or clothing, immediately stop using the battery and rinse with clean water thoroughly.

Failure to do so could cause skin injuries.

Handling optional devices (AC adapter/DC adapter/Desktop Holder/In-Car Holder)

WARNING



Do not use the adapter (and charger) when it has a damaged power cord.

Doing so could result in electric shock, overheat or fire.



Do not use the AC adapter and Desktop Holder in bathrooms or other potentially high humidity locations.

Doing so could cause electric shock.



The DC adapter is for use with negative ground vehicles. Do not use it with positive ground vehicles.

Doing so could result in fire.



Do not touch the FOMA terminal and adapter (and charger) when hearing thunder.

Contact with the FOMA terminal and adapter could cause you lightning strikes or electric shock.



Use care not to short circuit the recharging terminal when the adapter (and charger) is connected to a wall outlet or cigarette lighter socket. Do not touch the recharging terminal with your fingers or some other part of the body.

Doing so could cause fire, equipment failure, electric shock or other injury.



During charging, place the charger and Desktop Holder in a stable location. Do not cover or wrap the charger and Desktop Holder with a cloth or blanket, etc.

Using the equipment under such conditions could cause the FOMA terminal to be detached from the holder, or cause a heat buildup that leads to fire or equipment failure.



Do not place heavy objects on the adapter (and charger) cord or power cord.

Doing so could cause electric shock or fire.



Do not touch the adapter (and charger) cord or wall outlet with wet hands.

Doing so could cause electric shock.



Use the designated power source and correct voltage.

Use of incorrect voltage could cause fire or equipment failure. When using the FOMA terminal overseas, use the AC adapter that can be used overseas.

AC adapter: 100 V AC

DC adapter: 12 and 24 V DC

(specific for negative ground vehicle)

AC adapter for overseas use: 100 to 240 V AC

(Always connect to the outlet for internal household use.)



Use only the specified fuse for the DC adapter.

Use of an unspecified fuse could cause fire or equipment failure. Check the instruction manual for details of the correct fuse to use.



Be sure the power plug is free of dust.

Failure to do so could cause the equipment to catch fire.



When plugging the AC adapter to a wall outlet, plug it firmly, making sure that the plug does not come into contact with a metallic strap or other metals.

Failure to do so could result in electric shock, short circuit or fire.



Always hold the power plug (and charger) from the wall outlet or cigarette lighter socket. Do not forcibly pull the adapter (and charger) cord or the power cord.

Pulling the cord could damage the cord, resulting in electric shock or fire.



When the adapter (and charger) is not to be used for a prolonged period, disconnect the power plug from the wall outlet.

Failure to do so could result in electric shock, fire or equipment failure.



If the adapter (and charger) or holder is exposed to water or other liquid, immediately disconnect the power plug from the wall outlet or cigarette lighter socket.

Failure to do so could result in electric shock, smoke or fire.



Disconnect the power plug from the wall outlet or cigarette lighter socket before beginning any maintenance.

Failure to do so could cause electric shock.

Handling the UIM (FOMA card)



CAUTION



Be careful of the cut surface when removing the UIM (IC part).
Failure to do so could cause injury to your hands or fingers.

Handling the FOMA terminal in the vicinity of medical devices

The information given below conforms to the guidelines set forth by the Electromagnetic Compatibility Conference regarding the protection of electronic medical equipment from radio waves emitted by mobile phone units.



WARNING



When inside a medical institution, always remember the following guidelines:

- Never take the FOMA terminal inside an operating room, intensive care unit (ICU) or coronary care unit (CCU).
- Always turn off the FOMA terminal in hospital wards.
- Even in the lobby and other areas, always turn off the FOMA terminal when electronic medical equipment is nearby.
- Follow the directives of the medical institution. There may be specific regulations as to items that are prohibited or use of which is restricted.
- If you are using the automatic power on function, cancel the setting and turn off the power.



Turn off the FOMA terminal on packed trains or in crowded places as someone with an implanted cardiac pacemaker or implanted defibrillator may be nearby.

The electromagnetic waves emitted by your phone could affect the function of an implanted cardiac pacemaker or implanted defibrillator.



If you have an implanted cardiac pacemaker or implanted defibrillator, keep your FOMA terminal at least 22 cm away from it.

The electromagnetic waves emitted by your phone could affect the function of an implanted cardiac pacemaker or implanted defibrillator.



If you are using electronic medical equipment other than implanted cardiac pacemakers or implanted defibrillators outside the confines of a medical institution for treatment at home, be sure to check with the manufacturer about possible adverse effects caused by electromagnetic interference.

The electromagnetic waves emitted by your phone could affect the function of electronic medical equipment.

General

- **Do not get the components wet.**
The FOMA terminal, battery pack, adapter (and charger) and UIM are not waterproof. Avoid using the components in a bathroom or other high humidity areas or locations exposed to rain. If you carry the components, sweat could cause internal corrosion that leads to equipment failure. As a result of investigation, if component failure is found to be water-related, repair is not covered by the warranty and may not be able to be performed.
In such a case, should it be found to be possible to repair the unit, you will be billed for all repairs.
- **Clean the components with a soft dry cloth (such as a lens cloth).**
 - The FOMA terminal display may have a special coating on it so that the color LCD provides a clear view. Rubbing the display strongly with a dry cloth for cleaning could damage the display. Handle with care and clean the display with a soft dry cloth (such as a lens cloth). Also note that leaving the display with dirt or moisture attached could cause spots or remove the coating on it.
 - Using alcohol, thinner, benzene or detergents could cause the printed text to fade or disappear, or the equipment to become discolored.
- **Occasionally clean the terminals with a dry cotton swab.**
Dirty terminals could cause intermittent contact that could interrupt the flow of power to the unit. Such a situation also causes insufficient charging. Use a dry cloth or cotton swab to clean the terminals.
- **Do not place the components near an air conditioner vent.**
Sudden changes in temperature could cause condensation, leading to corrosion inside the components and equipment failure.
- **Do not apply excessive pressure to the FOMA terminal or battery pack.**
Do not place it in a bag together with many other things or in your pocket when you sit down as this could exert pressure on the display or damage the internal boards or battery pack, resulting in equipment failure.
If you apply pressure when an external device is connected to the external connection terminal or earphone/microphone jack of the FOMA terminal, the connector could be damaged, leading to equipment failure.
- **Carefully read the instruction manuals supplied with the FOMA terminal, adapter (and charger) and Desktop Holder before use.**

- **Do not rub or scratch the display with metal.**
The display could be damaged, leading to equipment failure or damage.

FOMA terminal

- **Avoid extremely high or low temperatures.**
Use in an environment with a temperature of 5 to 35 °C and relative humidity of 45 to 85 %.
- **If the FOMA terminal is used near a general subscriber phone, TV or radio, it could affect such equipment. Use the phone as far away from such equipment as possible.**
- **With regard to data stored in the FOMA terminal, keep it separately in a memo, etc. so as not to permanently lose important data.**
NTT DoCoMo cannot be held responsible in any way for the loss of stored data.
- **When you connect an external device to the external connection terminal or earphone/microphone jack, do not insert the connector at an angle. Also, do not pull the connector while connected to the FOMA terminal.**
Malfunction or damage may result.
- **It is normal for the FOMA terminal to become warm during using or recharging. You can continue to use it while warm.**
- **Do not leave the camera in direct sunlight.**
Elements may be discolored or baked.
- **For normal use, leave the cap on the earphone/microphone jack, the external connection terminal and the microSD memory card slot.**
If the cap is off, dust or water may get in and malfunction may result.
- **Do not use the FOMA terminal with the back cover removed.**
The battery pack may fall out, leading to equipment failure or damage.
- **Do not remove a microSD memory card or turn off the power of the FOMA terminal while using the microSD memory card.**
Data loss or malfunction may result.
- **Do not rub the keys and the surrounding area with hard materials or push them hard.**
The keys may be damaged, leading to equipment damage.
- **Do not put the FOMA terminal in your pocket with other hard items such as metal.**
The keys may be damaged, leading to equipment damage.

Battery pack

- **The battery pack will gradually wear out.**
Battery life depends on how you use the battery pack; it is time to replace it when the usage time is very short even though you fully charge it. The specified battery pack can be purchased separately.

- **Recharge the battery pack in locations where the ambient temperature is between 5 °C and 35 °C.**
- **When using for the first time or after a long period of non-use, be sure to fully charge the battery pack before use.**
- **The time of use provided by the battery pack depends on the ambient conditions and the condition of the battery pack itself.**
- **Depending on usage, the battery pack may swell as it nears the end of its life, but this will not cause a problem.**
- **Do not store or leave the battery pack with no charge.**
A reduction in battery performance and life may result.

Adapter (and charger)

- **Recharge the battery pack in a location where the ambient temperature is between 5 °C and 35 °C.**
- **Do not recharge in the following locations:**
 - Locations that are subject to high humidity, dust or excessive vibration
 - Near general subscriber phone, TV or radio
- **It is normal for the adapter (and charger) to become warm during recharging. You can continue charging with a warm adapter.**
- **When the battery pack is recharged using the DC adapter, always keep the car engine running.**
Failure to do so could cause the car battery to run down more quickly than normal.
- **When an outlet with falling prevention mechanism is used, check the instruction manual of the outlet before use.**
- **Do not expose to the strong shock and deform the recharging terminal.**
Giving the strong shock on an adapter can cause damage.

UIM (FOMA card)

- **Do not use excessive force when attaching or removing the UIM.**
- **The UIM becomes warm during use. This is normal and not a cause for concern.**
- **Note that any card failures resulting from inserting the UIM in an IC card reader/writer not designated by NTT DoCoMo are the responsibility of the customer.**
- **Make sure that the ICs are kept clean.**
- **Clean the UIM with a soft dry cloth (such as a lens cloth).**
- **It is recommended that users maintain data stored on the UIM in some other form.**
If the data should be erased, NTT DoCoMo assumes no responsibility for the loss of any data.

- **The UIMs that are no longer used should be returned to a DoCoMo Shop for environmental protection.**
- **Avoid extremely high or low temperature.**
- **Take care not to damage, touch or short-circuit the ICs.**
Data loss or malfunction may result.
- **Take care not to drop the UIM or give shock to the UIM.**
Malfunction may result.
- **Do not bend the UIM and place heavy stuff on it.**
Malfunction may result.
- **Do not insert the UIM with a label or sticker attached in the FOMA terminal.**
Malfunction may result.

FeliCa reader/writer

- **The FeliCa reader/writer function of the FOMA terminal uses faint radio waves that do not require a radio station license.**
- **The FeliCa reader/writer operates at a frequency of 13.56 MHz. If you use any other reader/writer in the vicinity, keep a distance from it. Also, make sure that there is no other wireless station that uses the same frequency band.**

Cautions

- **Never use the modified FOMA terminal. Using the modified terminal will be an infringement of the Radio Law.**
The FOMA terminal is certified to conform to the technical regulations for specified radio equipment specified in the Radio Law, and has the Technical Conformity Mark (TC) affixed to the identification plate of the terminal to prove it. If you take out screws and modify the inside of the FOMA terminal, the certification of technical regulations conformity will be invalid. If you use the terminal of which the technical regulations conformity certification cannot be verified, it will be an infringement of the Radio Law.
- **Note the following caution about driving and using a mobile phone.**
Driving while holding a mobile phone in your hand is subject to penalties.
If you need to answer a call, tell the caller that you will call back using a handsfree device. Stop the vehicle in a safe place before using the phone to make a call.
- **Use the FeliCa reader/writer function in Japan.**
The FeliCa reader/writer function of the FOMA terminal is compliant with the Japanese radio communication standard.
If you use this function overseas, you may be punished.

Copyrights and portrait rights

Except in cases where reproduction and quoting for private use is sanctioned under copyright laws, the reproduction, alteration and public transmission of such content as text, images, music or software for which another party owns the copyrights, whether accomplished by using this product to photograph or record that content or by downloading it from Internet websites, is prohibited without the permission of the owner. Taking photographs or recordings of such events as performances and exhibitions may be prohibited even for purposes of private use. In addition, if you use this product to take another person's photograph without their permission, or display such a photograph without their permission on an Internet website and make that content public to an indeterminate number of people, you may be in violation of portrait rights.

Trademarks

Company names and trade names used in this manual are the trademarks or registered trademarks of their respective companies.

- FOMA, mova, i-motion, i-mode, i-appli, i-shot, DoPa, mopera, mopera U, WORLD CALL, WORLD WING, Chaku-motion, Deco-mail, V-live, i-area, Chara-den, i-appli DX, Dual Network, ToruCa, DCMX, visualnet, i-Channel, iD, FirstPass, sigmarion, Security Scan, musea, Public mode, IMCS, OFFICEED, 2in1, the FOMA logo, the i-mode logo, the i-appli logo, the DCMX logo, the iD logo and the Choku-den logo are trademarks or registered trademarks of NTT DoCoMo, Inc.
- "Catch Phone (Call waiting service)" is a registered trademark of Nippon Telegraph and Telephone Corporation.
- Free Dial logo mark is a registered trademark of NTT Communications Corporation.
- McAfee® is a registered trademark or trademark of McAfee, Inc. and/or its affiliates in the US and/or other countries.
- G-GUIDE, G-GUIDE MOBILE and their logos are registered trademarks in Japan of U.S. Gemstar-TV Guide International, Inc. and/or its affiliates.



- Powered by JBlend™ Copyright 2002-2008 Aplix Corporation. All rights reserved. JBlend and JBlend-related trademarks are trademarks or registered trademarks of Aplix Corporation in Japan and other countries.



-  is a registered trademark of FeliCa Networks, Inc.
- The microSD logo is a trademark. 
- "Multitask" is a registered trademark of NEC Corporation.
- QuickTime is a registered trademark of Apple Inc., in the US and other countries.
- Microsoft®, Windows®, Windows Media® and Windows Vista® are trademarks or registered trademarks of Microsoft Corporation in the United States and/or other countries.
- QR code is a registered trademark of Denso Wave Inc.
- Java and all Java-related trademarks are trademarks or registered trademarks of Sun Microsystems, Inc. in the United States and other countries.
- "ATOK" is a registered trademark of Justsystem Corporation. "ATOK" is a copyrighted work of Justsystem Corporation and other intellectual property rights belong to Justsystem Corporation and other right holders.
- "Privacy Mode" is a registered trademark of FUJITSU Limited.
- Napster is a registered trademark of Napster, LLC. and/or its affiliates in the US and/or other countries.
- In addition to the above, company names and trade names used in this manual are the trademarks or registered trademarks of their respective companies.

Other rights and responsibilities

- Contains Flash® Lite™ and Adobe® Reader® technology by Adobe Systems Incorporated. Flash Lite copyright© 1995-2008 Adobe Macromedia Software LLC. All rights reserved. Adobe Reader copyright© 1984-2008 Adobe Systems Incorporated. All rights reserved. Adobe, Flash, Flash Lite and Reader are either registered trademarks or trademarks of Adobe Systems Incorporated in the United States and/or other countries.



- This product contains NetFront Browser and NetFront Sync Client of ACCESS CO., LTD. Copyright© 2008 ACCESS CO., LTD. All rights reserved.

NetFront®

ACCESS and NetFront are trademarks or registered trademarks of ACCESS CO., LTD. in Japan and other countries.

- This product contains a module developed by the Independent JPEG Group.

- F e l i c a is a contactless IC card technology developed by Sony Corporation.

F e l i c a is a registered trademark of Sony Corporation.

- This product is licensed based on MPEG-4 Visual Patent Portfolio License. The use of MPEG-4 Video Codec function is allowed for personal and nonprofit use only in the following cases:

- Recording videos that conform to MPEG-4 Visual Standard (hereinafter referred to as MPEG-4 Video)

- Playing MPEG-4 Videos recorded personally by consumers not engaged in profit activities

- Playing MPEG-4 Videos obtained from the provider licensed from MPEG LA

For further utilizing such as promotion, in-house use or profit-making business, please contact MPEG LA, LLC in the US.

- Licensed by QUALCOMM Incorporated under one or more of the following United States Patents and/or their counterparts in other nations;

4,901,307	5,504,773	5,109,390
5,535,239	5,267,262	5,600,754
5,416,797	5,490,165	5,101,501
5,511,073	5,267,261	5,568,483
5,414,796	5,659,569	5,056,109
5,506,865	5,228,054	5,544,196
5,337,338	5,657,420	5,710,784
5,778,338		

- Powered By Mascot Capsule®/Micro3D Edition™ Mascot Capsule® is a registered trademark of HI CORPORATION.

• symbian

This product includes software licensed from Symbian Software Ltd.

'Symbian', 'Symbian OS' and other associated Symbian marks are all trademarks of Symbian Software Ltd. ©1998-2008 Symbian Software Ltd. All rights reserved.

- "Meikyo Mobile Japanese Dictionary", "G-Mobile English-Japanese Dictionary" and "G-Mobile Japanese-English Dictionary" are copyrighted works of TAISHUKAN Publishing Co., Ltd.

"ケータイ！日本語テスト" is a copyrighted work of Justsystem Corporation and Ask Corporation. "明鏡クイズ" that is included was supervised by Yasuo Kitahara and edited by TAISHUKAN Publishing Co., Ltd, and is a copyrighted work of both parties.

- FlashFX® is a registered trademark of DATALIGHT, Inc. FlashFX® Copyright 1998-2008 DATALIGHT, Inc.

U.S. Patent Office 5,860,082/6,260,156

FlashFX® Pro™ is a trademark of

DATALIGHT, Inc.

DATALIGHT® is a registered trademark of DATALIGHT, Inc.

Copyright 1989-2008 DATALIGHT, Inc., All Rights Reserved.

- In this manual, each OS (Japanese version) is written for short as follows:

- Windows 2000 is the abbreviation for Microsoft® Windows® 2000 Professional operating system.

- Windows XP is the abbreviation for Microsoft® Windows® XP Professional operating system or Microsoft® Windows® XP Home Edition operating system.

- Windows Vista is the abbreviation for Windows Vista® (Home Basic, Home Premium, Business, Enterprise or Ultimate).

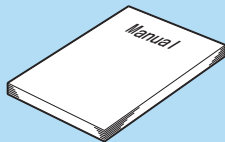
- Content owners use Windows Media digital rights management technology (WMDRM) to protect their intellectual property, including copyrights. This device uses WMDRM software to access WMDRM-protected content. If the WMDRM software fails to protect the content, content owners may ask Microsoft to revoke the software's ability to use WMDRM to play or copy protected content. Revocation does not affect unprotected content. When you download licenses for protected content, you agree that Microsoft may include a revocation list with the licenses. Content owners may require you to upgrade WMDRM to access their content. If you decline an upgrade, you will not be able to access content that requires the upgrade. This product is protected by certain intellectual property rights of Microsoft. Use or distribution of such technology outside of this product is prohibited without a license from Microsoft.

Basic package

FOMA D705ip
(including the written
warranty and the Back
Cover D21)

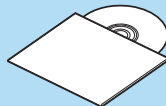


Instruction manual
(this book)



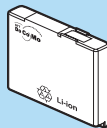
Quick Manual P426

CD-ROM for FOMA
D705ip



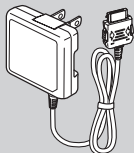
The PDF versions of "Manual
for PC connection setting" and
"Kuten Code List" are contained.

Battery Pack D08

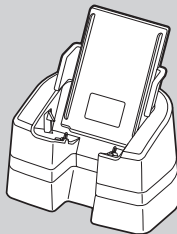


Optional accessories

FOMA AC Adapter 01/02
(including the written warranty and the
instruction manual)



Desktop Holder D11
(including the instruction manual)

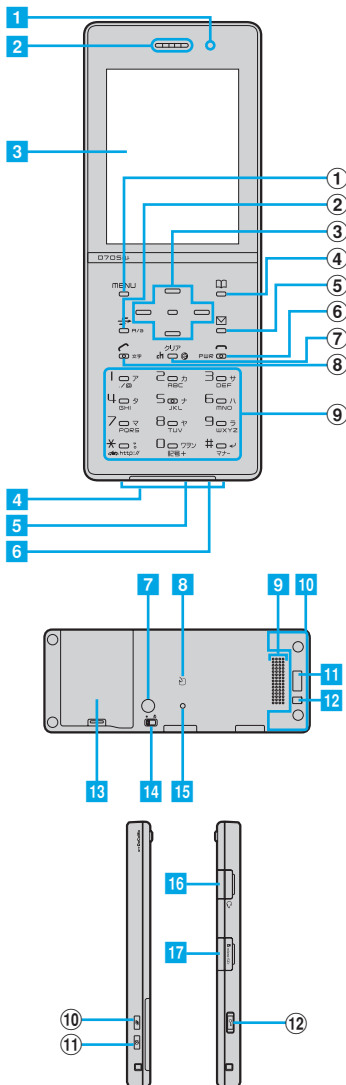


• Other optional accessories P392

Before Using the Handset

Names and functions of parts.....	24
Reading the display	26
Selecting the menu	29
Using the UIM (FOMA card).....	31
Attaching/removing the battery pack.....	33
Charging the FOMA terminal	34
Checking the remaining battery level	Battery Level 36
Turning the power on/off.....	Power ON/OFF 37
Making initial settings.....	Initial Setting 38
Switching to English display	Select Language 38
Setting the date and time	Date and Time Setting 38
Notifying your phone number to the other party	Caller ID Notification 40
Checking your own phone number	Own Number 40

Names and functions of parts



For ①, ② and the following numbers in the above figure, see the description in “Functions of keys”. P25

1 Charging indicator

Lights in red during battery charging.

2 Earpiece

The other party's voice comes out of here.

3 Display P26

4 Battery charging terminals

5 External connection terminals P36, P276

Used to connect various optional accessories.

6 Microphone

Picks up your voice.

7 Camera P62, P122

Used to shoot people and landscape or send the image during a videophone call.

8 FeliCa mark P230, P288

An IC card chip is mounted. Use the IC card functions by placing the FeliCa mark over a reader/writer. The IC card cannot be detached.

9 Speaker

Ring alert and the other party's voice when the speakerphone is used come out of here.

10 FOMA antenna (built-in)

The antenna is embedded here. Do not cover this part with your fingers during a call.

11 Infrared data port P283

Used for infrared communication or infrared remote control function.

12 Strap opening

13 Back cover

14 Macro mode switch P132

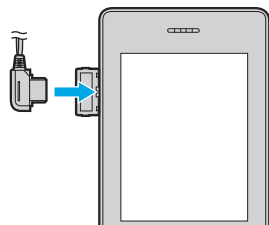
Used to switch between standard mode and macro mode when shooting with the camera.

15 Camera indicator

Lights or flashes when shooting with the camera.

16 Earphone/microphone jack

Used to connect the Flat-plug Earphone/Microphone with Switch (optional).



• Using the Earphone Plug Adapter P001 (optional) allows you to use an existing earphone/microphone.

17 microSD memory card slot P266

Functions of keys

You can perform the following operations by pressing keys.

●: Press shortly

■: Hold down for over a second

① **Menu/Upper left soft key**

- Displays the main menu.
- Performs the operation shown in the upper left of the guide row.

② **Speed Menu/Start videophone/Lower left soft key**

- Displays Speed Menu.
- Makes/answers videophone calls.
- Switches between upper/lower cases while entering characters.
- Performs the operation shown in the lower left of the guide row.
- Displays Speed Menu (when calling by voice, in Japanese only).

③ **Easy Selector Plus**

Enter key

- Performs the selected operation.
- Activates Focus Mode.
- Starts i-appli set for One-key Shortcut.

Data Box/ ↑ key

- Displays the Data Box menu.
- Adjusts the volume.
- Moves the cursor upward.

i-mode/i-appli/ ↓ key

- Displays the i-mode menu.
- Adjusts the volume.
- Moves the cursor downward.
- Displays the i-appli folder list.
-  **Received Calls/←(previous) key**
- Displays the received call history.
- Moves the cursor leftward.
- Activates/cancels Privacy Mode when Privacy Mode Setting is set.

Redial/→(next) key

- Displays the redial data.
- Moves the cursor rightward.
- Sets/cancels IC Card Lock.

④ **Phonebook/Scheduler/Upper right soft key**

- Displays the phonebook.
- Performs the operation shown in the upper right of the guide row.
- Displays Scheduler.

⑤ **Mail/Lower right soft key**

- Displays the Mail menu.
- Returns to the previous character.
- Performs the operation shown in the lower right of the guide row.
- Performs Check i-mode Message.

⑥ **Power/End key**

- Ends calls or functions in operation.
- Holds incoming calls.
- Cancels Secret Mode.
- Shows/hides the custom standby display.
- Turns the power on/off (when the key is pressed for over 2 seconds).

⑦ **i-Channel/Clear key**

- Displays the channel list.
- Starts i-appli on the i-appli standby display.
- Deletes characters.
- Returns to the previous screen.
- Stops ring alerts and alarms.
- Sets/cancels Self Mode.

⑧ **Start voice call/Speakerphone/Character key**

- Displays Choku-den.
- Makes/answers voice calls.
- Turns on/off the speakerphone.
- Switches input modes while entering characters.

⑨ **Dial keys**

 1 - 9 and 0

- Enters phone numbers and text.
- Enters "+" (when entering a phone number: 0).

/Public mode (Driving mode) key

- Enters "X".
- Sets/cancels Public mode (Driving mode).
- Enters "P" (when entering a phone number).

#/Silent Mode/Line-feed key

- Enters "#".
- Inserts a line feed while entering characters.
- Sets/cancels Silent Mode.
- Enters "T" (when entering a phone number).

⑩ **TASK key**

- Switches functions and operations during Multiaccess and Multitask.

⑪ **Answer Machine/Shutter key**

- Displays the Answer Machine/Voice Memo menu.
- Releases the shutter of the camera.
- Stops ring alerts and alarms.
- Activates Still Camera.
- Activates Quick Record Message.

⑫ **Keylock switch P115**

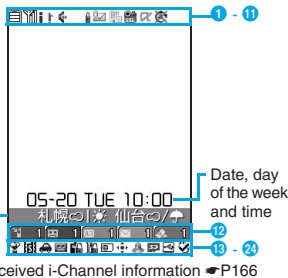
- Sets/cancels Key Lock (when the key is pressed for over a second or pressed twice).

INFORMATION

- The keys on the front face of FOMA terminal light or flash when you receive a call or mail, shoot with the camera, etc.
- Use the projections of the keys as the guide for operation. You can operate the terminal by pressing the area surrounding the projections.

Reading the display

The description of icons displayed at the top or bottom of the display is shown below:



Received i-Channel information P166

- 1 : Battery level icon P36
- 2 : Signal level icon P37
- : Out of service area P37
- : Self Mode is set P110
- : During data transfer P268, P283, P288
DoCoMo keitai datalink in progress P360
- 3 : In i-mode communication (during i-mode connection) P144
- : In i-mode communication (during packet communication) P159, P179
- 4 : During infrared communication P283
*1 Infrared remote control function being used P287
- : Key Lock is set (in gray when Key Lock is temporarily released) P115
- : Total call cost exceeds the limit P324
- 5 : Speakerphone function on P44
- : Connecting to handsfree compatible device P53
- 6 : Secret Mode is set P115
- 7 : Status of unread mail and unread Message R/F P179, P205, P158
*1 : Unread i-mode Mail and SMS make the storage space full and SMS also makes the storage space full on UIM
- : Unread i-mode Mail and SMS make the storage space full
- : SMS storage space is full on UIM
- : Unread i-mode Mail and SMS exist

: Unread i-mode Mail exists

: Unread SMS exists

R / R (blue/red):

Unread Message R exists/makes the storage space full*2

F / F (green/red):

Unread Message F exists/makes the storage space full*2

8 : Storage status of i-mode Center P180, P159

*1

: i-mode Mail and Message R/F storage space is full in the Center

: i-mode Mail or Message R/F storage space is full in the Center

: Unreceived i-mode Mail and Message R/F exist in the Center

: Unreceived i-mode Mail or Message R/F exists in the Center

9

: SSL page being displayed, i-appli downloaded from SSL pages being in use or in SSL communication P145
SSL/TLS page being displayed P240

: Auto-send failure mail exists P178

: Auto-send mail exists P178

10 : Status of i-appli and i-appli DX P211, P92, P224

: i-appli running

: i-appli standby display on

: Starting i-appli from the i-appli standby display

: i-appli DX running

: i-appli DX standby display on

: Starting i-appli from the i-appli DX standby display

11

: i-appli Auto Start failed P224

12

: Focus Mode icon P31

13

: General silent mode is set P89

: Personalized silent mode is set P90

14

: Call alert volume is set to **SILENT** P88

: Vibrator for incoming voice call is set P88

: Call alert volume is set to **SILENT** and vibrator for incoming voice call is set

15

: Public mode (Driving mode) is set P57

16

: Answer Machine is set P59

- : Recorded message storage space is full ➡P59
- 17 : Keypad Dial Lock is set ➡P112
- 18 : Personal Data Lock is set ➡P111
- 19 : Reading the UIM ➡P37
- : IC Card Lock is set ➡P236
- 20 :
Effective Easy Selector Plus keys in Focus Mode ➡P30
- 21 : Alarm Clock is set ➡P308
- : Schedule alarm is set ➡P311
- : Alarm Clock and schedule alarm are set simultaneously
- 22 Status of USB Mode Setting and microSD memory card ➡P275
- : The communication mode is set with microSD memory card inserted
- (dark blue/gray):
The microSD mode is set with/without microSD memory card inserted
- (dark blue/gray):
The MTP mode is set with/without microSD memory card inserted
- 23 : Connecting to external device via the FOMA USB Cable with Charge Function 01 (optional) ➡P66, P276
- 24 : Software Update reserved ➡P410
- *1 : Update notification icon ➡P407
- :
Auto-update to the latest pattern definition succeeded/failed ➡P413

*1 The current highest priority item is displayed. These icons are listed in the order of priority from the top.

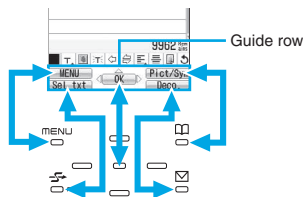
*2 Displayed overlapped on the icon indicating presence of unread i-mode Mail or SMS.

Reading the guide row

Operations that can be executed by pressing , , , and are displayed in the guide row. The operations to be displayed differ depending on the screen.

Example

Guide row for the mail message entry screen



The correspondence between the display positions and the keys is as shown in the figure.

- on the guide row corresponds to of the Easy Selector Plus (it may differ depending on the function, i-mode site or website in use).

Reading the task bar

The icons of the functions in progress are displayed on the task bar. In addition, when receiving a mail or message, the reception result ticker appears.



- : Voice call
- : Videophone
- : Switching voice/videophone call
- : Ending call
- : Videophone call through external device
- : Adjusting volume using Multitask
- : Phonebook
- : Choku-den
- : Received Calls
- : Redial
- : Answer Machine/Voice Memo
- : Own Number
- : Mail
- : Receiving i-mode Mail/Message R/F

- : Receiving SMS
- : Chat Mail
- : Message R/F
- : Sent Msg. Log
- : Received Msg. Log
- : Check i-mode Message/SMS
- : i-mode/i-Channel
- : i-mode Bookmark/Internet Connection/Screen Memo/i-mode Shortcut
- : i-appli
- : ToruCa
- : Full Browser
- : My Picture
- : i-motion
- : Melody
- : My Document (PDF Viewer)
- : Chara-den
- : Machi-chara
- : Kisekai tool
- : Still Camera
- : Movie Camera
- : Sound Recorder
- : Bar Code Reader
- : Music Player
- : Timer
- : Setting Alarm Clock/alarm clock sounding
- : Scheduler
- : Schedule alarm sounding
- : Notepad
- : Calculator
- : Dictionaries
- : Dekanji
- : Exchanging data through external device
- : Accessing/waiting for access to the microSD memory card
- : 64K data communication
- : Originating/communicating/sending/receiving packet via USB
- : Setting/holding each function
- : Software Update activated
- : Software Update notified
- : Update Definition activated/version display/ Auto-update Setting
- : Setting each network service
- : Accessing Data Center

- : Displaying communication log with Data Center

Reading the list screen



- 1 The current page number and the total number of pages
- 2 : Indicates that other selectable items exist above and below the highlighted item.
 - Press to move the cursor.
 - If you press on the last item of the page, the next page appears, and if you press on the first item of the page, the previous page appears.
- : Indicates that selectable items exist over multiple pages.
 - Press to switch between pages. You cannot switch between pages on the icon selection screen, etc.

INFORMATION

- Note that the following cases may occur due to the characteristics of liquid crystal display (LCD) and they are not defects in the FOMA terminal.
 - The FOMA terminal display is manufactured by taking advantage of highly advanced technology but some dots may be always or never lit.
 - When the battery pack is removed from the FOMA terminal with the power on, residual images may remain for some time. Turn the power off before removing the battery pack.
 - When a screen has been displayed for a certain time, if you change it to another screen by performing some operations, residual images of the previous screen may remain.

Selecting the menu

There are three types of the menu.

• Normal menu

Displayed when pressing **[MENU]** (default). While in the Japanese display, you can set the simple menu limited to often-used functions in which characters are displayed in large font.

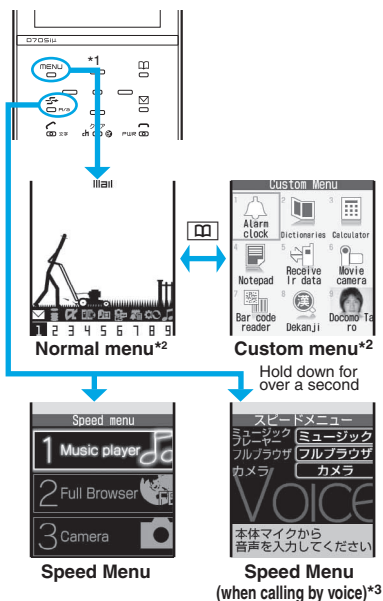
• Custom menu

You can register menu items of your choice.

• Speed Menu

Can be displayed when pressing **[F5]**. You can quickly start feature functions. **☛P319**

Displaying the menu



*1 You can change the menu displayed when **[MENU]** is pressed in Menu Setting. **☛P96**

*2 You can select a display format (list view, tile display or 3D display). For the normal menu, you can also select animation or simple menu format.

*3 Can only be displayed in the Japanese display. Switch to the Japanese display in advance.

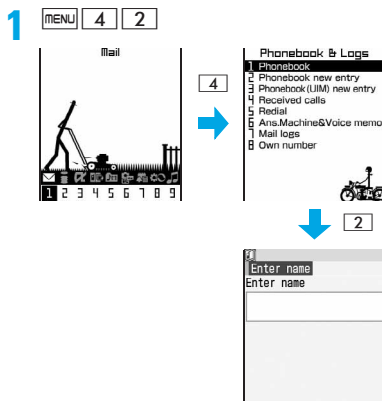
Selecting menu items

Each menu item has a number (item number) and can be selected by pressing the corresponding key. You can also use the Easy Selector Plus to highlight a menu item and press **[OK]** to select it.

- The menu item numbers are not displayed in the 3D display format.

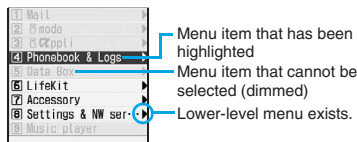
Example

Executing *Phonebook new entry* using the normal menu



- Highlighting the desired menu item in other than the animation menu shows the description of the item's function.
- In case of the animation menu, **[OK]** in the guide row does not appear.
- In case of the animation menu, the operations of **[Left]** differ depending on the animation design.

Selecting menu items (List view)



Highlight a menu item and press **[Left]** or **[Right]**.

- To return to the menu of previous level: **[Left]** or **[Back]**

Selecting menu items (Tile display)

Highlight a menu item and press .

- To return to the previous menu: 

Selecting menu items (3D display)

Bring the desired item to the front of the icon ring and press .

- Press  to move the icon at the rear to the front.
- To return to the previous menu: 

Displaying description of menu items (Describe function)

Highlight a menu item. After a brief interval, description of the item's function appears.

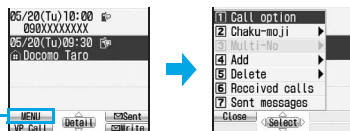
- The function description appears briefly then disappears.
- You can set FOMA terminal not to display the function description. 
- The function description does not appear when you highlight a menu in the animation menu or a person in the custom menu.

INFORMATION

- When a lock function is set or the UIM is not inserted, some functions are disabled. The disabled functions are indicated by  or their menus are dimmed. However, if the menu display format is set to *Animation*, a message appears when menu items for the disable functions are selected.

Selecting submenu items

When **MENU** is displayed at the upper left of the guide row, you can use the submenu to perform various operations.

**1 on the screen with the submenu
Highlight a submenu item or **

Indicating a submenu

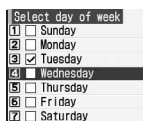
- Selecting items in the submenu is the same as in the list view format.
- To close the submenu:  or 

Selecting items on the screen**Selecting from the pulldown menu****1 Highlight an item **

The pulldown menu appears.

**2 to highlight an item **

- You can select an item by the dial key for the item number.

Selecting from the check box**1 Highlight a check box **

The check box changes from  to , and is selected.

- Select the selected item to cancel the selection. The check box changes from  to .
- Depending on the function, you can select or cancel all items by pressing .
- You can select an item by the dial key for the item number.

Selecting Yes or No on a confirmation screen**1 Highlight Yes or No **

- For some functions, items other than *Yes* or *No* may appear.

Displaying information quickly Focus Mode

You can display corresponding information from Focus Mode icons such as  1 or  1 on the standby display.

**1 Highlight an icon such as 1 or 1 **

The screen corresponding to the selected icon appears.



In Focus Mode, the color of the highlighted icon changes.

The number of stored items is indicated at the right of each icon.

1 Missed call exists:

The received call list appears.

1 Unplayed recorded message exists:

The recorded message list appears for you to play a message.

1 Voice mail message exists:

The confirmation screen appears for you to play a voice mail message.

- In the dual mode of 2in1, the following icons also appear:

 **2**: Messages to Number A and Number B

 **1**: Only messages to Number B

1 Unread received mail exists:

The received mail folder list appears for you to check unread mail.

1 Unread ToruCa exists:

The ToruCa list appears for you to check unread ToruCa.

- To cancel Focus Mode:  or 
- You can also perform the same operation when the following icons appear:

: Update notification icon  P407

 / : Auto-update to the latest pattern definition succeeded/failed

 P413

: Being connected to external device via the FOMA USB Cable with Charge Function 01 (optional)

 P276

INFORMATION

- When you highlight an icon and hold down  for over a second, the icon temporarily disappears from the screen. It reappears when the number of stored items changes. For the icon indicating voice mail messages, a confirmation screen appears when you hold down  for over a second. Select *Yes* to clear it temporarily.

Using the UIM (FOMA card)

The UIM (FOMA card) is a card in which your phone number and other information are recorded. Insert the UIM into the FOMA terminal to use it.

- For details on handling the UIM, refer to the UIM manual.

Inserting/removing the UIM

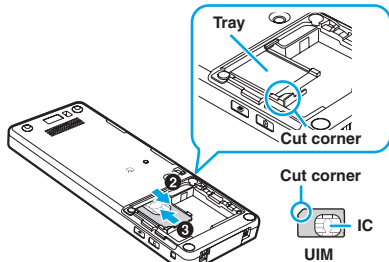
Use your FOMA terminal with the UIM inserted. If the UIM is not inserted in your FOMA terminal, first insert it.

- Be sure to turn the power off. Insert or remove the UIM using both hands.

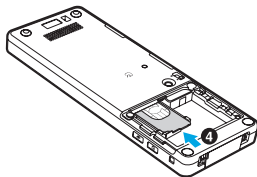
Inserting

- 1 Remove the back cover and then the battery pack.**  P34
- 2 Pull out the tray.**
Place your finger on the tray and slide it out until the tray stops.
- 3 With the IC side of the card facing up, slide the UIM on the tray to match the cut corner of the UIM to the cut corner of the tray.**

Tray is pulled out until it stops.



- 4 Push the tray in until it stops.**



5 Reattach the battery pack and then the back cover. ➡P33

Removing

1 Pull out the tray.

- The operations are the same as 1 to 2 in "Inserting".

2 Pull out the UIM.

When the UIM tray is removed

Insert and push the tray straight in.

- Remove the UIM before replacing the tray.

INFORMATION

- Insert or remove the UIM carefully as forcing it may damage the card.

UIM security codes

The PIN1 and PIN2 codes are used for the UIM. Both codes are set to "0000" at the time of subscription to the FOMA service. You can change this to any code (4 to 8 digits). ➡P108

UIM operation restriction function

The FOMA terminal is provided with the UIM operation restriction function for protecting your data and files.

- When the data or files downloaded from sites or attached to mail are saved in the FOMA terminal with the UIM inserted, the UIM operation restriction is automatically set to these data or files.
- If the UIM is replaced by another UIM or is removed from the FOMA terminal, the data or files with the UIM operation restriction set cannot be displayed, played, copied or moved to the microSD memory card or exchanged by infrared or iC communication.
The i-appli with the UIM operation restriction set can only be deleted, moved to another folder or sorted. Also, the i-appli standby display can be set or canceled.
- The data which is subject to the restriction is as follows:
 - File attached to i-mode Mail (excluding ToruCa)

- Screen memo
- Message R/F
- Data compatible with Movable Contents
- Image inserted in Deco-mail or signature
- i-motion
- i-appli (including the i-appli standby display)
- Chara-den
- Image (including animation and Flash movie)
- Chaku-Uta®/Chaku-Uta Full®
- Machi-chara
- Melody
- PDF data
- Recorded videophone message
- Kisekai tool
- Mail template containing data which is subject to the operation restriction
- Movie memo
- Image downloaded from the Data Center
- Image of ToruCa (details)

"Chaku-Uta" is a registered trademark of Sony Music Entertainment (Japan) Inc.

INFORMATION

- When the data with the UIM operation restriction enabled is set for the standby display, call image or ring alert, if the UIM is replaced by another UIM or is removed from the FOMA terminal, the image and sound settings return to the default. In this case, the image and sound that are actually displayed and generated may differ from the settings. Inserting the UIM that was used when the data was downloaded cancels the operation restriction and restores the original settings. (Note that the setting of Random Display Image may be canceled if the data was used for it.)
- The UIM operation restriction is not set to the data obtained via infrared or iC communication, the microSD memory card or DoCoMo keitai datalink, or to the still images or movies taken with the built-in camera.
- When the UIM is inserted in other i-Channel compatible terminals, the i-Channel information is not displayed as ticker on the standby display. After that, if the information is updated automatically or if you press [277] on the standby display to display the channel list, the latest information is received and then displayed as ticker on the standby display.

Settings saved into the UIM

The following settings are saved into the UIM. When the UIM is replaced, the settings of the new UIM become effective.

- My phone number
- DoCoMo certificate and user certificate set in Manage Certificate
- SMS Setting (except *SMS report request*)
- Select Language
- PIN1/PIN2 codes of the UIM and PIN1 Code ON/OFF
- PLMN Setting

- If you subscribed to the FOMA service on and before August 31, 2005 but not subscribed to WORLD WING, a subscription is required.
- This service cannot be used with some billing plans.
- If you lose the UIM (green/white) or have it stolen overseas, contact DoCoMo immediately to have the card suspended. For contact information, refer to "General Inquiries" on the back of this manual. Note that any call or communication charges incurred after the UIM is lost or stolen will be borne by the customer.

Functional differences between the UIM types

Note the following functional differences between the UIM (blue) and the UIM (green/white) when used in the FOMA terminal:

Item	UIM (FOMA card)	
	Blue	Green/White
Number of digits of a phone number that can be registered in the UIM phonebook ☛P71	Up to 20 digits	Up to 26 digits
Certificate Download for using FirstPass ☛P162	Unavailable	Available
WORLD WING service ☛P33	Unavailable	Available
Service Dialing Number ☛P348	Unavailable	Available

WORLD WING

WORLD WING is the DoCoMo international roaming service for FOMA that allows you to make and receive calls with the same mobile phone number overseas by using the UIM (green/white) and a terminal compatible with WORLD WING.

Note that D705iμ can be used only in a DoCoMo 3G roaming service area. In a GSM service area, insert the UIM into a GSM-compatible terminal to use it.

- If you subscribed to the FOMA service on and after September 1, 2005, no subscription is required to use WORLD WING. However, if you requested not to subscribe to it at the time of subscription to the FOMA service or canceled the subscription, a subscription is required.

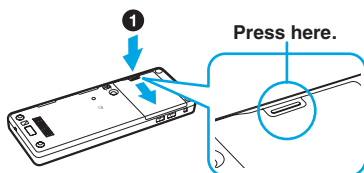
Attaching/removing the battery pack

- Be sure to turn the power off. Attach or remove the battery pack using both hands.
- Be careful not to touch the camera lens.
- Use the specified Battery Pack D08.

Attaching

1 Remove the back cover.

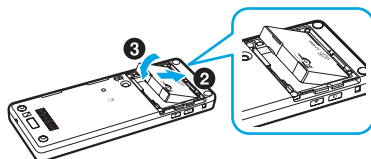
While pressing the top of the back cover with your thumb, slide it in the direction of the arrow until it is removed.



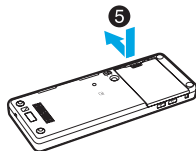
2 With the surface with the DoCoMo logo and the recycle mark facing up, insert the battery pack into the FOMA terminal at the angle as shown in the figure.

Do not force the battery pack into the FOMA terminal. Doing so could damage the body connector or battery pack terminals.

3 Push the battery pack in.



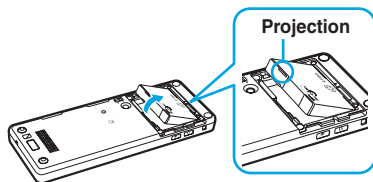
- 4 Place the back cover plate so that it can slide about 2 mm on the FOMA terminal.
- 5 Slide the back cover in the direction of the arrow while pushing its center with your thumb so that the FOMA terminal and the back cover do not gap.



Failure to follow the correct procedure could damage the back cover.

Removing

- 1 Remove the back cover.
- 2 Lift the projection of the battery pack and remove it.



INFORMATION

- The FOMA terminal display uses an active LCD. Due to the characteristics of active LCD, residual images or crossbar may remain for a while when the battery pack is attached or removed. This is not a fault of the FOMA terminal.
- When you remove the battery pack, reservation of software update may be canceled. If you set *Adjust time/time diff* to **OFF** and enter the date and time manually in Date and Time Setting, the set date and time may be cleared when you remove the battery pack.
- When you remove the battery pack, i-appli which uses the date and time information set on the standby display may not run correctly. In that case, set the date and time again.

Charging the FOMA terminal

When the battery level is low, charge the battery.

- The battery level icon shows how much charge remains in the battery. ➡P36

Battery pack life

- **The battery pack is a consumable part**
Each time it is charged, it will accept slightly less charge than the previous time.
- **When the battery charge lasts only half as long as when it was new**
The end of battery pack life is approaching. Replace it with a new one immediately. Depending on usage, the battery pack may swell as it nears the end of its life, but this will not cause a problem.
- **If you use i-appli or videophone for a long time during charging**
The battery pack life may be shortened.
- **The FOMA terminal uses a lithium ion battery containing valuable materials that should be recycled**
To protect the environment, return used batteries to an NTT DoCoMo service counter, NTT DoCoMo agent or recycling center.
- **Take the following precautions when recycling batteries**
 - Attach a piece of adhesive tape on the terminals of used battery packs.
 - Do not disassemble or modify battery packs.



Charging

The battery pack can be charged regardless of whether the FOMA terminal is turned on or off. However, charging takes longer with the power on.

- **When charging is started**
The charging indicator lights in red. When charging is started with the power on, the charge alert sounds and the battery level icon blinks.

Status	Icon (🔋)	Charging indicator lighting	Meaning
Charging	Blinks	Lights in red	Charging normally
Charged	Lights	Goes off	Charging completed normally

- The default battery level icon differs depending on the color of the FOMA terminal. Even if you change the battery level icon using Kisekae tool,  appears during charging.
- If the charging indicator does not light in red at the start of charging or it flashes in red, charging is unsuccessful. When the temperature of the FOMA terminal is high, the battery may not be charged. Stop any function in progress and confirm that the temperature is low before charging again. If the battery pack still cannot be charged even after charging again, contact "Repairs" on the back of this manual.

■ When charging is completed with the power on

The charge alert sounds and the battery level icon lights.

■ When the battery is fully charged

Connecting the FOMA terminal to the AC adapter or DC adapter may not start charging.

■ Precautions

- If you talk on the phone or use communication, i-mode or i-appli for a long time while charging the battery, charging will take longer. The battery may not be charged temporarily by temperature rise.
- If you use the videophone continuously for a long time during charging, you will fail in charging. Stop using the videophone and confirm that the temperature is low before charging again.
- Insert or remove the connector straight to/from the FOMA terminal.
- Insert or remove the connector to/from the FOMA terminal slowly and firmly without forcing it. When removing it, be sure to press the release buttons on both sides of the connector and pull it out. Forcibly pulling the connector could cause equipment failure.
- For details, refer to the manuals of the FOMA AC Adapter 01/02 (optional), FOMA AC Adapter 01 for Global use (optional) and FOMA DC Adapter 01/02 (optional).
- The FOMA AC Adapter 01 supports 100 V AC only. The FOMA AC Adapter 02 and FOMA AC Adapter 01 for Global use support 100 V to 240 V AC.

- The power plug of the AC adapter is for 100 V AC (domestic specifications). When using the AC adapter for 100 V to 240 V AC overseas, you need a conversion plug adapter meeting the specifications for the country to which you are to visit. Never use a transformer for overseas travel to charge your FOMA terminal.

Charging for a long time (over 1 day)

■ Do not charge the FOMA terminal for longer than 1 day with the power on

The FOMA terminal uses power after charging is completed until the terminal is unplugged from the adapter. In such a case, the AC adapter or DC adapter charges again but if the FOMA terminal is removed in the middle of charging, the following could occur:

- Low battery level
- Message appears indicating that the battery runs down
- The FOMA terminal is operational for a short time

Charging time and operation time on full charge (estimates)

Charging time		AC adapter: Approx. 120 minutes DC adapter: Approx. 120 minutes
Continuous call time*1	FOMA/ 3G	During a voice call: Approx. 150 minutes During a videophone call: Approx. 90 minutes
Continuous standby time*2	FOMA/ 3G	While standing still*3: Approx. 420 hours While moving*4: Approx. 300 hours

*1 Estimated call time of the FOMA terminal when it can send and receive signals normally.

*2 Estimated operation time of the FOMA terminal when it can receive signals normally. The call time and standby time may be reduced to about half, depending on the amount of charge in the battery, the function settings, the ambient temperature and signal conditions (radio waves do not or hardly reach). Using i-mode communication reduces the call (communication) time and standby time. Even if you do not make a call or use i-mode, composing i-mode Mail or starting downloaded i-appli or the i-appli standby display will reduce the call (communication) time and standby time.

- *3 Average operation time of the FOMA terminal when it is standing still and able to receive signals normally.
- *4 Average operation time of the FOMA terminal that is standing still, moving and outside the service area when it can receive signals normally.

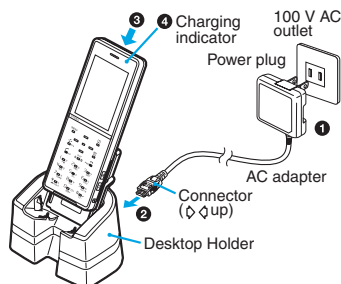
■ Precautions

Alternatively, if you use data communication, Multiaccess or camera, play movie/i-motion or music, the call (communication) time and standby time will be reduced.

How to charge

Use the FOMA AC Adapter 01/02 (optional) and Desktop Holder D11 (optional) to charge the battery. You can also charge using only the AC adapter.

- The battery pack can only be charged when it is attached to the FOMA terminal.
- For details, refer to the manuals of the AC adapter and Desktop Holder.



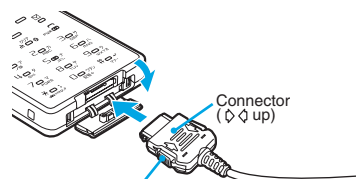
- 1 Plug the power plug of the AC adapter into a 100 V AC outlet.
- 2 Insert the connector of the AC adapter into the Desktop Holder until it clicks.
- 3 Along with the Desktop Holder, insert the FOMA terminal as shown in the figure.
- 4 Check that charging starts.

Check that the charging indicator lights in red. When charging is completed, tilt and remove the FOMA terminal while holding the Desktop Holder by hand.

- When inserting the FOMA terminal into the Desktop Holder, be careful not to put a strap in the holder.
- When the FOMA terminal is not inserted firmly or it leans, the battery cannot be charged properly. Insert the FOMA terminal until it clicks.

- Do not touch the charging terminals with your hands, fingers or some other part of the body when the Desktop Holder is connected to a wall outlet.

Charging with the AC adapter alone



Release button

Open the cap on the FOMA terminal's external connection terminal and insert the AC adapter connector in until it clicks.

- When charging is completed, remove the AC adapter connector from the FOMA terminal while pressing the release buttons on both sides of the connector. Then close the terminal cap.

Charging in a car

Use the FOMA DC Adapter 01/02 (optional) to charge the battery in a car. It can be used in negative ground cars (both 12 V and 24 V).

- For details, refer to the DC adapter manual.

INFORMATION

- When not charging, remove the DC adapter from the cigarette lighter socket.
- The DC adapter fuses (2A) are consumable items. New fuses are available at automotive supply stores.

Checking the remaining battery level

Battery Level

Check the approximate battery level on the display.



- (Level 3): Amply charged.
- (Level 2): Charging decreased.
- (Level 1): Almost empty. Charge the battery.

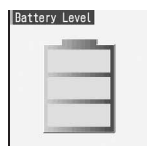
- The default battery level icon differs depending on the color of the FOMA terminal.

Checking the battery level by sound and display

1 [MENU] [8] [6] [6] [5]

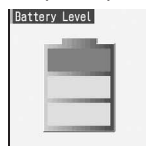
The battery level is displayed. The confirmation sound rings by the same sound as keypad sound.

(Level 3)



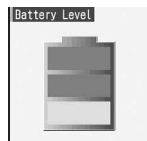
Sounds 3 times.

(Level 2)



Sounds twice.

(Level 1)



Sounds once.

When the battery almost runs down

A message indicating low battery appears. The message disappears by pressing [END], [P38] or [POWER], but after a period of time, it reappears and the low battery alert sounds. At this time, all the icons on the top of the screen blink, and after about 1 minute, the power turns off automatically. Charging the battery stops the low battery alert. To stop it immediately, press [POWER].

- During a call, the low battery alert sounds from the earpiece and the message appears. When about 20 seconds elapse after the low battery alert is heard from the earpiece, the call is cut off. Then, after about 1 minute, the power turns off automatically.

Turning off the low battery alert

Low Battery Alert

1 [MENU] [8] [1] [1] [6] [5] [1] or [2]

INFORMATION

- When the battery almost runs down during a call, even if **OFF** is set, the low battery alert sounds from the earpiece.

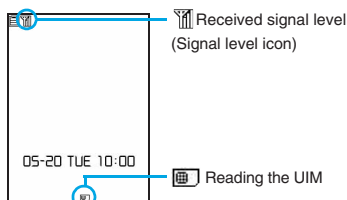
Turning the power on/off

Power ON/OFF

- When you turn on the power of the FOMA terminal for the first time, perform initial settings. P38
- Before turning the power on, check that the UIM is properly inserted.

Turning the power on

1 [POWER] (for over 2 seconds)



Standby display

The wake-up screen appears and then the standby display. The wake-up screen may take some time to appear.

Icon	Received signal level	Outside the service area or where radio waves are hard to reach
	Strong	
	Weak	

- The default signal level icon differs depending on the color of the FOMA terminal.

- If the date and time are not set, a message appears indicating that. When the FOMA terminal receives the time information and the time is automatically adjusted, the message disappears.
- To set the date and time manually:

Turning the power off

1 (for over 2 seconds)

INFORMATION

- When you turn on the FOMA terminal after replacing the UIM (except when Omakase Lock (Remote Lock) is set), entry of the 4 to 8-digit terminal security code is required. After entering the correct terminal security code, the standby display appears. If a wrong terminal security code is entered 5 times consecutively, the power is turned off (but can be turned on again).
- When you turn on the FOMA terminal, the PIN1/PIN2 code entry screen appears depending on the setting.
- When *Normal use of Display light time* in Display Light Setting is set to other than *Always*, if you do not press any keys for about 90 seconds, the screen display disappears.

Making initial settings

Initial Setting

When you turn the power on for the first time, set the date and time, terminal security code and keypad sound.

1 Turn the power on

2 Set each item

Date & time:

Enable or disable the automatic time adjustment and set the date and time.

Password:

Set the terminal security code used for various terminal operations.

Keypad sound:

Set the sound generated when pressing the keypad.

- If you press , etc. to end the operation without setting *Password*, a confirmation screen appears. If you select *Yes* and quit, the initial setting screen appears the next time you turn the power on.
- You can quit in the middle and change the settings afterward.

Changing initial settings from the standby display

1

- The subsequent steps are the same as when setting upon turning the power on for the first time.

INFORMATION

- When you turn the power on during All Lock or Keypad Dial Lock or when the power is turned on by Auto Power ON, the initial setting screen does not appear.
- The settings of this function are reflected to each function settings.

Switching to English display

Select Language

1 or

INFORMATION

- This setting is saved in the UIM.

Setting the date and time

Date and Time Setting

The time setting can be performed in two ways: automatically adjusting the time and time difference of the FOMA terminal, or manually entering the current time to the terminal.

1

MENU

8

6

1

1

▶ Set each item

□

□



- The entered number can be increased or decreased with . You can also highlight the number with to reenter.

Adjust time/time diff:

Set whether to automatically adjust the time and time difference.

ON: In Japan, the time is automatically adjusted according to the time information obtained from the DoCoMo network. Outside Japan, when the information to adjust the time difference is received from the network of the connected service provider, automatic adjustment takes place.

OFF: Select when setting the date and time manually.

Offset:

Specify the amount of time advance (+) or delay (-) so that your terminal's clock advances from or delays to the obtained time.

Date, Time:

Set a date between January 1, 2000 and December 31, 2050.

Time zone:

Select the area (time zone) to set on the FOMA terminal. In Japan, set **GMT+09:00**.

Summer time:

Set the summer time.

ON: The terminal's clock advances 1 hour from the actual time.

When the automatic time/time difference adjustment is set

The time and time difference are adjusted automatically when the UIM is inserted and you turn the power on in a location where radio waves reach.

- The automatic adjustment may sometimes cause a time error of several seconds. In addition, it may fail to adjust depending on the signal condition.

- If the time information is received while i-appli is running, the time may not be adjusted depending on the i-appli.
- Even when **Adjust time/time diff** is set to **ON**, the time may not be adjusted for a while. To enable the automatic adjustment, turn the power off and then on.
- When no UIM is inserted or the FOMA terminal is out of the service area, the automatic adjustment is not performed even if you turn the power off and then on.
- When the time difference is adjusted while you stay overseas, dates and times of the calls dialed/received and of the mails sent/received after that are recorded and displayed in the local time.
- Depending on the network of the service provider that you are using overseas, the time difference may not be adjusted.
- If **Adjust time/time diff** of this setting and Two Time Zone Clocks are set to **ON**, when you receive the information to adjust the time difference from the network of the connected service provider overseas, the two time zone clocks appear on the standby display.

INFORMATION

- You cannot use the following functions when the date and time are not set:
 - Auto Power ON/OFF
 - Alarm Clock
 - Machi-chara
 - i-appli Auto Start
 - i-appli DX
 - Flash movie which uses the date and time setting
 - Software Update
 - Update Definition
 - Scheduler (including data transfer and display of schedule data)
 - Downloading and playing i-motion with replay restriction set
 - Random Display Image
 - Downloading Chaku-Uta Full® and playing WMA files for which replay restriction is set for copyright protection
 - Playing, updating replay expiration date of and setting as ring alert Chaku-Uta Full® downloaded with Uta-hodai

- When the date and time are not set, the date and time are not recorded for the following functions and “----/--/--” or “-----” is displayed. A number to segmentalize (segmental number) may be appended.
 - Redial/Received Calls
 - Answer Machine/Voice Memo
 - Date and time of still image/movie taken with the camera
 - Notepad
 - Date and time of sent mail/unsent mail
 - Sent Msg. Log
 - Saved date and time of created mail template
 - Date and time of sound recorded with Sound Recorder
 - Date and time of the last reset of call duration/call cost
 - Date and time in the file name of data scanned by Bar Code Reader
 - Date and time of downloaded i-appli (detail information)
 - Date and time of received ToruCa
 - Saved date and time of downloaded data and file
 - Replay expiration date set in the detail information of Chaku-Uta Full[®] downloaded with Uta-hodai
- When you set *Adjust time/time diff* to **OFF** and enter the date and time manually, if you remove the battery pack or leave the battery discharged for an extended period, the set date and time may be cleared. In that case, set the date and time again.

Notifying your phone number to the other party

Caller ID Notification

Display your phone number (caller ID) on the other party's phone when you make a call.

- The caller ID is your important information. Carefully consider whether to notify your caller ID.
- This setting cannot be made outside the service area.
- The caller ID is displayed only when the other party's phone can display caller ID.
- For details, see “Mobile Phone User's Guide [Network Services]”.

1 8 7 4 1 1

- To check the current setting:

8 7 4 1 2 ▶ Yes

2 Enter the network security code ▶ 1

- To not notify the caller ID: 2

INFORMATION

- You can use several methods to set the caller ID notification. When setting and operating multiple caller ID notification methods at the same time, the caller ID is notified in the following priority. However, the caller ID setting shown on the display may differ from the actual setting.
 - Caller ID notification set in Call Option when making a call ◀P50
 - Calling by adding “186” or “184” before the other party's phone number ◀P49
 - Caller ID Setting of the phonebook ◀P79
 - Caller ID Notification
- If you hear a guidance requesting your caller ID when making a call, call again after setting to notify caller ID.

Checking your own phone number

Own Number

1 0

- To register your own name and mail address ◀P320

■ During a call: 0

INFORMATION

- For the subscriber to the 2in1 service, when replacing your UIM by another UIM of 2in1 subscriber, turn off 2in1 before replacement and turn it on again after replacement to obtain the correct Number B. ◀P351
When replacing your UIM by another UIM of non-subscriber, turn off 2in1 before replacement to update user information correctly.
- In the A mode or dual mode of 2in1, Number A appears in the *My phone number* field. In the B mode, Number B appears. In the dual mode, press to switch between Number A and B.

Voice/Videophone Calls

Making voice/videophone calls

Videophone	42
Making voice/videophone calls	42
Transmitting tone signals	Send DTMF 44
Switching between a voice call and videophone call	45
Using Redial/Received Calls	Redial/Received Calls 46
Setting Chaku-moji	Chaku-moji 48
Showing/hiding your caller ID for each call	186/184 49
Making calls by setting the conditions	Call Option 50
Using international calls	WORLD CALL 50
Setting prefix numbers to add to phone number	Prefix Dialing 52
Making a call by specifying a sub-address	Sub Address 52
Setting the alarm indicating reconnection of interrupted call	Reconnect Alarm 53
Suppressing ambient noises to improve the call quality ...	Noise Reduction 53
Talking without using hands in a car	In-car Handsfree 53

Receiving voice/videophone calls

Receiving voice/videophone calls	53
Receiving the request for switching between a voice call and videophone call	55
Enabling use of dial keys to answer a call	Any Key Answer 55
Adjusting the volume of the other party's voice during a call	Listen Volume 55
Adjusting the ring alert volume while receiving a call	Ring Alert Volume 56
Setting the priority of incoming screens during a call or packet communication	Priority Comm Mode 56

When you can or could not answer a voice/videophone call

Putting incoming calls on hold when you cannot answer right away	Response and Hold 56
Setting the response hold guidance	Status Message 57
Setting the on-hold tone	On-hold Tone 57
Using Public mode (Driving mode)	Public mode (Driving mode) 57
Using Public mode (power off)	Public mode (power off) 58
Allowing the caller to leave message when you cannot answer the call	Answer Machine 59
Using Chara-den	61
Setting images being sent to the other party	62
Customizing the screen settings during a videophone call	63
Changing the videophone settings	Videophone Settings 64
Setting of switching between a voice call and videophone call	Notify Switchable Mode 65
Setting how incoming videophone calls are handled during i-mode	Data Session Arrival Act 65
Using the videophone by connecting to an external device	External Device 66

Videophone

The videophone function is available between terminals that support DoCoMo's videophone. Because this FOMA terminal is not equipped with the in-camera, it sends a Chara-den image (P261) or an image taken by the out-camera to the other party. A still image can also be displayed.

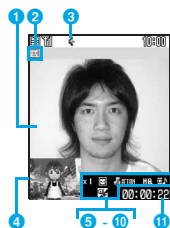
- Videophone communicates at only 64 kbps.

Specifications for the DoCoMo videophone comply with "3G-324M" that has been standardized by the international standard 3GPP^{*2}. Note that the connection with videophones of different specifications cannot be established.

*1 3G-324M is an international standard for the third generation mobile videophone.

*2 3GPP (3rd Generation Partnership Project) is a regional standardization organization established to develop the standard technology specification for the third generation mobile communication system (IMT-2000).

Screen display during a videophone call



1	Main screen	Other party's image (default)
2	Videophone icon	: Using videophone
3	Speakerphone function	: On No icon: Off
4	Sub screen	Your image (default)
5	Zoom	1 to 4 : Normal to 4 times

6	Status	: Sending Chara-den : Sending the camera-off image : Sending the camera image : Sending a frame : Sending a still image : On-hold : On Response and Hold : Recording a message : Recording a movie memo
7	Action mode	: Action : Action of parts
	Scene mode/effect	: Full auto, etc. For other modes/effects P62
8	Quality of outgoing image	No icon: Normal : Motion speed preferred : Image quality preferred
9	Sending and receiving status of sound/image	: Sending and receiving sound and image : Sending and receiving sound : Sending and receiving image
	Speaker/earpiece volume	1 to 6 : Adjusting speaker/earpiece volume
10	Videophone and voice call switching	No icon: Switching is not available. : Switching is available (displayed only on the caller's terminal).
11	Call duration	Displayed in the HH:MM:SS format

Making voice/videophone calls

Because this FOMA terminal is not equipped with the in-camera, you cannot send your image through the camera while talking. By default, Chara-den is sent to the other party during a videophone call. You can also send an image through the out-camera or a substitute image set in advance.

1 Enter the phone number



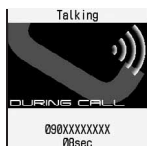
- When calling general subscriber phones, always include the area code, even from the same city.
- Up to 80 digits can be entered.

- To correct the phone number:
- To return to the standby display: (for over a second)

2 (voice call) or (videophone call)

You will hear a dial tone. You can start talking when the call is answered.

Voice call



Talking screen

- The following operations are available during a voice call:
 - To display received calls:
 - To display redials:
 - To open the phonebook:

Videophone call



Connecting screen



Talking screen

- If the other party is busy, you will hear a busy tone. Press to end the call and call again later. You can call again quickly using Redial.
- For a videophone call, charging begins when *Connected to videophone.* appears.
- The other party's voice comes out of the speaker during a videophone call.

3 to end the call

INFORMATION

[Common]

- If you hear a guidance requesting your caller ID when making a call, call again after setting the FOMA terminal to send caller ID.
- When you subscribe to the Multi Number service, you can call after selecting a registered multi-number.
- In the dual mode of 2in1, a screen appears prompting you to select the number from which you are calling. Select *Number A* or *Number B*.

[Voice call]

- When you hold down for over a second and enter the phone number, a voice call will be made automatically after about 5 seconds. The speakerphone is turned on.

[Videophone call]

- If a videophone call is not connected, one of the following messages appears on the screen and then the standby display reappears. Note that the displayed message may not reflect the status of the other party's terminal correctly, depending on the type of the terminal or the network service used by the other party.

Message	Description
<i>Busy.</i>	The other party is busy.*1
<i>Redial using voice call.</i>	This message appears when the other party has activated Call Forwarding Service with the forwarding destination set to a terminal incompatible with videophone.
<i>Upper limit exceeded.</i> <i>Connection failed.</i>	This message appears when the limit is exceeded for a billing plan with a charge limit (such as Type limit and Family Wide limit).
<i>Connection failed.</i>	Set Caller ID Notification to <i>Notify</i> and dial again. • The message may also appear in cases other than the above.
<i>Out of service area/power off.</i>	The other party is outside the service area or the other party's terminal is turned off.
<i>Busy with packet transmission.</i>	The other party is in packet communication.
<i>Set Caller ID to ON.</i>	This message appears in case of connecting without notifying the caller ID (when accessing to visualnet).

Message	Description
<i>Check number, then redial.</i>	You dialed the phone number not used.
<i>Make call from i-mode web page.</i>	This message appears when using V-live. Access to the IP site via i-mode then make a videophone call on the site screen.

*1 The message may also appear when the other party is in packet communication, depending on his or her terminal.

- If a videophone call failed to be connected while *Auto redial as voice* is set to *ON*, the call is automatically redialed as a voice call. If redialing as voice call occurs, voice call charges apply.
- Please note that digital communication charges apply to videophone calls instead of voice call charges even if the substitute image or Chara-den is used.

Putting calls on hold while talking On-hold

Putting the call on hold while talking makes your voice unheard to the other party. Callers are charged for the time spent on hold.

1 during a call



Voice call on hold

The call is put on hold and a guidance (on-hold tone) is heard. For videophone calls, the on-hold image appears on your and the other party's terminals.

- To resume a call on hold:  or 
If you resume a videophone call on hold, the same image as before the hold is sent.

Using the speakerphone function

You can make a call with the other party's voice heard through the speaker.

Example Making a voice call

1 Enter the phone number (for over a second)

 appears at the top of the display.

- The same operation is possible from the phonebook list, redial list, received call list, recorded message list and voice memo list.

■ Making a videophone call: Enter the phone number

- When *Speakerphone* is set to *OFF* in Videophone Settings or Silent Mode is active, hold down  for over a second.

■ Turning on/off the speakerphone during a call: or

- While dialing or calling, press  to turn on/off the speakerphone.

■ Adjusting the speaker volume: during a call to adjust the volume

- To adjust the volume during a videophone call: 
- The setting is retained even after the call is ended, and is also reflected to the volume of playback sound for recorded videophone call messages.

INFORMATION

- When the speakerphone function is turned on, the volume may suddenly increase and damage your ears. Use it with the FOMA terminal away from your ears.
- If a call is hard to hear with a large amount of noise around you or the other party, turn off the speakerphone function.
- Talk to the FOMA terminal within about 30 cm.
- The speakerphone function can be used even when Silent Mode is on.

Transmitting tone signals

Send DTMF

- You can input tone signals during a videophone call while sending Chara-den () , camera-off image () or camera image () .

Example During a videophone call**1** **[MENU]** **[6]** **during a videophone call ▶ Press dial keys**

The entered number appears on the screen and the tone signals are transmitted.

- To cancel transmitting tone signals: **[END]**
- Tone signals can be transmitted by pressing dial keys while the camera-off image or camera image is being sent.
- When you transmit tone signals, the frame or still image that has been set is canceled.
- Because tone signals are transmitted using dial keys, you cannot use dial keys to make actions while sending Chara-den.

■ **Transmitting tone signals during a voice call: Press dial keys during a voice call**

Entering pause “P” or times pause “T”

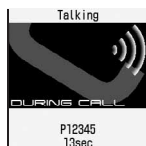
The pause and timed pause are available only for voice calls.

- You cannot make a call if a timed pause is entered at the beginning of the phone number.

Example

Calling “03XXXXXXXXXP12345”
(P=Entered pause)

When you press **[P]** after the call is connected, the number after the pause is sent.



■ **Entering a pause “P”: **[*]** after entering the phone number (for over a second)**

A pause is used for operating the answering system at home, reserving tickets, etc. At the point the pause is entered, the dialed digits are separated and tone signals are sent.

■ **Entering a timed pause “T”: **[#]** after entering the phone number (for over a second)**

A timed pause is used to dial an external number followed by an extension number. Enter a timed pause between the external and extension numbers. The extension number will be called a certain number of seconds after the external number.

- Timed pauses can be entered in succession.
- Each timed pause is followed by a second interval.

INFORMATION

- Tone signals may not be received depending on the receiving device.
- You cannot make a call to another party by putting the current call on hold and entering a pause or timed pause.

Switching between a voice call and videophone call

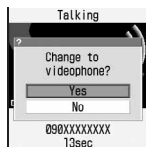
You can switch between a voice call and a videophone call by operating from the submenu during a call when the other party's terminal can also switch the call. Switching can be performed only from the calling terminal.

- This operation is available between the terminals that support switching between a voice call and videophone call.
- To switch the call, the other party needs to set **Indication ON** of Notify Switchable Mode in advance. **▶P65**
- Because this FOMA terminal is not equipped with the in-camera, you cannot send your image through the camera while talking. By default, Chara-den is sent to the other party during a videophone call. You can also send an image through the out-camera or a substitute image set in advance.

Example

Switching from voice call to videophone call

1 [MENU] 1 during a voice call ▶ Yes



No: Returns to the voice call talking screen.

- A guidance informing that the call is being switched is heard during switching.
- When *Speakerphone* is set to *ON* in Videophone Settings, the speakerphone is turned on when the call is switched to a videophone call.

■ Switching from videophone call to voice call: [MENU] 1 during a videophone call ▶ Yes

INFORMATION

- When you are in packet communication, disconnect the packet communication and switch to a videophone call.
- When the other party is during packet communication, the call cannot be switched to a videophone call.
- During a voice call using Call Waiting Service, you cannot switch the call to a videophone call.
- It takes about 5 seconds to switch. It may take longer depending on signal conditions.
- Depending on signal conditions, a voice call and videophone call may not be switched and the call may be disconnected.
- The speakerphone function is turned off when a videophone call is switched to a voice call.
- The settings (such as selecting the frame) made during a videophone call are canceled when a videophone call is switched to a voice call.
- According to the call duration of a voice call and videophone call, the call charges are added up, respectively.
- The call is not charged while *Switching...* is displayed.

Using Redial/Received Calls

Redial/Received Calls

The FOMA terminal records voice calls and videophone calls that you made in Redial and those you received in Received Calls.

- Up to 30 calls are recorded in Redial and Received Calls, respectively. When the number exceeds 30, the oldest call is deleted.
- When the 2in1 service is subscribed, up to 30 calls are recorded for each of Number A and Number B. In total up to 60 dialed calls and 60 received calls are recorded.

Example

Making a call using Redial

1 [Redial Icon] ▶ Highlight a party in the redial list



- To make a call using Received Calls: [Received Calls Icon] ▶ Highlight a party in the received call list
- To display the details screen: Highlight a call ▶ [Details Icon]

2 [Voice Call Icon] (voice call) or [Videophone Call Icon] (videophone call)

- To make a call with the same call type as the highlighted call: [Call Type Icon] on the details screen
- Even when you call using a received call with Chaku-moji, the Chaku-moji is not attached.
- When 2in1 is activated, a call is made from the number with which the highlighted call was made/received. When 2in1 is deactivated, the call is always made from Number A regardless of that number.

Available operations on the list screen

You can also perform the following operations on the details screen.

■ Registering an entry in the phonebook:

① Highlight a call ▶ [MENU] 4 1

- To add to an existing phonebook entry:

[MENU] 4 2

② [1] or [2] ▶ Register the name or mail address

- To add to the existing phonebook entry:
[1] or [2] ▶ Highlight a party ▶ ▶ Edit the data

■ Deleting redials/received calls:

- You cannot delete multiple calls at once on the details screen.

① Highlight a call ▶ [5] [1]

- To delete multiple calls: [5] [2] ▶ Highlight calls ▶ ▶
- To delete all: [5] [3] ▶ Enter the terminal security code

② Yes

■ Composing i-mode Mail: Highlight a call ▶

- If multiple mail addresses are registered for a selected party, select an address.
- This operation is possible when the phone number of highlighted call is registered in the phonebook together with a mail address.

■ Composing SMS: Highlight a call ▶ (for over a second)

■ Setting the image display on the details screen: [8] on the details screen ▶

[1] - [3]

- For details ▶ P76

■ Other operations available on the list screen:

- To switch between the redial list and received call list: [6]
- To switch to the sent message log: in the redial list
- To switch to the received message log: in the received call list

INFORMATION

- If you switch between a voice call and videophone call while talking, the call type (voice/videophone call) at the time you dialed/received is recorded in the call log.
- If you call the same number more than once by voice or videophone, only the most recent call is recorded as a redial for each caller ID preference: show, hide or no setting.
- Calls received from callers using dial-in services in such as office may display different numbers from the caller's dial-in number.
- Making calls by selecting a multi-number ▶ P350
- Making calls by selecting a number in the dual mode of 2in1 ▶ P50

Unanswered voice/videophone calls (Missed calls)

[1] appears and the call is recorded as a received call.

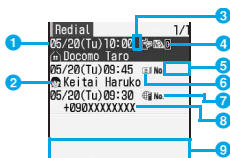
- When there is a missed call from an unknown phone number, the ringing time enables you to check whether the call is a malicious call (One-Ring Call, etc.) made for the sole purpose of leaving a received call record.

INFORMATION

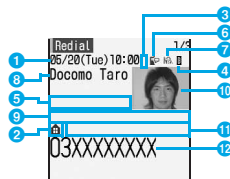
- To display missed calls of which ringing times are shorter than the delay time set in Mute Ring Time Setting:
 - To display all calls: [8] [1] on the received call list
 - To hide short ringing calls: [8] [2] on the received call list

Reading the list screen

Example For Redial



List screen



Details screen

1	Date and time	Calling/receiving date and time (the local date and time during stay overseas)
2	Icon	Icon registered in the phonebook*1
3	International call	: Call made/received during stay overseas*2
4	Call made/received with 2in1 numbers*3	No icon: Number A : Number B

5	Ring time *4	Displayed for missed call only
6	Call/communication type (domestic/international)	/ : Voice call / : Videophone call / : 64K data communication (for received call only)
7	Caller ID notification *5	No. : Notify or Show caller ID Hide : Not notify or Hide caller ID
	Call status (with/without Chaku-moji)	/ No icon: Answered / : Missed call (checked) / : Missed call (unchecked) / : Recorded message / : Recorded message (deleted)
8	Other party information	Phone number (on list screen only), name*1 or reason for no caller ID (for received call only)
9	Chaku-moji	Chaku-moji message (for received call only)
10	Image	Image registered in the phonebook*1
11	Name of multi-number	Displayed when you subscribe to the Multi Number service*6 (the name of the basic number or additional number with which the call was made/received)
12	Phone number	Not displayed for received call without caller ID

*1 Displayed when the phone number is registered in the phonebook. The operation is subject to the following settings:

- Secret Mode (for an entry with Secret Attribute set)
- Personal Data Lock
- View Preference

*2 May not be displayed when the time zone of the FOMA terminal is set to **GMT+09:00**.

*3 Displayed in the dual mode of 2in1.

*4 **99"** appears on the list screen if the ring time is 100 or more seconds.

*5 Displayed when caller ID notification is set in Call Option or Caller ID Setting of the phonebook.

*6 For redial, displayed when the multi-number is specified in Call Option.

Setting Chaku-moji

Chaku-moji

When you make a voice or videophone call, you can set a message (Chaku-moji) to be displayed on the incoming screen of the other party's terminal. This allows the other party to know the purpose of your call in advance.



Chaku-moji appears on the incoming screen of the other party's terminal. When the call is answered, the Chaku-moji is cleared.

- For details about Chaku-moji and compatible models, see the DoCoMo website or "Mobile Phone User's Guide [Network Services]".
- Senders are charged, but receivers are not charged.
- Received Chaku-moji is recorded in the received call history.
- When All Lock or Personal Data Lock is active, you can receive an incoming call with Chaku-moji attached but the Chaku-moji does not appear on the incoming screen. When you cancel the lock, you can check the message in the received call history.

Editing and setting Chaku-moji

Creating a Chaku-moji message

- Up to 10 messages can be registered.

1 [MENU] 8 [7] [3] [1]

2 <New message>

■ Editing a registered message:

Highlight a Chaku-moji message ▶



■ Using the history of sent messages:

[MENU] 1 ▶ **Highlight a Chaku-moji message** ▶

■ Deleting:

① **Highlight a Chaku-moji message** ▶

[MENU] 2

• To delete all: [MENU] 3

② Yes

3 Enter a message (up to 10 one-byte or two-byte characters)

- Kanji, hiragana, katakana, alphabetic and numeric characters, symbols, and pictograms (except Deco-mail pictograms) can be entered.

4

- When you have edited a registered Chaku-moji message, a confirmation screen appears. Select *Yes* to overwrite.

Making the Chaku-moji reception setting (Message Display Setting)

1 [8] [7] [3] [2] ▶ [1] - [4]

Display all: Displays Chaku-moji from any party.

Hide all: Hides Chaku-moji.

Only from stored No.: Displays Chaku-moji only from a party registered in the phonebook.

Only with Caller ID: Displays Chaku-moji only from a party with the caller ID.

Making a call by attaching Chaku-moji

- Up to 10 messages can be recorded in the history of sent messages. When the number of recorded messages exceeds 10, the oldest message is deleted.
- When the 2in1 service is subscribed, up to 10 sent messages are recorded for each of Number A and Number B. In total up to 20 messages are recorded.

1 Enter the phone number ▶ [3]

2 Select a Chaku-moji message

- **Creating a message:** [1] ▶ Create a Chaku-moji message

- Follow the procedure from Step 3 in "Creating a Chaku-moji message".
➡ P49

- **Selecting a registered message:** [2] ▶ Highlight a Chaku-moji message ▶ 

- **Selecting from the history of sent messages:** [3] ▶ Highlight a Chaku-moji message ▶ 

- In the dual mode of 2in1, [B] appears for a message sent with Number B.

3

- When the Chaku-moji is received by the other party's terminal, **Transmission completed** appears and transmission fee is charged.
- When the Chaku-moji is sent to an incompatible terminal or is not received due to Message Display Setting of the other party's terminal, **Transmission failed** appears and transmission fee is not charged.

INFORMATION

- If the receiver's terminal is in one of the following cases, Chaku-moji is not received and is not recorded in the received call history. In addition, the transmission result does not appear on the sender's screen. In this case, transmission fee is not charged.
 - Outside the service area or turned off
 - In Public mode (Driving mode)
 - When the response time of Answer Machine is 0 seconds, etc.
- Even when Chaku-moji is received, the transmission result may not appear on the sender's screen depending on signal conditions. In this case, the sender is charged for the transmission.
- When a call with Chaku-moji is received within the delay time set in Mute Ring Time Setting, the Chaku-moji is displayed and is recorded in the received call history. In this case, the sender is charged for the transmission.
- You cannot send or receive Chaku-moji when using the FOMA terminal overseas.
- You can use Call Option to make a call with Chaku-moji attached. ➡ P50

Showing/hiding your caller ID for each call

186/184

- The caller ID is your important information. Carefully consider whether to send your caller ID.
- The caller ID is displayed only when the other party's phone can display caller ID.

- 1 [1] [8] [6] (show) or [1] [8] [4] (hide) ▶ Enter the phone number ▶  (voice call) or  (videophone call)

INFORMATION

- For an international call, the caller ID may not be notified depending on the phone company that handles a call even if "186" is added.
- When you make a call by adding "186" or "184" to the other party's phone number, the phone number with "186" or "184" added is recorded in the redial data.
- Caller ID notification priority ●P40

Making calls by setting the conditions

Call Option

You can set the dialing conditions each time you make a call.

1 Enter the phone number ▶ 2

2 Set each item

Chaku-moji ●P49

Multi-No or Own number:

Select the number from which you are calling.

- Making calls by selecting a multi-number ●P350
- **Own number** appears when 2in1 is in the dual mode or B mode. In the dual mode, select **Number A** or **Number B**.

Call type:

Select a voice call or videophone call.

Caller ID:

- Set whether to show/hide caller ID.
- Caller ID notification priority ●P40

Prefix:

Select the number to be appended (Prefix ●P52) before the phone number.

Intn'l call:

Select whether to replace "+" with the international access code or country code set in Int'l Call Assist. ●P51

Intn'l prefix:

Select the international access code set in Int'l Call Assist.

Country code:

Select the country code set in Int'l Call Assist.

3

- When you select **V.phone** in **Call type**, press  and select **Chara-den** to be displayed during a videophone call. A videophone call is automatically made.
- When you set **Intn'l call** to **ON**, press  and select **Yes**. Press  and select **No, use original** to cancel other settings than the setting of Chaku-moji and call type and make a call.

INFORMATION

- On the list screen of redials, received calls, recorded messages, voice memos or Choku-den entries, details screen of Own Number, or member list screen of schedule:  ▶ **Call option**
When multiple phone numbers are registered for a Choku-den entry, press , select **Call option** and select a phone number.
- On the list/details screen of the FOMA terminal phonebook or UIM phonebook: Highlight a phone number ▶  ▶ **Mail/Call option** ▶ **Call option**
- For an international call, the caller ID may not be notified depending on the phone company that handles a call even when **Notify** is selected for **Caller ID**.

Using international calls

WORLD CALL

DoCoMo international call service
"WORLD CALL"

- The international call service "WORLD CALL" is available for DoCoMo mobile phones.
- Calling procedure:

0 0 9 1 3 0 ▶ 0 1 0 ▶
Enter the country code ▶ area code (city code) ▶ phone number ▶ 

- The above phone number can be registered in the FOMA terminal phonebook.
- When the area code begins with a zero (0), dial without the zero (when calling to a general subscriber phone and other phones in Italy, you need to dial the zero).
- You can call phones in about 240 countries and regions around the world.
- WORLD CALL charges are added to the FOMA service charges every month.

- No subscription charges or monthly fee is required.
 - You were subscribed to WORLD CALL as a standard service at the time of subscription to the FOMA service (unless you request not to subscribe to it).
- Changes in international call dialing procedure MY LINE service is not applicable to mobile phone communications, including WORLD CALL service. However, along with the introduction of MY LINE service, the dialing procedure for international calls using a mobile phone was changed. Consequently, the previous dialing procedure (without prefix "010") no longer be used.
- Contact "General Inquiries" on the back of this manual for details.
 - To use international call services other than the DoCoMo service, contact each carrier for details.
- This service cannot be used with some billing plans.

"International videophone" calls to parties using specific overseas 3G mobile phone terminals can be made by dialing as described above in the videophone mode.

- For the countries where the service is available and the details of overseas service providers, see the DoCoMo International Services website.
- The image of the other party displayed on the FOMA terminal may be distorted or connection may not be established depending on the terminal at the other end of the international videophone line.

Setting international calls

Int'l Call Assist

You can set whether to make an international call by replacing "+" which was entered at the beginning of a phone number with the international access code set in this setting, and whether to make a call from overseas by adding the country code. You can also register country codes and international access codes to make the calling operation easy.

Setting the auto-switch function

- 1 8 8 2 1 ▶ **Set each item**
▶

Country code:

Set whether to automatically add country code when calling from overseas.

- When *ON* is set, select a country code.

Intn'l prefix:

Set whether to automatically replace "+" with the international access code when calling from Japan.

- When *ON* is set, select an international access code.

Editing the country code

- You can register up to 22 country codes to use when making an international call.

- 1 8 8 2 2
- 2 **Highlight <Not recor...> or a registered item** ▶

■ Setting the country code to add:

Highlight an item ▶

✓ indicates the set country code.

■ Deleting: Highlight an item

▶ 3

▶ **Yes**

- When a registered item is deleted, it is replaced by <Not recor...>.

- 3 **Country name field** ▶ **Enter a name (up to 16 one-byte or 8 two-byte characters)**

- 4 **Country code field** ▶ **Enter a code (up to 5 digits)** ▶

Registering the international access code (International prefix)

- You can register up to 3 international access codes to add at the beginning of the phone number when making an international call.

- 1 8 8 2 3

2 Highlight <Not recorded> or a registered item ▶

- **Setting the international access code to replace “+”:** Highlight an item ▶
 - ✓ indicates the set international access code.

- **Deleting:** Highlight an item ▶
 - ▶ **Yes**
 - When a registered item is deleted, it is replaced by <Not recorded>.

3 Name field ▶ Enter a name (up to 16 one-byte or 8 two-byte characters)

4 Intn'l prefix No. field ▶ Enter a code (up to 10 digits) ▶

Using “+” to make an international call

- This operation is available when Intn'l Call Assist is set to ON.

1 (for over a second) ▶ Enter the country code ▶ area code (city code) ▶ phone number ▶

- To enter “+”: (for over a second)
- If you enter “81” (Japan) for the country code, “+” is not replaced by the international access code.

2 Yes

- To call without replacing “+”: *No, use original*

Using Call Option to make an international call

Select an international access code or country code registered with Int'l Call Assist.

1 Enter the area code (city code) ▶ phone number ▶

2 Intn'l call field ▶

3 Intn'l prefix field ▶ Highlight an international access code ▶

4 Country code field ▶ Highlight a country code ▶

5 ▶ Yes

- For calling procedures and setting items
 - ◀ P50

Setting prefix numbers to add to phone number

Prefix Dialing

By registering the number (prefix) such as an international access code, “184” or “186” to add to the beginning of the phone number in advance, you can easily add a prefix after entering the phone number. ▶ P50

1

2 Prefix1 to 3 field ▶ Enter a number (up to 10 digits) ▶

- Up to 3 prefix numbers can be registered.
- Do not include a pause or timed pause in the number (prefix). Otherwise, you cannot make a call by adding the prefix.

Making a call by specifying a sub-address

Sub Address

Specify a sub-address to call a specific phone or communication device.

- This setting is also used to select the contents in a video delivery service “V-live”.

Enabling use of a sub-address

1 ▶ or

Making a call by specifying a sub-address

- The sub-address needs to be set on the other party's phone or communication device.

1 Enter the phone number ▶ ▶ Enter the sub-address

- You can also enter “*” at the beginning of the phone number to connect to V-live or other numbers.

2 (voice call) or (videophone call)

INFORMATION

- Even when Sub Address is set to *ON*, if “*” is entered after entering a pause, timed pause or “#”, it is not recognized as a sub-address delimiter and sent as tone signals containing “* ”.

Setting the alarm indicating reconnection of interrupted call

Reconnect Alarm

Set an alarm to be heard at the time of reconnecting a voice or videophone call that was interrupted due to poor signal conditions when signal conditions improve.

- The other party hears no sound while signals are disrupted.
- The time until the call is reconnected depends on line usage or signal conditions. The approximate time is a maximum of 10 seconds.
- Note that the call is charged for the time until the call is reconnected (up to 10 seconds).
- The call may be cut off before the alarm sounds depending on line usage or signal conditions.

1 [MENU] [8] [1] [1] [6] [4] ▶ [1] - [3]

Suppressing ambient noises to improve the call quality

Noise Reduction

By suppressing ambient noises during a call, the other party can hear your voice clearly and you can also hear the other party's voice clearly.

- It is recommended that this function usually be set to *ON*.

1 [MENU] [8] [4] [7] ▶ [1] or [2]

Talking without using hands in a car

In-car Handsfree

You can make and receive voice calls from a handsfree compatible device such as the In-Car Hands-Free Kit 01 (optional) and car navigation system by connecting it to the FOMA terminal via USB.

- For operations of handsfree devices, refer to the instruction manual of each handsfree device. Note that the FOMA In-Car Hands-Free Cable 01 (optional) is required to use the In-Car Hands-Free Kit 01 (optional).

INFORMATION

- If the setting is made to play sounds from a handsfree device, the ring alert sounds from a handsfree device regardless of the Silent Mode setting or the ring alert settings on the FOMA terminal.
- When you make or receive a videophone call using a handsfree device, a substitute image is sent to the other party.
- The operation during incoming calls when Answer Machine is set follows the Answer Machine settings.

Receiving voice/videophone calls

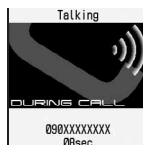
1 A call arrives

The ring alert sounds, the display light turns on and the keys light or flash.

2

The call duration is displayed.

Voice call



Talking screen

- You can also answer a voice call by pressing [1] - [9], [0], [*] or [#] (Any Key Answer).
 P55

Videophone call



Connecting screen



Talking screen

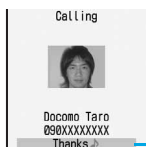
- You can also answer a videophone call by pressing .
- The other party's voice comes out of the speaker during a videophone call.

3 to end the call

Display information

The caller's information such as phone number, name, image and movie/i-motion will be displayed on the screen according to the dialing condition of the caller and your FOMA terminal settings.

■ When the caller notifies caller ID



Chaku-moji 

- Received Chaku-moji is recorded in the received call history.
- If the caller's phone number is not registered in the phonebook, the phone number is displayed. Also, the image set in Call Alert, Videophone Alert or other settings is displayed.
- If the caller's phone number is registered in the phonebook, the name and phone number are displayed according to Receive Display. When Contact Image is set to *ON*, the image or movie/i-motion set in the phonebook is also displayed.
- Priority of incoming images 

■ When the caller does not notify caller ID

The reason why no caller ID is sent is displayed.



Reason for no caller ID	Description
<i>User Unset</i>	The caller selected not to send the caller ID.
<i>PublicPhone</i>	The call was made from a payphone, etc.
<i>Unavailable</i>	The call was made from a party who cannot send caller ID, such as a call from overseas or from a general subscriber phone via forwarding service (however, caller ID may be displayed depending on the phone company that handles a call).

Operations available from the submenu while receiving a call

Submenu	Description
① <i>Call Rejection</i>	Disconnects the call (the caller is not charged for the call).
② <i>Voice Mail (V-phone answerphone)*1</i>	Connects the incoming call to the Voice Mail Service Center.
③ <i>Call Forwarding*2</i>	Forwards the incoming call to the forwarding phone number.

*1 Available when you subscribe to Voice Mail Service.

*2 Available when you subscribe to Call Forwarding Service and set the forwarding phone number.

- If you set *Arrival call act* to *Answer*, the same operations are available from the submenu when there is another incoming voice call during a voice call.

When you hear beeps (call waiting ring tone) during a voice call

If you subscribe to Voice Mail Service, Call Waiting Service or Call Forwarding Service, you will hear beeps (call waiting ring tone) when you receive another incoming voice call during a voice call and can perform the following operations:

Service	Operation
Voice Mail Service*1	Connects the second call to the Voice Mail Service Center.
Call Waiting Service	Puts the current call on hold and answers the second call. ➡P345
Call Forwarding Service*1	Forwards the second call to the forwarding phone number.

*1 Available from the submenu when *Arrival call act* is set to *Answer*.

- If Call Waiting Service is not subscribed, you cannot answer the call even if you hear the call waiting ring tone.

INFORMATION

- When a call forwarded from a FOMA terminal arrives, the phone number from which the call was forwarded is displayed if it is not registered in the phonebook. If it is registered, the name is displayed. However, the phone number or name may not be displayed depending on the forwarding source.
- When you receive an international call, a plus sign (+) appears at the beginning of the caller ID.
- For calls received from callers not registered in the phonebook, you can set to reject calls (➡P118) or not to start immediately the ring alert and vibrator ringer action (➡P118).
- Call rejection can be set for some parties registered in the phonebook. ➡P116
- Even if Call Forwarding Service is activated, an incoming videophone call is not connected if the forwarding destination phone does not comply with the 3G-324M. Before setting a forwarding destination, be sure to check the specifications of the destination phone.

Receiving the request for switching between a voice call and videophone call

- The switching operation can be performed from the calling terminal but not from the called terminal.
- To receive the request for switching the call, set **Indication ON** of Notify Switchable Mode in advance. ➡P65

Example

Receiving the request for switching from voice call to videophone call

1 Receive the request for switching to a videophone call during a voice call



The call is switched to a videophone call and the substitute image (camera-off image) is sent to the other party.

- A guidance informing that the call is being switched is heard during switching.

■ Receiving the request for switching to a voice call during a videophone call: The call is automatically switched to a voice call

Enabling use of dial keys to answer a call

Any Key Answer

Allows you to answer a call by pressing **[1]** - **[9]**, **[0]**, **[*]** or **#**.

- This function is available only for voice calls. However, it is unavailable when receiving a call while talking.

1 [MENU] [8] [4] [3] ▶ [1] or [2]

Adjusting the volume of the other party's voice during a call

Listen Volume

- The volume of the other party's voice can be adjusted from level 1 (lowest volume) to level 6 (highest volume).
- The volume changed while talking is retained even after the call is ended or the power is turned off.

1 during a call ▶ to adjust the volume

The volume is set automatically by pressing or waiting for a while after you stop key operations.

- To turn up the volume: or
- To turn down the volume: or
- To adjust the volume during a videophone call:

INFORMATION

- For adjusting the earpiece volume in standby and for sound settings affected by Listen Volume

Adjusting the ring alert volume while receiving a call

Ring Alert Volume

- The volume can be adjusted in 7 levels, from **SILENT** to level 1 to level 6 (the volume of Movie ringtone can also be adjusted in 7 levels).
- The ring volume changed while receiving a call is reset to the original volume when a call is ended.

1 while receiving a call ▶ to adjust the volume

The volume is set automatically by pressing or waiting for a while after you stop key operations.

- To turn up the volume: or
- To turn down the volume: or

INFORMATION

- To stop the ring alert and vibrator: or while receiving a call
- While receiving a call, the ring volume cannot be set to **STEPTONE** (the volume changes in the order of **SILENT** → level 1 → ... → level 6 about every 3 seconds).
- For adjusting the ring alert volume in standby and for sound settings affected by Ring Alert Volume

Setting the priority of incoming screens during a call or packet communication

Priority Comm Mode

Set the priority of the screen to be displayed when you receive a packet communication through a connected PC during a voice call or you receive a voice call during i-mode.

- When an i-mode mail or Message R/F is received during a voice call, the voice call talking screen appears by priority regardless of this setting.
- The screen switching caused by this function does not interrupt the call or packet communication.

1 8 4 6 1 ▶ 1 - 3

No Set Up: Displays the screen for the latest incoming call or communication without setting the priority. However, when you receive packet communication during a voice call, the voice call talking screen remains displayed.

Voice call: Displays the voice call talking screen by priority.

Packet: Displays the packet communication screen during a voice call, and the i-mode communication screen during i-mode.

Putting incoming calls on hold when you cannot answer right away

Response and Hold

- Callers are charged for the time spent on hold.

1 while receiving a call



Incoming voice call on hold



Incoming videophone call on hold

The incoming call is put on hold (Response and Hold). The other party hears the response hold guidance. For videophone calls, the response hold image appears on your and the other party's terminals.

- If  is pressed or the other party hangs up during Response and Hold, the call is disconnected.

2 when you are ready to answer the call

- Press  or  to answer a videophone call and send the substitute image (P65) to the other party.

INFORMATION

- When you subscribe to Voice Mail Service or Call Forwarding Service, you can use the service by pressing  and selecting *Voice Mail (V-phone answerphone)* or *Call Forwarding* while receiving a call.

Setting the response hold guidance

Status Message

You can record your own voice as response hold guidance.

- One guidance can be recorded for up to 10 seconds.

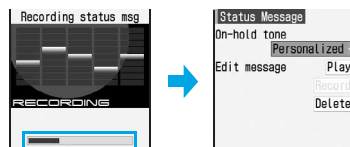
Example Setting a recorded guidance

1        **On-hold tone field**

2 

- To reset to the default guidance:   Go to Step 4

3 **Record ▶ Record a response hold guidance after a tone (beep)**



Indication of the allowable recording time

Recording will start after a message appears.

- An end tone (beep) sounds in about 10 seconds from the start of recording.
- To stop recording: 
- To check the recorded guidance: *Play*
- To record again: *Delete ▶ Yes ▶ Record*

4

INFORMATION

- If you delete the recorded guidance, the default guidance is restored.
- When *Standard* is set, the guidance "I cannot answer the phone right now. Please wait or call again later (in Japanese)" is sent to the other party.

Setting the on-hold tone

On-hold Tone

1         - 


- To play a melody: Highlight a melody 

Using Public mode (Driving mode)

Public mode (Driving mode)

Public mode is an automatic answering service considering etiquette in highly public places. When you activate Public mode and then receive a call, a guidance is played informing the caller that you cannot answer the call because you are driving or in an area (train, bus, movie theater, etc.) where you should refrain from using your mobile phone. Then the call is disconnected.

- Public mode can be activated/canceled only in standby (including when  (outside service area) is displayed on the screen).
- Even in Public mode you can make calls as usual.
- This function is not available during data communication.

Activating Public mode (Driving mode)

1  (for over a second)

Public mode is activated and  appears on the standby display.

When a call is received, a guidance is played saying "The person you are calling is currently driving or in an area where cellphone should not be used. Please try again later".

- When Silent Mode is activated at the same time, Public mode takes precedence.

■ **Canceling:** (for over a second)

■ When Public mode (Driving mode) is activated

No ring alert plays when your FOMA terminal receives a call. 1 appears on the standby display and the call is recorded in the received call history.

The caller hears a guidance informing that you are driving or in an area where use of the mobile phone should be refrained from and the call is then ended.

- For the operations of the FOMA terminal when receiving incoming calls in Public mode (Driving mode) with network service activated, see the Table 1 (●P59).

INFORMATION

- In Public mode, the following sounds are disabled. In addition, the vibrator does not operate or the keys do not light or flash for incoming calls, mails, etc.
 - Ring alert
 - Alarm clock sound
 - Schedule alarm
 - Low battery alert
 - Timer alarm
 - i-appli sound
 - Charge alert
 - Alarm for Call Cost Limit (Even if Call Cost Limit is set to *ON* and an alarm is set, a message is not displayed.)
- In Public mode, neither the i-Channel ticker nor Chaku-moji appears on the standby display.
- Even if a mail or Message R/F is received, the receiving screen and reception result screen do not appear. But, when Check i-mode Message is performed, these screens appear.
- Making emergency calls (110, 119 or 118) in Public mode cancels Public mode. However, it is not canceled when emergency calls are made using videophone.

Using Public mode (power off)

Public mode (power off)

Public mode (power off) is an automatic answering service considering etiquettes in highly public places. When you set Public mode (power off) and then receive a call with the terminal turned off, a guidance is played informing the caller that you cannot answer the call because you are in an area (hospital, airplane, priority seat area on a train, etc.) where you should turn off the mobile phone. Then the call is disconnected.

Activating Public mode (power off)

1 2 5 2 5 1

Public mode (power off) is set. There will be no change on the standby display.

When you subsequently turn the power off, Public mode (power off) is activated.

In Public mode (power off) if a call is received with the FOMA terminal off, a guidance is played saying "The person you are calling is currently in an area where use is prohibited. Please try again later".

■ **Canceling:** 2 5 2 5 0

■ **Checking the setting:** 2 5 2 5 9

■ When Public mode (power off) is activated

The setting is retained until Public mode (power off) is canceled by dialing "※ 25250".

The setting is not canceled by turning the power on.

The Public mode (power off) guidance is played even in locations outside the service area or where radio waves are hard to reach.

The caller hears a guidance informing that you are in an area where the phone should be turned off and the call is then ended.

- For the operations of the FOMA terminal when receiving incoming calls in Public mode (power off) with network service activated, see the following table.

■ [Table 1] Incoming operations in Public mode (Driving mode/power off) with network service activated

- Voice Mail Service

Receiving voice calls	Receiving videophone calls
The caller hears the Public mode guidance and the call is then connected to the Voice Mail Service Center.*1	The call is connected to the Voice Mail Service Center without the Public mode video guidance.

- Call Forwarding Service

Receiving voice calls	Receiving videophone calls
The caller hears the Public mode guidance and the call is then forwarded to the specified destination.*1 Whether the caller hears the guidance or not depends on the setting for Call Forwarding Service.	The call is forwarded to the specified destination without the Public mode video guidance. If the destination party uses the phone not compatible with videophone, the call is disconnected.

- Nuisance Call Blocking Service

Receiving voice calls	Receiving videophone calls
If registered as nuisance caller, the caller hears a guidance indicating that the call cannot be connected and the call is then disconnected.	If registered as nuisance caller, the caller sees a video guidance indicating that the call cannot be connected and the call is then disconnected.

- Caller ID Request Service

Receiving voice calls	Receiving videophone calls
• The caller who does not notify the caller ID hears a guidance requesting caller ID and the call is then disconnected. • The caller who notifies the caller ID hears the Public mode guidance and the call is then disconnected.	• The caller who does not notify the caller ID sees a video guidance requesting caller ID and the call is then disconnected. • The caller who notifies the caller ID sees the Public mode video guidance and the call is then disconnected.

*1 If the ringing time is 0 seconds, the Public mode guidance is not played.

Allowing the caller to leave message when you cannot answer the call

Answer Machine

By setting Answer Machine, you can play the greeting message and record the caller's message when you cannot answer the call.

- Up to 4 messages can be recorded for voice and videophone calls in total, a maximum of about 30 seconds for each.
- When the 2in1 service is subscribed, up to 4 messages received with Number A and Number B in total can be recorded.
- For voice calls, the caller's voice is recorded. For videophone calls, the caller's voice and image are recorded.

Setting Answer Machine

- 1   
 appears on the standby display.
 **Canceling:**   

Replying with Quick Record Message

When Answer Machine has not been set to start, you can activate this function only once by holding down  for over a second while receiving a call. This operation does not set Answer Machine to start.

INFORMATION

- When the number of recorded messages reaches 4,  appears on the standby display. The icon remains on the screen even if Answer Machine is canceled.
- If there are already 4 recorded messages, Answer Machine cannot be set. If you attempt to activate Quick Record Message while receiving a call, the warning tone (rapid beeps) sounds and the ring alert keeps sounding. Delete unnecessary recorded messages and set again.

Receiving a call while Answer Machine is set

1 A call arrives

After the ring alert sounds according to Response Time Setting, the greeting message screen appears.

- When the greeting message is set to **Preinstalled**, the caller hears the guidance "I cannot answer the phone right now, please leave your name and message after the beep (in Japanese)". Set the greeting message to **Personalized** to play a recorded guidance.

2 Record the caller's message



Recording a voice call message

Recording a videophone call message

- A beep announces the caller the start and end of the recording. And when about 25 seconds have elapsed since the start of recording, rapid beeps sound to indicate that the end of recording is approaching.

3 When the recording is completed, the call is disconnected

appears on the standby display.

INFORMATION

- When the FOMA terminal is turned off or outside the service area, Answer Machine does not operate. Use Voice Mail Service (pay service).
- Answer Machine does not operate and the ring alert keeps sounding when 4 messages have already been recorded. If Voice Mail Service or Call Forwarding Service is activated, each service starts its operation.
- Public mode (Driving mode) takes precedence over Answer Machine. In Public mode (Driving mode), Answer Machine does not operate.
- The recording may be disrupted or the image may be distorted if the signal conditions are poor.
- Another call received while playing the greeting or recording a message is rejected and playing or recording continues. If Voice Mail Service, Call Forwarding Service or Call Waiting Service is subscribed, the rejected incoming call is recorded in the received call history.
- You can answer a call even while playing the greeting or recording a message.
 - To answer a voice call:
 - To answer a videophone call: or (to send the substitute image)

If you answer the call, the content recorded up to that point is not saved.

Setting the response time until the greeting starts

Response Time Setting

- The default is 13 seconds.

1 1 3 Enter the response time (0 to 120 seconds)

- To increase or decrease the time:

INFORMATION

- When Auto Answer, Voice Mail Service or Call Forwarding Service and this function are set simultaneously, the priority depends on the ringing time set for each service and function. To give priority to Answer Machine, the response time for this function should be set shorter than the ringing times set for Auto Answer, Voice Mail Service and Call Forwarding Service. Note that Answer Machine may not be given priority depending on the signal conditions. In this case, answer a call with Quick Record Message.
- The delayed time of Auto Answer and the response time of Answer Machine cannot be set to the same time period.

Setting the greeting message

Greeting Message Setting

You can record your own voice as greeting message.

- One message can be recorded for up to 10 seconds.

Example Setting a recorded greeting

1 1 4 Greeting message field

2

- To reset to the default guidance: Go to Step 4

3 Record Record a greeting message after a tone (beep)

- Follow Step 3 in "Setting the response hold guidance".

4

INFORMATION

- If you delete the recorded greeting, the default greeting is restored.

Playing recorded messages

You can play or delete recorded messages from the list.

1 2

2 Highlight a recorded message to play



Indication of the playing time

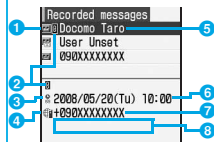
Playing a voice call message

• During playback, the following operations can be performed:

- : Adjust volume
- : Stop
- : Speakerphone on/off (for voice call messages only)

3 Yes or No

Recorded message list screen and available operations



- 1 Status icon (unplayed/played)
 / : Voice call message
 / : Videophone call message
- 2 Call received with Number B (in the dual mode of 2in1)
- 3 Call received during stay overseas*1
- 4 International call
- 5 Phone number/Name (when registered in the phonebook)/Reason for no caller ID
- 6 Recording date and time of highlighted message (local date and time if recorded during stay overseas)
- 7 Phone number/Reason for no caller ID
- 8 Name of multi-number (when the Multi Number service is subscribed)

*1 May not be displayed if the time zone is set to **GMT+09:00** or the date and time of the message has not been recorded.

Deleting:

① Highlight a recorded message

 2 1

- To delete all:  2 2  Enter the terminal security code

② Yes

Registering an entry in the phonebook:

① Highlight a recorded message 4

- To add to an existing phonebook entry:
Highlight a recorded message   5

② 1 or 2 Register the name or mail address

- To add to the existing phonebook entry:
 or   Highlight a party   Edit the data

Making a call: Highlight a recorded message (voice call) or (videophone call)

Using Chara-den

A character can be sent instead of your image when making a videophone call.

1 3 2 1 during a call Highlight a folder Highlight a Chara-den image



Chara-den

- If you press dial keys while sending Chara-den, the character performs the action corresponding to the key pressed. The following operations can also be performed:
: Cancel action
: Display the action list
• Selecting an action moves the character.
 (for over a second):
Switch action modes (Action/Action of parts)

INFORMATION

- Some Chara-den images have either full actions or parts actions or have no actions at all.

Setting images being sent to the other party

Change the image being sent to the other party.

Switching outgoing images

1 during a call

Camera image

- Each press switches the image between the substitute image ( or ) and camera image ().  P65

- When Chara-den is set as the substitute image, *Default image* of the substitute image setting may be sent to the other party instead of the Chara-den.  P65
- To shoot an object from a very short distance while sending the camera image, switch to the macro mode.  P132

Setting the quality of outgoing and incoming images

- The default is *Normal*.
- Setting *Prefer motion spd* makes motions smoother in a little lower-definition image.
- Setting *Prefer img qual* makes motions a little slower in a higher-definition image.

1 during a call or - Setting a frame on outgoing images Frame

You can overlay a frame on the camera image being sent.

- Only the frame with the display size of 176 x 144 or smaller can be selected. As for downloaded frames, only the frame with the display size of 176 x 144 can be selected.

1 during a call Highlight a frame 

- To cancel sending the frame: 

Applying special effects to outgoing images

Scene Mode/Effect

You can apply the following effects to the camera image being sent.

- Full auto* (default)
 - Adjust backlight*
 - Spot photometry*
 - Scenery*
 - Night*
 - Twilight*
 - Surf&Snow*
 - Sport*
 - Pet*
 - Gourmet*
 - Letter*
 - Whiten*
 - Suntan*
 - Soft touch*
 - Mono tone (red)*
 - Mono tone (green)*
 - Mono tone (blue)*
 - Monochrome*
 - Sepia*
- For details of scene modes/effects  P133

1 during a call Highlight the scene mode/effect 

Current effect applied

Adjusting the brightness/color density/flicker of outgoing images Camera Setting

You can adjust the brightness and color density of the camera image being sent. Also, you may be able to control the flicker of images, if it occurs, by making settings according to the power supply frequency in your area.

- The brightness and color density may not be changed depending on the settings of Scene Mode/Effect.

- The settings are retained even after the call is finished.
- The defaults are as follows: level 3 for brightness and color density and *Auto* for flicker adjustment.

1 [MENU] 2 during a call ▶ Select an item

■ Adjusting brightness and color density:



① [2] ▶ Highlight the brightness slider ▶

② to highlight the color density slider ▶

- The camera image is displayed on the main screen while adjusting.
- If you do nothing on the terminal for some time after changing the slider's position, the settings are not changed and the talking screen reappears.

■ Adjusting flicker: [3] ▶ [1] - [3]

INFORMATION

- The flicker adjustment settings for the camera and Bar Code Reader will reflect changes in this setting. ▶P136, P140

Sending the still image/camera-off image

Send a still image or the image displayed as *Camera off* (camera-off image).

- This setting is not available while a frame is being sent. ▶P62
- Only the still image that is 176 x 144 or smaller and is permitted to output from the FOMA terminal can be set.

1 [MENU] 3 during a call ▶ Select an item

■ Sending the camera-off image: [3]

When you set the camera-off image, the substitute image set in Videophone Image Setting is sent. However, if the substitute image is set to *Chara-den*, *Default image* (camera-off image) is sent.

■ Sending a still image:



① [4] ▶ Highlight a folder ▶

② Highlight a still image ▶

- To view a still image: Highlight a still image ▶
- To send the previous image: while sending a still image

Switching display magnifications

Zoom

- This setting is available only while the camera image is being sent.

1 during a call

- Each press of switches the magnification of image as follows. Press to switch in the reverse order. Normal (default) → 2 times → 4 times

Customizing the screen settings during a videophone call

- The settings are retained even after the call is finished.

Switching between the main screen and sub screen

1 during a call

- Each press switches the images on the main screen and sub screen by turns.

Main:	other party's image	↔	Main:	your image
Sub:	your image (default)		Sub:	other party's image

Changing the main screen size

1 during a call (for over a second)

- Each press switches the screen size in the following order: large (default) → standard → small → large →...

Setting the screen displayed during a call

- The defaults are as follows: *Both sides* for *Display setting*, *My side* for *Sub screen*, *Large* for *Screen size* and *Always on(normal)* for *Display light*.

1 [MENU] 5 during a call ▶ Set each item ▶



- For setting each item (*Display setting*, *Sub screen*, *Screen size* and *Display light*), see “Changing the videophone settings”.
▶P64

Changing the videophone settings

Videophone Settings

Set the operation to be performed when a videophone call is not connected, the screen to be displayed during a videophone call, etc.

- The setting of *Auto redial as voice* ensures access to the other party. By setting this function to *ON*, a dialed videophone call will be automatically redialed as voice call if the other party's terminal does not support the videophone function or cannot receive the videophone call while using the mova service through Dual Network Service. Redialing may not occur, however, if you call an ISDN-synchronized 64K or PIAFS access point, or an ISDN videophone incompatible with 3G-324M (as of December 2007), or if you dial the wrong number. Note that some calls may require the call charge.

1 [MENU] 8 5 1 3 ▶ Set each item ▶

*Auto redial as voice:*

Sets whether to redial as voice call automatically when a videophone call is not connected.

Display setting:

Specifies whether to display either your image or the other party's image or both images.

Sub screen:

Specifies whether to display your image or the other party's image on the sub screen.

Screen size:

Sets the main screen view size.

Visual preference:

Sets the quality of image sent from the other party.

Display light:

Sets the display light during a videophone call.

Terminal settings: Follows the setting of *Display light time (Normal use)* in Display Light Setting.

Speakerphone:

Specifies whether to turn on/off the speakerphone when a videophone call is connected.

INFORMATION

- Even when *Auto redial as voice* is set to *ON*, redialing may not be performed depending on the situation of the other party or the network.
- When *Auto redial as voice* is set to *ON*, if you make a videophone call during a packet communication with a PC connected, the call is redialed as voice call without connecting to the videophone. During a voice call or 64K data communication, the call is not connected to the videophone and redialing is not performed, either.
- If redialing as voice call occurs with *Auto redial as voice* set to *ON*, voice call charges apply instead of digital communication charges.
- When you talk by videophone while the Flat-plug Earphone/Microphone with Switch (optional) is connected, the voice sounds from the connected earphone/microphone regardless of the setting of *Speakerphone*.
- If a videophone call is made to emergency numbers (110, 119 or 118) from the FOMA terminal when *Auto redial as voice* is set to *ON*, the call is automatically switched to a voice call.

Setting the substitute and on-hold images

Videophone Image Setting

Change the images to be sent to the other party during a videophone call such as the substitute image, answer machine image, response hold image, on-hold image and movie memo image.

- You cannot set the following images:
 - Still image with a size larger than 176 x 144
 - Still image in the format other than JPEG and GIF
 - Animation and created animation
 - Image not permitted to output from the FOMA terminal

Setting the substitute image

Example Setting the default Chara-den

1 [MENU] 8 5 1 5 ▶ 1

2 Image field ▶ 1 ▶



Default Chara-den
(Boy) is set.

Chara-den

■ Setting Default image (camera-off image): 2

■ Setting other Chara-den:

① 3 ▶ List images field ▶ Highlight a folder ▶

② Highlight a Chara-den image ▶

- To display Chara-den: Highlight a Chara-den image ▶

■ Setting other still images:

① 4 ▶ List images field ▶ Highlight a folder ▶

② Highlight a still image ▶

- To display a still image: Highlight a still image ▶
- The selected image with the text message on it appears on the other party's terminal.

Changing the answer machine/response hold/on-hold/movie memo images

Example Setting the default image

1 [MENU] 8 5 1 5 ▶ 2 - 5

2 Image field ▶ 1 ▶



In case of the answer machine image

■ Setting other still images:

① 2 ▶ List images field ▶ Highlight a folder ▶

② Highlight a still image ▶

- To display a still image: Highlight a still image ▶
- The selected image with the text message on it appears on the other party's terminal.

INFORMATION

- If the Chara-den set as the substitute image is deleted, the substitute image is reset to **Default Chara-den**. If you delete the still image or the default Chara-den that has been set, the substitute image is reset to **Default image**.

Setting of switching between a voice call and videophone call

Notify Switchable Mode

Set whether to notify the other party's terminal that your terminal can switch between a voice call and a videophone call.

- You cannot change the setting during a voice call or videophone call.
- This setting cannot be made outside the service area. Operate the terminal in locations with good signal condition.
- **Indication ON** is set at the time of subscription.

1 [MENU] 8 5 1 7 1

■ Deactivating: [MENU] 8 5 1 7 2

■ Checking the current setting:

[MENU] 8 5 1 7 3

2 Yes

Setting how incoming videophone calls are handled during i-mode

Data Session Arrival Act

Set how to handle incoming videophone calls received during i-mode packet communication.

1 [MENU] 8 5 1 4 ▶ 1 - 4

V.phone priority: Disconnects the current packet communication when the call is answered.

Packet DL priority: Rejects an incoming videophone call and continues the packet communication.

V.phone answerphone: Connects an incoming videophone call to the Voice Mail Service Center.

Call forwarding: Forwards an incoming videophone call to the forwarding phone number.

INFORMATION

- Without subscription to Voice Mail Service or Call Forwarding Service, even if you set *V.phone answerphone* or *Call forwarding*, the action of *Packet DL priority* takes place.
- If Voice Mail Service or Call Forwarding Service is activated and the ringing time for each service is 0 seconds, either service starts its operation, regardless of this setting. Incoming calls are not recorded in the received call history.

Using the videophone by connecting to an external device

External Device

By connecting the FOMA terminal to an external device such as PC by the FOMA USB Cable with Charge Function 01 (optional), you can make and receive videophone calls from the external device.

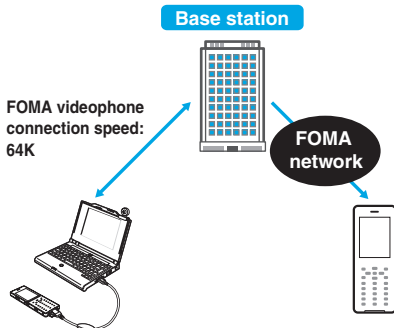
To use this function, install a videophone application in a dedicated external device or a PC, and prepare devices such as an earphone/microphone or USB-compatible Web camera (available in market).

- This function is not available when the FOMA terminal is not connected to an external device.
- Refer to the instruction manual of external devices for hardware/software requirements or setting and operating instructions of videophone applications.

- The application called “ドコモテレビ電話ソフト (DoCoMo videophone software)” that is compatible with this function is available on the DoCoMo videophone software website. Visit the site below and download it (visit the support website for details of the environment for usage on PC):

<http://videophonesoft.nttdocomo.co.jp/>

(in Japanese only)



1

MENU 8 5 1 6 1 or 2

INFORMATION

- A videophone call cannot be made from an external device during a voice call.
- When you subscribe to Call Waiting Service, if a videophone call is received through an external device during a voice call, it is recorded as a missed call in the received call history. The same applies when a voice call, videophone call or 64K data communication is received during a videophone call using an external device.

Phonebook

Phonebooks supported by the FOMA terminal	68
Registering entries into the FOMA terminal phonebook	Phonebook New Entry 69
Registering entries into the UIM phonebook	UIM Phonebook New Entry 71
Setting group names and incoming/outgoing actions	Group Setting 71
Making calls from the phonebook	Phonebook Search 72
Editing phonebook entries	Edit Phonebook 77
Copying phonebook entries	78
Deleting phonebook entries	Delete Phonebook 79
Setting functions for phonebook entries	79
Protecting the secret phonebook entries	Secret Attribute 80
Checking the number of registered phonebook entries	Check No. of Items 80
Using simple dialing to make calls	Quick Dial 81
Using Data Security Service	Data Security Service 81
Using Choku-den to make a call or send a mail	Choku-den 82

Phonebooks supported by the FOMA terminal

FOMA D705iμ supports the FOMA terminal phonebook and the UIM phonebook.

- The items that can be registered in the FOMA terminal phonebook and the UIM phonebook are as follows:

Item	FOMA terminal phonebook	UIM phonebook
Phonebook No.	0 to 999 can be set.	Unavailable
Name/reading	Up to 32 one-byte or 16 two-byte characters for a name and up to 32 one-byte characters for a reading can be set.	Up to 21 one-byte or 10 two-byte characters for a name and up to 25 one-byte or 12 two-byte characters for a reading can be set.
Image/movie	1 item per person	Unavailable
Group	Entries can be classified into 30 groups and グループなし (No group).	Entries can be classified into 10 groups and グループなし.
Phone number/icon	Up to 5 phone numbers per person, 3,005 in total*1 can be set. An icon can be set for each.	Only 1 phone number can be set per person. Icons cannot be set.
Mail address/icon	Up to 5 mail addresses per person, 3,005 in total*1 can be set. An icon can be set for each.	Only 1 mail address can be set per person. Icons cannot be set.
Other settings	Birthday, note, postal code/address, company name, job title and URL can be set.	Unavailable

*1 The number of phonebook entries that can be registered may decrease depending on the entry items.

- Even if you set your UIM to other FOMA terminals, the phonebook data in the UIM can be used.
- For details on 2in1, refer to "2in1". ◀P350

Name displays

If a call is made/received to/from a party registered in the FOMA terminal phonebook or UIM phonebook, the name and the phone number registered in the phonebook appear on the screen while dialing, calling, talking or receiving a call. However, for incoming calls, the display follows the settings of Receive Display. In addition, the name registered in the phonebook is also displayed in the redial data, received call history, recorded messages, talking voice memo senders of received mail, receivers of sent/unsent mail, custom menu's person, etc. It is also displayed when you enter the phone number or mail address without searching the phonebook.

- When phonebook entries of different names with the same phone number or mail address are registered in both phonebooks, the name registered in the FOMA terminal phonebook is displayed.
- In case some different names are registered for the same phone number or mail address in the FOMA terminal phonebook, the name registered first is displayed.
- When a mail is received, if the mail address including @ and the following domain name exactly matches a mail address registered in the phonebook, the settings of the phonebook are applied and the name registered in the phonebook is displayed. When a sender uses an i-mode terminal even if the mail address is registered in the phonebook without the domain name "@docomo.ne.jp", the settings of the phonebook are applied and the name registered in the phonebook is displayed. When the mail address is "mobile phone number@docomo.ne.jp", register in the phonebook without "@docomo.ne.jp".
- When SMS is received and the phone number exactly matches a phone number registered in the phonebook, the settings of phonebook is applied.

- If there is an incoming mail from the other party registered in the phonebook, the name registered in the phonebook is displayed as a reception result ticker. If mail is received from the other party with Secret Attribute set while Secret Mode is off, the mail address is displayed instead of the name.

Registering entries into the FOMA terminal phonebook

Phonebook New Entry

- Maximum number of items that can be registered $\blacktriangleleft$ P416
- Please be informed that if you copy the data registered in the FOMA terminal to a new terminal at a DoCoMo Shop when switching to a new model, etc., the specifications of some new models may not allow copying of the data.

1   

- You can perform the same operation by pressing   on the phonebook list.

2 Enter the name (up to 32 one-byte or 16 two-byte characters)

Enter name
Enter name
Docomo Taro

3 Set each item

New entry	1/2
No. 000	
Docomo Taro	
Docomotaro	
[Select/Shoot image]	
グループなし	
[Phone number]	
[Mail address]	
[Birthday]	

Phonebook No.,
name and reading

Phonebook No.:

The lowest available phonebook No. is assigned automatically.

■ Changing the phonebook No.: Phonebook No. field Enter a number (0 to 999)

- When a phonebook No. already registered is specified, a confirmation screen appears. Select **Overwrite** to overwrite or **New entry** to avoid it, specify any other phonebook No.
- Zeroes before single- or double-digit phonebook No. can be omitted.

Name:

Check the entered name.

■ Correcting the name: Name field Correct the name

Reading:

Check the entered reading.

■ Correcting the reading: Reading field Correct the reading (up to 32 one-byte characters)

- If you correct a name, the reading of the name will not be corrected automatically.

Select/Shoot image:

Set an image or a movie/i-motion file that is displayed when a call is made/received or the phonebook data is checked.

■ Setting an image: Highlight an image

- If selecting an image whose size exceeds 640 x 480 for a phonebook entry, a confirmation screen appears. Selecting **Yes** sets the image reduced to less than 96 x 72 (for phonebook).
- When a call is made or received or the phonebook data is checked, for animation, the playing image is displayed and for created animation, the first frame is displayed.

■ Shooting a still image: Shoot a still image

- The size of the still image is set to 96 x 72 (for phonebook) automatically.

Setting movie/i-motion: [3] ▶

Highlight a folder ▶ **Highlight a movie/i-motion file** ▶

- You can set movie/i-motion only with images.
- Playing and checking a movie/i-motion file when selecting
- When a call is made, the first frame of the movie/i-motion is displayed.

Shooting a movie: [4] ▶ Shoot a movie ▶

- The size of the movie is set to 176 x 144 (QCIF) automatically. Sounds are not recorded.

Deleting an image or a movie/i-motion file: [5]

Group:

Select a group. *グループなし* (No group) is set by default.

Group Setting

Adding a group: Group field ▶

▶ Enter the name of the group (up to 20 one-byte or 10 two-byte characters) ▶

- Other than *グループなし*, up to 30 groups can be registered.

Phone number:

Enter a phone number including the area code (up to 26 digits) and select an icon.

- Up to 5 phone numbers per person can be registered. Saving the first phone number displays items to be added.
- Pause (P), timed pause (T), “+”, “#” and sub-address delimiter (✕) can be registered.
- Registering with preceding “184” or “186” does not allow sending of SMS even if it is selected as the address.

Mail address:

Up to 50 one-byte characters can be entered. Select an icon.

- Up to 5 addresses per person can be registered. Saving the first mail address displays items to be added.
- When the other party has registered a secret code

Birthday:

Set *Set birthday* to *ON* and enter the birthday in the *Birthday* field.

Note:

Up to 200 one-byte or 100 two-byte characters can be entered.

PostalCode/Address:

Up to 7 digits can be entered for postal code. And up to 200 one-byte or 100 two-byte characters can be entered for address.

Company name:

Up to 100 one-byte or 50 two-byte characters can be entered.

Job title:

Up to 100 one-byte or 50 two-byte characters can be entered.

URL:

Up to 256 one-byte characters can be entered.

INFORMATION

- For the phonebook entries registered in the B mode of 2in1, Phonebook 2in1 Setting is set to *B*; for the entries registered in other 2in1 modes, Phonebook 2in1 Setting is set to *A*.
- In the A mode of 2in1, phonebook entries with *B* of Phonebook 2in1 Setting are not displayed. Similarly in the B mode, phonebook entries with *A* of Phonebook 2in1 Setting are not displayed.

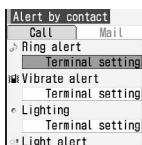
Setting the incoming actions for each phonebook entry

Alert by Contact

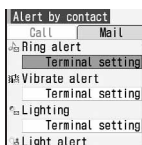
1 Search the phonebook ▶ Highlight a party ▶ [3] [2]

- Searching methods of the phonebook

2 to display the setting screen ▶ Set each item ▶



Call



Mail

- When the group is set to *グループなし*, each item is set to *Terminal setting*. If you select a group, the videophone substitute image is set to *Terminal setting* and the other items are set to *Group setting*.

- To play and check a melody or movie/i-motion file when selecting **P86**

Ring alert:

Select **Movie ringtone**, **Melody** or **Music** to set a ring alert. To set music data **P86**

Terminal setting: Operates as set in Sound Setting.

- Movie/i-motion and music data with the ring alert setting of the detail information specified to **Available** can be set as ring alert.

Vibrate alert:

Select **Select** to set the vibrator for incoming calls/emails.

Terminal setting: Operates as set in Vibrator Setting.

Lighting:

Select **Select** to set whether to light the keys for incoming calls/emails.

Terminal setting: Operates as set in Light Alert Setting.

Light alert:

Select **Select** to set the lighting pattern of the keys for incoming calls/emails.

Terminal setting: Operates as set in Light Alert Setting.

Substitute image (only for the setting screen for calls):

Select **Select** to set Chara-den (**P261**) displayed during a call.

Terminal setting: Operates as set in Videophone Image Setting.

Registering entries into the UIM phonebook

UIM Phonebook New Entry

- Maximum number of items that can be registered **P416**

1 [MENU] 4 3

- To perform the same operation, press [MENU] 2 on the UIM phonebook list.

2 Enter the name (up to 21 one-byte or 10 two-byte characters) ▶ [OK]

Enter name
Enter name
Docomo Taro

- When both one-byte and two-byte characters or one-byte katakana are used, up to 10 characters can be registered.

3 Set each item ▶ [OK]

Save to UIM
Docomo Taro
DocomoTaro
グループなし
[Phone number]
[Mail address]

Name and reading

Name:

Check the entered name.

■ Correcting the name: Name field ▶

Correct the name ▶ [OK]

Reading:

Check the entered reading.

■ Correcting the reading: Reading field ▶ Correct the reading (up to 25 one-byte or 12 two-byte characters)

- Two-byte katakana and one-byte alphanumeric characters can be used to enter the reading.
- When both one-byte and two-byte characters are used, up to 12 characters can be registered.
- If you correct a name, the reading will not be corrected automatically.

Group:

Select a group from 10 groups or **グループなし**. **グループなし** is set by default.

Phone number:

Including the area code, you can enter up to 26 digits (up to 20 digits depending on the UIM type). **P33**

- Pause (P), "+", "# and sub-address delimiter (✕) can be registered. Timed pause (T) can be entered but cannot be registered.

Mail address:

Up to 50 one-byte characters can be entered.

Setting group names and incoming/outgoing actions

Group Setting

You can change a group name or delete a group. You can also set an incoming alert for each group.

- As for **グループなし**, the group name cannot be changed or deleted, and the incoming/outgoing action cannot be set.

Creating or editing groups

- 1** **[MENU]** **[4]** **[1]** **[2]**

 - For the UIM phonebook: **[MENU]** **[4]** **[1]** **[2]**
[]
- 2** **[MENU]** **[2]** **▶ Enter the group name ▶** **[]**

 - You can enter up to 20 one-byte or 10 two-byte characters for group names in the FOMA terminal phonebook.
 - In the UIM phonebook, only changing the group name is available.

■ Changing the group name: Highlight a group ▶ **[MENU]** **[4]** **▶ Edit the name of the group ▶** **[]**

 - For the UIM phonebook: Highlight a group **[MENU]** **[2]** **▶ Edit the name of the group ▶** **[]**
 - You can enter up to 21 one-byte or 10 two-byte characters for group names in the UIM phonebook. If both one-byte and two-byte characters or one-byte katakana are used, up to 10 characters can be registered.

■ Changing the order of groups in the FOMA terminal phonebook: Highlight a group ▶ **[MENU]** **[6]** or **[7]**

Setting incoming/outgoing actions for the group in the FOMA terminal phonebook Alert/Image by Group

- 1** **[MENU]** **[4]** **[1]** **[2]** **▶ Highlight a group ▶**
[MENU] **[5]**
- 2** **☰ to display the setting screen ▶ Set each item ▶** **[]**

 - For setting call images, follow Step 3 in "Registering entries into the FOMA terminal phonebook". **☰P69**
 For setting ring alert, vibrator, lighting and lighting pattern for incoming calls/emails, follow Step 2 in "Setting the incoming actions for each phonebook entry". **☰P70**
 - When movie/i-motion with image is set for the ring alert on the setting screen for calls, the call image is set to *Sync ring alert*. When changing call images while

the movie/i-motion with only sound (i-motion with no image such as the vocals of singers) is set to ring alert, **Select image** or **Shoot still image** can be selected.

INFORMATION

- The priority of incoming/outgoing actions
 - Ring alert **☰P87**
 - Vibrator **☰P89**
 - Outgoing image **☰P94**
 - Incoming image **☰P95**
 - Lighting **☰P102**

Deleting the group in the FOMA terminal phonebook

- If you delete a group, all the phonebook entries registered in the group are also deleted.
- The phonebook entries with Secret Attribute set are also deleted.
 - When you select **グループなし**, only the phonebook entries are deleted.

- 1** **[MENU]** **[4]** **[1]** **[2]** **▶ Highlight a group ▶**
[MENU] **[3]** **▶ Enter the terminal security code ▶** *Yes*

Making calls from the phonebook

Phonebook Search

- The phonebook data can be called by specifying the following search methods.
 - Show All Names
 - Group Search
 - Name Search
 - Ranking Search*1
 - Ph Book No. Search*1
 - Number Search
 - Secrecy Search*1
- *1 Unavailable in the UIM phonebook.
- Column Search can also be performed. **☰P75**
- You can specify the searching method displayed by pressing **[]** on the standby display. **☰P75**
- In the searching method available in the UIM phonebook, each press of **[]** switches the FOMA terminal phonebook list and the UIM phonebook list.
- The UIM phonebook list indicates **[]** in front of each entry name.

- The entries are displayed in the following order:

- ① Japanese syllabary order
- ② Alphabetical order
- ③ Numbers
- ④ Entries starting with blank
- ⑤ Symbols
- ⑥ No reading

Example Showing all names

1 



あかさたなはまやらわ
Phonebook List(1/2)
Docomo Ichiro
Docomo Jiro
Docomo Saburo
Docomo Shiro
Docomo Taro
Keitai Akiko
Keitai Fuyuko
No. 1 No. 0 03XXXXXXX

Icon of Phonebook 2in1 Setting (in the dual mode of 2in1)
A: Phonebook entry of A mode
B: Phonebook entry of B mode
AB: Phonebook entry of Common

The first phone number registered in the highlighted entry
Number of phone numbers and mail addresses registered in the highlighted entry

Icon set for the first phone number

By default, the phonebook list is displayed by showing all names (Japanese syllabary order).

- To change the searching method:
 
- In the dual mode of 2in1, icons indicating Phonebook 2in1 Setting are shown at the right of names in the phonebook list.

2 Highlight a party

- If multiple phone numbers are registered for a selected party, select a phone number (This step also applies to making a videophone call).
- To make a videophone call: Highlight a party 
- On the details screen: Highlight a phone number   or 
- You can also perform the same operation on the user information screen. The first phone number will be called.
- In the dual mode of 2in1, a call is made from Number A to a party with **A** or **Common** (AB) of Phonebook 2in1 Setting and from Number B to a party with **B** of Phonebook 2in1 Setting.

Composing i-mode Mail: Highlight a party

- If multiple mail addresses are registered for a selected party, select an address.
- On the details screen: Highlight a mail address  or 
- You can also operate in the same way on the user information screen. The first mail address is set as the address.

Composing SMS: Highlight a party (for over a second)

- If multiple phone numbers are registered for a selected party, select a number.
- On the details screen: Highlight a phone number 
- You can also operate in the same way on the user information screen. The first phone number is set as the address.

Displaying sites: Highlight a party

-    
- Pressing  instead of selecting **Yes** displays the sites in Full Browser.
 - On the details screen: Highlight a URL 

Sending mail with the phonebook data attached: Highlight a party

-   
- You can also perform the same operation from the details screen.

Displaying the list of sent/received mails (Mail Search): Highlight a party

-     or 
- To return to the phonebook list:  or  
 - To search on the UIM phonebook: Highlight a party     or 

INFORMATION

- In the dual mode or A mode of 2in1, i-mode Mail and SMS are respectively sent from Address A and Number A, regardless of the setting of Phonebook 2in1 Setting. In the B mode, i-mode Mail and SMS cannot be composed.

Displaying the phonebook data in order of Japanese syllabary

Show All Names

Display the phonebook entries in the order of their readings in Japanese syllabary (as line あ (a) → line か (ka) → line さ (sa) → ... → 他 (Others)*1).

*1 Alphabet, number, entries beginning with blank reading, symbol or having no reading

1 [MENU] [4] [1] [1] ▶ to highlight the line

- Pressing [1] - [9], [0], [*] or [#] instead of [MENU] displays the line to which the key is assigned. For example, pressing [1] displays line あ. To display other than Japanese syllabary, press [*] or [#].

Searching by group

Group Search

- Phonebook entries registered without specifying group are saved in グループなし.

1 [MENU] [4] [1] [2] ▶ Highlight a group ▶



Searching by name

Name Search

Enter a name to search for the entries that start with of the entered character.

1 [MENU] [4] [1] [3] ▶ Enter a name ▶



- You can search for the entry by entering the first part of the name. Even if you enter nothing, entries are searched.

Searching by the call or mail frequency rank

Ranking Search

The phonebook data saved in the FOMA terminal phonebook can be sorted by the number of calls that took place (Call frequency rank) or by the number of i-mode Mail sent or received (Mail frequency rank).

- The total number of calls and mails are displayed up to 9,999.
- The frequency of direct input for a phone number or a mail address registered in phonebook is also counted.

Example Displaying call frequency rank

1 [MENU] [4] [1] [4] [1]

Ranking: call	
Phonebook List(1/2)	
Docomo Taro	10
Keitai Haruko	8
Docomo Saburo	7
Keitai Akiko	6
Keitai Natsuko	5
Docomo Shiro	4
Docomo Ichiro	3
2 2 03XXXXXXX	

— Total number of calls

- The total number of calls indicates how many times calls are made since purchase or the last reset. The calls are counted after each phonebook entry is registered to the FOMA terminal phonebook.
- When 2in1 is in the dual mode, the icon indicating Phonebook 2in1 Setting is displayed beside the total number of calls or mails.

■ Displaying mail frequency rank:

[MENU] [4] [1] [4] [2]

- The total number of mails indicates how many mails are sent or received since purchase or the last reset. The sending or receiving of mails are counted after each phonebook entry is registered to the FOMA terminal phonebook.

Resetting the number of calls/mails

1 Search the phonebook ▶ Highlight a party ▶ [MENU] [9] [3] ▶ Yes

- The total number of calls, date and time of the last call, total number of mails, and date and time of the last mail for each phonebook entry are reset.

Searching by phonebook No.

Ph Book No. Search

Enter a phonebook No. to search for the entry of that phonebook No. You can search the entries even if you enter nothing.

1 [MENU] 4 1 5 ▶ Enter a phonebook No. ▶ [OK]

Ph book No. search
Enter phonebook No.
5

Zeros before single- or double-digit phonebook No. can be omitted.

Ph book No. search
Phonebook List(1/2)
000 Docomo Taro
001 Docomo Ichiro
002 Docomo Jiro
003 Docomo Saburo
004 Docomo Shiro
005 Keitai Haruko
006 Keitai Natsuko

Phonebook No.
The party with the specified phonebook No.

Searching by phone number Number Search

Enter only a part of phone number to search for the phone numbers that contain it. You can search the entries even if you enter nothing.

1 [MENU] 4 1 6 ▶ Enter a part of phone number ▶ [OK]

Phone No. search
Enter phone No.
03

Phone No. search
Phonebook List(1/1)
000 Docomo Taro
003 Docomo Saburo
004 Docomo Shiro
007 Keitai Akiko
008 Keitai Fuyuko

Searching by Column Search quickly

Search for the phonebook data by the characters assigned to [1] - [9] and [0] (あ (a) to ら (ra) and わ (wa)).

- The previously used phonebook (the FOMA terminal phonebook or the UIM phonebook) is searched.

Example

Searching for “ドコモ太郎 (Docomo Taro)”

1 [4] [OK] on the standby display

The phonebook list page corresponding to the line た (ta) is displayed.

- On the search result screen, pressing [1] - [9], [0], [✳], [#] or [≡] switches lines.

Specifying the searching method

The searching method displayed by pressing [OK] on the standby display can be specified.

- Searching method for the UIM phonebook cannot be specified.

1 [MENU] 4 1 ▶ Highlight the searching method ▶ [MENU]

- ✓ is attached on the specified searching method.
- Secrecy Search cannot be specified.

INFORMATION

- If the UIM phonebook was searched previously, pressing [OK] enables to search the UIM phonebook by the specified searching method. However, when the searching method unavailable for the UIM phonebook is specified, the phonebook list of the UIM phonebook (Japanese syllabary order) appears.

Checking phonebook details

1 Search the phonebook ▶ Highlight a party ▶ [≡]

2 [≡] to display the registered details

- At each press of [≡], the display of registered details switches.
- To display the details screen for the previous/next phonebook entry: [≡]

■ Checking the number of calls/mails:

[≡] to highlight the phone number or mail address ▶ [OK]

The accumulated data screen appears.

- To reset the accumulated data: [OK] ▶ Yes

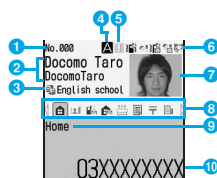
■ Checking the user information:

[MENU] 9 1

The user information screen appears.

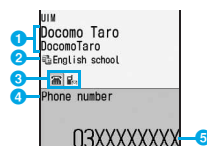
- The image/phonebook No. (only for the FOMA terminal phonebook), name, reading, group name, first phone number (icon type, phone number) and first mail address (icon type, mail address) registered in the phonebook are displayed.

Details screen of the FOMA terminal phonebook



- 1 Phonebook No.
- 2 Name and reading
- 3 Group name
- 4 Icon of Phonebook 2in1 Setting (in the dual mode of 2in1)
- 5 When Reject/Accept Call, Caller ID Setting or a secret code is set
- 6 Current settings for ring alert, etc. (call/mail)
When the setting such as ring alert is made in Alert by Contact, a colored icon is displayed.
 - 🔔 / 🔔: Ring alert
 - 🔔 / 🔔: Incoming vibrator
 - 🔔 / 🔔: Incoming ring alert/vibrator
 - 🔔 / 🔔: Incoming lighting
 - 🔔 / 🔔: Incoming lighting pattern
 - 🔔 / 🔔: Incoming lighting and its pattern
 - 🔔: Videophone substitute image (only calls)
- 7 Image
The registered image is displayed according to the setting of View Preference.
- 8 Registered icon (tab)
◀ ▶ is indicated when there is a previous or next page.
- 9 Icon type
- 10 Information

Details screen of the UIM phonebook



- 1 Name and reading
- 2 Group name
- 3 Registered icon (tab)
- 4 Icon type
- 5 Information

INFORMATION

- On the details screen, the following operations can be performed in the same way as on the phonebook list.
 - Set incoming actions
 - Search for a mail ◀P73
 - Edit phonebook entries
 - Copy registered information ◀P77
 - Change the order of the phone numbers, mail addresses and phonebook Nos.
 - Copy phonebook entries ◀P78
 - Delete phonebook entries
 - Set whether to show/hide caller ID
 - Set a secret code
 - Set Secret Attribute
 - Check the number of registered items ◀P80
 - Set Reject/Accept Call
 - Compose a mail

Displaying an image on the details screen (View Preference)

Set whether to display an image on the phonebook details screen. The settings are also applied to all phonebook data.

- 1 Search the phonebook ▶ Highlight a party ▶ ▶ 9 4 ▶ 1 - 3

Show with image: Displays the images.

Show only name: Displays the names. Images are not displayed.

Show saved image: Images are displayed only when the images are registered. If an image is not registered, the name is displayed.

INFORMATION

- The setting is also applied to the same settings for Own Number (P320), Redial, Received Calls (P46) and Sent/Received Msg. Log (P195).

Editing phonebook entries

Edit Phonebook

Editing the saved phonebook entries

Example

Editing the data of the FOMA terminal phonebook

1 Search the phonebook ▶ Highlight a party ▶

- For the UIM phonebook: Search the phonebook ▶ Highlight a party ▶

2 Edit the phonebook entry ▶

- For details:
Follow Step 3 in "Registering entries into the FOMA terminal phonebook". P69
Or, follow Step 3 in "Registering entries into the UIM phonebook". P71

3 Overwrite or New entry

- For **Overwrite**, the old phonebook entry is discarded. For **New entry**, the existing phonebook entry remains and the edited entry is newly registered.
- When you register a new entry to the FOMA terminal phonebook without changing the phonebook No., the lowest available phonebook No. is assigned automatically and displayed on the phonebook No. entry screen. If necessary, change the number and operate from Step 2 again.

INFORMATION

- The data may not be overwritten if "X" is included in the phonebook data in the UIM phonebook. In that case, a confirmation screen appears. Select **Yes** to register as a new entry.
- If one of any registered phone numbers or mail addresses is deleted, unless the item is registered last, the subsequent item is moved up and registered.

Copying a registered item

A registered item can be copied and pasted into the entry field on the mail composition and phonebook registration screens.

- The copied item is kept until the power is turned off. It can be pasted any number of times while the power is on.
- Only one copied item can be saved. Copying a new item overwrites the saved one.

Example

Copying the data of the FOMA terminal phonebook

1 Search the phonebook ▶ Highlight a party ▶

MENU 6 1 - 8

Display the character entry screen ▶ Paste the characters



- For the UIM phonebook: Search the UIM phonebook ▶ Highlight a party ▶ MENU 6 1 - 3 ▶ Display the character entry screen ▶ Paste the copied text

INFORMATION

- Selecting **Phone number** or **Mail address** copies the first item. To copy the second or subsequent phone number or mail address, highlight the phone number or mail address to copy on the details screen.

Changing the order

When multiple phone numbers or mail addresses are registered in the FOMA terminal phonebook data, the order of the phone numbers and mail addresses can be changed. In addition, the phonebook Nos. for 2 phonebook entries can be switched to each other.

1 Search the phonebook ▶ Change the order

■ Changing the order of phone numbers: Highlight a party ▶

Highlight a phone number to register at the top of the list ▶



The positions of the selected phone number and the first phone number are changed.

■ Changing the order of mail addresses: Highlight a party ▶

Highlight a mail address to register at the top of the list ▶

The positions of the selected mail address and the first mail address are switched to each other.

■ Changing the phonebook Nos.:

Highlight a party ▶ **Highlight a party to change the phonebook No.** ▶

Phonebook Nos. corresponding to the selected parties are switched to each other.

Copying phonebook entries

Copy phonebook entries between the FOMA terminal phonebook and the UIM phonebook.

- If the group in the phonebook data to copy has the same name as the group in the target phonebook, the data is copied to that group.

Example

Copying entries from the FOMA terminal phonebook to the UIM phonebook

1 Search the phonebook ▶ **Highlight a party** ▶



■ Items copied from the FOMA terminal phonebook to UIM phonebook

Name	Up to 21 one-byte or 10 two-byte characters. Up to 10 characters when one-byte and two-byte characters are mixed or when one-byte katakana is used.
Reading	Up to 25 one-byte or 12 two-byte characters. Up to 12 characters when one-byte and two-byte characters are mixed or when one-byte katakana is used. One-byte katakana is changed to two-byte katakana.
Phone number	Copies the first registered phone number up to 26 digits (up to 20 digits depending on the UIM types) ▶ P33. If a timed pause (T) is registered, only the timed pause (T) is deleted. For all icons, is set.
Mail address	Copies the first registered mail address (up to 50 one-byte characters). is set for all icons.

- If the characters exceed the maximum number of characters that can be saved in the UIM phonebook, the exceeding part is deleted.

■ Items copied from the UIM phonebook to FOMA terminal phonebook

Name	The registered contents are copied as it is.
Reading	Two-byte katakana is changed to one-byte katakana.
Phone number	For the icon, is set.
Mail address	For the icon, is set.

INFORMATION

- On the UIM phonebook list: ▶ **Copy to phone**
- When you copy entries from the UIM phonebook to the FOMA terminal phonebook, Phonebook 2in1 Setting for the copied entries is set to **B** in the B mode of 2in1, or set to **A** in other 2in1 modes.

Deleting phonebook entries

Delete Phonebook

- When you delete all, the created groups are all deleted. All the phonebook entries with Secret Attribute are also deleted.
- The UIM phonebook cannot be all deleted.

1 Search the phonebook ▶ Highlight a party ▶ 4 1

■ Deleting all: Search the phonebook ▶  4 2 ▶ Enter the terminal security code

■ Deleting an entry in the UIM phonebook: Search the phonebook ▶ Highlight a party ▶  4

2 Yes

Setting functions for phonebook entries

You can set whether to show or hide the caller ID for each phone number in the phonebook data saved in the FOMA terminal phonebook. In addition, a secret code can be set for each mail address.

- Functions described here cannot be set in the UIM phonebook.

Setting whether to show/hide caller ID for each phone number

Caller ID Setting

- By default, *No setting* is set.

1 Search the phonebook ▶ Highlight a party ▶ 3 4 2 ▶ Enter the terminal security code ▶ Highlight a phone number ▶ 1 - 3

INFORMATION

- When *No setting* is set, the terminal operates according to the setting of Caller ID Notification.
- For the entry set to show the caller ID,  is indicated to the right side of the phonebook No. on the phonebook data details screen.
- The priority of the way of notifying caller ID ◀P40

Setting a secret code

Secret Code Setting

When the other party has registered a secret code for its mail address (mobile phone number@docomo.ne.jp), if you set the secret code in the phonebook data, the secret code is automatically added to i-mode Mail composed by searching the phonebook.

- For mail address in the phonebook, register only the party's mobile phone number (without secret code or "@docomo.ne.jp").

1 Search the phonebook ▶ Highlight a party ▶ 3 4 4 ▶ Enter the terminal security code ▶ Highlight a mail address ▶

2 Enter the 4-digit secret code

- To cancel Secret Code Setting:  for over a second to clear ▶ 

INFORMATION

- For the entry with a secret code set,  is indicated to the right side of the phonebook No. on the phonebook data details screen.
- The set secret code is not displayed on the phonebook data details screen or the address set when composing i-mode Mail. You can check a secret code by following Step 1 mentioned above.

Protecting the secret phonebook entries

Secret Attribute

By setting Secret Attribute to a phonebook entry, the entry is not displayed in the phonebook unless Secret Mode is on.

Setting Secret Attribute for the phonebook entry

- You cannot set Secret Attribute for the entries in the UIM phonebook.
- To set Secret Attribute, perform the setting operation in Secret Mode.

1 Set Secret Mode

2 Search the phonebook on the standby display ▶ Highlight a party ▶

MENU 3 4 1



Flashes to show that Secret Attribute is set for the entry.

- To cancel, repeat the same procedure.

INFORMATION

- The phonebook entry with Secret Attribute cannot be edited or searched unless Secret Mode is set. In addition, Quick Dial or Quick Mail is also disabled.
- When Secret Mode is off, the registered names and images or movie/i-motion of the phonebook data with Secret Attribute set are not displayed in the incoming screen, redial data, received call history, recorded messages, talking voice memos, mail reception result screen, received mail list and other screens. In addition, the ring alert or vibrator set for the phonebook data does not operate.
- A phonebook entry with Secret Attribute set cannot be registered in Choku-den.
- If you attempt to set a Secret Attribute for a phonebook entry registered in Choku-den, a confirmation screen appears. Selecting **Yes** removes the phonebook entry from Choku-den, and sets the Secret Attribute for it.

- If the phonebook entry is edited or registered while Secret Mode is on, Secret Attribute is set for the phonebook entry. When the phonebook entry is registered in Choku-den, the entry is removed from Choku-den without confirmation.

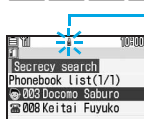
Searching the phonebook entries with Secret Attribute set

Secrecy Search

- You can search only the phonebook entries with Secret Attribute set.

1 Set Secret Mode

2 MENU 4 1 7 on the standby display



Flashes to show that Secret Attribute is set for the entry.

INFORMATION

- When the search other than Secrecy Search is performed in Secret Mode, the phonebook data with and without Secret Attribute set are both searched.

Checking the number of registered phonebook entries

Check No. of Items

You can display the number of registered phonebook entries or phonebook entries with Secret Attribute set in the phonebook.

- The number of entries with Secret Attribute set can be displayed only when Secret Mode is on.

1 Search the phonebook ▶ MENU 9 2

INFORMATION

- The number of registered items includes the entries with Secret Attribute set.

Using simple dialing to make calls

Quick Dial

Phone calls can be made by simple operation to the parties with the phonebook No. 0 to 99 in the FOMA terminal phonebook.

- The first phone number in the phonebook data is the number to be dialed.

Example Calling the phone number with phonebook No.2

- 1 **Enter the phonebook No. (in this case 2) ▶  (voice call) or  (videophone call)**

- Enter the phonebook No. without preceding zero (0).

INFORMATION

- While 2in1 is activated, calls are made according to Phonebook 2in1 Setting.

Using Data Security Service

Data Security Service

Data Security Service enables you to save the data on your FOMA terminal to the Data Center.

- For Data Security Service ☛ P119
- Data Security Service is a pay service and requires a subscription. For more information, see "Mobile Phone User's Guide [i-mode] FOMA version".
- The UIM phonebook cannot be saved.

Saving the phonebook data to the Data Center

- 1 ** 6 8 1 ▶ Yes ▶ Enter the terminal security code**

You can save the FOMA terminal phonebook data to the Data Center

- If saved phonebook data already exists, it is updated.
- When saving or updating is finished, the execution result is displayed for about 5 seconds.

- If the phonebook data in the Data Center is updated more recently than the data on the FOMA terminal, the data in the Data Center is saved to the FOMA terminal.

INFORMATION

- On the phonebook search screen:  7 4 ▶ Yes ▶ Enter the terminal security code
- To restore the phonebook data, save the data from the site of the Data Center to your FOMA terminal. For details, see "Mobile Phone User's Guide [i-mode] FOMA version".
- The operations for incoming calls while connecting to the Data Center are as follows:
 - Even in the case of the incoming call from the other party registered in the phonebook, the name and image of the other party are not displayed, and only the phone number is displayed. In addition, the ring alert or vibrator set in the phonebook data does not operate and conforms to the setting of the FOMA terminal.
 - Reject Call, Reject Unregistered Caller and Mute Ring Time Setting do not operate.
 - Chaku-moji cannot be received.
- Automatic updating is available depending on Data Security Service setting. If any other functions are executed, the automatic updating is started when returning to the standby display. The automatic updating is disabled when the power is turned off or outside the service area. You can check the completion of automatic updating with communication log.
- Restoring the data may not restore the order of the phonebook groups you registered previously.
- If you have not yet subscribed to Data Security Service, a screen appears to inform that.

Checking the communication log

You can check the log of communicating with the Data Center.

- Up to 30 accesses are recorded. When the number exceeds 30, the oldest one is deleted.

- 1 ** 6 8 2 ▶ Highlight the log ▶ **

Specifying whether to send images saved in the phonebook

Specify whether to send images saved in the phonebook to the Data Center.

- 1 **Contact image sending field** **or**

Using Choku-den to make a call or send a mail

Choku-den

You can make a call or send a mail easily by registering frequently used phonebook entry.

Registering in Choku-den

- For registering in Choku-den, the party must be registered in the FOMA terminal phonebook.
- An entry in the UIM phonebook or with Secret Attribute set cannot be registered.
- Up to 5 entries can be registered.

- 1

Choku-den list is displayed.



Image

Icon of Phonebook 2in1 Setting (in the dual mode of 2in1)

: Phonebook entry of A mode

: Phonebook entry of B mode

: Phonebook entry of Common

The first phone number and icon registered in the highlighted entry and icon

The first mail address and icon registered in the highlighted entry and icon

- 2 **<Not recorded>** **Save from PHbook**

- 3 **Search the phonebook** **Highlight a party** **Yes**

- Canceling Choku-den setting:** **Highlight a registered Choku-den entry** **Remove** **Yes**

INFORMATION

- If you register a Choku-den entry, it is recommended to do in the dual mode of 2in1. When 2in1 is in the A mode, the phonebook entries with *A* or *Common* of Phonebook 2in1 Setting are displayed. In the same way, when in the B mode, only the phonebook entries with *B* or *Common* are displayed. The phonebook entries not displayed for each setting are shown as *<Not recorded>* though already registered. In such a case, note that if you registered an entry in the *<Not recorded>* row, the existing one is removed.

Making a call or sending a mail from Choku-den

Example Making a call from Choku-den

- 1 **Highlight a party**

- 2 **(voice call)** or **(videophone call)**

- If multiple phone numbers or mail addresses exist, specify the number or address.
- In the dual mode of 2in1, a call is made from Number A to a party set *A* or *Common* (AB) for Phonebook 2in1 Setting and similarly, from Number B to a party set *B* for Phonebook 2in1 Setting.

- Composing i-mode Mail:**

- Composing SMS:**

Sound/Screen/Light Settings

Setting the operations for incoming calls/emails, etc. 84

Sound Setting

Changing the FOMA terminal sound [Sound Setting](#) 85

Adjusting the volume of sounds generated by the FOMA terminal
..... [Adjust Volume](#) 88

Using vibrator to signal incoming calls and alarms ... [Vibrator Setting](#) 88

Setting the alert sound for charging [Charge Alert](#) 89

Setting the alarm announcing that the call is about to be cut off
..... [Quality Alarm](#) 89

Muting the sounds from the FOMA terminal [Silent Mode](#) 89

Customizing Silent Mode [Customize Silent Mode](#) 90

Displays/Lights Settings

Changing the standby display [Standby Display Setting](#) 90

Changing images for incoming/outgoing calls [Call Image](#) 94

Changing images for incoming/outgoing mails or for message retrieval
..... [Mail Image](#) 95

Setting the light for the display and keys [Display Light Setting](#) 95

Changing the display color [Color Scheme](#) 96

Setting the menu display format or menu design [Menu Setting](#) 96

Changing the battery level icon [Battery Icon](#) 98

Changing the icon for received signal level [Signal Level Icon](#) 98

Coordinating according to the color of the FOMA terminal
..... [Style Theme](#) 99

Using Kisekae tool [Kisekae tool](#) 99

Setting Machi-chara [Machi-chara Setting](#) 101

Setting the lighting pattern for incoming calls/emails, etc.
..... [Light Alert Setting](#) 101

Flashing keys when there is new information [Indicator Light](#) 102

Changing the font size [Font Size Setting](#) 102

Setting the clock display [Clock Display Format](#) 103

Setting the operations for incoming calls/mails, etc.

Setting the operations for incoming calls

Call Alert/Videophone Alert

1 [MENU] [8] [4] or [5] [1] [2] [Set each item] []

Ring alert:

Sets the ring alert.

- When any of *Melody*, *Movie ringtone* or *Music* is selected, set a ring alert.
Setting music data ◀P86
- When movie/i-motion with sound and image is set for *Movie ringtone*, *Show image* is set to *Sync ring alert*.

Show image:

Sets the image displayed for incoming calls.

Standard image: The default image is displayed.

- When *Select image* or *i-motion* is selected, set an image.

Vibrate alert:

Sets the vibration for incoming calls.

Light alert:

Sets whether to light the keys and the lighting pattern to alert an incoming call.

- To play and check a melody or movie/i-motion file before selecting it ◀P86

Setting the operations for incoming mails

Mail Alert

1 [] [9] [1] [Set each item] []

Ring alert:

Sets the ring alert.

- When *Melody*, *Movie ringtone* or *Music* is selected, set the ring alert. For setting music data ◀P86
- To play and check a melody or movie/i-motion file before selecting it ◀P86

Light alert:

Sets whether to light the keys and the lighting pattern to alert an incoming mail.

Vibrate alert:

Sets the vibration for incoming mails.

Ring time (sec):

Sets the sound duration of ring alert (1 to 30 seconds).

Setting the operations for incoming chat mails

Chat Mail Alert

Set the operations for incoming chat mails when Chat Mail has not been started.

1 [] [9] [2] [Set each item] []

Alert setting:

Sets whether to set the operations for incoming chat mails or follow the settings for Mail Alert.

- When *Customize* is set, the following items can be set.

Ring alert/Light alert/Vibrate alert/Ring time (sec):

For setting each item, see "Setting the operations for incoming mails" ◀P84

Setting the operations for incoming Message R/Fs

Message R/F Alert

1 [] [6] [3] [4] or [5] [Set each item] []

- For setting each item, see "Setting the operations for incoming mails" ◀P84

Setting the operations for obtaining ToruCa

ToruCa Alert

Set the operations when obtaining ToruCa from the reader.

1 [MENU] [8] [5] [2] [1] [Set each item] []

Light alert:

Sets whether to make the keys flash when ToruCa is obtained.

Receive alert volume:

Sets the volume of the sound to be played when ToruCa is obtained.

- For adjusting the volume ◀P88

Types of movie/i-motion to be set as Movie ringtone and the incoming image

Movie/i-motion	Displayed incoming image
Only sound*1	The setting for <i>Show image</i> in Call Alert or Videophone Alert is applied.
Sound and image	The image of the set movie/i-motion is displayed as the incoming image.

*1 i-motion without image such as music

INFORMATION

[General information]

- The following movie/i-motion or music data cannot be set for the ring alert:
 - Movie/i-motion with only image
 - Movie/i-motion for which *Ring alert* of detail information (P279) is set to *Unavailable*
 - Music data for which *Full song ring tone* and *Point ring tone* of detail information (P300) are set to *Unavailable*
- The settings of this function also apply to Sound Setting (P85), Incoming Call or Videophone Receiving of Call Image (P95), Vibrator Setting (P88), Light Alert Setting (P101) and Adjust Volume (P88).

[Call Alert/Videophone Alert]

- Some movie/i-motion may not be set for *Show image*. Also, movie/i-motion with sound cannot be set.
- When you set created animation for *Show image*, the first frame is displayed on the incoming screen.
- When music data or sound-only movie/i-motion is set for the ring alert and animation (except for the standard image) is set for the incoming image, the first frame of the animation is displayed on the incoming screen.
- When the ring alert is changed, *Standard image* may be set for *Show image*, but the image can be changed.
- When the setting for *Show image* is changed, the ring alert may return to the default, but the melody can be changed.

Changing the FOMA terminal sound

Sound Setting

Set the sound to announce the reception of call, mail, Message R/F, etc. In addition, the alarm clock sound, schedule reminder and various system sounds can be set.

- To set other sounds, see the following:

- Charge alert P89
- Response hold guidance P57
- On-hold tone P57
- Quality alarm P89
- Reconnect alarm P53
- Low battery alert P37

Setting ring alerts

Call Ring Alert / Mail/Msg Ring Alert

- If movie/i-motion is set as a ring alert, an image and sound are played for incoming calls or mails (Movie ringtone (Chaku-motion) and Chaku-Uta®).

1 Highlight a type of ring alert

- Setting a ring alert for Anonymous

Caller: MENU 8 1 1 1 1 3

Enter the terminal security code

- Follow the procedure from Step 2 in "Setting the operations for incoming calls with no caller ID". P117

2 Set each item



- When *Melody*, *Movie ringtone* or *Music* is selected, set the ring alert. For setting music data P86
- If *Chat Mail Ring Alert* is set to *Sync msg alert*, the setting for the mail ring alert is used.

Playing and checking a melody or movie/i-motion file

- Highlight a melody in the melody list and press  to play it (the melody list screen ). The following operations can be performed during playback:

- Adjust the volume*1: 
- Play the previous/next melody: 
- Return to the melody list: 
- Select the melody: 

- Highlight a movie/i-motion file in the movie/i-motion list and press  to play it (the movie/i-motion list screen ). Press  to check the detail information. The following operations can be performed during playback:

- Adjust the volume*1: 
- Pause/play: 
- Stop (return to the movie/i-motion list):  or 
- Play at fast speed: 
- Rewind and play: 
- Rewind back to the previous chapter: 
- Skip forward to the next chapter: 

However, playing at fast speed, rewinding and playing, rewinding back to the previous chapter and forwarding to the next chapter may not be performed depending on the movie/i-motion file.

- *1 The sound volume for playback depends on Settings of melody or i-motion. Adjusting the volume is also reflected to Settings of melody or i-motion (P265, P257). It is not linked to the ring alert volume.

Setting music data

There are two types of setting music file as ring alerts: full song ring tone and point ring tone. Full song ring tone sets a whole music file. Point ring tone sets the predetermined part of a music file.

- WMA files and partially saved music files cannot be set.
- The full song ring tone and point ring tone may not be set depending on the music file, or only one of them may be set.

① Music ▶ Highlight a folder ▶

- When the folder list is not displayed even if **Music** is selected, select the melody field.

② Set music data

- To check the detail information: Highlight music file ▶ 

■ Setting the full song ring tone:

Highlight a music file ▶

■ Setting the point ring tone: Highlight a music file ▶ ▶ Highlight a playback portion ▶

■ Playing and checking:

- To play the whole music file: Highlight music file ▶ 
- To play the playback portion of the point ring tone: Highlight a music file ▶  ▶ Highlight a part to play ▶ 
- For the music data list 
- During playback, the following operations can be performed:
 - Adjust the volume*1: 
 - Pause/play: 
 - Stop (return to the music file list/the playback position list): 
 - Wind forward:  (for over a second)
 - Rewind:  (for over a second)

- *1 The sound volume for playing depends on Settings for Music Player. Adjusting the volume also affects Settings of Music Player. It does not affect the ring alert volume.

■ Setting music file in the microSD memory card:

If you try to set the full song ring tone or the point ring tone, a confirmation screen appears.

- When the confirmation screen asks whether to move the music file to the FOMA terminal to set it: *Yes*
Music file is moved to the FOMA terminal.
- When the confirmation screen asks whether to capture the music file to i-motion to set it: *Yes* ▶ Enter the display name ▶ The part to be set as ring alert is saved as i-motion compatible with Movable Contents to the FOMA terminal.

Priority of ring alerts

Ring alerts set in multiple functions sound by priority given below:

- Incoming calls melody setting of Multi Number
 - Alert by Contact of the FOMA terminal phonebook
 - Alert/Image by Group of the FOMA terminal phonebook
 - Sound Setting/Ring alert for Number B
- When the other party did not notify the caller ID
▶P117

List of melodies which can be set as the ring alert, etc.

The following melodies are provided in the *Preinstalled* folder of *Melody* by default.

- Melody names that are too long to be shown on the display are partially omitted.

Title (composer in [])	
パターン1～5 (Pattern 1 to 5)	電話・メロディA～C (Phone, melody A to C)
電話・黒電話 (Phone, phone retro)	電話・女性ボイス (Phone, female voice)
メール・メロディA～C (Mail, melody A to C)	メール・女性ボイス (Mail, female voice)
メール・英語ボイス (Mail, English voice)	アラーム・メロディ (Alarm, melody)
アラーム・アナログ時計 (Alarm, analog clock)	アラーム・女性ボイス (Alarm, female voice)
保留音・ボイス (On-hold tone, voice)	Vivaldism
交響曲第25番ト短調K.183より 第1楽章 (The first from Symphony No.25 in G minor) [MOZART WOLFGANG AMADEUS]	
おもちゃの兵隊のマーチ (Parade of the Wooden Soldiers) [JESSEL LEON]	
凱旋行進曲 (Triumphal March) [VERDI GIUSEPPE]	

Title (composer in [])	
SKY	Lover
Lively Tone	Early Reflection
Swing Road	Kick It Up!

- The composer names are described in accordance with the JASRAC website.

INFORMATION

- For the precautions, see INFORMATION in "Setting the operations for incoming calls/emails, etc.". ▶P85
- The settings of this function also apply to the following settings:
 - Call Alert, Videophone Alert ▶P84
 - Mail Alert ▶P84
 - Chat Mail Alert ▶P84
 - Message R/F Alert ▶P84

Setting the alarm sound

Set the alarm clock sound and schedule reminder.

1 8 3 ▶ or ▶

Set each item ▶

- If movie/i-motion with sound and image is set, the movie/i-motion image will be displayed while an alarm is sounding.
- For setting music data ▶P86

Setting the system sounds

Setting the keypad sound

- When the keypad sound is changed, the confirmation sound for displaying the battery level is also changed.
- The keypad sound is not heard when pressing the following keys.

• •

1 8 4 ▶ -

INFORMATION

- When the keypad sound is set to *OFF*, the following sounds are not heard.
 - The confirmation sound when the battery level is indicated
 - The alert tone indicating the end of infrared communication, iC communication or data transmission

- In the following cases, the sound is not heard even if the keypad sound is set to other than **OFF**.
 - In Silent Mode (Note that the sound is heard in the personalized silent mode when the keypad sound of Customize Silent Mode is set to other than **OFF**.)
 - During Key Lock (When  is pressed while nothing is displayed on the screen, the sound is heard.)
 - While i-appli is running (The sound is heard in case of switching the screen or displaying another screen during Multitask.)
 - During movie recording
 - During recording with Sound Recorder
 - During voiceprint authentication/recording the voice for authentication
 - During voice recognition of Speed Menu
- The settings of this function also apply to Initial Setting. 

Setting the shutter sound

- When **Movie camera sound** is changed, the shutter sound of Sound Recorder is also changed.

1        - 

INFORMATION

- The volume of the shutter sound cannot be changed.
- The settings of this function also apply to Still Image Setting and Recording Setting. 

Adjusting the volume of sounds generated by the FOMA terminal

Adjust Volume

- The volume can be adjusted in 7 levels, from **SILENT** to LEVEL 1 to LEVEL 6 (the volume of Movie ringtone can also be adjusted in 7 levels).
You can also set **STEPTONE** (the volume changes into **SILENT** → LEVEL 1 → ... → LEVEL 6).
- **Listen volume** cannot be set to **SILENT**.
- **Listen volume**, **i-appli effect sound**, **ToruCa receive alert** and **Melody effect sound** cannot be set to **STEPTONE**.

1     

- When **Alarm volume** is selected, further press  or .

2 to adjust the volume

- To set to **STEPTONE**:  or  when the volume is LEVEL 6
- To set to **SILENT**:  or  when the volume is LEVEL 1

■ The sound of which the volume is changed by each setting

Setting	Sounds to be changed
Call alert volume	• Ring alerts for voice/videophone calls • Alarm for Call Cost Limit • Confirmation sound when indicating the battery level
Mail/Msg alert vol.	Ring alerts for mails, chat mails and Message R/Fs
Listen volume	• Sound from earpiece during a voice/videophone call • Keypad sound • Playback sound of voice call messages • Playback sound of voice memos • Sound effects for pasting stamps and text to the image
Alarm clock sound	• Alarm clock sound • Alarm sound of Timer
Schedule reminder	Alarm sound of schedule
i-appli effect sound	Effect sound for i-appli
ToruCa receive alert	Sound that plays when obtaining ToruCa
Melody effect sound	• Sound when playing melodies • Sound when playing melodies attached to mail or Message R/F

INFORMATION

- The settings for **ToruCa receive alert** and **Melody effect sound** also apply to ToruCa Alert () and Settings for melody (.

Using vibrator to signal incoming calls and alarms

Vibrator Setting

- Note that if the FOMA terminal is placed on a desk, etc. with Vibrator Setting on, the vibrations of the vibrator operation may cause it to fall off.

1 [MENU] 8 1 3 ▶ 1 - 4

- When *i-appli effect* is selected: Go to Step 3.

2 Highlight a type of incoming call or mail



- If *Alert setting* is set to *Same:Mail setting* in Chat Mail Alert, *Chat M vibrate alert* cannot be set.

3 Highlight a pattern ▶

Sync melody: The terminal vibrates according to the melody. Note that it may not vibrate depending on melodies. In addition, vibration may not synchronize with the theme of melody.

- Highlight a pattern to check the vibration pattern of *Pattern A*, *Pattern B* or *Pattern C*. If *Sync melody* is highlighted, the vibrator does not operate.

Priority of vibrator

When the vibrator is set in multiple functions, the vibrator operates by priority given below:

- ① Alert by Contact of the FOMA terminal phonebook
- ② Alert/Image by Group of the FOMA terminal phonebook
- ③ Vibrator Setting

INFORMATION

- The vibrator does not operate when another call is received during a call.
- Even if *OFF* is set, the vibrator may be activated while some Flash movies are being played.
- The settings of this function also apply to the following settings:
 - Call Alert, Videophone Alert ◀P84
 - Mail Alert ◀P84
 - Chat Mail Alert ◀P84
 - Message R/F Alert ◀P84
 - Vibrate Effect for *i-appli* ◀P214

Setting the alert sound for charging

Charge Alert

Set whether to play the alert sound at the start and end of charging.

1 [MENU] 8 1 1 5 ▶ 1 or 2

INFORMATION

- Even if *ON* is set, the charge alert sound is not heard in the following cases:
 - In Silent Mode
 - In Public mode (Driving mode)
 - During a voice call
 - During a videophone call
 - During 64K data communication
 - During i-mode communication
 - During packet communication

Setting the alarm announcing that the call is about to be cut off

Quality Alarm

When a voice call is going to be cut off because of poor signal condition, an alarm sounds just before the disconnection.

- If signal conditions deteriorate suddenly, the call may be cut off before the alarm sounds.

1 [MENU] 8 1 1 6 3 ▶ 1 - 3

Muting the sounds from the FOMA terminal

Silent Mode

Disable the sounds from the FOMA terminal by enabling the vibrator for incoming calls or mails or muting the keypad sound.

1 # (for over a second)

The silent mode specified in Customize Silent Mode is set and  (in the general silent mode) or  (in the personalized silent mode) appears on the standby display.

- To cancel, repeat the same procedure.

When the general silent mode is set

Sounds such as ring alert, keypad sound and alarm is muted and incoming calls and mails are notified with vibration. The microphone sensitivity is increased so that a call can be made in a small voice.

- In the following cases, the vibrator operates in **Pattern A**:
 - When receiving calls or mails
 - When the time specified by Timer has passed
 - When the date and time set by Scheduler arrives
- When the time set in Alarm Clock arrives, the vibrator operates as set in Alarm Clock.
- Melodies are not played automatically even if you set Attachment Auto-play to **Auto play** and display the sent/received mail or Message R/F.*1
- When playing a melody or music data, select **Yes** on the confirmation screen to play the melody or music data.*1
- When you start to play a movie/i-motion file with sound, a confirmation screen appears.*1 Select **Yes** to play the sound. If you select **No** for a movie/i-motion file with image, only the image is played.

*1 Only for output from the speaker

INFORMATION

- Even in Silent Mode, the shutter sound is heard.
- In the general silent mode, the alarm for Call Cost Limit does not sound. In the personalized silent mode, the alarm sounds according to the call alert volume set by Customize Silent Mode.

Customizing Silent Mode

Customize Silent Mode

Set the operation for Silent Mode. When you use the personalized silent mode, set the operations.

1 [MENU] [8] [1] [4]

2 [2]

- To set the general silent mode: [1]

3 Set each item ▶ [M]

Vibrate alert:

Sets whether to operate the vibrator for incoming calls or mails, etc.

ON: An incoming call or mail is informed by vibration according to Vibrator Setting (P88). Note that when **OFF** is set in Vibrator Setting, the vibrator operates in **Pattern A**.

Keypad sound/Call alert volume/Mail alert volume/Melody volume/ToruCa alert volume/Low battery alert/Alarm sound/Schedule sound/i-appli sound:

Sets the sound to play and the volume.

Sensitize microphone:

Sets whether to increase the microphone sensitivity.

INFORMATION

- When **Alarm sound** is set to **ON**, the alarm clock sound plays according to the setting of Alarm Clock.
- When **Schedule sound** is set to **ON**, the schedule reminder sounds according to the setting of the schedule and the volume of schedule reminder.
- When **i-appli sound** is set to **ON**, the i-appli sound plays according to the volume of i-appli effect sound.

Changing the standby display

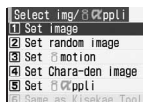
Standby Display Setting

You can change the standby display to your favorite image.

- If you set movie/i-motion, Chara-den or i-appli for the standby display when **Show ticker** of i-Channel Ticker is set to **Yes**, displaying a ticker is canceled. After that, if you set other than movie/i-motion, Chara-den and i-appli standby display, **Show ticker** of i-Channel Ticker is reset to **Yes**. P167
 - Setting the clock display P103
 - The standby display in the dual mode or the B mode of 2in1 follows Stand-by display setting for each mode. P351
- However, setting the custom standby display is available regardless of the setting for 2in1.

Setting images, movie/i-motion or Chara-den

1 [MENU] [8] [2] [1] [1] ▶ [1], [3] or [4]



2 Highlight a folder Highlight an image, movie/i-motion file or Chara-den image

- To check the image: Highlight an image in the image list 
The following operations can be performed on the image display screen:
 - Display the previous/next image: 
 - Return to the image list: 
 - Select the image: 
- To check Chara-den: Highlight an Chara-den image in the Chara-den list 
The following operations can be performed on the Chara-den display screen:
 - Switch between *Action* and *Action of Parts*: 
 - Check action:  Highlight an action 
 - Switch between large size display and same size display: 
 - Return to the Chara-den list:  or 
- To play and check a movie/i-motion file before selecting it 
- The image or movie/i-motion saved in the microSD memory card cannot be selected. To select it, move or copy it to the FOMA terminal.
- If 2in1 is in the dual mode or the B mode, a confirmation screen appears.

■ Setting the action of Chara-den:

① Highlight a Chara-den image in the Chara-den list Stand-by field

- Set the action for missed call or unread mail in the same way.
- When *Action* or *Action of Parts* is selected, select an action from the action list. However, action cannot be selected for some Chara-den images.
- When *Input* is selected, enter the number corresponding to the action.

OFF: The preset action is played.

② Interval (sec) field -

OFF: The selected action of Chara-den is played only once.

③

3 Yes

- If the selected image, movie/i-motion or Chara-den can be zoomed, select *Yes(Same size)* on the confirmation screen to maintain the image size or select *Yes(Large size)* to enlarge the image to the screen size.
- If the i-appli standby display is set, a confirmation screen appears asking whether to cancel it.

Playing the movie/i-motion, animation or Chara-den set as the standby display

- The following operations are available for movie/i-motion:
 - Play: 
 - Stop:  or 
 - Adjust the volume: 
- The following operations are available for animation, created animation or Flash movie:
 - Play: Return to the standby display/Turn the power on
 - Pause/replay: 
- The following operations are available for Chara-den:
 - Play: 
 - Stop:  or 

INFORMATION

- While All Lock, Personal Data Lock (when the data which is subject to Personal Data Lock is set for the standby display) or Omakase Lock (Remote Lock) is on, the set standby image is canceled and the image set by default is displayed temporarily. The set standby image reappears when lock is canceled. However, if the data in the *Preinstalled* folder is set, the set data is displayed even when Personal Data Lock is on.
- The setting may not be available depending on the movie/i-motion or the image. In addition, the following items cannot be set:
 - Movie/i-motion files with the replay restriction such as the number of playable times and expiration date
 - Sound-only movie/i-motion files (i-motion with no image such as music)
- When the standby display appears, the set Flash movie or animation starts playing and stops after a certain period of time.
- If an animation is set in large size display, the display may be distorted.
- Even if links are set in tickers of the movie/i-motion set as the standby display, Phone To (AV Phone To), Mail To and Web To functions are not available from the standby display.

- When **Show ticker** in i-Channel Ticker is set to **Yes**, playing of the animation, created animation or Flash movie, which is set for the standby display, stops after about 5 seconds, and the i-Channel ticker is displayed. However, when playing is started by , the i-Channel ticker is displayed after playing has completed.
- When the action of Chara-den is set for multiple items, the action is played by priority given below:
 - Action set for **Missed call** or **Unread message**
 - Action set for **Stand-by**
 - When both action for missed calls and action for unread mails are set and there are both missed calls and unread mails, the action set for each item is played repeatedly by turns. However, when the interval for the action is set to **OFF**, the action for missed calls plays only once.
- When **Guidance** is set for the standby display, set **Style to Digital 1** and **Clock layout to Top** in Clock Display Format to prevent the clock from overlapping on the key guidance.

Displaying images in a random order

Random Display Image

Images can be displayed in a random order on the standby display at the specified time.

- The images in JPEG and GIF formats (except for animation) can be displayed.

1      

2 Set each item

Folder:

Selects a folder which contains images from the folders in **My Picture**.

- The folder with no image to be displayed cannot be selected.

Change image:

Sets the timing when the images are switched.

Every 15 seconds: Images are switched every 15 seconds after returning to the standby display.

Every minute, Every 15 minutes or Every hour: The images are switched according to the clock time. (For example, when **Every minute** is set, the images are switched at second 0 of each minute.)

Every day: The images are switched at 00:00 a.m. every day.

3 Yes

- When 2in1 is in the dual mode or the B mode, a confirmation screen appears.
- If the i-appli standby display is set, a confirmation screen appears asking whether to cancel it.

INFORMATION

- In case the power is turned off, the image is not switched.
- When there is no still image that can be displayed as the result of deleting the selected folder, or moving or deleting still images in the folder, the default image is displayed on the standby display and Random Display Image is canceled. However, the image being displayed may be displayed until it switches to the next image.

Setting the i-appli standby display

- The i-appli standby display can be set simultaneously with other standby display settings. When they are set simultaneously, the i-appli standby display is displayed by priority.

1      

The list of i-applis available for the i-appli standby display appears.

2 Highlight an i-appli Yes

The i-appli standby display is set on the standby display and  or  is indicated.

- When 2in1 is in the dual mode or the B mode, a confirmation screen appears.

INFORMATION

- While Personal Data Lock or Privacy Mode (with **Authorized access** set for i-appli) is on, the i-appli standby display is not displayed but a standby image set previously is displayed. Note that while Personal Data Lock is on, the default standby display is displayed when the data which is subject to Personal Data Lock has been set. While All Lock or Omakase Lock is on, the default standby display appears.
- Operating the i-appli standby display 

Customizing the standby display

Info/Calendar Layout

Set the information area on the standby display (Custom standby display) and press to show or hide the area.

- The set information is displayed superimposed on the image when the image is set on the standby display. When movie/i-motion, Character or the i-appli standby display is set on the standby display, the information is not displayed.

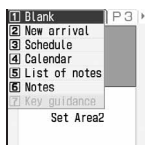
1 8 2 1 5

2

- To cancel the setting:

3 to switch patterns

4 Highlight an area 1 - 7



- The calendar or the key guidance cannot be set depending on the area size.

Setting to display new information:

Highlight an area 2

Highlight an information type



Setting to display notes:

① Highlight an area 6

② Highlight a note

- Highlight a note and press to display the content of the note. Press to return to the note list. You can also press on the notepad view screen to set.

Resetting the displayed items in all the areas: Yes

5 Yes

Checking information on the custom standby display

1

The highlighted area is surrounded by the cursor frame.

- In case the information on the custom standby display is not shown, show it by pressing repeatedly on the standby display and press .

2 to move the cursor frame
Highlight an area

INFORMATION

- An image and a custom standby display can be set simultaneously, but if an animation, created animation or Flash movie is set, press after the playback is stopped or paused to display the information of the custom standby display.

Displayed information

Various information set by Info/Calendar Layout appears as follows:

- The number of information items and lines displayed depends on the area size.
- For the date and time of each information item, the time is displayed for the current day and the date is displayed for the other days.

New arrival



The items set in *New arrival* are listed starting with the most recent item. If you select the area, the list screen of the first item is displayed.

Unread messages:

The reception date and time and the first part of subject are displayed.

MessageR / MessageF:

The reception date and time and the first part of subject are displayed.

Missed calls:

The date and time of an incoming call and the caller's phone number (or the name when registered in the phonebook) are displayed.

Recorded messages:

The date and time of recording and the caller's phone number (or the name when registered in the phonebook) are displayed.

Schedule



The scheduled entries with the start date and time not passed are displayed in the order of the date and time. Select this area to display the details of the first schedule.

- The icon, the date and time and the beginning of the content are displayed.
- For the icon of long-term schedule, is indicated.
- The start date and time of all-day schedule is displayed as *AllDay* for the current day.

Calendar



The current day is displayed in yellow.

The current calendar is displayed. Select this area to display the calendar screen of Scheduler.

- The days off and holidays are displayed in red, and Saturdays are displayed in blue. The days off and holidays follow Day Off Setting or Holiday Setting of Scheduler. Note that when Privacy Mode is on (with *Authorized access* set for *Schedule*) or Personal Data Lock is on, the day set as a day off in Day Off Setting is not displayed in red and reset to the default display.
- When a schedule is set, a dot is displayed on the upper right of the date. Note that when all the schedules have Secret Attribute, the dot is displayed only when Secret Mode is on. In addition, it is not displayed when Privacy Mode (with *Authorized access* set for *Schedule*) or Personal Data Lock is on.

List of notes

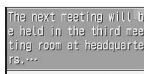


Status icon P326

The first part of notes in order registered in Notepad is displayed. Select this area to display the list of notes.

- Only the note which is set to be displayed by List by Status is displayed.

Notes



The content of the set note is displayed. Select the area to display the details of note.

Key guidance



When set *Area1* of

Pattern 3

The marks of functions assigned to , , and on the standby display are displayed. The icon of Choku-den is also displayed in an area of a quarter of the screen (e.g. *set Area1* of *Pattern 3*).

When you select the area, a message appears indicating that the key guidance can be hidden by .

Changing images for incoming/outgoing calls

Call Image

Changing images for outgoing calls

Outgoing Call/Videophone Dialing

Set images to be displayed for outgoing voice/videophone calls.

1 or

2 **Display image field** or

Default: The default image is displayed.

- When selecting *Select image*, set an image.

Priority of outgoing images

When the outgoing images are set in multiple functions, the images are displayed by priority given below:

- ① The setting of the FOMA terminal phonebook (available when Contact Image is set to *ON*)
- ② Alert/Image by Group of the FOMA terminal phonebook
- ③ Call Image (Outgoing Call/Videophone Dialing)

INFORMATION

- When a created animation is set, the first frame is displayed.

Changing images for incoming calls

Incoming Call/Videophone Receiving

Set images to be displayed for incoming voice/videophone calls.

1 8 2 3 2 ▶ 2 or 4

2 **Show image field** ▶ 1 - 3 ▶

Standard image: The default image is displayed.

- When *Select image* or *i-motion* is selected, set an image.
- If the movie/i-motion with sound and image is set for the ring alert, *Sync ring alert* is set.
- To play and check a movie/i-motion file before selecting it ◀P86

Priority of incoming images

When the incoming images are set in multiple functions, the image is displayed by priority given below. However, even if the incoming image is set, when movie/i-motion with sound and image is set as ring alert, the image of the movie/i-motion is displayed.

- ① Incoming calls melody setting of Multi Number
 - ② The setting of the FOMA terminal phonebook (available when Contact Image is set to *ON*.)
 - ③ Alert/Image by Group of the FOMA terminal phonebook
 - ④ Call Image (Incoming Call/Videophone Receiving)
- When the other party did not notify the caller ID ◀P117

INFORMATION

- For the precautions, see INFORMATION in "Setting the operations for incoming calls/emails, etc.". ◀P85
- The settings of this function also apply to Call Alert and Videophone Alert. ◀P84

Displaying images saved in the phonebook when making/receiving calls

Contact Image

The image saved in the phonebook can be displayed for incoming or outgoing voice/videophone call.

1 8 2 3 2 5 ▶ 1 or 2

Changing images for incoming/outgoing mails or for message retrieval

Mail Image

The image for incoming/outgoing i-mode mails or the image of the reception result screen can be set. In addition, the image for performing Check i-mode Message or Check SMS can be set.

1 8 2 3 3 ▶ 1 - 4

2 Set an image

- Follow Step 2 in "Changing images for incoming calls" (◀P95) or follow Step 2 in "Changing images for outgoing calls" (◀P94).

Setting the light for the display and keys

Display Light Setting

Setting the lighting time

1 8 2 4 1 ▶ 1 - 7

2 Highlight the lighting time ▶

Terminal setting: Lighting according to the lighting time set for *Normal use*.

Always or Always on: The display always lights with the brightness set in *Brightness*. However, it is lighted by *High* when AC adapter is connected.

Software: Lighting in accordance with the i-appli software.

Setting the range

Set whether to light the display and keys or only the display.

1 [MENU] [8] [2] [4] [2] ▶ [1] or [2]

Adjusting the brightness

Set the brightness of the display light.

1 [MENU] [8] [2] [4] [3] ▶ [1] - [3]

INFORMATION

- When *Normal use of Display light time* is set to other than *Always*, if you do not press any keys for about 90 seconds, the display disappears and the FOMA terminal goes into a power saving mode. If there is any key operation*1 or an incoming call, the display reappears. However, the FOMA terminal does not enter a power saving mode in the following cases:

- During a videophone call
- While displaying the shooting/recording screen of the camera or while shooting or recording
- While charging with *AC adapter connected* of *Display light time* set to *Always on*
- While executing the function with *Display light time* set to *Always on*

*1 Even if [OK] is pressed, the display does not appear. In addition, except for during a call, a number, etc. is not entered even when pressing keys.

- Even if *i-appli* is set to *Terminal setting*, the setting may not be applied for some *i-applis*.
- The lighting time setting of this function also applies to Display Light for i-mode (P158), Still Image Setting or Recording Setting (P137), Settings for i-motion (P257) and Display Light for *i-appli* (P214).

Changing the display color

Color Scheme

The color of each part of the screen such as the background or characters is changed.

1 [MENU] [8] [2] [3] [1] ▶ Highlight the color ▶ 

- You can select a color from 24 colors. The color names are for information purpose only.

Setting the menu display format or menu design

Menu Setting

The menu display format or the icon design, etc. can be changed. You can also set the simple menu limited only to the often used functions. In the simple menu, characters are also displayed in large size.

1 [MENU] 

- When *Default MENU* is set to *Custom*, press [MENU] on the standby display and press [MENU] [8].

2 Set each item ▶ 

Normal:

Sets the display format for the normal menu.

- To set the simple menu, select シンブ / (Simple menu)*1.

Custom:

Sets the display format for the custom menu.

Describe function:

Sets whether to display description of the function.

Type of tile icons:

Sets the design of tile icons for the normal menu.

- It can be set only when *Normal* is set to *Tile display*.
- The design of the first level menu can be set.
- Set *Customized 1* or *Customized 2* to change the menu icons or background images and create the original menu design.

Type of animation:

Sets the design of animation for the normal menu.

- It can be set only when *Normal* is set to *Animation*.

Icon display effect:

Sets whether to magnify the tile icons or 3D icons when selecting them.

Default MENU:

Sets whether to display the normal menu or the custom menu when pressing [MENU] on the standby display.

Active shortcut:

Sets the shortcut operation procedure for the custom menu.

Normal: The same item numbers as the normal menu can be used for shortcut operations.

Custom: The item numbers corresponding to the positions of the respective functions on the custom menu can be used for shortcut operations.

- *1 Can only be set in the Japanese display. Switch to the Japanese display before setting the simple menu.

Normal menu set by default**■ Tile display****Basic****■ Animation****Type 1****Type 2****Type 3****Type 4****When the simple menu is set**

- The menu numbers differ. Menu list of the simple menu ➡ P381
- During calling or talking, you can see how to adjust the volume of other party's voice.
- When you enter a phone number, key operations for making a call are shown.
- On the standby display, enter a phonebook No. (1 to 9) to see the registered name, phone number and key operations for making a voice call/videophone call. During a voice call, you can also press [MENU], select **ダイヤルスカ** (Dial) and enter a phonebook number to see the same information.
- The characters in the redials, received calls, phonebook list/group list, mail view screen, sent message log, received message log, site screen, screen memo screen, message text entry screen and character entry screen (full-screen entry) are displayed in large font.
- The font size cannot be changed.

INFORMATION

- You cannot switch the FOMA terminal to the simple menu when English display is set in Select Language. Also, when you choose the simple menu, the setting for Select Language is not available.
- Even if you set the simple menu, when you insert the UIM for which English display is specified as language, the setting is canceled.

Creating the original menu design

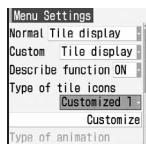
Two kinds of the design of the menu screen can be created by changing the icons or background images of the normal menu.

- When the image size exceeds 96 x 96 for icons and 240 x 240 for background images, they are reduced to be displayed.



- When **Default MENU** is set to **Custom**, press  on the standby display and press  .

2 Normal field ▶ ▶ Type of tile icons field ▶ or ▶ Customize



3 Highlight a function ▶ ▶ Highlight a folder ▶ ▶ Highlight an image ▶

- **Canceling a menu icon: Highlight an icon** ▶   ▶ **Yes**
 - To cancel all:   ▶ **Yes**

4 ▶ Highlight a folder ▶ ▶ Highlight an image ▶

- **Canceling a background image:**   ▶ **Yes**

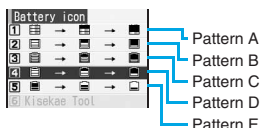
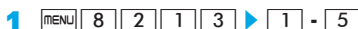


INFORMATION

- Created animation, Flash movie or images in the **Item** folder cannot be set. If an animation is set, the first frame is displayed.
- The setting for **Customized 1** or **Customized 2** of **Type of tile icons** cannot be changed while **Personal Data Lock** is on.

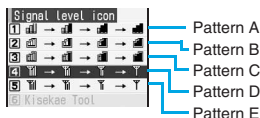
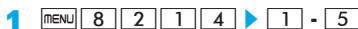
Changing the battery level icon

Battery Icon



Changing the icon for received signal level

Signal Level Icon



Coordinating according to the color of the FOMA terminal

Style Theme

The standby display and the battery icon are coordinated in total by the color of the FOMA terminal. They can also be changed to the style corresponding to the other colors.

Functions and items to be coordinated		Style Theme			
		Flash Silver	Luminous Black	IceBlue	Mr. BarCode
Standby Display		Silver	Magenta block	Blue hexagon	Barcode
Clock Display Format	Style	ON/Digital 1	ON/Digital 2	ON/Digital 3	
	Time format	24 hour			
	clock layout	Center			Bottom
	Day	English			
Battery Icon		Pattern A	Pattern B	Pattern C	Pattern D
Signal Level Icon		Pattern A	Pattern B	Pattern C	Pattern D
Menu Setting	Normal	Animation			
	Animation design	Type1	Type2	Type3	Type4
Color Scheme		Flash Silver	Luminous Black	IceBlue	Barcode White

1 [MENU] [8] [2] [8] [1] - [4]



INFORMATION

- The standby display in the dual mode or the B mode of 2in1 is not changed.

Using Kisekai tool

Kisekai tool

If Kisekai tool is set, the ring alert, standby display, menu icon, etc. are changed collectively.

- ボクシング (Boxing), けいとあそび (Yarn of wool) and フックメン (Masked rangers) are preinstalled by default.

Setting Kisekai tool

1 [MENU] [8] [2] [8] [1] - [4]

■ Resetting the setting: [MENU] [5] [2] [8] [1] - [4]

▶ Enter the terminal security code ▶ Reset all or Reset menu

Reset all: All the functions changed by Kisekai tool return to the default setting.
Reset menu: Only animation menu, menu icon and menu icon (background) return to the default setting.

2 Highlight a Kisekai tool ▶ [MENU] [5] [2] [8] [1] - [4]

- The function changed by Kisekai tool is set to **Kisekai Tool**, **Same as Kisekai Tool** or setting value of Kisekai tool. For example, if you set ボクシング of Kisekai tool, Standby Display Setting and other settings are set to **Same as Kisekai Tool** or **Kisekai Tool**. Color Scheme is set to **PrimaryBlack**.
- The function to be changed differs depending on Kisekai tool to be set. The function which is not included in the Kisekai tool you set retains the current setting.
- When more than 1 Kisekai tool is set, the data of the last set Kisekai tool is set for overlapping functions.
- To switch between thumbnail display and title display: [F5]

■ Screen, ring alert, etc changed by Kisekae tool

- Standby display
- Animation menu
- Menu icon
- Menu icon (background)
- Outgoing screen for voice call
- Incoming screen for voice call
- Outgoing screen for videophone call
- Incoming screen for videophone call
- Mail sending screen
- Mail receiving screen
- Mail reception result screen
- Screen for Check new message
- Battery icon
- Antenna icon
- Ring alert for voice call
- Ring alert for videophone
- Mail ring alert
- Chat mail ring alert
- Message R ring alert
- Message F ring alert
- Alarm clock sound
- Color scheme

Folder of Kisekae tool

Folder	Data to be saved
<i>i-mode</i>	Kisekae tool downloaded by i-mode
<i>Preinstalled</i>	Kisekae tool preinstalled by default

- Folders can be created. ●P278

Kisekae tool list screen and available operations

Example Thumbnail display



Kisekae tool list

1 Originated



: i-mode



: Preinstalled

2 Setting status/File type



Set Kisekae tool (the Kisekae tool set last)



Set Kisekae tool



Partially saved Kisekae tool

No icon: Kisekae tool not set

- Icon is indicated even if Kisekae tool cannot be used by the UIM operation restriction function.

3 File restriction



(gray): With file restriction

- In the thumbnail display, Kisekae tool with no preview image is displayed as , Kisekae tool with the UIM operation restriction function set is displayed as and Kisekae tool partially saved is displayed as .

■ Displaying the preview screen: Highlight a Kisekae tool

■ Checking the contents set by Kisekae tool:

① Highlight a Kisekae tool



Setting list

1 Setting status

- The data being currently set is checked.

2 File type



JPG: Image (JPEG)



GIF: Image (GIF)



: Flash movie



MP4: Movie



SMF: Melody (SMF)



MFI: Melody (MFI)

No icon: Color theme

② Highlight an item

An image is displayed or a melody, etc. is played.

- If *Color theme* is highlighted, the display appears in the color to be set.

■ Canceling the setting: Highlight a Kisekae tool



[MENU] 3 Yes

INFORMATION

- To set Kisekai tool on the preview screen or setting list screen:
- When there is the data which cannot be displayed and played in Kisekai tool, even if Kisekai tool is set, only the data is not set.
- Depending on the animation menu of Kisekai tool, the operation when pressing or on the standby display may differ from usual, or shortcut operations in the menu may not be available.
- The standby display in the dual mode or the B mode of 2in1 and the ring alerts for voice and videophone calls for Number B are not changed. Change of the menu screen, the battery icon and the signal level icon also applies to the other modes.
- When you highlight Kisekai tool saved partially and press , or , a confirmation screen appears asking whether to download the remaining data.

Setting Machi-chara

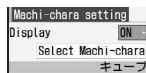
Machi-chara Setting

You can display a character on the standby display, site display screen, etc.

- The action, the size or the display position of Machi-chara changes with the FOMA terminal situation or Machi-chara.

1

2 **Display field**



- To cancel the setting:
Display field
- ▶ Go to Step 4

3 **Select Machi-chara** ▶ **Highlight a folder**
▶ **Highlight a Machi-chara image**



4

When Machi-chara is set

- When Machi-chara is set, it is displayed on the following screens:
 - Standby display
 - Site display screen*1
 - Menu (when displaying tile icons)
 *1 Machi-chara is displayed when the display lights up and there is no key operation for about 30 seconds while is blinking.
- In the following cases, Machi-chara is not displayed:
 - While displaying the standby display when i-motion, Chara-den, i-αpli or Flash movie is set on the standby display
 - When the interior design clock is on the screen
 - When the information area or the icon for Focus Mode is highlighted while displaying the custom standby display
 - When Flash movie is displayed on the site display screen
 - When description of the function of menu is displayed
 - When the date and time is not set

INFORMATION

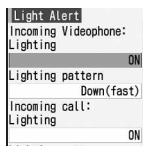
- On the screen of Machi-chara list of Data Box:
Highlight a Machi-chara image

Setting the lighting pattern for incoming calls/mails, etc.

Light Alert Setting

1 ▶ -

2 **Lighting field** or



3 **Lighting pattern field** ▶ - ▶

- You can select one from 27 patterns. The pattern names are for information purpose only.

Priority of lighting

When lighting is set in multiple functions, the lighting comes on by priority given below:

- ① Alert by Contact of the FOMA terminal phonebook
- ② Alert/Image by Group of the FOMA terminal phonebook
- ③ Light Alert Setting

INFORMATION

- When **Alert setting** is set to **Same:Mail setting** in Chat Mail Alert, **Incoming Chat Mail** cannot be set.
- Even when **IC card** is set to **ON**, the keys may not light while Osaifu-Keitai compatible i-appli is activated.
- Even when **IC card** is set to **ON**, if the power is turned off, the keys do not light.
- When **IC card** is set to **ON**, the keys flash when you hold the FeliCa mark over the reader. The keys also flash when the FeliCa mark is held over the reader in which Osaifu-Keitai compatible i-appli is not registered.
- The settings of this function also apply to the following settings:
 - Call Alert, Videophone Alert P84
 - Mail Alert P84
 - Chat Mail Alert P84
 - Message R/F Alert P84
 - ToruCa Alert P84
 - Settings for melody P265

Flashing keys when there is new information

Indicator Light

The keys flash at about 6-second intervals when there is new information such as missed calls, unread mails, unread Message R/Fs, etc.

- When new information is confirmed, flashing stops.

1 or

INFORMATION

- Even when **ON** is set, the keys do not flash in the following cases:
 - While receiving a call
 - While talking
 - In Public mode (Driving mode)
 - During All Lock
 - While activating the camera/Sound Recorder
- Even when **ON** is set, if about 6 hours since the last arrival of new information has passed, or if , or on the standby display is cleared, Indicator Light stops.

Changing the font size

Font Size Setting

The font size on the character entry screen, the mail view screen or the site display screen can be changed.

- The types of font size are as follows:
 - **All listed** or **Text input**: 5 types
 - **i-mode/Browser view** or **Mail view**: 3 types

1 -

- When **All listed** is changed and there is no corresponding size in each setting, the nearest size is set.

INFORMATION

- The font size of Deco-mail pictogram is not changed.

Setting the clock display

Clock Display Format

Set whether to display the clock on the standby display, the clock design, etc.

■ The example of setting



Displaying Analog 1 at the center



Displaying Digital 1 by 24 hour format at the top



Displaying Digital 6 by 12 hour format at the bottom



Displaying World time clock by 24 hour format at the center

1 [MENU] [8] [6] [1] [4] ▶ Set each item

Style:

Sets whether to display the clock.

- When **ON** is set, select the design.
- When **Digital 5** is selected, **Clock layout** cannot be set.
- When **World time clock** is selected, **Day** cannot be set.

World time clock: The date and time of Japan are displayed in the upper part, and the date and time of the set time zone and the name are displayed in the lower part.

Time format:

Specifies 24 hour format or 12 hour format to display the clock.

- The 24 hour format applies to **World time clock** regardless of this setting.

Clock layout:

Sets the position to display the clock.

Day:

Specifies whether to display a day of the week in Japanese or English.

Terminal settings: The display follows the setting for Select Language.

Interior clock:

Sets whether to display the interior design clock.

World time clock:

When **Style** is set to **World time clock**, select a time zone to display or whether to set the daylight saving time (summer time). In addition, select the name of time zone.

- When **Summer time** is set to **ON**, the time of the set time zone is set forward by 1 hour, and is displayed.

When the interior design clock is on

You can show the interior design clock on the standby display during charging.

Example Displaying Digital 3 by 24 hour format



- The design, time display format and the language of the interior design clock follow the settings of Clock Display Format. The background image of the clock and the display position are fixed.

- In the following cases, the interior design clock is not displayed:

- When the **i-appli** standby display is set
- When the **Style** of Clock Display Format is set to **OFF**
- During All Lock or Omakase Lock

- If the screen is switched to the interior design clock in the custom standby display, the custom standby display disappears. Press [] to display.

INFORMATION

- In the following cases, the digital clock (the fixed design) is displayed on the upper part of the display regardless of the setting for *Style* or *Clock layout*.
 - When movie/i-motion or Chara-den is displayed on the standby display
 - When the i-appli standby display is displayed
- While All Lock or Omakase Lock is on, the clock is displayed on the upper part of the display regardless of the setting for *Clock layout* in this setting.
- The use, start time and end time of summer time depend on countries or areas. Use after checking about the summer time of the target city.
- Setting Two Time Zone Clocks ◀P369
- On the screen other than the standby display, the time is displayed on the upper right of the display. The time display format (24 hour format/12 hour format) follows the setting of this function.

Security Settings

Security code

Security codes	106
Changing the terminal security code	Change Security Code 107
Setting the PIN code	107
Unblocking the PIN lock	108

Restricting Mobile Phone Operations

Various lock functions	108
Preventing unauthorized use of your terminal	All Lock 109
Using Omakase Lock	Omakase Lock 110
Preventing making/receiving calls	Self Mode 110
Preventing display of the phonebook or schedule	Personal Data Lock 111
Prohibiting keypad dial	Keypad Dial Lock 112
Setting the use of personal information and the operation when displaying the information	Privacy Mode 112
Setting not to display the name or other items when receiving calls/emails	Receive Display 114
Preventing key errors	Key Lock 115
Displaying the data with Secret Attribute set	Secret Mode 115

Restricting outgoing/incoming or sending/receiving actions

Rejecting/accepting incoming calls from the specified phone numbers	Reject/Accept Call 116
Setting the operations for incoming calls with no caller ID	Anonymous Caller 117
Muting the ring alert for calls from the party not registered in the phonebook	Mute Ring Time Setting 118
Rejecting incoming calls from the party not registered in the phonebook	Reject Unregistered Caller 118

Other “Security settings”

Using Data Security Service	Data Security Service 119
Other “Security settings”	119

Security codes

Some FOMA terminal functions for convenient use require the entry of security codes. There are security codes such as the network security code for use in network services and the password for i-mode in addition to the terminal security code for various terminal functions. Fully use your FOMA terminal by choosing the security code to suit your needs.

- The entered terminal security code, network security code and i-mode password are masked with “ * ”.

Precautions for security codes

- As for the security code to set, please avoid the number intelligible for others, such as “a birth date”, “a part of phone number”, “an address number or a room number”, “1111” or “1234”. In addition, be sure to keep a separate note of the set security code not to forget.
- Please be careful never to reveal your security code to others. If your security code is known and misused by others, DoCoMo accepts no responsibility whatsoever for the damages.
- DoCoMo will never ask your security code.
- Please note that, if you forget the security codes, you need to bring a document (such as a driver's license) for identifying that you are a subscriber, your FOMA terminal and the UIM to a DoCoMo Shop.
For details, contact “General Inquiries” on the back of this manual.

Terminal security code

The default terminal security code is “0000”, which can be changed to a code of your own choice. ➡P107

- If you fail to enter the correct terminal security code for 5 consecutive times, the power is automatically turned off.

Network security code

Network security code is the arbitrary 4-digit code that is set at subscription to the FOMA terminal for various procedures for the DoCoMo e-site and usage of network services. You can optionally change the code.

If you have “DoCoMo ID/Password” for “My DoCoMo” which is the total support site for PC, you can perform the change procedure for a new network security code from a PC. From i-mode, you can change the code by yourself accessing 各種手続き (Procedures) in DoCoMo e-site.

- Please refer to the back of this manual for “My DoCoMo” and “DoCoMo e-site”.

i-mode password

A 4-digit “i-mode password” is required to store/delete sites in My Menu or apply to/cancel Message Service or i-mode pay services (in addition, there may be passwords required by individual information service providers). The default i-mode password is “0000”, which can be changed to a code of your own choice. When changing from i-mode, select *iMenu* → *English iMenu* → *Options* → *Change i-mode Password*.

PIN1 code/PIN2 code

The PIN1 and PIN2 codes can be set for the UIM. Both codes are set to “0000” at the subscription and can be changed to a code of your own choice. ➡P108

The PIN1 code is the 4 to 8-digit security code entered to confirm the user every time the UIM is inserted to the FOMA terminal or the power of the FOMA terminal is turned on to protect your FOMA terminal from unauthorized use by the third party. Entering the PIN1 code enables making or receiving calls and the FOMA terminal operations.

The PIN2 code is the 4 to 8-digit security code required when resetting the total calls cost, using a user certificate or requesting the issue of it.

- The settings of the PIN1/PIN2 codes and PIN1 Code ON/OFF are recorded in the UIM. When using the current UIM in a FOMA terminal you newly purchased, the PIN1/PIN2 codes that you set previously can be used likewise.

PUK (PIN Unlocking Key)

The PUK is an 8-digit number for canceling the state where the PIN1 code or PIN2 code is locked. You cannot change it.

- If you fail to enter the correct PUK for 10 consecutive times, the UIM is locked.

Security when turning the power on

- Certificate Download
- Connection to FirstPass compatible sites

Enter a PIN1 code

Enter a PIN2 code

If you enter a wrong PIN code 3 times in a row

Enter the PUK

OK

Set a new PIN code

If you enter a wrong PUK 10 times in a row

Contact a DoCoMo Shop

Changing the terminal security code

Change Security Code

- Enter the 4 to 8-digit number for the terminal security code.

- 1     ▶ Enter the current terminal security code

- 2 **New security code field** ▶ Enter a new terminal security code

Change security code
New security code
New security code-check

- 3 **New security code-check field** ▶ Enter the same terminal security code as entered in Step 2 ▶ 

Setting the PIN code

- Enter the 4 to 8-digit number for the PIN1/PIN2 code.

Setting to require entry of the PIN1 code when turning the power on

PIN1 Code ON/OFF

- If you fail to enter the correct PIN1 code for 3 consecutive times, the PIN1 code is locked. To unblock the PIN1 code's lock, see "Unlocking the PIN lock". ➡P108

- 1      ▶  or 
- 2 **Enter the PIN1 code only when you change the current setting**

PIN code
Enter PIN code
3 times left.

- The PIN1 code is set to "0000" at the time of subscription.

When PIN1 Code ON/OFF is set to ON

When the power is turned on, the PIN1 code entry screen appears. After entering the PIN1 code, the standby display appears.

- The operations of the FOMA terminal are unavailable unless a correct PIN1 code is entered.

Changing the PIN1/PIN2 code

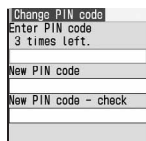
Change PIN1/PIN2 Code

- To change the PIN1 code, set PIN1 Code ON/OFF to *ON*.

Example Changing the PIN1 code

- Changing the PIN2 code:**

- Enter the terminal security code ▶ Enter the current PIN1 code



- New PIN code field ▶ Enter a new PIN1 code

- New PIN code - check field ▶ Enter the same PIN1 code as entered in Step 3 ▶



- If you fail to enter the current PIN1 code for 3 consecutive times, the PIN1 code is locked. To unblock the PIN1 code's lock, see "Unlocking the PIN lock". ➤P108

INFORMATION

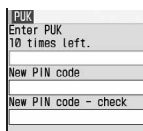
- Even if you fail to enter the correct PIN2 code for 3 consecutive times and the PIN2 code is locked, making/receiving calls or sending/receiving mail is available, but if you fail to enter the correct PIN1 code for 3 consecutive times and the PIN1 code is locked, those operations become unavailable.

Unlocking the PIN lock

If you fail to enter the correct PIN1/PIN2 code for 3 consecutive times, the PIN1 code is locked. In that case, cancel the lock and set a new PIN code.

Example Unlocking the PIN1 code's lock

- on the confirmation screen after the PIN code is locked
- Enter the 8-digit PUK



- New PIN code field ▶ Enter a new PIN1 code

- New PIN code - check field ▶ Enter the same PIN1 code as entered in Step 3 ▶



The PIN lock is canceled and a new PIN1 code is set.

Various lock functions

A variety of lock functions are available. You can select the function to suit your needs.

- You can set multiple lock functions at the same time.
- The settings of lock functions other than Key Lock and Secret Mode are retained even if the power is turned off.
- You can make emergency calls (110, 119 or 118) even when the lock functions other than Omakase Lock and Key Lock are set.

Lock function	Description	Page
All Lock	Disables the operations other than turning the power on/off and receiving calls to prevent unauthorized use by others.	P109
Omakase Lock (Remote Lock)	Prevents unauthorized use by others in case your FOMA terminal is lost or stolen.	P110
Self Mode	Disables using all the functions which require the communication such as making/receiving calls, etc.	P110

Lock function	Description	Page
Personal Data Lock	Disables using the private information functions such as Phonebook, Scheduler, etc. and prevents the display of and tampering with private information.	P111
Keypad Dial Lock	Disables pressing dial keys to make calls.	P112
Privacy Mode	Sets the operation when using or displaying the personal data.	P112
Receive Display	Sets whether to display the name or other items when a call or mail is received.	P114
Key Lock	Disables the key operations to prevent key errors.	P115
Secret Mode	Displays the phonebook data or schedule data with Secret Attribute set.	P115
IC Card Lock	Prevents from using the IC card function.	P236
IC Lock (power-off)	Prevents from using the IC card function when turning off your FOMA terminal.	P238

Preventing unauthorized use of your terminal

All Lock

To make emergency calls (110, 119 or 118) when All Lock is on, enter the emergency call number on the standby display and press . At this time, the emergency call number is displayed as “*” in the entry field of the terminal security code.

- Even when All Lock is set, IC Card Lock is not set. To set both functions, set All Lock after setting IC Card Lock. ➡ P236
- Even if All Lock is set, the UIM and the microSD memory card are not locked.

1 8 3 1 1 ▶ Enter the terminal security code

All locked. is displayed.

- **Canceling:** Enter the terminal security code on the standby display

When All Lock is on

- Only the following functions are available:
 - Canceling All Lock
 - Emergency calls
 - Receiving a call*1
 - Receiving i-mode Mail, Message R/F and SMS*2
 - Obtaining ToruCa from the reader
 - Turning the power on/off and Auto Power ON/OFF*3
- *1 The name and image of the party registered in the phonebook are not displayed, but only the phone number is displayed. In addition, the incoming image and ring alert for incoming calls return to the default setting and the substitute image for a videophone call is set to **Default image** (camera-off image). Chaku-moji can be received, but it is not displayed on the incoming screen. When All Lock is canceled, the Chaku-moji is displayed in the received call history.
- *2 Nothing is displayed on the screen or no ring alert is heard even when a call arrives.
- *3 The screen for the initial setting when the power is turned on is not displayed.
- The default image appears even if the standby display is set. Besides, Machi-chara is not displayed.
- Alarm Clock and schedule do not operate even when the specified date and time arrives.
- Indicator Light does not operate.
- The i-Channel information is not displayed as ticker on the standby display.
- Using Data Security Service does not allow you to save/update/restore the data from the FOMA terminal.

INFORMATION

- Calls/mails are received regardless of Reject/Accept Call.
- If a wrong terminal security code is entered 5 times consecutively when canceling All Lock, the power is automatically turned off.

Using Omakase Lock

Omakase Lock

This is a service that you can lock your FOMA terminal using remote control by informing DoCoMo or by operating from My DoCoMo in case it is lost or stolen. Your important private information and Osaifu-Keitai are protected. The lock can be canceled by phone call from you.

- Omakase Lock is a service to lock your FOMA terminal in which the UIM you have subscribed to is inserted.
- Omakase Lock is a pay service. Note that application is free if made at the same time as application for service suspension or during service suspension.

Setting/canceling Omakase Lock

-  **0120-524-360 Office hours: for 24 hours**
- Omakase Lock can be set/canceled on the My DoCoMo website from a PC.

- For details of Omakase Lock, see "Mobile Phone User's Guide [Procedures and After-Sales Service]".

When Omakase Lock is on

Omakase Lock activated is displayed and Omakase Lock is set.

- All the key operations are disabled except for receiving voice/videophone calls and turning the power on/off. Using functions including the IC card function are disabled.
- A voice/videophone call can be received, but the name and image, etc. of the other party registered in the phonebook are not displayed and only the phone number appears. In addition, the incoming image and ring alert for incoming calls return to the default setting and the substitute image for a videophone call is set to *Default image* (camera-off image). Canceling Omakase Lock returns to the former status.
- Chaku-moji can be received, but it is not displayed on the incoming screen. When Omakase Lock is canceled, it is displayed in the received call history.
- The mail received is stored in the Mail Center.

- The operation of turning the power on/off is available, but the lock setting is not canceled even though the power is turned off.
- Note that the UIM and microSD memory card are not locked.

INFORMATION

- Even if other functions are activated, those functions are ended and Omakase Lock is set. When there is data during editing, the function may be ended without saving the data.
- Even if other lock functions are used, Omakase Lock can be set.
- When your FOMA terminal is outside the service area, turned off or during Self Mode, the lock is not set.
- Omakase Lock is not set when you are subscribing to Dual Network Service and using the mova service.
- Omakase Lock is a service which locks the FOMA terminal by the offer of the FOMA card subscriber. The lock is set when an offer is made by the subscriber even if the subscriber is not the user of the FOMA terminal.
- Canceling the lock is available only when the UIM of the same phone number used for setting the lock is inserted. When the lock cannot be canceled, contact "General Inquiries" on the back of this manual.

Preventing making/receiving calls

Self Mode

Disable all the functions that require communications.

1 (for over a second) ▶ Yes

Self Mode is set and  is indicated on the standby display.

- To cancel, repeat the same procedure.

When Self Mode is set

The following functions cannot be used:

- Making/receiving a call
- Using i-mode
- Sending/receiving a mail, etc. or receiving Message R/F
- Infrared communication/iC communication or infrared remote control
- Obtaining ToruCa from the reader/writer

- Packet communication/64K data communication with the PC connected

INFORMATION

- Note that if emergency calls (110, 119 or 118) are dialed in Self Mode, Self Mode is canceled.
- If you receive a call when Self Mode is on, a guidance is played for the caller that radio waves are hard to reach or the power of your terminal is turned off. You can use Voice Mail Service and Call Forwarding Service.
- i-mode Mail or Message R/F sent during Self Mode are stored at the i-mode Center and SMS are stored at the SMS Center. To receive messages, cancel Self Mode and perform Check i-mode Message or Check SMS.

Preventing display of the phonebook or schedule

Personal Data Lock

Personal Data Lock prevents the display of and tampering with private information.

- This function cannot be set when Reject Unregistered Caller is set to **ON**.
- The setting of Receive Display is given priority over the setting of this function.

1 8 3 1 2 Enter the terminal security code 1 or 2

If Personal Data Lock is set,  is indicated on the standby display.

When Personal Data Lock is on

- When the data which is subject to Personal Data Lock has been set for the standby display or the ring alert, the default setting is applied while Personal Data Lock is on. The setting you made is restored when Personal Data Lock is canceled.
 - If **Normal** is set to **Kisekai Tool** in Menu Setting, **Tile display** is applied while Personal Data Lock is on.
- When data saved in the **Preinstalled** folder is set (except for Kisekai tool), the set standby display or ring alert is used even if Personal Data Lock is on.
- Machi-chara is not displayed while Personal Data Lock is on.

- The following operations (the whole operation or part of the setting) or functions become unavailable. However, the UIM and the microSD memory card are not locked.

- Mail*1/Chat Mail*1/SMS*1/Message R/F*1
 - Check i-mode Message
 - i-mode/Full Browser
 - i-Channel • i-αpli
 - Phonebook*2/Choku-den
 - Answer Machine/Voice Memo (Movie Memo)
 - Data Box (**My Picture**, **Melody**, etc.)
 - Data transfer via infrared communication/iC communication
 - Bar Code Reader/Camera/Sound Recorder/Music Player
 - ToruCa • IC card list
 - microSD • Data Security Service
 - Scheduler • Notepad
 - Alarm Clock
 - Call Ring Alert, Mail/Msg Ring Alert/Alarm sound
 - Anonymous Caller • Standby Display Setting
 - i-Channel Ticker
 - Mail Image
 - Videophone Image Setting
 - Machi-chara Setting
 - Virus Scan Function
 - Outgoing Call/Videophone Dialing
 - Call Alert/Videophone Alert
 - Reject/Accept Call
 - Headset Key Control
 - Software Update • Call Cost Limit
 - Reset • Delete All Data
 - Tone/Vibration message notification
 - 2in1 Setting
 - Number Setting/Incoming calls melody settings of Multi Number
 - Own Number • Chaku-moji
 - Speed Menu • Menu Setting
- *1 Messages can be received automatically, but nothing is displayed on the screen or no ring alert is heard even if received.

- *2 Only the phone number and the mail address are displayed on the related screens instead of the name and image of the caller registered in the phonebook.

Prohibiting keypad dial

Keypad Dial Lock

Disable making a call by dialing a phone number.

- You can also make a call or send a mail to the other party registered in the phonebook.

1 Enter the terminal security code or

If Keypad Dial Lock is set,  is indicated on the standby display.

Unavailable operations when Keypad Dial Lock is on

- Dialing from the received call history or redial data
- Editing, adding or deleting the phonebook data, Group Setting, and exchanging the phonebook data with the UIM or microSD memory card
- Editing and resetting Own Number data
- Phone To (AV Phone To) and Mail To functions
- Transferring the phonebook data or Own Number to/from the external devices
- Sending mails, chat mails or SMS (sending from the sent/received message log included)
- Reading mail template from the mail composition screen
- Composing mail on the template list/view screen
- Using network services by the dial key operation
- Initial Setting when the power is turned on
- 64K data communication/packet communication with the PC connected

Setting the use of personal information and the operation when displaying the information

Privacy Mode

Using the personal data requires entry of the terminal security code.

- To enable Privacy Mode Setting, you need to start Privacy Mode.

Setting the Privacy Mode operation

Privacy Mode Setting

1

2 Enter the terminal security code ▶ Set each item

PHbook/Logs/Choku-den:

Authorized access: Make entry of the terminal security code necessary in the following cases:

- Using the phonebook, Choku-den, redials, received call history, recorded messages or voice memos
- Displaying mail groups or Sort Method
- Activating Chat Mail

Mail:

Authorized access: Make entry of the terminal security code necessary in the following cases:

- Using mail, the sent/received message log, etc.
- Searching a mail from the phonebook or schedule
- Displaying mail groups or Sort Method
- Activating Chat Mail
- Downloading, updating or deleting Message i-appli

Hide secret fldrs: The folder with the privacy set to *ON* in the folder setting is not displayed. In addition, entry of the terminal security code is necessary in the following cases:

- Displaying mail groups or Sort Method
- Activating Chat Mail

My Picture/i-motion/Schedule:

Authorized access: Make entry of the terminal security code necessary when displaying.

i-appli:

Authorized access: Make entry of the terminal security code necessary in the following cases:

- Using or downloading i-appli
- Selecting a mail folder for Message i-appli

Auto start:

Sets the time period until Privacy Mode is started automatically, if no operation is performed while displaying the standby display.

INFORMATION

- If all the items except *Auto start* are set to *Show all*, Privacy Mode is not activated. In addition, when Privacy Mode has been activated, it is canceled automatically.

Starting Privacy Mode**1 (for over a second)**

- **Canceling:**  (for over a second) ▶
Enter the terminal security code

When Privacy Mode is started

When using personal data, entry of the terminal security code is required. Other than that, the following restrictions are applied:

■ **When PHbook/Logs/Choku-den is set to Authorized access**

- The name and image of the other party registered in the phonebook are not displayed on the screen for incoming/outgoing calls/emails, and only the phone number or mail address is displayed.
- The ring alert, vibrator or the videophone substitute image set in the phonebook data does not operate. They operate according to the settings for the FOMA terminal.
- The lists of missed calls and recorded messages are not displayed in the area for new information of the custom standby display.
- The person cannot be selected in the Custom menu.
- Even if the phonebook No. of Headset Key Control is set, calling by the headset switch cannot be made.

■ **When Mail is set to Authorized access**

- The list of unread messages is not displayed in the area for new information of the custom standby display.

■ **When Mail is set to Hide secret fldrs**

- When a mail is sent/received from the party whose mail is set to be sorted to the folder with the privacy set to *ON* in the folder setting, it is not displayed on new information or the sent/received message log. Mail is not displayed in the area for new information of the custom standby display.

■ **When My Picture or i-motion is set to Authorized access**

[General information]

- When the data other than the data registered by default is set for the ring alert or image in the FOMA terminal phonebook, the setting is disabled.
- The image or movie/i-motion set for the standby display is displayed.

[My Picture]

- When *Image* of Scheduler is set to *Yes* and the data other than the data registered by default is set, the setting is disabled.
- In still image shooting or movie recording, shooting/recording using a frame cannot be performed.
- Even if you display the list of pictogram D when entering the message text or editing the signature, the data other than the data registered by default is not displayed (except for being displayed from the decoration selection screen for mail).
- Even if entries in the FOMA terminal phonebook are copied or backed up to the microSD memory card, the still images set in the FOMA terminal phonebook are not copied or backed up.

[i-motion]

- When the data other than the *Preinstalled* folder data is set for the alarm clock sound or schedule reminder, the setting is disabled.

■ **When Schedule is set to Authorized access**

- Even if the set date and time arrives, the schedule alarm does not sound.
- The area for schedule of the custom standby display is not displayed.

- The day set as day-off in Day Off Setting of schedule is not displayed in red in the calendar of the custom standby display and reset to the default display. In addition, the dot indicating that the schedule is registered is not displayed.

INFORMATION

- If you execute Delete All Data or delete all the data while Privacy Mode is on, the data which is not displayed is also deleted.
- Depending on the settings for Privacy Mode, if you use mail or schedule from i-appli in Privacy Mode or save data to My Picture, a message may appear indicating that the specified function cannot be executed.
- The name displayed when a call or mail is received in Privacy Mode follows the Receive Display setting.
- If you receive a mail from the party for whom you set mails to be sorted to the folder with the privacy set to *ON* while Privacy Mode is on (with *Hide secret fldrs* set for *Mail*), the operation will be as follows:

Setting Receive Display	Operations for receiving
<i>Receiving message, show</i> Privacy mode, No ticker	No reception result screen appears or no ring alert sounds.
Mail address+Subject, Sender name+Subject, Ticker	The reception result screen is displayed and the reception operation such as sounding ring alert is performed. Alert by Contact is effective.*1

*1 When *PHbook/Logs/Choku-den* is set to *show all* in Privacy Mode Setting

- If you try to perform settings that will use the data set as *Authorized access* in Privacy Mode, a message may appear after you enter the terminal security code to indicate that the setting of items you set not to display in Privacy Mode Setting will take effect when Privacy Mode is canceled.

Releasing Privacy Mode temporarily

Privacy Mode is released temporarily on the list screen with data which is not displayed while Privacy Mode is on and all data which is set not to be displayed can be displayed. Temporary release is available until the standby display returns.

- Privacy Mode is also released temporarily if you enter the terminal security code when you use functions set to *Authorized access* in Privacy Mode Setting.

1 クリア (for over a second) on the screen for releasing temporarily ▶ Enter the terminal security code

INFORMATION

- The temporary release may not be available depending on the screen.

Setting not to display the name or other items when receiving calls/mails

Receive Display

1 MENU 8 3 3 ▶ Enter the terminal security code ▶ Set each item ▶

Receiving call, show:

Sets whether to display the name or the phone number when receiving a call (including while talking a voice call).

Receiving message, show:

Sets the display method of the mail reception result.

INFORMATION

- Even in the following cases, this setting is prioritized for displaying a call or mail being received.
 - While Personal Data Lock is on
 - While Privacy Mode is on (when set to other than *Privacy mode* of this setting).
- For an incoming call or mail from the party not registered in the phonebook, even if *Receiving call, show* is set to *Name*, the phone number is displayed. In addition, even if *Receiving message, show* is set to *Sender name+Subject*, the mail address is displayed instead of the name.

- When there is an incoming call or mail from the party with Secret Attribute set while Secret Mode is not on, the phone number or mail address is displayed even if the name is set to be displayed in this setting.

Preventing key errors

Key Lock

Disable the key operations and prevent wrong operations while you carry the terminal around by putting it into a bag, etc.

- Key Lock can be set/canceled even when the screen other than the standby display is displayed. However, you cannot set up while the wake-up screen appears.

1 [] (for over a second) or [] (twice)

Key Lock is set and the standby display disappears.

- To cancel, repeat the same procedure.
- Even if Key Lock is set, the screen is still displayed and  is indicated on the upper part of the display in the following cases:
 - When the shooting/recording screen of the camera is displayed or during the shooting/recording
 - When *Display light time* of Display Light Setting is set as follows:
 - When *Normal use* is set to *Always*
 - When charging the battery in case *AC adapter connected* is set to *Always on*
 - When executing functions for which *Always on* is set
- During a call, Key Lock is set in the state of temporary release and  (gray) is indicated on the upper part of the display. When a call is ended, Key Lock is set.

■ Lighting the display during Key Lock:



- When you press  again, the display disappears.
- The display lights when a call arrives.

INFORMATION

- When the power is turned off by Auto Power OFF or Software Update or you reboot while Key Lock is on, Key Lock is canceled.
- When setting or cancelling by pressing , press the second time without delay.

- Even while Key Lock is on, the following key operations can be performed. And, if an incoming call is answered or the call is handled by Response and Hold or Answer Machine, Key Lock is released temporarily and the key operations can be performed. When the call is ended, Key Lock is set again.

- Canceling Key Lock

- For an incoming voice call:

To receive a call: 

To handle the call by Response and Hold: 

To handle the call by Answer Machine:  (for over a second)

To stop the ring alert: / 

- For an incoming videophone call:

To receive a call: / 

To handle the call by Response and Hold: 

To handle the call by Answer Machine:  (for over a second)

To stop the ring alert: / 

- Stopping the alarm sound, etc.
- Holding down a switch of the equipment such as the Flat-plug Earphone/Microphone with Switch (optional) for over a second to make a voice call or receive a voice/videophone call.

Setting the lock automatically

Key Lock Timer

Key Lock can be set to be active automatically when the preset time (10 seconds to 5 minutes) has elapsed on the standby display.

1 [MENU] [8] [3] [1] [5]

2 Key lock timer field ▶ [1]

- To cancel: *Key lock timer* field ▶ [2] ▶ Go to Step 4

3 Timer field ▶ [1] - [5]

4

Displaying the data with Secret Attribute set

Secret Mode

If Secret Mode is set, the phonebook data or the schedule data with Secret Attribute set can be displayed. You need to set or cancel Secret Attribute while Secret Mode is on.

1 8 3 4 ▶ Enter the terminal security code

Secret Mode is set and  is indicated on the upper part of the display.

■ **Canceling:** on the standby display

- Also, press  8 3 4 on the standby display to cancel it.

INFORMATION

- If an animation, created animation or Flash movie is set on the standby display while Secret Mode is on, the first frame is displayed. If you press , Secret Mode is canceled and the animation, created animation or Flash movie is played.
- When a call/mail is received from the other party with Secret Attribute set, the ring alert set in the phonebook data are used only when Secret Mode is on.

Rejecting/accepting incoming calls from the specified phone numbers

Reject/Accept Call

Reject/Accept Call is set for each phone number registered in the FOMA terminal phonebook, and the setting is enabled by Reject/Accept Call. However, Reject Call and Accept Call cannot be enabled at the same time.

- Combination with Caller ID Request Service and Anonymous Caller is recommended when used.

Accepting only the incoming calls from the specified phone numbers

1 Search the phonebook ▶ Highlight a party ▶ 3 4 3

2 Enter the terminal security code ▶ Highlight a phone number ▶

3

Accept Call is set for the phone number.

- To cancel: 
- To set to multiple phone numbers, repeat Step 1 to 3. Entry of the terminal security code is required only when you operate from the standby display again.

4 8 4 5 1 on the standby display ▶ Enter the terminal security code

5

The setting of Accept Call for each phone number is enabled and only incoming calls from the phone numbers with Accept Call set are accepted.

- To cancel: 

Rejecting the incoming calls from the specified phone numbers

Even if there is an incoming call from the set phone number, the call is disconnected without activating the ring alert and the caller hears busy tones.

1 Search the phonebook ▶ Highlight a party ▶ 3 4 3

2 Enter the terminal security code ▶ Highlight a phone number ▶

3

Reject Call is set for the phone number.

- To cancel: 
- To set to multiple phone numbers, repeat Step 1 to 3. Entry of the terminal security code is required only when you operate from the standby display again.

4 8 4 5 1 on the standby display ▶ Enter the terminal security code

5

The setting of Reject Call for each phone number is enabled and all the incoming calls from the phone numbers with Reject Call set are rejected.

- To cancel: 

INFORMATION

- This function is activated only when the other party notifies the caller ID. If a call with no caller ID is received from a party that you set Reject Call to, the FOMA terminal operates according to the Anonymous Caller setting.
- The rejected calls are recorded as missed calls in the received call history.

- If the ringing time is set to 0 seconds for Voice Mail Service or Call Forwarding Service, Voice Mail Service or Call Forwarding Service is activated and the call is not recorded in the received call history.
- If the phone number with Reject/Accept Call set is changed or deleted, the setting is canceled. In that case, set Reject/Accept Call for the phone number changed or registered again.
- In case there is no phonebook data for which *Accept call* is set in Reject/Accept Call, when selecting *Accept call*, a message appears. When selecting *Yes*, all the calls are rejected.
- i-mode Mail or SMS is received regardless of this function's setting.
- When Accept Call or Reject Call is set to the phonebook data, **!** is indicated on the upper part of the phonebook data details screen.

Setting the operations for incoming calls with no caller ID

Anonymous Caller

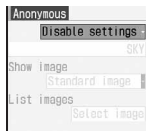
The operation for an incoming voice call with no caller ID can be set for each reason for no caller ID.

1 [MENU] 8 4 2 ▶ Enter the terminal security code

2 [1] - [3]

- The reason for no caller ID ◀P54

3 Set each item ▶ [M]



— Incoming operation

Incoming operation:

Sets the operation for an incoming call with no caller ID.

Disable settings: The ring alert set in Call Alert sounds.

Call Rejection: Rejects an incoming call.

Ring alert off: Makes the ring alert to be silent.

- When selecting any of *Melody*, *Movie ringtone* or *Music*, set the ring alert. Setting music data ◀P86
- When *Disable settings* or *Call Rejection* is set, *Show image* cannot be set. When movie/i-motion with sound and image is set for *Movie ringtone*, *Show image* is set to *Sync ring alert*.

Show image:

Sets an image displayed for an incoming call with no caller ID.

- When *Select image* or *i-motion* is selected, set an image.
- To play and check a melody or movie/i-motion file before selecting it ◀P86

Operations for incoming calls with no caller ID

- For the ring alert and incoming image in case there is an incoming voice call without caller ID, this function's setting is given priority over the setting of Call Alert.
- When there is an incoming videophone call without caller ID, it operates as set in the setting of Videophone Alert. However, when the incoming operation of this setting is set to *Call Rejection*, incoming calls are rejected.
- When Reject Unregistered Caller is set and a call without caller ID is received, the setting of Reject Unregistered Caller takes precedence over this function.

INFORMATION

- When *Call Rejection* has been set, the rejected calls are recorded as missed calls in the received call history.
- If you change the ring alert, *Show image* may be changed into *Standard image*. However, you can change the image to another one.

Muting the ring alert for calls from the party not registered in the phonebook

Mute Ring Time Setting

- The function is effective to nuisance calls such as "One-Ring Call".
- This function cannot be set when Reject Unregistered Caller is set to *ON*.

1 ▶ **Set each item** ▶

Delayed ring alert:

Specifies whether to enable this setting.

Delay time (sec):

Sets the time between the arrival of calls and the start of ringing (1 to 99 seconds).

Missed call:

Sets whether to display a missed call which ends in less than the time set in

Delay time in the received call history.

When Mute Ring Time Setting is on

When there is an incoming call from a caller who is not registered in the phonebook, the call will be notified only on the display for the set time period. After the set time has elapsed, normal ringer action will start.

- Even before the set time passes, answering an incoming call or replying by Answer Machine can be performed.
- This function also operates in the following cases:
 - When the caller ID is not notified even if the call is received from the party registered in the phonebook, or while Personal Data Lock or Privacy Mode (with *Authorized access* set for *PHbook/Logs/Choku-den*) is on.
 - While not in Secret Mode, there is an incoming call from the party with Secret Attribute set.

INFORMATION

- The following functions and services are operated regardless of this function's settings:
 - Public mode (Driving mode)
 - Answer Machine
 - Voice Mail Service
 - Call Forwarding Service

- If you receive a call from the phone number set to be rejected in Anonymous Caller, Anonymous Caller is prioritized over this function.
- In case *Delay time* is set to the same number of seconds as ringing time for Voice Mail Service or Call Forwarding Service, the ring alert may sound.

Rejecting incoming calls from the party not registered in the phonebook

Reject Unregistered Caller

- Combination with Caller ID Request Service is recommended to use.
- While Personal Data Lock is on or when *Delayed ring alert* in Mute Ring Time Setting is set to *ON*, this function cannot be set.

1 ▶ **Enter the terminal security code** ▶ or

When Reject Unregistered Caller is on

When there is an incoming call from the party who is not registered in the phonebook, the call is disconnected without activating the ring alert and the caller hears busy tone.

- The rejected calls are recorded as missed calls in the received call history.
- The call is also rejected in the following cases:
 - When the caller ID is not notified even if the call is received from the party registered in the phonebook.
 - While not in Secret Mode, there is an incoming call from the party with Secret Attribute set.

INFORMATION

- When there is an incoming call with no caller ID, this function's setting is prioritized over Anonymous Caller.
- i-mode Mail or SMS is received regardless of this function's setting.

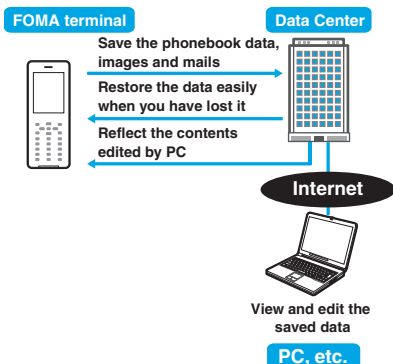
Using Data Security Service

Data Security Service

Data Security Service is a service which allows you to save the phonebook data, images and mails in your FOMA terminal (hereinafter described the saved data) to the Data Center of DoCoMo.

Even if your FOMA terminal is lost or exposed to water and the saved data is cleared, you can restore the data saved in the Data Center to a new FOMA terminal by operating in i-mode. In addition, the phonebook data of the FOMA terminal and the Data Center can be automatically updated on regular basis. In addition, you can edit easily the saved data in the Center from a PC by operating on the My DoCoMo web page and reflect the edited data to your FOMA terminal.

- For details of Data Security Service, see "Mobile Phone User's Guide [i-mode] FOMA version".



- Data Security Service is a pay service for which subscription is required (it requires i-mode subscription).
- To save or restore the data, refer to the following pages:
 - Phonebook data P81
 - Images P253
 - Mails P194

Other "Security settings"

You can also use the following functions and services related to Security settings besides those described in this chapter.

Purpose	Name of function and service
To prevent the IC card function from being used maliciously by others	IC Card Lock P236
To reject nuisance calls such as malicious calls and unwanted sales calls	Nuisance Call Blocking Service P347
To reject calls with no caller ID	Caller ID Request Service P347
To enable secure and dependable data communication by using electric authentication service Note: Only for FirstPass compatible sites	FirstPass P145, P162
To update the FOMA terminal software when necessary	Software Update P406
To protect the FOMA terminal from the data that causes problems	Virus Scan Function P412
To receive only the necessary mails from the i-mode Center	Receive Option Setting P180
To inform or check the safety of your family, relatives and friends by using i-mode when a disaster occurs	"i-mode Disaster Message Board" Service*1
To change the mail address	Change Mail Address*1
To reject mails containing URLs	Spam Mail Prevention (Reject Mail with URL)*1
To receive/reject only mails sent from the specified domains	Spam Mail Prevention (Reject/Receive Mail Settings)*1
To receive/reject mails only between i-mode terminals	
To receive/reject only mails from the specified addresses	
To set easily the recommended settings of Spam Mail Prevention	Spam Mail Prevention (Easy Mail Settings)*1
To reject the 500th and subsequent i-mode mails sent from an i-mode terminal in a single day	Spam Mail Prevention (Reject Mass i-mode Mail Senders)*1

Purpose	Name of function and service
To reject SMS	Spam Mail Prevention (SMS Rejection Settings)* ¹
To reject unsolicited AD mails	Spam Mail Prevention (Reject Unsolicited Ad Mail)* ¹
To restrict the size of mail to be received	Limit Mail Size* ¹
To check the current settings of mail function	Check Mail Settings* ¹
To stop the mail function temporarily	Suspend Mail* ¹

*¹ See "Mobile Phone User's Guide [i-mode] FOMA version".

Camera

Before using the camera	122
Shooting still images	Still Camera 126
Recording movies	Movie Camera 129
Recording the sound	Sound Recorder 130
Using zoom	131
Using auto timer	132
Shooting or recording nearby object	Macro 132
Changing the settings for shooting or recording	132
Setting the saving method of the still image/movie	
.....	Still Image Setting/Recording Setting 137
Sending still images shot during voice calls	One-shot Message 139
Using Bar Code Reader	Bar Code Reader 139

About copyrights and portrait rights

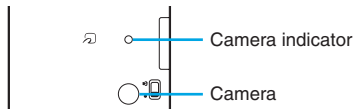
The copyright laws prohibit unauthorized use, such as reproduction, alteration and modification, of photographs or movies and i-mode site or website information obtained by using the FOMA terminal without the permission of the relevant copyright holders except for personal use. Please refrain from unauthorized use of portraits or names of other persons that may infringe on portrait rights. When you release shot or recorded work on websites, use care not to infringe on copyrights or portrait rights. Note that shooting or recordings at some demonstrations, performances or exhibitions may be prohibited even when only for personal use.



Please be considerate of the privacy of individuals around you when taking and sending images using camera-equipped mobile phones.

Before using the camera

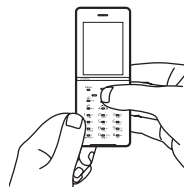
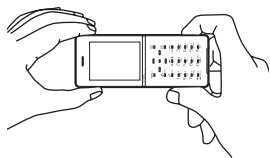
Still images and movies can be shot or recorded with your FOMA terminal camera. In addition, you can record sound as a movie/i-motion file without an image. Still images, movies and sound you shoot or record can be displayed/played on the FOMA terminal or saved to the microSD memory card. Also they can be sent via i-mode Mail as attachments or via infrared/iC communication. The camera is on the back of the FOMA terminal.



Precautions for using the camera

To shoot or record clean images

Hold your FOMA terminal firmly to shoot or record as shown in the illustration below.



- When shooting/recording, be careful not to move the FOMA terminal.
- Do not cover the lens with fingers or straps.
- If the lens is contaminated with fingerprints or skin oil, you cannot shoot/record clean images. Wipe out any such contaminants with soft cloth before shooting/recording.
- Shoot/record the object with the distance of at least about 60 cm. Switch to the macro mode when you want to shoot/record the object from a closer position. P132

- Auto timer is also effective to avoid camera shake because the shutter is automatically released.
- The use of shake reduction function is recommended during movie recording. P134

About the camera

- Though the camera is manufactured using extremely accurate technology, some pixels and lines may always be displayed lighter or darker than you expect. Noise such as dots and lines may increase especially when you shoot/record in a place with very low light intensity, but note that such noise is not a malfunction.
- When the lens is exposed to direct sunlight for a long period of time, the inside color filter will become discolored and images may be correspondingly discolored as well.
- When you attempt to shoot/record a strong light source such as the sun or a lamp or when the battery level is low, the image may become dark or degraded.
- When you shoot/record a fluorescent light or a bright window, bright stripes may run from the bright zone on the image, but this is not because of failure.
- Depending on the characteristics of the lens, displayed images may be distorted.
- Capturing under illumination flickering at high frequencies such as fluorescent lights, mercury vapor lights or sodium lights may make the screen flicker, but this is not a malfunction. Flickers may be reduced by changing the distance or the angle or by moving to another position. In addition, flickers can be reduced by flicker adjustment. P136
- Images taken with the camera may differ from the actual objects in color and brightness, depending on conditions.
- The shutter sound and the auto timer's countdown sound are heard even when **SILENT** is set for the ring alert volume or while Silent Mode or Public mode (Driving mode) is on. The volume cannot be changed.

- While the camera or Sound Recorder is ready, the camera indicator is on. During still image shooting, movie recording, sound recording, pause or countdown by the auto timer, the camera indicator and keys either light or flash depending on the state. You cannot set the camera indicator and keys not to light or flash. Also you cannot change the lighting pattern.

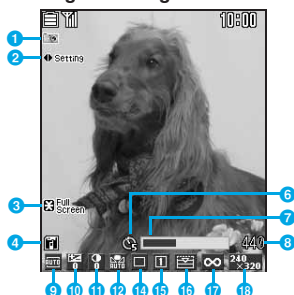
Points of concern when shooting/recording images/movies

- Set the brightness depending on the situation of the shooting/recording. P134
- When the microSD memory card is set as the memory to save, do not remove it while using the camera. The FOMA terminal may malfunction.
- If the battery power runs out before the shot still image or movie is saved, it is not saved.
- Because the camera consumes a lot of battery power, do not leave the camera activated or shot images/movies without being saved.
- If no action is taken on the shooting screen or recording screen for about 1 minute, Still Camera, Movie Camera or Sound Recorder terminates automatically by default. You can change the time period preceding termination. P138

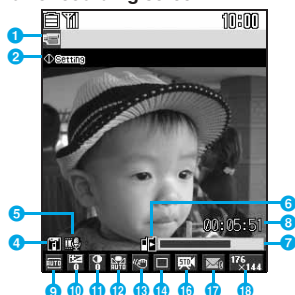
Viewing the shooting and recording screens

The shooting and recording screens

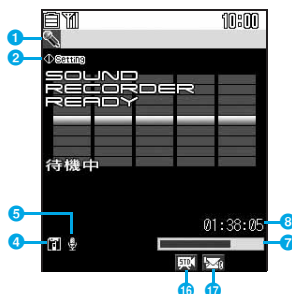
Still image shooting screen



Movie recording screen



Sound recording screen



1 Task bar icon P27

Indicates the state (the still image shooting, movie recording or sound recording).

2 Settings guide

Use to change settings for shooting/recording. P132

3 Screen mode switching guide

Use to switch between the standard and full-screen displays during still image shooting.

- When the full-screen mode is set, the settings guide disappears as well as icons and the guide row at the bottom of the screen.

During movie recording, this guide appears only when the image size is set to QVGA (320 x 240). You can switch between the vertical and horizontal recordings by pressing .

4 Save to P138

: FOMA terminal : microSD memory card

5 Recording type P138

: Video + Voice : Video only

- is displayed on the sound recording screen.

6 Auto timer/Dual Play Mode Still Camera

If the auto timer is set, the icon of the auto timer appears. P132

Movie Camera

 appears when Dual Play Mode is set to ON.  P137

7 Indicator

During standby for shooting/recording

Indicates the available storage space of the memory to save during the normal shooting or recording. Indicates the time remaining until the shutter is released during auto timer countdown.

- The microSD memory card storage area usage rate may not become 0 even when no still image, movie or sound has been saved.

During movie recording/sound recording/pause

Indicates the rate of the recorded movie/sound size to the file size set in size restrictions (or the allowable saving size when *None* is set).

8 Counter

During standby for shooting/recording

During the normal shooting or recording, it indicates the maximum number (estimate) of still images or the maximum recording time (estimate) of movies or sounds that can be saved to the FOMA terminal or the microSD memory card in the current setting. Indicates the time remaining until the shutter is released during auto timer countdown. Indicates shot number/total shot number during manual continuous shoot of still images.

During movie recording/sound recording/pause

Indicates the elapsed/remaining time (estimated remaining time before the recording stops).

9 Scene mode/effect P133

10 Brightness P134

11 Color density P134

12 White balance P134

13 Shake reduction P134

14 Frame P134

15 Continuous shooting P128

16 Quality P135

17 Size restrictions P135

18 Image size P135

INFORMATION

- Some settings may require extra time to show an image on the shooting or recording screen after you activated the camera.

- Some functions cannot be used or some settings cannot be changed when the camera is activated from the phonebook, mail or i-appli.

- The indicator, counter and size restrictions are not displayed when Still Camera is activated from i-appli. When Movie Camera is activated from i-appli, the size restrictions and storage area usage of the indicator are not displayed and the counter indicates available time for a single recording.

- During movie recording, when the horizontal recording for QVGA (320 x 240) is taken place,  **STANDBY** (recording standby),

-  **REC** (recording) and  **PAUSE** (in pause) are indicated and the displayed position of the counter is changed.

File names and file formats

The still image, movie or sound you shoot or record are assigned a file name, display name and title (except for still images) automatically according to the date and time of shooting or recording.

(Example) In case of 12:34:56 on May 20, 2008
→ 20080520123456

The file format is as follows:

Type	File formats (Extension)	Encoding methods
Still image	JPEG (JPG)*1	—
Movie	MP4 (3GP)*2	Image: MPEG-4 Sound: AMR

*1 Compatible to Exif format and PRINT ImageMatching
III

*2 The file format of MobileMP4

INFORMATION

- The file name and display name can be changed after shooting, movie recording or sound recording.  P280

Maximum number of saved still images

The maximum number of still images that can be saved in D705ip and the microSD memory card varies depending on the settings of image size, quality and size restrictions or the shooting conditions.

- The image size, quality and size restrictions can be set by Still Image Setting.

Maximum number of saved still images (D705ij terminal)

The estimated maximum number of still images that can be saved in D705ij is as shown below:

Unit: images

Quality Image size	Economy	Standard	Fine
96 x 72	463	463	463
128 x 96	463	463	463
176 x 144	463	463	463
240 x 320	463	463	353
352 x 288	463	463	292
640 x 480	292	210	123
480 x 640	292	203	122
960 x 1280	112	69	38

- If you delete the preinstalled data, you can save more images than the above table indicates.

Maximum number of saved still images (microSD memory card)

The estimated maximum number of still images that can be saved in the 64-Mbyte microSD memory card is as shown below:

Unit: images

Quality Image size	Economy	Standard	Fine
96 x 72	3,822	3,822	3,822
128 x 96	3,822	3,822	3,822
176 x 144	3,822	3,822	1,911
240 x 320	1,911	1,911	1,274
352 x 288	1,911	1,911	1,274
640 x 480	1,274	955	546
480 x 640	1,274	764	546
960 x 1280	477	294	173

Maximum recording time of movies

The maximum movie recording time varies depending on the settings of size restrictions, image size, quality and recording type and the recording conditions.

- The size restrictions, image size, quality and recording type can be set in Recording Setting.

Single recording time (D705ij terminal)

The estimated recording time for a single movie that can be saved in D705ij is as shown below:

Upper row in a cell: Video & Voice
Lower row: Video only

Size restrictions	Image size	Quality		
		LP	STD	HQ
Msg attach: Small	128 x 96	83 sec. 100 sec.	52 sec. 63 sec.	37 sec. 42 sec.
	176 x 144	56 sec. 63 sec.	29 sec. 32 sec.	20 sec. 21 sec.
	320 x 240	30 sec. 32 sec.	15 sec. 16 sec.	10 sec. 11 sec.
Msg attach: Large	128 x 96	340 sec. 351 sec.	214 sec. 257 sec.	152 sec. 172 sec.
	176 x 144	228 sec. 258 sec.	118 sec. 129 sec.	81 sec. 86 sec.
	320 x 240	121 sec. 129 sec.	62 sec. 65 sec.	42 sec. 43 sec.
None	128 x 96	56 min. 68 min.	35 min. 42 min.	25 min. 28 min.
	176 x 144	38 min. 43 min.	19 min. 21 min.	13 min. 14 min.
	320 x 240	20 min. 21 min.	10 min. 10 min.	418 sec. 433 sec.

Total recording time (D705ij terminal)

The estimated total recording time of movies that can be saved in D705ij is as shown below:

Upper row in a cell: Video & Voice
Lower row: Video only

Size restrictions	Image size	Quality		
		LP	STD	HQ
Msg attach: Small	128 x 96	56 min. 68 min.	35 min. 43 min.	25 min. 28 min.
	176 x 144	38 min. 43 min.	19 min. 21 min.	13 min. 14 min.
	320 x 240	20 min. 21 min.	10 min. 10 min.	409 sec. 450 sec.
Msg attach: Large	128 x 96	56 min. 68 min.	35 min. 42 min.	25 min. 28 min.
	176 x 144	38 min. 43 min.	19 min. 21 min.	13 min. 14 min.
	320 x 240	20 min. 21 min.	10 min. 10 min.	420 sec. 430 sec.
None	128 x 96	56 min. 68 min.	35 min. 42 min.	25 min. 28 min.
	176 x 144	38 min. 43 min.	19 min. 21 min.	13 min. 14 min.
	320 x 240	20 min. 21 min.	10 min. 10 min.	418 sec. 433 sec.

- If you delete the preinstalled data, you can record longer than the above table indicates.

Total recording time (microSD memory card)

The estimated total recording time of movies that can be saved in the 64-Mbyte microSD memory card is as shown below:

Upper row in a cell: Video & Voice
Lower row: Video only

Size restrictions	Image size	Quality		
		LP	STD	HQ
Msg attach: Small*1	128 x 96	169 min. 203 min.	105 min. 128 min.	75 min. 85 min.
	176 x 144	114 min. 128 min.	59 min. 65 min.	40 min. 42 min.
	320 x 240	61 min. 65 min.	30 min. 32 min.	20 min. 22 min.
Msg attach: Large*1	128 x 96	169 min. 204 min.	106 min. 127 min.	75 min. 85 min.
	176 x 144	113 min. 128 min.	58 min. 64 min.	40 min. 42 min.
	320 x 240	60 min. 64 min.	30 min. 32 min.	20 min. 21 min.
None*2	128 x 96	169 min. 204 min.	106 min. 127 min.	75 min. 85 min.
	176 x 144	113 min. 128 min.	58 min. 64 min.	40 min. 42 min.
	320 x 240	60 min. 64 min.	30 min. 32 min.	20 min. 21 min.

*1 The maximum recording time of a movie is the same as shown under "Maximum recording time of a movie (D705ip terminal)".

*2 You can also record a movie up to the total recording time.

Maximum recording time of sounds

The maximum sound recording time varies depending on the settings of quality and size restrictions.

- The settings of quality and size restrictions can be set in Recording Setting.

Single recording time (D705ip terminal)

The estimated recording time for a single sound clip that can be saved in D705ip is as shown below:

Quality	File size restrictions		
	Msg attach: Small	Msg attach: Large	None
STD	485 sec.	32 min.	33 min.
HQ	319 sec.	21 min.	21 min.

Total recording time (D705ip terminal)

The estimated total recording time of sound clips that can be saved in D705ip is as shown below:

Quality	File size restrictions		
	Msg attach: Small	Msg attach: Large	None
STD	331 min.	331 min.	331 min.
HQ	217 min.	217 min.	217 min.

- If you delete the preinstalled data, you can record longer than the above table indicates.

Total recording time (microSD memory card)

The estimated total recording time of sound clips that can be saved in the 64-Mbyte microSD memory card is as shown below:

Quality	File size restrictions		
	Msg attach: Small	Msg attach: Large	None
STD	988 min.	989 min.	990 min.
HQ	650 min.	650 min.	650 min.

- Recording time of *Msg attach:Small* and *Msg attach:Large* for a single recording is the same as that for saving in D705ip.
- In case of *None*, recording up to the total is available for a single recording.

Shooting still images

Still Camera

Shooting still images

1 (for over a second)



Still image shooting screen

Still Camera is activated.

- To switch between the full-screen display and the standard display:



2 Point the camera at the object or



The shutter sound is heard and a still image is shot. A confirmation screen appears.

- There is a small time lag between shooting a still image and pressing  or . Do not move the FOMA terminal for a period after pressing  or .

3 or

The shot still image is saved in the *Camera* folder of *My Picture*.

- When the memory to save is set to the microSD memory card, the image is saved in the *My Picture* folder of the microSD memory card.
- To shoot another image without saving the shot image: 
- To display the still image with the display size of H-VGA (640 x 480) or more at the same size and check it: 
 - Press  to scroll. Press  to return to the original size.
- For auto-saving without displaying a confirmation screen 

■ Checking the saved still image: ▶

Highlight the still image ▶ 

- To check the still image saved in the microSD memory card:  ▶
- Highlight a folder  ▶ Highlight a still image 

Operations available on the confirmation screen

The following operations are available on the confirmation screen of Step 3.

■ Sending mail with images attached:

- A confirmation screen appears asking whether or not to save the shot still image. Select *Yes* to save the image and the mail composition screen appears.
- Depending on the image size, a confirmation screen appears asking whether to convert the image to the size of Standby.
- A confirmation screen appears asking whether to adjust the file size of the shot still image depending on the settings of the image size and size restrictions. Select *No limit* to save the shot still image at the original size, select *Msg attach:Small* to save the shot still image in the file size smaller than 90 Kbytes. Then the mail composition screen appears.

- If the image file size is smaller than 90 Kbytes, a confirmation screen appears. Select *Yes* to paste it into the mail text, and select *No* to set it to the attached file.
- Even when the memory to save is set to the microSD memory card, the image is saved to the FOMA terminal.

■ Setting the image for the standby display:

   ▶ *Yes*

The shot still image is saved and set for the standby display.

- If zooming is available for the shot still image, select *Yes (Same size)* to maintain the image size or select *Yes (Large size)* to enlarge it to the screen size.
- If the i-appli standby display has been set, a confirmation screen appears.
- When the memory to save is set to the microSD memory card, the image cannot be set for the standby display.

■ Adding the image to phonebook entries (only when the image size is Ph.Book (96 x 72)): ▶ or ▶ *Yes*

The shot still image is saved and the phonebook registration screen appears.

- To update saved entries, select the party to add the image.
- When the memory to save is set to the microSD memory card, the image cannot be added to the phonebook entry.

■ Changing the title: ▶ **Enter the title (up to 31 one-byte or two-byte characters (30 characters for continuous shot images))** ▶

■ Adjusting the brightness or color balance:

- Follow the procedure from Step 2 in "Adjusting brightness and tone balance" 
- When the image size is H-VGA (640 x 480) or more, or a frame is set in four-frame shooting, you cannot adjust the brightness and color balance.

■ Switching the memory to save between the FOMA terminal/microSD memory card:

- After saving the still images, the setting for the memory to save returns to the setting before switching.

■ Displaying the list of images stored:

MENU 8 ▶ **1** or **2**

- For displaying the images in the microSD memory card in the list, select the folder.

INFORMATION

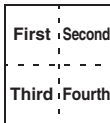
- Saving the shot still image may take time depending on the image size, quality or memory to save.
- Shooting still images during a voice call may interrupt the call.
- If a call arrives before you complete saving the still images you have shot, the shot still images may be discarded.
- Even if you set the shooting date/time to **Date** or **Date + Time** in Still Image Setting, the date or the time is not displayed on the image confirmation screen after shooting. The date or the time is displayed on the saved still image. On the still image with the display size of H-VGA (640 x 480) or more, the date or the time is displayed if you press **[F5]** on the image confirmation screen and display the still image at the same size.
- You cannot save the still images you shot to the microSD memory card while the microSD memory card is being used by another function.
- To switch to movie recording: **[F5]** on the still image shooting screen

Shooting continuously

The following types of shooting can be performed. In any case, automatic continuous shooting to shoot the images at the 0.4-second intervals and manual continuous shooting to shoot the images one by one are available.

- Automatic continuous shooting/manual continuous shooting
Up to 9 still images can be shot continuously. The shot images are saved in the format of created animation in **My Picture** and can be displayed continuously like animations. The image sizes which can be shot are Sub-QCIF (128 x 96), QCIF (176 x 144), Standby (240 x 320) and CIF (352 x 288).
- The number of images to be shot is set in Still Image Setting.
- If you use the function to cancel created animation in **My Picture**, you can divide the still images shot continuously into separate still images.

- If the still images shot continuously are saved in the microSD memory card, they are saved as separate still images.
- Automatic four-frame shooting/manual four-frame shooting
Shots 4 still images of the size of 120 x 160 and makes the images arranged to one still image. The image size which can be shot is only Standby (240 x 320).



1 (for over a second)

Still image shooting is activated.

2 to highlight the icon for continuous shooting ▶ to highlight the shooting method ▶



Icon of continuous shooting

- : Automatic continuous shooting
- : Manual continuous shooting
- : Automatic four-frame shooting
- : Manual four-frame shooting
- : OFF (Continuous shooting deactivated)

- The cursor does not move to the icon for continuous shooting on the image size in which continuous shooting cannot be performed.

3 Point the camera at the object ▶ or

In the automatic continuous shooting, the shutter sound specific to that shooting is heard and still images are continuously shot till their count reaches the predefined number. In the manual continuous shooting, only the first of the continuous still images is shot with the shutter sound. To shoot the next ones, press or for each time.

- To stop manual continuous shooting or manual four-frame shooting on the way:



- In case of manual four-frame shooting, the still images shot by then cannot be saved.
- Automatic continuous shooting and automatic four-frame shooting cannot be stopped on the way.

4 View and confirm the still images shot continuously

- To shoot another image without saving the shot images: **[ZAP]**
- When you shoot 2 or more images by automatic continuous shooting or manual continuous shooting, the display switches between one image and thumbnail display each time you press **[ZAP]**. When one image is displayed, press **[ZAP]** to show the previous or next still image.

5 or

The still images are saved.

■ Saving only one still image (only for automatic continuous shooting/manual continuous shooting):

- ① **Highlight a still image**
 - Display the still image to be saved for one image display.
- ②  **(for over a second)** ▶ *Yes*
 - Unsaved still images are discarded.

■ Saving the selected still images (only for automatic continuous shooting/manual continuous shooting):

- ① **[MENU] [5] [2] during the thumbnail display** ▶ **Highlight still images that are not to be saved** ▶ 
 - Press **[ZAP]** to zoom the still image at the cursor position. To return to the thumbnail display, press .
- ② **[ZAP] ▶ Yes**
 - Unsaved still images are discarded.

INFORMATION

- If a call arrives or the time set for the alarm clock or schedule alarm is reached during manual continuous shooting, the shooting ends at that point. In case of manual four-frame shooting, the still images shot by then are discarded and cannot be saved.

Recording movies

Movie Camera

1 **[MENU] [6] [6] [2]**



Movie recording screen

Movie Camera activated.

- To switch between the vertical and horizontal recording modes: **[*]**
- The switching occurs only when the image size is set to QVGA (320 x 240).

2 **Point the camera at the object** ▶ or

The shutter sound is heard and recording starts.  appears at the bottom of the screen.

- To pause during recording: 
 -  switches to . Press  or  to resume recording.

3 **[ZAP] or**

The shutter sound is heard and the recording is finished. A confirmation screen appears.

- If the size of movie file reaches the limit during recording, the recording is automatically stopped.
- To end the recording during pause: **[ZAP]**

4 or

The recorded movie is saved in the *Camera* folder of *i-motion*.

- When the microSD memory card is set as the memory to save, the image is saved in the *Movie* folder of the microSD memory card.
- To record another movie without saving the recorded movie: **[ZAP]**
- To play the movie: **[ZAP]**
- For auto-saving without displaying a confirmation screen ▶ P138

■ **Checking the saved movie:** **[ZAP] ▶**

- **Highlight a movie** ▶ 
 - To check the movie saved in the microSD memory card: **[ZAP] ▶**
 - Highlight a folder ▶  ▶ Highlight a movie ▶ 

Operations available on the confirmation screen

The following operations are available on the confirmation screen of Step 4.

■ Sending mail with images attached: ►

Yes

The recorded movie is saved and the mail composition screen appears.

- Even when the memory to save is set to the microSD memory card, the movie is saved to the FOMA terminal.
- If the file size of the recorded movie exceeds 2 Mbytes, the movie cannot be attached.
- If you want to send the recorded movie to any terminal other than the below*1, set Dual Play Mode to *ON* before recording.

■ P137

*1 903i series, 904i series, 905i series, 703i series (except P703i μ), 704i series (except P704i μ) and 705i series

■ Setting the movie for the standby display:

   ► **Yes**

The recorded movie is saved and set for the standby display.

- If zooming is available for the recorded movie, select *Yes(Same size)* to maintain the image size or select *Yes(Large size)* to enlarge it to the screen size.
- When the i- α pli standby display has been set, a confirmation screen appears.
- When the memory to save is set to the microSD memory card, the movie cannot be set for the standby display.

■ Adding the movie to phonebook entries:

  ►  or  ► **Yes**

The recorded movie is saved and the phonebook registration screen is displayed.

- To update saved entries, select the party to add the movie.
- Movies can be added to the phonebook entry only when the recording type is set to *Video only*.
- When the memory to save is set to the microSD memory card, the movie cannot be added to the phonebook entry.

■ Changing the title: ► Enter the title (up to 31 one-byte or two-byte characters) ►

■ Switching the memory to save between the FOMA terminal/microSD memory card:

- If the file size of the recorded movie exceeds 2 Mbytes, the saving destination cannot be switched.
- After saving the movies, the setting for the memory to save returns to the setting before switching.

■ Displaying the list of movies stored:

  ►  or 

- For displaying the movies in the microSD memory card in the list, select the folder.

INFORMATION

- Movie/sound recording may be stopped before the file size reaches the limit set for the size restrictions, depending on data you record.
- When a call arrives, the time set for the alarm clock or schedule alarm, etc. is reached or  is pressed during movie/sound recording, the recording ends at that point. The data recorded by then can be saved.
- If the battery is running out during movie/sound recording, the low battery message appears and the recording ends. The data recorded by then can be saved.
- You cannot save the movie on the microSD memory card while the microSD memory card is being used by another function.
- To switch to still image shooting:  on the movie recording screen

Recording the sound

Sound Recorder

1   

Sound Recorder is activated.

2  or 

The shutter sound is heard and recording starts.  appears at the bottom of the screen.

- The sound is recorded through the microphone.
- To pause during recording:   switches to . Press  or  to resume recording.

3 or

The shutter sound is heard and recording is finished. A confirmation screen for the recorded sound is displayed.

- If the file size exceeds the limit, recording ends automatically.
- To end the recording during pause: 

4 or

The recorded sound is saved in the *Camera* folder of *i-motion*.

- When the microSD memory card is set as the memory to save, the sound is saved in the *Other movie* folder of the microSD memory card.
- Functions available on the confirmation screen are the same as in movie recording.
 - You cannot set the sound to the standby display or add it to phonebook entries.
 - When the file size of the recorded sound exceeds 2 Mbytes, you cannot attach it to mail or change the memory to save it.
- To record again without saving the recorded sound: 
- To play the sound: 
- For auto-saving without displaying a confirmation screen 

■ Checking the recorded sound: ▶

Highlight the sound ▶ 

- To check the sound saved in the microSD memory card:  ▶
- Highlight a folder ▶  ▶ Highlight a sound ▶ 

INFORMATION

- To switch to Sound Recorder on the still image shooting screen or movie recording screen: 
- ▶ **Switch mode** ▶ **Sound recorder**
- For the usage precaution for Sound Recorder, see INFORMATION in "Recording movies".
- P130

Using zoom

The display magnifications which can be changed in each image size are as follows:

■ During still image shooting

Image size	Max. display magnification	Zoom scale
Ph. Book (96 x 72)	10.0 times	25 scales
Sub-QCIF (128 x 96)	7.4 times	22 scales
QCIF (176 x 144)	5.4 times	18 scales
Standby (240 x 320)	4.0 times	15 scales
CIF (352 x 288)	2.7 times	11 scales
H-VGA (640 x 480)	1.4 times	5 scales
V-VGA (480 x 640)	2.0 times	8 scales
SXGA (960 x 1280)	Not available	

■ During movie recording

Image size	Max. display magnification	Zoom scale
Sub-QCIF (128 x 96)	6.0 times	4 scales
QCIF (176 x 144)	4.0 times	3 scales
QVGA (320 x 240) vertical recording	2.0 times	2 scales
QVGA (320 x 240) horizontal recording	4.0 times	3 scales

1 on the still image shooting screen or the movie recording screen



During still image shooting

Each time you press the magnification changes and the slider indication shifts.

- Shooting/recording procedures for still images and movies are the same as in normal shooting/recording.

Slider

Using auto timer

The shutter is automatically released to shoot a still image after the specified number of seconds has elapsed. The number of seconds can be selected from among 2, 5, 10 and 15.

- You cannot use auto timer for manual continuous shooting or manual four-frame shooting. This function is unavailable for movie recording.

1 [MENU] 4 on the still image shooting screen

2 [1] - [4]

The auto timer is set and any of the , and is displayed.

- To cancel the setting: [5]

3 Point the camera at the object or

The countdown sound is heard and the auto timer starts countdown. The indicator and counter show an estimate of the remaining time before shooting and the remaining number of seconds. The interval of sounds becomes shorter as the shooting time approaches. After the specified number of seconds has elapsed, the shutter sound is heard and shooting is started.

- To stop the auto timer: [0]
- Shooting stops if a call arrives, the time set for the alarm clock or schedule alarm arrives, or is pressed during auto timer countdown.

Shooting or recording nearby object

Macro

To shoot or record an object from a very short distance with the camera, turn the macro mode switch on the side of the FOMA terminal to

(Macro).



- Slide the switch (and do not stop sliding) until it reaches the end of the side.
- When shooting/recording, keep the distance of 8 to 10 cm in the macro mode or at least 60 cm in the normal mode.
- At the end of shooting/recording in the macro mode, be sure to turn the macro mode switch back to (normal mode). If you shoot/record a distant object without canceling (Macro), you cannot get a sharp picture.

Changing the settings for shooting or recording

Setting the scene mode/effect, size, etc.

1 to highlight the icon on the still image shooting screen or the movie/sound recording screen



For scene mode/effect

- Flicker adjustment cannot be set by the icon. Setting flicker adjustment P136
- On the sound recording screen, only icons for the quality and the size restrictions can be set.

- Keypads of [1] - [9] and [0] are assigned for each icon from the left. Icons can be selected also by pressing the relevant keypad.

[1] : Scene mode/effect

[2] : Brightness [3] : Color density

[4] : White balance

- [5] : Shake reduction (only for movie recording)
- [6] : Frame
- [7] : Continuous shooting (only for still image shooting) P128
- [8] : Quality
- [9] : Size restrictions
- [0] : Image size

2 to highlight an item to set

- Alternatively, you can set a frame by pressing [6] repeatedly to choose a frame and pressing .
- To cancel the frame, hold down [6] for over a second on the still image shooting screen or the movie recording screen.

INFORMATION

- The following settings will be maintained even after you terminate still image shooting or movie/sound recording.
 - Brightness • Color density • Shake reduction
 - Quality • Size restrictions • Image size
 - Flicker adjustment

Scene mode/effect

Setting types are available according to color tone and shooting/recording situation.

Full auto:

- Standard scene mode/effect (default).
- Use this mode normally.

Adjust backlight:

Compensates backlight images by adjusting brightness of the darkened part such as face.

Spot photometry:

Brightness of the whole image is set based on its central part.

Scenery:

- Suitable for shooting/recording nature or cityscape vividly.
- Intensity and sharpness are set rather high.

Night:

- Slows the shutter speed for shooting/recording at night.
- Hold the terminal firmly to prevent blurring.

Twilight:

- Suitable for shooting/recording the beautiful sunset scenery.
- With high intensity, images tend to look rather cyan.

Surf&Snow:

Enhances the blue of the sky and sea, and the white of snow.

Sport:

Shutter speed is set to high, allowing you to shoot/record fast-moving objects with less jiggling.

Per:

Shutter speed and color intensity are set to high.

Gourmet:

Suitable for shooting/recording cuisines and sweets.

Letter:

Enhances letter outlines.

Whiten:

- Skin-color looks brighter and whiter.
- Recommended for indoor shooting/recording.

Suntan:

- Skin-color looks sun-tanned.
- Recommended for outdoor shooting/recording.

Soft touch:

Blurs the outlines to soften the image.

Mono tone (red):

Shoots/records in monotone of red gradation.

Mono tone (green):

Shoots/records in monotone of green gradation.

Mono tone (blue):

Shoots/records in monotone of blue gradation.

Monochrome:

Shoots/records images like black-and-white photographs.

Sepia:

Shoots/records in sepia colors.

- Night** cannot be set with the automatic continuous shooting or automatic four-frame shooting.

- In **Night** mode, color is captured more precisely; due to the camera characteristics, there may be noise (such as lines) in the images/movies shot/recorded in a low-light situation.
- In **Sport** or **Pet** mode, shoot/record in a sufficient-light situation. There may be noise in the images/movies shot/recorded in a room or a low-light situation.
- In **Gourmet** or **Letter** mode, switch to Macro when shooting/recording from a close range.
- To select a mode while viewing the description of each mode: on the still image shooting screen or movie recording screen

Brightness

: +2 : +1 : ± 0 (default)
: -1 : -2

- If you change the level, it may not give much effect depending on the object.
- You cannot change the setting depending on the scene mode/effect.

Color density

: +2 : +1 : ± 0 (default)
: -1 : -2

- If you change the level, it may not give much effect depending on the object.
- You cannot change the setting depending on the scene mode/effect.

White balance

Natural color tone coordinated with the light source is provided for shooting/recording.

Auto:

Adjusts white balance automatically (default).

Sunlight:

Sets when shooting/recording outdoor in fine weather.

Cloudy:

Sets when shooting/recording in cloudy weather, shade or evening.

Fluorescent light:

Sets when shooting/recording under illumination such as a fluorescent lamp.

Bulb light:

Sets when shooting/recording under illumination such as an electric bulb.

- You cannot change the setting depending on the scene mode/effect.

Shake reduction

Set whether to use the shake reduction function during movie recording.

- You cannot use this function during still image shooting.

Auto:

Shake reduction is automatically activated when the settings and conditions for recording are likely to cause camera shake (default).

OFF:

Shake reduction is disabled.

INFORMATION

- Camera shake may not be corrected in the following cases:
 - When camera shake is too much
 - When the object is moving
 - When recording with zoom
 Even in other cases, note that camera shake may not be corrected, depending on the object or recording situation.
- When you record a movie using the shake reduction function, the angle of coverage becomes narrower as compared with the case where shake reduction is disabled.

Frames

You can select frames saved in the FOMA terminal or frame images downloaded from sites.

: Frame is set.

: Frame is canceled (default).

- The frames registered in the FOMA terminal by default are applicable to image sizes of QCIF (176 x 144) and Standby (240 x 320).
- Frames cannot be set when Ph. Book (96 x 72), H-VGA (640 x 480), V-VGA (480 x 640) or SXGA (960 x 1280) for image size of still image, or QVGA (320 x 240) for image size of movie is set.

INFORMATION

- To select a frame from the list: Highlight a frame
- If you select a frame having the aspect ratio reverse to that of the image; for example, when you have selected a 144 x 176 frame while the image size is QCIF (176 x 144), the frame is displayed after rotating 90 degrees clockwise. Also the frame rotates 180 degrees by pressing on the still image shooting screen or movie recording screen. Note that the frame cannot be rotated if it is the same as the image size in terms of horizontal and vertical values.
- When the frame downloaded from a site is not displayed, press on the still image shooting screen or movie recording screen.

Quality

■ During still image shooting



- Provides the highest quality.
- The file size is enlarged.



- Provides the standard quality (default).



- Provides the lowest quality.
- The file size is reduced.

■ During movie/sound recording



- The movie motion becomes smooth.
- The file size is enlarged and the recording time becomes the shortest.



- Provides the standard quality (default).



- Provides the lowest quality.
- The file size is reduced and the recording time becomes the longest.
- You cannot set **LP** for sound recording.

Size restrictions

Set the size restrictions of files.

■ During still image shooting

When the file size of the shot still image is larger than the limit value, this setting automatically degrades the quality or reduce the file size to save the image.



No restriction for the file size (default).



Msg attach:Large*1:

- Restricts the file size to 2 Mbytes.
- You can attach the image to i-mode Mail without changing the file size.



Msg attach:Small*1:

- Restricts the file size to 90 Kbytes.
- The image with this file is suitable for attaching to i-mode Mail.
 - If the image size is SXGA (960 x 1280), you cannot use **Msg attach:Small** for the setting.
 - The setting for size restrictions may be changed automatically depending on the setting for the image size.

■ During movie/sound recording

When the file size of movie/sound exceeds the limit value during movie/sound recording, recording ends automatically.



- No restriction for the file size.



Msg attach:Large*1:

- Restricts the file size to 2 Mbytes (default).



Msg attach:Small*1:

- Restricts the file size to 500 Kbytes.
- The file of this size is suitable to be attached to i-mode Mail.

- To send the recorded movie/sound as an i-mode mail attachment, set the size restriction to other than **None**.

*1 When you highlight the icon, **Msg attach S** or **Msg attach L** is displayed on the screen.

Image size

You can set the following image size:

Shooting method	Icon	Image size	Remarks
Still Camera		Ph.Book (96 x 72)	①
		Sub-QCIF (128 x 96)	
		QCIF (176 x 144)	
		Standby (240 x 320)	
		CIF (352 x 288)	②
		H-VGA (640 x 480)	
		V-VGA (480 x 640)	
		SXGA (960 x 1280)	

Shooting method	Icon	Image size	Remarks
Movie Camera		Sub-QCIF (128 x 96)	3
		QCIF (176 x 144)	
		QVGA (320 x 240)	

- 1**: Images can be sent as an i-mode mail attachment. In addition, these sizes are suitable for attaching to Deco-mail.
- 2**: Images can be sent as an i-mode mail attachment. A confirmation screen appears asking whether to convert the image to the size of Standby when attaching files to mail.
- 3**: Images can be sent as an i-mode mail attachment.
- Default image size:
 - Still image: Standby (240 x 320)
 - Movie: QCIF (176 x 144)
 - The maximum size of an image or movie file that can be sent to the i-mode terminals is up to 2 Mbytes.
 - Depending on the receiver's model, the file may not be received or displayed properly, or the movie may be degraded or displayed as continuous images.
 - If you send a movie file to devices other than the below*1, use the movie size of QCIF (176 x 144).
 - *1 903i series, 904i series, 905i series, 703i series (except P703iμ), 704i series (except P704iμ) and 705i series
 - The setting for size restrictions may be changed automatically depending on the setting for the image size.
 - The movie size cannot be set to QVGA (320 x 240) when Dual Play Mode is set to ON.

Flicker adjustment

If you set the flicker adjustment according to the power supply frequency of the area of use when the screen flickers under a fluorescent light etc., the flicker may be able to be reduced.

- Adjustment might fail to remove flickers if there is strong light from fluorescent or other lamps.

- 1**  **2**  **4** **on the still image shooting screen or the movie recording screen** 
- 1** - **3**

Auto:

Adjusts to reduce the flicker automatically (default).

50Hz (East-Japan):

Adjusts according to the power supply wave frequency of Eastern Japan.

60Hz (West-Japan):

Adjusts according to the power supply wave frequency of Western Japan.

INFORMATION

- This setting also applies to the flicker adjustment for the videophone and Bar Code Reader.  P62, P140
- If you use the shake reduction function with the flicker adjustment being set to *Auto*, flickering may not be adjusted sufficiently. It is recommended that you change the flicker adjustment setting according to the local power supply frequency.

Changing the settings collectively

You can set the brightness, color density, white balance and flicker adjustment at the same time.

1 **2** **5** **on the still image shooting screen or the movie recording screen**

■ Operating in the scene mode/effect setup screen:

- 1**  **1** **on the still image shooting screen or the movie recording screen**
- 2** **Highlight the scene mode/effect** 



2 **Set each item**

- The *Scene mode/effect* field displays the current scene mode/effect (or the scene mode/effect selected in the scene mode/effect setup screen if you have operated in that setup screen). It cannot be changed.
- Some items cannot be selected depending on the scene mode/effect.
- If you have operated in the scene mode/effect setup screen, pressing  sets the scene mode/effect as well.

- **Resetting all items to the default settings collectively:**  **Yes**

Optimizing the movie setting for various devices

Dual Play Mode

This function optimizes the movie you record and send to devices other than the below*1 and makes it playable on those devices.

*1 903i series, 904i series, 905i series, 703i series (except P703i μ), 704i series (except P704i μ) and 705i series

- If you set **ON**, the size restriction is changed to *Msg attach:Small*. If the image size is QVGA (320 x 240), it is changed to QCIF (176 x 144).

1 [MENU] 6 on the movie recording screen

- Each time you press these keys, the dual play mode switches between **ON** and **OFF**.

INFORMATION

- The icons of size restrictions cannot be selected when Dual Play Mode is set to **ON**. Also, you cannot set the image size of QVGA (320 x 240) using icons.

Restoring the default settings for shooting

Reset the settings for the scene mode/effect, brightness, color density, white balance and flicker adjustment to the default settings.

1 [MENU] 2 6 on the still image shooting screen or the movie recording screen ▶

Yes

Setting the saving method of the still image/movie

Still Image Setting/Recording Setting

Example When changing Still Image Setting

1 [CAMERA] (for over a second) ▶ [MENU] 7

- Changing Recording Setting on the movie recording screen: [MENU] 6 6

2 ▶ [MENU] 7

- Changing Recording Setting on the Sound Recorder screen: [MENU] 6 7

▶ [MENU] 1

2 Set each item ▶ [CAMERA]

- Checking the number of still images that can be shot (estimate): [MENU] on the still image setting screen

The number of still images that can be shot (estimate) is displayed for each image size and for each quality,

- The number of images is calculated based on the current size restrictions and the memory to save. For any image size that cannot be set when the size restriction is set to *Msg attach:Small*, *Msg attach:Large* will be used for the calculation.
- When the image size selection screen is being displayed, the number can also be displayed by pressing [MENU].

- Checking the available movie recording time (estimate): [MENU] on the movie/sound recording setting screen

For each image size and quality, the estimated available total recording time and the single recording time are displayed. A rough indication of the recording time for Sound Recorder is also displayed.

- The available recording time is calculated based on the current recording type, the memory to save and the size restrictions.
- When the recording time of a movie exceeds 13 hours, 13:00:00 is displayed. When the recording time of a sound clip exceeds 149 hours, 149:00:00 is displayed. For the total recording time exceeding 999 hours, 59 minutes and 59 seconds, 999:59:59 is shown.

Still image setting

Image size:

Set the image size (the default is *Standby(240x320)*). ➡P135

- You cannot set *Msg attach:Small* (size restrictions) and image size of *SXGA(960x1280)* at the same time.

Size restrict:

Set the file size restrictions (the default is *None*). ➡P135

Quality:

Set the image quality (the default is *Standard*). ➡P135

Shooting date/time:

Set whether to insert the shooting date and time at the lower right of still images (the default is *None*).

- Even when *Date* or *Date + Time* has been set, the shooting date/time will not be inserted if the image size is set at *Ph.Book(96x72)*.

Continuous shot photos:

Set the number of images to be shot continuously (2 to 9 images) (the default is 9).

Auto save:

Yes: The shot still image is automatically saved.

No: The image confirmation screen appears after shooting (the default is *No*).

Save to:

Select *Phone* or *microSD* (the default is *Phone*).

Camera time-out:

Set a time-out period of inactivity before the termination of still image shooting (the default is *1 min.*).

Shutter sound:

Select one from the shutter sounds 1 to 5 (the default is *Shutter sound 1*).

Set lighting:

Phone settings: The setting conforms to *Normal use of Display light time* of Display Light Setting. The default is *Always on*. ➡P95

Recording setting

Size restrict:

Set the size restrictions (the default is *Msg attach:Large*). ➡P135

Quality:

Set the movie quality for recording (the default is *STD(Standard)*). ➡P135

Image size:

Set the image size (the default is *QCIF(176x144)*). ➡P135

Recording Type:

Select *Video + Voice* or *Video only* as the recording type (the default is *Video + Voice*).

Size restrict:SoundREC:

Set the restrictions on file size for the voice recorded (the default is *Msg attach:Large*). ➡P135

Quality:Sound recorder:

Set the sound quality of the voice recorded (the default is *STD(Standard)*). ➡P135

Auto save:

Yes: The recorded movie/sound is automatically saved.

No: The confirmation screen appears after recording (the default is *No*).

Save to:

Select *Phone* or *microSD* (the default is *Phone*).

Camera time-out:

Set a time-out period of inactivity before the termination of movie recording or Sound Recorder (the default is *1 min.*).

Shutter sound:

Select one from the shutter sounds 1 to 5 (the default is *Shutter sound 1*).

Set lighting:

When *Phone settings* is set, the setting conforms to *Normal use of Display light time* of Display Light Setting. The default is *Always on*. ➡P95

INFORMATION

- Still Image Setting and Recording Setting are unavailable when the camera is activated from the phonebook, mail or i-appli. *Camera time-out* is automatically reset to *1 min.*
- If you change Recording Settings to as follows while Dual Play Mode set to *ON*, the mode is canceled.
 - *Size restrict*: *Msg attach:Large* or *None*
 - *Image size*: *QVGA(320x240)*

- If Recording Setting is set for either movie recording or Sound Recorder, both settings are changed.
- The settings of *Shutter sound* also apply to the settings of *System sound* of Sound Setting. ●P88
The *Set lighting* setting also applies to the settings of *Display light time* of Display Light Setting (for the still image shooting or the movie recording). ●P95

Sending still images shot during voice calls

One-shot Message

This function allows you to shoot a still image during a voice call and send it to the party you are talking with by attaching it to i-mode Mail.

- When you set the memory to save to *microSD* and *Auto save* is set to *Yes*, the still image you shot during a voice call cannot be sent. Set *Auto save* to *No* with Still Image Setting.
- Even if the memory to save is set to *microSD* memory card, the still image you send is saved in the FOMA terminal.

1 during a voice call

2 Shoot a still image

- When the memory to save is set to *Phone* and *Auto save* is set to *Yes*, a confirmation screen appears. If *Yes* is selected, the shot still image can be checked.
- The still images shot continuously are displayed as thumbnails. Press  to highlight the still image.

3 Save the still image according to the screen

The mail composition screen appears.

- The displayed screen is the same as with mail attachment made from a confirmation screen during still image shooting. ●P127
- If the mail address of the other party you are talking to has been registered in the phonebook, the other party's address is inserted in the receiver field automatically. However, the mail address is not inserted when Privacy Mode is active (with *Authorized access* set for *PHbook/Logs/Choku-den*).

4 Compose and send i-mode Mail

The i-mode Mail is sent and the shooting standby screen appears. Pressing  ends shooting and the screen returns to the talking screen.

Using Bar Code Reader

Bar Code Reader

You can scan and use text and numerics from the JAN code or QR code.

- You can save the scanned data up to 5 items.
- The bar codes and two-dimensional codes other than JAN and QR codes cannot be scanned.
- Some bar codes may not be scanned depending on the types and sizes.
- Scratches, dirt, damages, the low print quality, the strong reflection of light or some QR code versions may prevent the codes from being scanned.
- You can activate Bar Code Reader on the character entry screen and enter the scanned data directly. ●P339

JAN code

The JAN code is one of the bar codes indicating numbers with the vertical lines (bars) of different width. The bar codes of 8 digits (JAN8) or 13 digits (JAN13) can be scanned.

The JAN code below shows the numeral data "4942857134254".



QR code

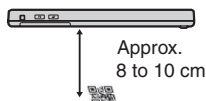
The QR code is one of the two-dimensional codes indicating a string of alphanumeric and other characters (kanji, kana and pictograms) or data such as melody or image with the vertical and horizontal patterns.



The left QR code shows the text data "FOMA D705iμ".

Scanning the code

Keep the camera about 8 to 10 cm away from the code to scan.



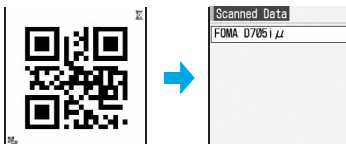
1 [MENU] 6 1 ▶ Slide the macro mode switch to (Macro)



- After bar code reading finished, turn the macro mode switch back to ● (normal mode) to make the camera ready for a next shooting occasion. If you shoot a distant object without canceling (Macro), you cannot get a sharp picture.
- Switch to the normal mode to read a large size code.
- To set flicker adjustment: [MENU] 1 ▶ [1] - [3]
 - For details of settings ▶P136
 - This setting also applies to the flicker adjustment for the videophone and camera. ▶P62, P136

2 Point the camera to the code

The code is scanned automatically. If scanned correctly, a confirmation sound is heard and the scanned data is displayed.



- When it is hard to scan the code, adjust the distance, angle or direction of the code and the camera. This may enable the code to be scanned.
- If the code cannot be scanned within 30 seconds after the key operation, "*Could not scan.*" appears on the screen. If the code still cannot be scanned within another 30 seconds, "*Could not scan.*" appears again and Bar Code Reader terminates.
- If the data exceeds 11,000 one-byte or 5,500 two-byte characters, the exceeded characters are not displayed, but can be saved.
- When scanning is paused such as while a submenu is displayed, the icon [X] indicated at the upper right of the screen changes to [X].

■ Re-scanning the code: [X]

3 [MENU] 4

The scanned data is saved to the FOMA terminal.

- When 5 data items have already been saved or the memory is not enough, a confirmation screen appears. Select *Yes* to delete the saved data.

■ Copying the text data in the scanned data:

① [MENU] 1 ▶ Highlight the start position to copy ▶ [C]

- To copy the entire text data:

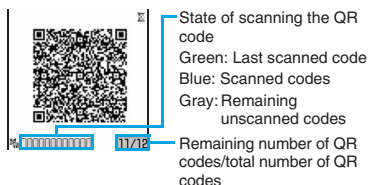


② Highlight the end position to copy ▶ [C]



Scanning divided QR codes

When the data is divided into multiple parts (up to 16), scan them one by one according to messages displayed on the screen.



- To stop scanning on the way: **STOP** ▶ Yes

INFORMATION

- To switch the mode to Bar Code Reader on the shooting/recording screen or sound recording screen: **MENU** ▶ **Switch mode** ▶ **Bar code reader**
- To switch to the still image shooting or movie recording on the Bar Code Reader screen: **MENU** **2** ▶ **1** or **2**
When Bar Code Reader is started from the character entry screen or i-appli, switching is not available.
- In the following cases a confirmation sound is not heard even though the code is scanned correctly:
 - When **SILENT** is set for the **Call alert volume** and **Mail/Msg alert vol.**
 - In Silent Mode
 - In Public mode (Driving mode)
- The scanned data is given a file name made up of the scanned date and time + serial file number + .jan or .qr ("jan" is for JAN code and ".qr" for QR code). The file name 20080520123400.jan, for example, means the JAN code scanned at 12:34 on May 20, 2008. When there are any previously saved data at the same date and time, 1 is added to the serial file number. The file name cannot be changed.

Using the scanned data

The available operations vary depending on the scanned data.

Example Adding data to the phonebook

1 **MENU** **6** **1** ▶ **☎**

2 **Highlight the scanned data** ▶ **☎**

■ **Deleting the scanned data: Highlight the data** ▶ **MENU** **3** **1** ▶ Yes

- To delete all: **MENU** **3** **2** ▶ Enter the terminal security code ▶ Yes

3 **Highlight the data to add to the phonebook** ▶ **MENU** **3** **1** (**Add new data**) or **MENU** **3** **2** (**Update**) ▶ **1** or **2**

The phonebook registration screen appears.

- To update saved entries, select the party to add the data.

■ **Adding all data to the phonebook at one time: Add to phonebook** ▶ **1** or **2**

The phonebook registration screen appears. The name and the reading are also entered depending on the data.

■ **Sending i-mode Mail: Highlight a mail address** ▶ **☎** or **Compose message**
The mail composition screen appears.

- When **Compose message** is selected, the subject and the text are entered depending on the data.

■ **Connecting i-mode sites or Internet websites: Highlight a URL** ▶ **☎** ▶ Yes

- When the display is possible in both i-mode and Full Browser, selecting **Yes** displays i-mode and pressing **☎** displays Full Browser.

■ **Saving URLs as bookmarks:**

① **Highlight a URL** ▶ **MENU** **3** **3** or **Add bookmark**

② **Highlight a folder** ▶ **☎** ▶ Enter a title name (up to 24 one-byte or 12 two-byte characters) ▶ **☎**

- When **Add bookmark** is selected, the title name is also entered depending on the data.

■ **Starting i-appli: Start i-appli**

■ Making voice/videophone calls:

① Highlight a phone number ▶ ▶

Set the dialing conditions ◀P50

② ▶ Yes

- To make a call after invalidating the settings other than Chaku-moji and call type:  ▶ No, use original

■ Saving or displaying still images:

Highlight the file name of a still image

▶ ▶ Save

- Follow the procedure from Step 3 in “Downloading images”. ◀P152
- To display a still image: *Display*

■ Saving or playing melodies: Highlight

a file name of melody ▶

- Follow the procedure from Step 2 in “Downloading melodies”. ◀P153
- The melody is saved in the *Data transfer* folder of Melody in Data Box.

■ Saving or displaying ToruCa:

Highlight the name of a ToruCa file ▶

▶ Save

- To display ToruCa: *Display*

i-mode/i-motion/i-Channel

What's i-mode?	144
Displaying sites	
Displaying i-mode sites	144
Reading and operating sites	146
Using My Menu	My Menu 147
Changing your current i-mode password	Change i-mode Password 148
Displaying Internet websites	Internet Connection 148
Registering websites and i-mode sites for quick browsing	Bookmark 149
Saving site contents	Screen Memo 151
Downloading images and melodies from sites	
Downloading various data from sites	Download 152
Useful functions of i-mode	
Useful functions of i-mode	155
Making i-mode settings	
Making i-mode settings	i-mode Setting 157
Using Message Service	
When Message R/F is received	Receive Message R/F 158
Displaying Message R/F	Message R/Message F 160
Using certificate	
Operating certificates	161
Using i-motion	
i-motion	164
Downloading i-motion from sites	164
Setting auto play of i-motion	i-motion Setting 166
Using i-Channel	
i-Channel	166
Displaying i-Channel	Channel List 167
Changing i-Channel settings	i-Channel Ticker 167
Restoring i-Channel information to the default settings	Reset i-Channel 168

What's i-mode?

With i-mode, you can use online services such as connecting to i-mode sites (programs) or Internet websites, or sending and receiving i-mode Mail by using the display of i-mode compatible FOMA terminal (hereinafter called the i-mode terminal).

- i-mode is a pay service for which subscription is required.
- For details of i-mode, see the latest "Mobile Phone User's Guide [i-mode] FOMA version".

Before using i-mode

- The contents of i-mode sites (programs) and Internet websites are usually protected by copyright laws. All or any portion of text, image or other data downloaded to your i-mode terminal from these i-mode sites (program) or Internet websites cannot be used or altered except for personal use, and cannot be sold or redistributed in any form without the express permission of the copyright holder.
- Depending on the model, you cannot display or play still images, movies or melodies downloaded from sites, files (images, movies, melodies, etc.) attached to sent/received mail, screen memos or Message R/Fs when the power of your terminal is turned on with another UIM or no UIM inserted.
- When the data with the UIM operation restriction enabled is set for the standby display or ring alert, the settings return to the default if the power is turned on with another UIM or no UIM inserted. When the UIM that was used downloading the data is inserted, the settings return to the previous settings.

Displaying i-mode sites

1 1 English iMenu

Flashes in i-mode communication.



- Press  on the connecting screen to stop connection and press  while accessing the page to stop downloading.
- Item with the number such as  or  can be selected by pressing the key (Direct key function). However, you may not select them on some sites.

2 Menu List



3 Highlight an item and

You can display the target page by repeating this operation.

- When there are more rows or links not shown on the screen,  and  appear in the guide row to allow scrolling.
- Press  on the screen during site display. Hold down the key to scroll continuously. Press  or  to scroll the screen by a page. Hold down the key to scroll the screen continuously by a page.

4 when you finish viewing the site ▶ Yes

INFORMATION

- When you display a site containing an image, the following icons may be indicated instead of the image:
 -  : When **Not display** is set for **Image** in Image & Effect Setting ( in case of undownloaded image of Message R/F)
 -  : When no image has been received because, for example, the image data is invalid, the image is missing, or the FOMA terminal is out of the service area
 -  : When the image cannot be displayed because of incorrect URL
- To return to iMenu during site display:  **iMenu**
- The scroll bar appears at the time of obtaining pages, focus move or performing the operation which requires scrolling. The scroll bar disappears after about 1 minute has elapsed without any operation.
- When a site requests your serial number of mobile phone/UIIM, a confirmation screen appears. When you select **Yes**, your serial number of mobile phone/UIIM is sent. The IP (Information Provider) uses the serial number of mobile phone/UIIM to identify you for providing the information customized for you or for determining whether your FOMA terminal supports the site content provided by the IP.
Since your serial number of mobile phone/UIIM is sent to the IP via the Internet, there is a possibility the information could be intercepted by third parties. However, your information such as the FOMA terminal's phone number, your address, age, and sex will never be disclosed to the IP with this operation.
- If a site requests entry of the user name and password, the entry screen is displayed. Enter the user name and password of the site and select **OK**.

Connecting to SSL pages

You can display SSL compatible sites (SSL pages) by the same operation as for ordinary sites.

- Some SSL pages may not allow connection unless the date and time are set.
- Establishment of the SSL session may require electronic information called "certificate" for the connected site and the FOMA terminal issued by the same certifier. 

- To connect to a FirstPass compatible site, you need to download a user certificate for the site from the FirstPass center and save it in the UIM.

Connecting to an SSL page

A screen informing you of the start of SSL communication is displayed. When the certificate saved in the FOMA terminal is required for the SSL communication, the selection screen is displayed.  appears on the top of the screen when the SSL page is displayed.

Displaying a certificate during SSL page display: 9 2

- Certificate contents 

Displaying an ordinary page from an SSL page

A confirmation screen appears. Select **Yes** to display an ordinary page and  disappears.

Connecting to a FirstPass compatible page

- ① **Highlight a user certificate on the FirstPass compatible site** 
 - To check the content of the certificate:
Highlight a user certificate 
- ② **Enter the PIN2 code**
The user certificate is sent and the FirstPass compatible page is displayed.
 - If the correct PIN2 code is not entered within 60 seconds, the SSL communication is disconnected.

INFORMATION

- Packet communication fee while being connected to FirstPass compatible sites will be included in the Pake-Houdai or Pake-Houdai Full. However, the fee for data communication using a connected PC will not be included in the Pake-Houdai or Pake-Houdai Full.

Reconnecting to the page displayed before Last Visited URL

Last Visited URL allows you to quickly reconnect to the pages (up to 10 items) displayed before.

- Some pages may not be displayed. In addition, pages different from the one visited before may be displayed.

1 Highlight a Last Visited URL

- Highlight a Last Visited URL and press to confirm the URL last visited.

■ Deleting Last Visited URL:

① Highlight a Last Visited URL

- To delete selected URLs:

Highlight a Last Visited URL to be deleted

- To delete all URLs: Enter the terminal security code

② Yes

4 Check box

☐ : Unselected

☒ : Selected

You can select multiple items from selections. Press to switch between ☐ and ☒.

5 Pulldown menu

Select an item from the item list.

6 Button

You can send page settings to a site or cancel the settings.

INFORMATION

- Some images may have links.
- The character entry screen allows you to enter the phonebook data, registered contents of Own Number and character strings information of the JAN or QR code read by Bar Code Reader.

Reading and operating sites

Selecting links and items

Selectable items and entry fields appear depending on the page. Press to highlight an item or entry field and press to select the item or enter characters.

1 Link

Select to jump to a related page. The link is highlighted when the cursor is placed over.

2 Character entry field

Enter characters. The character types and the maximum number of characters that can be entered depend on the character entry field.

3 Radio button

☐ : Unselected

☒ : Selected

You can select only one from selections.

Flash movie displays

Flash movie allows expressive sites to be displayed.

- Some sites that use Flash movie may not be operated in the same way as normal sites.
- Even if saved as an image or screen memo, some Flash movies may appear different from those displayed on sites because the part of the image is not saved.
- The sound effects of Flash movie do not play, even if you set for the standby display or incoming image.
- Even if Flash movie is displayed, it may not operate correctly. Also, you may not be able to save Flash movie that does not operate correctly.

- If an error occurs while playing Flash movie, the image cannot be saved.

- Even if is not indicated in the guide row, some Flash movies may be operated.

- To play Flash movie from the beginning:

- Some Flash movies may have sound effects. The volume conforms to the volume specified by Settings for melody.

To disable sound effects of Flash movies:

the **Sound effect setting** field

- Even if Vibrator Setting is set to other than **OFF**, the FOMA terminal does not vibrate when the sound effects of Flash movie play.
- Note that some Flash movies may vibrate the FOMA terminal during play even if Vibrator Setting is set to **OFF**.
- If no operation is performed for 30 seconds or longer while playing Flash movie, it is brought to a pause.

To replay:
 - , , , or

Displaying the previous or next page

The FOMA terminal keeps a record of the last 20 pages displayed in a "cache".

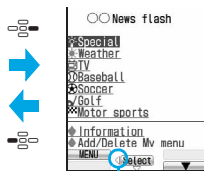
- Cache is a storage space in the FOMA terminal that temporarily records the displayed pages. You can display the recorded pages by pressing without establishing communication. In case the cache is full or a page that is set by the site to load the latest page is displayed, the FOMA terminal starts communication.
- This function is unavailable while being connected to the FirstPass center.

1 page before the current page



Indicates you can proceed to the next page.

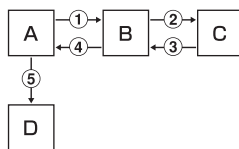
Current page



Indicates you can return to the previous page.

INFORMATION

- Information such as entered characters or settings is not recorded.
- When you terminate i-mode, all the records in the cache are deleted.
- The operation may differ when Flash movie is displayed.
- When you display page A → page B → page C in this order (①, ②), return to page A (③, ④), and proceed to page D (⑤), the display record of page A → page B → page C is deleted. You can return to page A from page D but you cannot then return to page B.



Reloading data

When sites cannot be displayed because of connection interruption, etc., you may be able to display the sites by reloading.

1 during site display

Displaying the URL of current site

1 during site display

Using My Menu

My Menu

You can register i-mode sites in My Menu, which allows you to quickly access the sites later.

- Up to 45 sites can be registered.
- You need the i-mode password to register sites. The i-mode password is set to "0000" by default.
- When you submit an application to a pay site registered in Menu List of iMenu, the site is automatically registered in My Menu.
- Only the sites listed in Menu List of iMenu can be registered in My Menu. However, some sites cannot be registered in My Menu. To register the site which cannot be registered or Internet websites, use Bookmark.

Registering sites in My Menu

1 Display a site ▶ (Register)

- Since the page structure differs depending on the site, press the key of the number corresponding to the item or select the applicable item.

2 The i-mode password entry field ▶ Enter ▶ 決定 (OK)

Displaying sites from My Menu

1 Display iMenu ▶ English iMenu ▶ My Menu ▶ Highlight a site ▶

Changing your current i-mode password

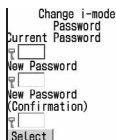
Change i-mode Password

Your i-mode password is required to register/delete sites in/from My Menu, subscribe to/cancel Message Service or i-mode pay sites, or make the mail settings. The i-mode password is set to "0000" by default, so change it to your own number (4 digits). Please be careful never to reveal your i-mode password to others.

- Please note that, if you forget the i-mode password, you need to bring the identification (driver's license, etc.) to a DoCoMo Shop.

1 Display iMenu ▶ English iMenu ▶ Options ▶ Change i-mode Password

2 Current Password field ▶ Enter



3 New Password field ▶ Enter

4 New Password (Confirmation) field ▶ Re-enter the password entered in Step 3 ▶ Select

- When there is an error or omission in the entered contents, an error screen is displayed. Select *Re-enter* and operate from Step 2 again.

Displaying Internet websites

Internet Connection

- Internet websites incompatible with i-mode may not be displayed correctly.
- You can switch i-mode to Full Browser.
▶ P243

1 [3] [1] ▶ Enter a URL (up to 256 one-byte characters) ▶

- From the next time, the last entered URL you connected to appears.
- To enter "/", ".", "-", etc., press [1] repeatedly in the alphabet input mode. To enter "http://www.", ".co.jp", ".ne.jp", ".com" and ".html", press [X] repeatedly in the alphabet input mode.

INFORMATION

- On the site screen: [MENU] ▶ Go to location ▶ Enter URL
- A message is displayed when received data exceeds the maximum size for a page. Press  to clear the message and display the received data.

Displaying sites using URL history

URL History

The terminal keeps a record of the last 20 URLs you connected to by entering URL. You can use this URL history to connect to Internet websites.

1 [3] [2] ▶ Highlight the URL ▶

- A long URL is shown only partially. To check the URL, highlight it and press .

■ Editing the URL and connecting to it: Highlight a URL in the URL history list ▶ [MENU] [6] ▶ Edit the URL ▶

■ Deleting the URL history:

① Highlight a URL in the URL history list ▶ [MENU] [4] [1]

- To delete selected URL histories: [MENU] [4] [2] in the URL history list ▶ Highlight URLs to be deleted ▶  

- To delete all: [MENU] [4] [3] in the URL history list ▶ Enter the terminal security code

② Yes

INFORMATION

- On the site screen: **Go to location** **URL history**
- When the number of recorded URLs exceeds 20, the URL will be deleted from the oldest one.

Displaying characters correctly

Character Encode

When characters are not displayed correctly on i-mode sites or websites, they may be displayed correctly by changing the character encode. Character encode is a generic term for the encoding scheme and structure developed for making characters available on computers.

1 while displaying i-mode sites or websites

- Each press of these keys switches the character encodes in the following order: *Auto switch* → SJIS → EUC → JIS → UTF8. Pressing returns to *Auto switch*.
- When you display an i-mode sites or website, *Auto switch* is set.
- Characters may not be displayed correctly even if you change character encodes.

Registering websites and i-mode sites for quick browsing

Bookmark

- The maximum number of bookmarks that can be registered
- You cannot register URLs longer than 256 one-byte characters in Bookmark.
- Some sites may not be registered in Bookmark.

Registering in Bookmark

1 **Display an i-mode site or website** **Highlight a folder to save the bookmark**

2 **Enter a title name (up to 24 one-byte or 12 two-byte characters)**

- If you save the bookmark without entering a title, the page title or the URL of the site is displayed in the bookmark list.

INFORMATION

- On the screen memo list, screen memo view screen, Last Visited URL list or URL history list: **Add bookmark** Highlight a folder to save Enter a title name
- When the maximum number of registered bookmarks is exceeded, a confirmation screen is displayed. To register a new URL, select the bookmark to overwrite.

Creating/deleting folders

Creating a folder

- Up to 20 folders including *フォルダ1* (Folder 1) can be created.

1

Changing a folder name: Highlight a folder

Changing the order of folders: Highlight a folder or

2 **Enter a folder name (up to 16 one-byte or 8 two-byte characters)**

Deleting folders

- フォルダ1* can be deleted.
- When only one folder exists, it cannot be deleted.

1 **Highlight a folder** **Enter the terminal security code** *Yes*

Displaying websites or i-mode sites from Bookmark

1

The folder list appears.

: No bookmark

: Bookmark present

2 Highlight a folder ▶

The bookmark list appears.

3 Highlight a bookmark ▶

- Checking the URL: Highlight a bookmark ▶

INFORMATION

- On the site screen: ▶ **Bookmark** ▶ **Display** ▶ Highlight a folder ▶ ▶ Highlight a bookmark ▶

Various operations from the folder list

■ Moving bookmarks:

- 1 Highlight a folder ▶
- 2 Highlight a bookmark ▶ [5] [1]
 - Moving selected bookmarks:
 [5] [2] ▶ Highlight bookmarks ▶ ▶

- 3 Highlight a folder to move the bookmark to ▶

■ Renaming bookmark titles: Highlight a folder ▶ ▶ Highlight a bookmark ▶

- Follow Step 2 of “Registering in Bookmark”.
▶ P149

■ Sending mail with a bookmark attached: Highlight a folder ▶ ▶ Highlight a bookmark ▶ [9]

The mail composition screen with bookmark attached appears.

■ Deleting bookmarks:

- 1 Highlight a folder ▶
 - Deleting all the bookmarks: [4] in the folder list ▶ Enter the terminal security code ▶ Go to Step 3
- 2 Highlight a bookmark ▶ [3] [1]
 - Deleting selected bookmarks:
 [3] [2] ▶ Highlight bookmarks ▶ ▶
 - Deleting all the bookmarks in the folder:
 [3] [3] ▶ Enter the terminal security code
- 3 Yes

■ Sorting bookmarks: Highlight a folder ▶ ▶ [6] ▶ [1] - [4]

- Bookmarks in the list are temporarily sorted. When you quit the display, *By access date* returns.
- All the folders are the target of sorting.

- You can select from *By access date*, *By title*, *By URL* or *By access frequency*.

INFORMATION

- If you delete a bookmark registered as an i-mode shortcut, the i-mode Shortcut setting is also canceled.
- If one-byte, two-byte, alphabetic and kanji characters and URLs are mixed in titles, sorting by *By title* is not in the order of the Japanese syllabary.

Connecting to sites using simple key operation

i-mode Shortcut

When you register a bookmark as i-mode shortcut, you can quickly display an i-mode site or website from the standby display.

- Up to 10 sites can be registered in total for i-mode and Full Browser.

1 [2] ▶ Highlight a folder ▶ ▶ Highlight a bookmark ▶ [2]

- To cancel shortcut, execute the same operation shown above.
- If a bookmark unregistered as an i-mode shortcut has been highlighted, you can also register it by pressing .

2 Highlight the number to register ▶

- When displaying the site with i-mode Shortcut, the icon numbers ([0] to [9]) correspond to [0] - [9].
- In the bookmark list, the icon changes from to [0] - [9] when registered.
- If the already registered number is selected, a confirmation screen is displayed. When *Yes* is selected, it is overwritten.

Displaying a site using i-mode Shortcut

1 [1] - [9], [0] ▶

Operating from the list of i-mode shortcuts

1 [8] [1]

The list of i-mode shortcuts is displayed.

- is indicated for a bookmark of Full Browser.

- **Displaying a site: Highlight a bookmark** ▶

■ Registering a site:

- ① **Highlight *Not recorded*** ▶ 1 1

• To register bookmark of Full Browser: Highlight *Not recorded* ▶

1 2

- ② **Highlight a folder** ▶ ▶ **Highlight a bookmark** ▶

■ Canceling an i-mode shortcut:

Highlight a bookmark ▶ 2 ▶ *Yes*

- **Checking the URL: Highlight a bookmark** ▶

Saving site contents

Screen Memo

Saving screen memos

- The maximum number of items that can be saved ➡P416
- The maximum size of a screen memo that can be saved is 100 Kbytes including images, etc.

1 Display a site ▶ 4 1

2 Enter a title name (up to 24 one-byte or 12 two-byte characters) ▶

- When you save the screen memo without entering the title name, *No title* is displayed in the screen memo list.

INFORMATION

- When the memory is not enough or the maximum number of saved items is exceeded, a confirmation screen appears. Select the screen memo to overwrite. The protected screen memos are not overwritten.

Displaying screen memos

1 4

The screen memo list appears.

2 Highlight a screen memo ▶

A screen memo appears.

- The available operations are the same as on site displays, with a few exceptions. ➡P146

- **Checking URL: Highlight a screen memo** ▶

INFORMATION

- On the site screen: ▶ *Screen memo* ▶ *Display*

▶ Highlight a screen memo ▶

At this time, if the character encode has been changed, it is reset to *Auto switch* when returning to the site from the displayed screen memo.

- To play Flash movie again during screen memo display: ▶ *Display* ▶ *Retry*

Various operations from the screen memo list

- **Renaming screen memo titles: Highlight a screen memo** ▶

• Follow Step 2 of "Saving screen memos".

➡P151

- On the screen memo display: ▶

Rename title

- **Protecting screen memos: Highlight a screen memo** ▶ 1 1

The screen memo is protected and the icon changes from to .

- To cancel protection: Highlight a screen memo ▶ 1 3

• Protecting selected screen memos:

1 2 ▶ Highlight screen memos ▶ ▶

- Canceling protection of selected screen memos: 1 4 ▶ Highlight screen memos ▶ ▶

- Canceling protection of all the screen memos: 1 5

- On the screen memo display: ▶ *Protect* or *Release*

- The maximum number of items that can be protected ➡P416

- **Deleting screen memos:**

- ① **Highlight a screen memo** ▶ 2 1

• Deleting selected screen memos:

2 2 ▶ Highlight screen memos ▶ ▶

• Deleting all the screen memos:

2 3 ▶ Enter the terminal security code

- ② *Yes*

- On the screen memo display: ▶ *Delete* ▶ *Yes*

■ **Sorting screen memos:** [MENU] [8] ▶ [1] or [2]

- Screen memos in the list are temporarily sorted. When you quit the display, *By date* returns.
- You can select *By date* or *By title*.

INFORMATION

- If one-byte, two-byte, alphabetic and kanji characters and URLs are mixed in titles, sorting by *By title* is not in the order of the Japanese syllabary.

Downloading various data from sites

Download

- Some data (files) can be saved in the microSD memory card.
- When the memory is not enough or the maximum allowable number of saved items is exceeded, a confirmation screen appears. Follow the screen and delete the data.

Common basic operations

- To stop downloading: [STOP] (○= for PDF data) during downloading
- To cancel saving (excluding an image or PDF file): *Back* ▶ *No*
- To display the downloaded data and confirm the contents: *Preview*
 - The following data can be displayed and the contents can be confirmed: Mail templates, ToruCa, Kisekai tool or Machi-chara

Downloading images

Save Image

Images, frames or Deco-mail pictograms can be downloaded and saved from sites. The saved images can be viewed from *My Picture* or set for the standby display.

- The maximum number of items that can be saved: P416
- The maximum size of an image that can be downloaded is 100 Kbytes.
- Images in GIF, JPEG and Flash formats can be saved.

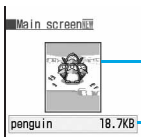
Example Downloading an image from a site

1 **Display a site** ▶ [MENU] [6] [1]

■ **Saving the background image on site:**

Display a site ▶ [MENU] [6] [2] ▶ **Go to Step 3**

2 **Highlight an image** ▶



A frame is attached to the image to be saved.

File name and file size

3 **Set each item**

- Some items may not be available for setting depending on the image file.
- For images that are prohibited from being attached to mail or output from the FOMA terminal (file restriction set to *File restricted*), you can change the display name only.

Display name:

36 one byte or two-byte characters can be entered.

File name:

36 characters including one-byte alphanumeric, ".", "-", and "_" can be entered. However, "." character cannot be used for the first character of file name.

Comment:

100 one-byte or two-byte characters can be entered.

Use as frame:

An image can be pasted as a frame image.

- Images with horizontal and vertical (or vertical and horizontal) sizes exceeding 352 x 288 cannot be changed to *Yes*.

Use as stamp:

An image can be pasted as a stamp image.

- Images with horizontal and vertical (or vertical and horizontal) sizes exceeding 240 x 320 cannot be changed to *Yes*.

File restriction:

When you send an image to another mobile phone via mail attachment, you can set whether to restrict that image from being sent again from the received party's mobile phone to any other mobile phone.

- The image files downloaded from sites cannot be changed.
- When  is indicated in the guide row, press  and press  to save the data to the microSD memory card. When saving to the microSD memory card, only **Display name** can be set.
- When saving in the terminal, press  to display the menu list for setting images for the standby display, etc. 

4 ► Highlight the folder to save ►



- For Deco-mail pictograms, the image is saved to the **Deco-mail pict** folder of **My Picture** in Data Box.

INFORMATION

- Some images may not be displayed correctly.
- Images with horizontal and vertical (or vertical and horizontal) sizes exceeding 640 x 480 in GIF format or 1728 x 2304 in JPEG format cannot be saved. Also, some JPEG images may not be saved.
- When displaying a site containing an image wider than the display, the image will be reduced.

Downloading melodies

i-melody

- The maximum number of items that can be saved 
- The maximum size of a melody that can be downloaded is 100 Kbytes.
- Melodies in SMF and MFi formats can be saved.

1 Display a site ► Highlight a melody ►



2 Save

- To play and confirm: **Play**

3 Enter a display name (up to 50 one-byte or 25 two-byte characters) ►

The melody is saved in the **i-mode** folder of **Melody** in Data Box. 

- When  is indicated in the guide row, press  and press  to save the melody to the microSD memory card.

INFORMATION

- Some melodies may not play correctly.

Downloading PDF data

- The maximum number of items that can be saved 
- The maximum size of a PDF file that can be downloaded is 2 Mbytes.
- Note that downloading large PDF data may incur high packet communication fees.

1 Display a site ► Highlight PDF data ►



The data is downloaded and then displayed on PDF Viewer. 

- Go to Step 3 depending on PDF data.
- When a password is set for the PDF data, enter the password and press .
- To download the remaining data of the PDF data saved partially:  

2

- If the same PDF data is already saved, a confirmation screen is displayed. Select **Yes** to overwrite.

3 Enter a display name (up to 36 one-byte or two-byte characters) ►

The PDF data is saved in the **i-mode** folder of **My Document** in Data Box. 

- When  is indicated in the guide row, press  and press  to save the data to the microSD memory card.
- If not all the pages are downloaded, the downloaded part is saved.

INFORMATION

- For the PDF data in which the total size of i-mode bookmarks and marks is larger than 100 Kbytes or whose size is unknown, the download fails.

- When a different i-mode bookmark or mark is set for the PDF data that you are downloading again, the i-mode bookmark or mark is added. However, when the number of registered i-mode bookmarks or marks exceeds 10, a message appears indicating that the maximum number of registered items is exceeded. Follow the instructions on the screen and delete i-mode bookmarks or marks until the number is below the limit.
- For the PDF data saved partially because you stop downloading or the network connection breaks, you can download it again from *My Document*. ➤P290 Step 2 in "Displaying the PDF data".

Downloading dictionaries

- Up to 10 items can be saved.
- The maximum size of a dictionary that can be downloaded is 32 Kbytes.
- Using the downloaded dictionary ➤P342

1 Display a site ▶ Highlight a dictionary ▶ ▶ Save ▶

The dictionary is saved to *DL dictionary* of *Other*.

Downloading Chara-den

- The maximum number of items that can be saved ➤P416
- The maximum size of a Chara-den image that can be downloaded is 100 Kbytes.

1 Display a site ▶ Highlight a Chara-den image ▶

2 Save

- To display and confirm: *Display*

3 Set each item

Display name:

Up to 36 one-byte or two-byte characters can be entered.

Comment:

Up to 100 one-byte or two-byte characters can be entered.

4

The Chara-den image is saved in the *i-mode* folder of *Chara-den* in Data Box.

INFORMATION

- The preinstalled Chara-den can be downloaded from the i-mode site, "My D-style". ➤P282

Downloading mail templates

- The maximum number of items that can be saved ➤P416
- The size of a mail template you can download is up to 200 Kbytes per item.
- Mail templates you have downloaded are saved in *Template*.

1 Display a site ▶ Highlight a mail template ▶ ▶ Save

Follow the procedure from Step 2 in "Saving templates". ➤P178

INFORMATION

- When the downloaded mail template has a file attachment which cannot be used, it cannot be saved until the attachment is deleted.
- When the downloaded mail template has the image that cannot be attached to mail or output from or used on the FOMA terminal, it cannot be saved until the image is deleted.

Downloading ToruCa

- The maximum number of items that can be saved ➤P416
- The maximum size of items that can be saved ➤P232
- The memory to save for ToruCa ➤P232
- If you have downloaded detailed information from saved ToruCa, it is not saved as another file, and the detailed information is added to the original ToruCa. Obtaining ToruCa (details) from ToruCa ➤P233
- ToruCa downloaded from a site is regarded as being read even if being saved without selecting *Preview*.

1 Display a site ▶ Highlight ToruCa ▶ ▶ Save

Downloading Kisekai tool

- The maximum number of items that can be saved ➡ P416
- The maximum size of a Kisekai tool that can be downloaded is 2 Mbytes.
- Using Kisekai tool ➡ P99

1 Display a site ▶ Highlight a Kisekai tool ▶ ▶ Save

2 Enter the display name (up to 36 one-byte or two-byte characters) ▶

Kisekai tool is saved in the *i-mode* folder of *Kisekai Tool* in Data Box.

- To set Kisekai tool: Enter the display name (up to 36 one-byte or two-byte characters) ▶  ▶ Yes

INFORMATION

- The screen or ring alert to be set differs depending on Kisekai tool.
- Some Kisekai tool may not be displayed and saved.
- For Kisekai tool saved partially because you stop downloading or the network connection breaks, you can download it from *Kisekai Tool*. See INFORMATION in "Setting Kisekai tool". ➡ P101

Downloading Machi-chara

- The maximum number of items that can be saved ➡ P416
- The maximum size of a Machi-chara image that can be downloaded is 500 Kbytes.
- Setting Machi-chara ➡ P101

1 Display a site ▶ Highlight a Machi-chara image ▶ ▶ Save

2 Enter the display name (up to 36 one-byte or two-byte characters)

- To set to display on the standby display:



3

The Machi-chara image is saved in the *i-mode* folder of *Machi-chara* in Data Box.

INFORMATION

- For Machi-chara saved partially because you stop downloading or the network connection breaks, you can download it again from *Machi-chara*. ➡ P264 Step 2 in "Displaying Machi-chara".

Downloading the original certificate

- The original certificate can be saved up to 5 items. The RootCA certificate and intermediate certificate can be saved up to 10 items.
- The maximum size of a certificate that can be downloaded is 100 Kbytes.
- When the UIM (blue) is inserted, the original certificate cannot be downloaded.
- The original certificate is issued by each company. The downloaded certificate can be used on the site which supports the certificate.
- The packet communication fee for downloading is charged.
- Setting validity/invalidity of the downloaded original certificate ➡ P161

1 Display a site ▶ Highlight the original certificate ▶ ▶ Save

Useful functions of i-mode

Using Phone To (AV Phone To)/Mail To/Web To

The following operations are available from phone numbers, mail addresses or URLs on the displayed screen:

- Making voice calls or videophone calls (Phone To/AV Phone To)
- Composing mail (Mail To)
- Connecting to i-mode sites (Web To)
- You can also execute this function from mail or Message R/F, etc.
- Some functions may not be available depending on i-mode sites or websites.
- In the B mode of 2in1, Mail To is unavailable.

- You can select only the highlighted items (such as phone numbers, mail addresses and URLs).

1 Display a site

■ Phone To (AV Phone To):

- ① **Highlight a phone number**

The Call Option screen appears.
- ② **Set dialing conditions**
- ③ **MENU** **Yes**
 - To dial with the setting other than Chaku-moji or call type set to invalid: **No, use original**

■ Mail To:

- ① **Highlight a mail address**

The mail composition screen with the selected mail address set as the receiver is displayed.
- ② **Compose and send i-mode Mail**
 - When multiple addresses are listed with no space in between, the Mail To function may not be available.

■ Web To: Highlight a URL

- You are connected to the selected i-mode site or website.
- When you executed from mail, etc., a confirmation screen appears. If **Yes** is selected, you are connected to the site. When **FBrowser** is displayed in the guide row while the confirmation screen is being displayed, if you press , the site is displayed by Full Browser.

Copying the URL

Copy the URL of the site or screen memo being displayed. The copied text can be pasted in the entry fields on the mail composition screen, phonebook registration screen, etc.

- The copied text is recorded until the power of the FOMA terminal is turned off. You can paste it in other locations any number of times.
- Only one item can be recorded. When you copy a new item, it overwrites the previously copied text.

Example Copying the URL of current site

1 Display the URL of a site

1

2 Highlight the start position of the copying range Highlight the end position

- Select all the text:
- Cancel the start position for selecting a new position:
- To move the cursor to the beginning or end: or after specifying the start position

3 Display a character entry screen to be pasted Paste the copied text

INFORMATION

- When you operate from any of following screens, the whole URL is copied.
 - On the Last Visited URL list, URL history list, i-mode shortcut list, or screen memo list: **Copy URL**
 - On the bookmark list: **URL disp/type/copy** **Copy URL**
- To paste the URL of the current site to mail, press during site display and select **Compose message**. The mail composition screen is displayed with the URL of the site pasted in the message text.

Registering phone numbers and mail addresses in the phonebook

1 Display a site Highlight a phone number

- You can register only highlighted phone numbers or mail addresses.

8 **1**

- To edit the existing phonebook data:

8 **2**

3 **1** or **2** Register the name, etc.

- To edit the existing phonebook data: **1** or **2** Highlight a party Edit the data

INFORMATION

- On the screen memo view screen: **Phonebook** **Add to phonebook** or **Update phonebook**
- On the Message R/F view screen: **Store** **Add to phonebook** or **Update phonebook**

Registering URLs in the phonebook

Add URLs to the phonebook from the bookmark list, screen memo list and so on.

Example

Registering a URL from the bookmark list

1 [2] ▶ Highlight a folder ▶

2 Highlight a bookmark ▶ [MENU] [7] [1]

- To edit the existing phonebook data:
Highlight a bookmark ▶ [MENU] [7] [2]

3 Register the name, etc.

- To edit the existing phonebook data:
Highlight a party ▶ ▶ Edit the data

INFORMATION

- On the screen memo list: [MENU] ▶ Phonebook ▶ Add to phonebook or Update phonebook
- On the URL display screen of Last Visited URL: [MENU] ▶ Add to phonebook or Update phonebook

Making i-mode settings

i-mode Setting

Setting the connection timeout

Connection Timeout Setting

Set the timeout for connection to the i-mode Center.

1 [8] [2] ▶ [1] - [3]

INFORMATION

- Even if you set the connection timeout to *Unlimited*, a connection with the i-mode Center may be interrupted due to poor signal conditions, etc.

Changing the host from i-mode (ISP Connection Communication)

Host Selection

- * You do not need to change the settings when using DoCoMo i-mode service.

■ About ISP connection communication

You can connect to various providers (ISPs) by changing the host of i-mode terminal of DoCoMo. Packet communication fee is charged for the ISP connection communication.

- Please note that packet communication fee for connection to the ISP will not be included in the Pake-Houdai or Pake-Houdai Full.
- You do not need to additionally subscribe to DoCoMo.

■ About provider subscription

- You need to separately subscribe to a provider to use the ISP connection communication. Contact the provider for details on services (site and Internet connection, mail function, etc.) and subscription.
- Information fee may be charged for some services, but DoCoMo will never charge you for it.
- Your phone number may be sent to the provider for some sites you visit.
- Up to 10 hosts can be registered.
- You cannot make or change the host settings during communication.

1 [8] [7]

2 Highlight one from *User host1 to 10* ▶ [MENU] ▶ Enter the terminal security code

■ Restoring the setting for using i-mode: i-mode (UIM) ▶ [0]

■ Changing to the previously set host: Highlight a host ▶ ▶ [0]

3 Set each item ▶ [0]

Host name:

Up to 16 one-byte or 8 two-byte characters can be entered.

Host number:

Up to 99 one-byte alphanumeric characters can be entered.

Host address:

Up to 30 one-byte alphanumeric characters can be entered.

Host address2:

Up to 30 one-byte alphanumeric characters can be entered.

- **Host address2** is the host of i-Channel.
- You can delete all the contents entered by pressing .

4 Highlight the edited host

INFORMATION

- If you change the host, the i-Channel information will no longer be displayed as a ticker on the standby display. When the i-Channel information is automatically updated or when you press  on the standby display to show the channel list, the latest information is received and displayed as a ticker on the standby display.
- In case **Host number** or **Host address** is changed, the auto-send setting is canceled.
- If you change the host when 2in1 is activated, **Show ticker** in i-Channel Ticker of all modes returns to its default.

Setting image display and sound effects

Image & Effect Setting

You can set image display and sound effects (when playing Flash movie) on a site, screen memo, etc.

1 ► Set each item

Image:

Sets whether to display images.

- When **Not display** is set, images, Flash movie and animation are not displayed and  appears instead. Also, **Animation** and **Use phone information** cannot be set.

Animation:

Play and display animation.

- When **Not display** is set, the first frame of animation is displayed.

Use phone information:

Use the data saved in the FOMA terminal when displaying Flash movie.

Sound effect setting:

Sets whether to play the sound effect of Flash movie.

INFORMATION

- On the site screen or screen memo view screen:  ► **Display** ► **Set image & effect**
- Even if **Not display** is set for **Animation**, Flash movie plays.
- The setting for **Image** is not reflected to the images attached as attachment or images inserted in the text of Message R/F. When **Not display** is set for **Image**, the images attached to i-mode Mail using the Web To function cannot be displayed or saved.
- **Sound effect setting** does not have effect on Message R/F, either.
- When **Yes** is set for **Use phone information**, information such as the battery level, received signal level, time, melody volume for Adjust Volume, selected language, and terminal model may be sent to IPs via the Internet, which may give the information to third parties.

Setting the display lighting for use during site display

Display Light

You can set the lighting while displaying a site, screen memo, Message R/F, i-Channel, etc.

1 ► or

Terminal setting: The display light conforms to the setting of **Normal use** of **Display light time** in Display Light Setting.

Always ON: The display always lights up.

INFORMATION

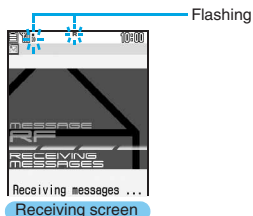
- On the site screen or screen memo view screen:  ► **Display** ► **Set lighting**
- This setting is also reflected to **i-mode session** of **Display light time** in Display Light Setting.

When Message R/F is received

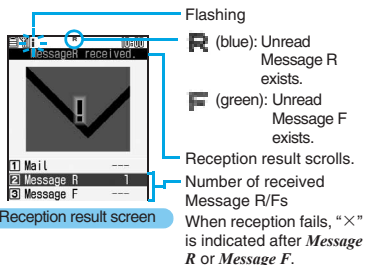
Receive Message R/F

- Received Message R is saved in **MessageR** and Message F is saved in **MessageF**.
- The maximum number of items that can be saved 

1 A Message R/F is received



Reception completed (The reception result screen appears, the Message R/F ring alert sounds and the keys light/flash.)



- Press on the receiving screen to stop reception, but Message R/Fs may be received depending on the conditions.

2 [2] or [3] ▶ Highlight a Message R/F

- ▶
 - When a melody is attached, it plays automatically. Auto play can be turned off.
 - When a Message R/F is displayed automatically, it does not play.
- Viewing the Message R/F screen

INFORMATION

- The reception result screen is displayed for about 15 seconds if you do not press any key or until the ring alert stops if ring time is set to 15 seconds or longer in Message R/F Alert. When Auto-display is set, the contents of received Message R/F are displayed before the display returns to the previously displayed screen.
- When the memory is not enough or the maximum number of saved items is exceeded, the received Message R/Fs except unread ones will be deleted, oldest first. Note that you need to protect Message R/F you want to keep.

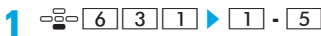
- If the memory is full of unread Message R/F and protected Message R/F, Message R/F reception is stopped. (red) or (red) is indicated on the screen. To receive new messages, display unread Message R/Fs () , delete unnecessary Message R/Fs () or cancel message protection () beforehand.

- Incoming Message R/F is stored in the i-mode Center in the following cases:
 - The power is off
 - During a videophone call
 - In Self Mode
 - When reception fails
 - While being out of service area
 - While receiving SMS
 - During infrared communication
 - During iC communication
 - While connecting to the Data Center
 - While Omakase Lock is on
 - While connecting to the FirstPass center
 - When the memory is full of unread Message R/F and protected Message R/F
- The Message R/F stored in the i-mode Center is deleted after receiving Message R/F.
- If there are unreceived Message R/Fs in the i-mode Center, , or is indicated. However, the icon may not be indicated even when there are Message R/Fs in the i-mode Center. When the maximum number of Message R/Fs that can be stored in the i-mode Center is reached, the icon changes to , or .

Displaying Message R/F automatically

Auto-display

Sets whether to automatically open and display Message R/Fs for about 15 seconds upon reception. In addition, you can set either of Message R/F to be displayed and also set to give priority to either of Message R/F.



INFORMATION

- Auto-display is available only when receiving automatically while displaying the standby display.
- When Auto-display is set, the contents of received Message R/F are automatically displayed when the reception result screen returns to the screen that was displayed prior to reception. If you do not press any key during auto-display, the Message R/F is saved as unread.

Displaying Message R/F

Message R/Message F

- 1 [6] [1] or [2] **Highlight a Message R/F**

The Message R/F list/view screen

Reading Message F is the same as that of Message R.

Message R/F list screen

- 1 [10:00 Weather] Reception date and time, and subject
- 2 [09:51 News] In the reception date and time column, the time is displayed on the current day and the date is displayed on the other days.
- [09:01 News flash]
- [08:01 Tokyo exchange]
- 1 : Unread : Read
- : Protected
- 2 : Image attached : Melody attached
- : ToruCa attached
- : Multiple files attached

Message R/F view screen

- [08/05/20 10:00] Status icon, attachment icon (only when there is an attachment), Message R/F number
- [Weather]
- [City Today]
- [High: 28°C]
- [Chance of rain: 10 → 0%]
- [END]
- : Reception date and time : Subject
- You can display the previous/next Message R/F by pressing .
 - When a file is attached, its icon, file name, file size, etc. are displayed on the Message R/F view screen.
 - Meaning of icons for images, melodies and ToruCa P183
 - When an image is inserted in the message text, the image is displayed. If you could not receive the image, an icon is indicated. The icon is the same as when you cannot display images on a site. P145

Displaying and saving the attached file

Display or save images or ToruCa attached to Message R/F, or play or save melodies.

Example Saving an attached file

- 1 **Display the Message R/F list** **Highlight a Message R/F** **Highlight the file name of an attached file**

[MENU] [5] [2]

- For the images, follow the procedure from Step 3 of "Downloading images". P152
- For the melodies, follow Step 3 of "Downloading melodies". P153
- For ToruCa, select the folder to save. However, a confirmation screen appears indicating that ToruCa (details) is not saved depending on ToruCa.
- ToruCa exceeding 1,024 bytes can be saved only to the microSD memory card.

Displaying and playing: Highlight the file name

- For the images, displaying/not displaying are switched.
- ToruCa exceeding 1,024 bytes cannot be displayed.

Displaying the title: Highlight the file name

- [MENU] [5] [3]
- Operation is not available for images.

INFORMATION

- To save the image inserted in the text or the background image: [MENU] **Save image** **Select image** or **Save Background**
- Some ToruCa cannot be saved more than once.

Protecting Message R/F

Protect Message

- The maximum number of items that can be protected P416
- Unread Message R/Fs cannot be protected.

1 Display the Message R/F list

2 Highlight a Message R/F

[MENU] [2] [1] The Message R/F is protected and the icon changes to .

- To cancel protection: Highlight the Message R/F [MENU] [2] [3]

- **Protecting selected Message R/Fs:**
 2 2 ▶ **Highlight Message R/Fs**
 ▶
- **Canceling protection of selected Message R/Fs:**
 2 4 ▶
Highlight Message R/Fs ▶ ▶
- **Canceling protection of all the Message R/Fs:**
 2 5

INFORMATION

- On the Message R/F view screen: ▶ **Protect** or **Release**

Deleting Message R/F

Delete Message

- Protected Message R/Fs cannot be deleted.

1 Display the Message R/F list

2 Highlight a Message R/F ▶ 1 1

- **Deleting read Message R/Fs:**
 1 2
- **Deleting selected Message R/Fs:**
 1 3 ▶ **Highlight Message R/Fs**
 ▶
- **Deleting all the Message R/Fs:**
 1 4 ▶ **Enter the terminal security code**

3 Yes

INFORMATION

- On the Message R/F view screen: ▶ **Delete**
 ▶ Yes

Selecting the type of Message R/F to display

Display by Type

Display only the specified type of Message R/F temporarily on the Message R/F list. When you quit the display, **Display all** returns.

- You can select from **Display all**, **Display unread only**, **Display read only**, or **Display protected**.

1 Display the Message R/F list ▶ 1 3

Display read only: The protected Message R/F is not displayed.

Sorting Message R/F

Sort

Message R/Fs in the list are temporarily sorted. When you quit the display, **By date** returns.

- You can select **By date** or **By title**.

1 Display the Message R/F list ▶ 4

▶ 1 or 2

INFORMATION

- If one-byte, two-byte, alphabetic and kanji characters and URLs are mixed in titles, the result sorted by **By title** may not be in the order of the Japanese syllabary.

Operating certificates

Perform the operation of certificates required for the SSL communication.

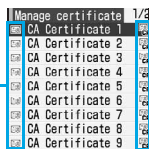
Displaying certificates and setting certificate validity/invalidity

Manage Certificate

Displaying a certificate

- When the UIM (blue) is inserted in the FOMA terminal, the certificate other than CA certificate is not displayed.

1 8 4 1 ▶ Highlight a certificate ▶



: Valid No icon: Invalid — : Cannot be set

- When you select an original certificate, the list screen appears. Select a certificate.

CA Certificate:

A certificate issued by the certifier (stored in the FOMA terminal by default)

DoCoMo Cert:

A certificate required for connecting to the FirstPass center and FirstPass compatible sites (saved in the UIM in advance)

User Certificate:

A certificate required for connecting to FirstPass compatible sites

- You request the FirstPass center to issue the certificate and download. The downloaded certificate is saved in the UIM.

Original certificate:

A certificate issued originally by companies or self-governing bodies and downloaded by you

■ Changing the certificate name of the original certificate:

- ① Highlight a certificate on the certificate list screen ▶
- ② Enter the certificate name (up to 18 one-byte or 9 two-byte characters) ▶
- To return to the user name:

■ Deleting the original certificate: Highlight a certificate on the certificate list screen ▶ ▶ Yes ▶ Enter the terminal security code

INFORMATION

- Certificate contents displayed:

User

CN= : (Common Name) Server name, administrator name, or discrimination number

O= : (Organization) Company name, etc.

C= : (Country) Country name

Issued by

CN= : (Common Name) Server name, administrator name, or discrimination number

OU= : (Organization Unit) Departments or other positions in the company

O= : (Organization) Company name, etc.

Expiration date

Serial number

- When a certificate has no information on the user, issuer and/or expiration date, only the item names are displayed.

Setting validity/invalidity of certificate

1 [8] [4] [1] ▶ ▶ Highlight a certificate ▶

- Pressing switches between on and off.
- Press to display the certificate.

2

The checked certificate is set as valid.

INFORMATION

- DoCoMo Cert2 cannot be set as invalid.

Skipping entry of the terminal security code when using original certificates Skip Password

When using an original certificate, authentication is performed by entering the terminal security code. Set whether to omit entry of the terminal security code when you reuse the original certificate for which authentication is completed.

1 [8] [4] [4] ▶ [1] or [2]

Setting FirstPass

Certificate Download

Connect to the FirstPass center to request a user certificate and download it.

- The screens and operations displayed by the FirstPass center may be changed.
- Mail cannot be sent/received and Message R/F cannot be received while being connected to the FirstPass center.

1 [8] [4] [2] ▶ English ▶ Request your certificate

FirstPassをご利用いただくためには、1-サ 証明書
の発行申請、ダウンロード
が必要です。
・「次へ」を選択して、1-サ
証明書の発行申請、ダウン
ロードを行ってください。
・当サービスの開発/ご利用にお
たつての「カ」通信料は無
料です。
戻る/English



FirstPass
1) Request your certificate
2) Download your certificate
3) Other settings
4) The usage regulation (Japanese only)

■ Invalidating the issued user certificate:

- ① [8] [4] [2] ▶ English ▶ Other settings

- ② **Revoke your certificate** ▶ **Highlight User Certificate** ▶ 
- ③ **Enter the PIN2 code** ▶ **Continue**
- ④ **Continue** ▶ **Continue**

2 Continue

```

FirstPass
You have requested a cer
tificate.
Refer to the usage regul
ation for more details.
Continue/Menu
  
```

3 Enter the PIN2 code

- If the PIN2 code is not entered within 60 seconds, the request is canceled.

4 Download ▶ Continue

```

FirstPass
Requesting a certificate
is completed.
Download the certificate
Continue/Menu
  
```

➡

```

Issuer:
DU=DoCoMo Secure Netwo
Secondary I
=NTT DoCoMo, Inc.
C=JP
Expiration:
XXXX/XX/XX XX:XX:XX
Serial Number:
XXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXX
XXXXXXXXXX
Continue/Menu
  
```

- The downloaded user certificate is added to the certificate list. ➡ P161

INFORMATION

- This function cannot be used when using the terminal overseas.
- Packet communication fee is not charged for connection to the FirstPass center.
- The user certificate certifies that you have subscribed to the FOMA service. The downloaded user certificate is saved in the UIM and it can be used on FirstPass compatible sites.
- The original certificate is issued by companies or self-governing bodies. The downloaded certificate can be used on the site which supports the certificate.
- The original certificate can also be used for Full Browser.
- The packet communication fee at the time of downloading an original certificate is charged.

- If you install FirstPass PC software in the attached CD-ROM to your PC, you can connect the FOMA terminal to the PC and perform communication using FirstPass. For details, refer to "FirstPassManual" (PDF format) in the attached CD-ROM. To view "FirstPassManual", Adobe® Reader® (version 6.0 or later is recommended) is required. If Adobe® Reader® is not installed in your PC, install Adobe® Reader® in the same CD-ROM. For details of usage, see the Help menu of Adobe Reader.

Using FirstPass

- FirstPass is DoCoMo's electronic authentication service. Using FirstPass allows client authentication, in which a site and the FOMA terminal exchange and verify each other's certificate for authenticating each other.
- FirstPass can be used for Internet communication using the FOMA terminal and for Internet communication using the FOMA terminal that is connected to a PC. To use FirstPass with a PC, FirstPass PC software in the attached CD-ROM is needed.
- When requesting a user certificate, be sure to read FirstPass usage regulation displayed on the screen and accept the terms and conditions.
- Use of a user certificate requires entry of the PIN2 code.
- All the operations made after the entry of the PIN2 code are regarded as operations you made. Use abundance of caution not to let the UIM or PIN2 code used by any third party.
- If the UIM is lost or stolen, you can contact "General Inquiries" on the back of this manual to have the user certificate nullified.
- Under no circumstances shall DoCoMo have any obligation or be held responsible for sites and information provided by FirstPass compatible sites. Any issue that occurs must be settled between you and the FirstPass compatible site concerned.
- Neither DoCoMo nor the certifier provides any guarantee for security, etc. in use of FirstPass or SSL. Use the services on your own judgment and responsibility.

Changing the certificate host Certificate Host

When you use services other than FirstPass, set the connection destination. If you change this setting, you cannot connect to the FirstPass center.

Usually, you do not need to change this setting.

- Downloading the original certificate ➡P155

1  8 4 3

2 **Host field** ▶ 2

- To restore the setting for connecting to FirstPass: the **Host field** ▶ 1 ▶ Go to Step 5

3 **User host field** ▶ Enter (up to 99 one-byte alphanumeric characters)

4 **User host URL field** ▶ Enter (up to 100 one-byte alphanumeric characters)

5 

i-motion

Images or sounds downloaded and saved from i-mode sites or websites can be played as "i-motion" or can be set for Movie ringtone (Chaku-motion). i-motion such as vocals of your favorite singers can be used as ring alert as well as melodies (some i-motion may not be set for Movie ringtone).

Generally, there are two types of i-motion as follows. You cannot change when downloading the data.

■ Normal type (can be saved*1)

Playing action	Description
Play while downloading data (up to 10MB)	The i-motion file is played while the data is being downloaded. After downloading of data is completed, the i-motion can be operated in the same way as the i-motion played after downloading all data.
Play after downloading data (up to 10MB)	The i-motion file is played after downloading all data.

*1 Some i-motion cannot be saved.

■ Streaming type (cannot be saved)

Playing action	Description
Play while downloading data (up to 10MB)	The i-motion file is played while the data is being downloaded. The i-motion data is deleted after playback is completed and cannot be saved in the FOMA terminal.

Downloading i-motion from sites

- The maximum number of items that can be saved ➡P416

1 **Display a site** ▶ **Highlight i-motion** ▶ 

When downloading is finished, a message indicating that appears.

- To stop downloading, press  during downloading and select **Yes**.
In case the file size of i-motion is from 500 Kbytes to 10 Mbytes and i-motion can be saved partially, a confirmation screen appears asking whether to resume. Downloading starts by selecting **Yes** and a confirmation screen for saving partially appears by selecting **No**. The remaining data of i-motion saved partially because downloading was canceled or the network connection broke can be downloaded again. See Step 2 in "Playing movie/i-motion". ➡P254
- When the streaming type i-motion is selected, a confirmation screen is displayed asking whether to replay. Select **Yes** to replay while downloading i-motion.

■ i-motion played while the data is being downloaded:

i-motion is replayed while the data is being downloaded. After finishing the replay, the operation is the same as the i-motion replayed after downloading data.



Amount of received data/total data

- During playback, the following operations are available:
 - Pause/play (only normal type):
 - Adjust volume:
 - Interrupt (only streaming type):
 - Stop (only normal type): (press to play from the beginning.)
 - Display detail information:
- Even if you pause or stop playing, the data reception continues.
- When the operation is interrupted, a confirmation screen is displayed. Select *Yes* to interrupt.

■ i-motion played after downloading data:

i-motion is played automatically when downloading is completed.



- The operations during playback are the same as Step 2 of "Playing movie/i-motion". However, bookmarks cannot be set. ◀P254

2 Save

- Streaming type i-motion cannot be saved.
- To play i-motion again: *Play*
- To display detail information: *File property*
- To cancel saving: *Back* ▶ *No*

3 Enter a display name (up to 36 one- or two-byte characters) ▶

The downloaded i-motion is saved in the *i-mode* folder of *i-motion* in Data Box.

- When is indicated in the guide row, press and press to save the data in the *Movie* folder (*Other movie* folders for the i-motion with only sound) of the microSD memory card. For i-motion*1 compatible with Movable Contents, the list of folders is displayed. Highlight a folder and press .

- When saving to the terminal, press to display the list of destination to use i-motion and you can set to the standby display, etc.

*1 i-motion which is permitted to be moved to the microSD memory card among the copyrighted i-motion downloaded from the sites.

■ When a link is set within ticker stream of downloaded i-motion:

If a link such as a phone number, a mail address, or a site URL is set in a ticker, you can use Phone To, AV Phone To, Mail To, and Web To after playback is finished or interrupted. For Phone To and AV Phone To, the Call Option screen appears. For Mail To or Web To, a confirmation screen appears.

- If the i-motion is not saved, a confirmation screen is displayed asking whether to save it.
- When the link type is Phone To (AV Phone To), pressing allows you to add phone numbers to the phonebook. When the link type is Mail To, selecting *Add to phonebook* allows you to add mail addresses to the phonebook.
- When there are multiple link items, only one item will be effective. The item which is to become effective depends on i-motion data.

INFORMATION

- Only the i-motion in MP4 (Mobile MP4) format can be downloaded and played. i-motion in ASF format cannot be downloaded and played.
- The replay restrictions such as number of replayable times or expiration of playback may be set for i-motion files.
- When i-motion is replayed while the data is being downloaded, replay may be paused in wait for data reception. The replay is automatically resumed when data reception is restarted.
- When i-motion is replayed while the data is being downloaded, i-motion may become unable to play or the i-motion image may be blurred depending on radio wave conditions. Even if in such a case, the i-motion can be replayed after the completion of downloading if the data is normally received. However, some i-motion files may allow downloading of data but may not be replayed correctly.

- Even for the type of i-motion which is played while the data is being downloaded, it may not be played during downloading depending on the status of sites.
- When i-motion data is improper, reception of i-motion may be canceled.
- When you use i-motion from i-appli applications and attempt to save it, sometimes it may not be saved even if **Ring alert** and **Receive display** are set to **Available** in the detail information. In this case, you cannot set the i-motion as the ring alert or incoming image.
- When there is an incoming call in case streaming type i-motion is being played while downloading or when the date and time specified by Alarm Clock, schedule, etc. arrives, downloading is interrupted and playing is stopped.
- When the memory is not enough, or the maximum number of saved items is exceeded, a confirmation screen appears. Follow the screen and delete the saved movie/i-motion. Before deleting, you can play movie/i-motion by pressing  on the movie/i-motion list or view the detail information about it by pressing .

Setting auto play of i-motion

i-motion Setting

Set whether to automatically play normal type i-motion during or after downloading.

- 1    ▶ **Auto replay setting field**
▶  or  ▶ 

INFORMATION

- On the site screen:  ▶ **Display** ▶ **i-motion setting**
- Even when **Auto Play OFF** is set, i-motion can be played by selecting **Play** after downloading i-motion.
- For streaming type i-motion, a confirmation screen appears asking whether to play automatically regardless of the auto play setting.

i-Channel

i-Channel is a service in which DoCoMo or IP delivers graphical information such as news and weather information to i-Channel compatible terminals. Users can receive information regularly, and read the latest information as it appears as tickers on the standby display, or view it in the channel list by pressing the i-Channel compatible key () (Displaying the channel list ). Additionally, users can obtain rich, detail information by selecting a favorite channel in the channel list. i-Channel is a pay service for which subscription is required (You need an i-mode subscription in order to subscribe to i-Channel).

- i-Channel information is displayed in Japanese only.

And there are two types of channels: "Basic channel" and "Favorite channel" and Basic channel is pre-registered channels provided by DoCoMo and ready for use immediately after i-Channel sign-up. Regarding "Basic channel", you are not charged with a packet communication fee for automatic information update. "Favorite channel" is provided by non-DoCoMo IPs and users register their desired channel for viewing. Packet communication fee for automatic information update and other fees in relation to "Favorite channel" are not included in the i-Channel service fee. However, viewing detail information from the channel list, whether "Basic channel" or "Favorite channel" information, causes separate packet communication fee that is not covered by the i-Channel service fee.

Besides, note that the packet communication fee for automatic update of the information distributed about "Basic channel" during international roaming is not included in the service charge for i-Channel.

- For detailed information about how to use i-Channel, see "Mobile Phone User's Guide [i-mode] FOMA version".

INFORMATION

- If you cancel i-Channel or i-mode service subscription, tickers are no longer displayed. Pressing  displays the pre-subscription screen. Until the cancellation procedure has finished, however, tickers may be displayed on the screen and pressing  may display the last received information in the channel list.
- When *Show ticker* is set to *No* in i-Channel Ticker, no tickers are displayed.
- If you cannot receive information because the power of the FOMA terminal is turned off or due to out-of-service area or poor signal conditions, when receiving is available, press  to receive information.
- You can change the i-Channel host (although you usually do not need to change it). ➤P157

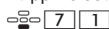
Displaying i-Channel

Channel List

1

The channel list appears.

- When movie/i-motion, Chara-den or i-appli is set as the standby display:



- i-Channel is not displayed even if  is pressed.

2 Highlight a channel

Your terminal connects to the site and the detail information appears.

- Depending on the situation of use, information may be received when displaying the channel list.

INFORMATION

- To refresh the channel list:  in the channel list ➤ *Retry*
- When you press  in the channel list and select *Sound effect setting*, you can set whether to enable sound effects for Flash movie. "Setting image display and sound effects" ➤P158

Changing i-Channel settings

i-Channel Ticker

You can set whether to run tickers of the received i-Channel information on the standby display. You can also set the ticker running speed.

- When *Show ticker* is set to *Yes*, up to 10 tickers for the newest information are shown on the standby display each time the standby display appears until the display items disappear.
- In the default state or in case the UIM is replaced or the host address 2 is changed, if the i-Channel information is automatically updated or if you press  to display the channel list, the ticker is displayed and you can set i-Channel Ticker.

1 ➤ Set each item

Show ticker:

Sets whether to display a ticker.

Ticker speed:

Sets the display speed.

2

- When *Show ticker* is set to *Yes*, a confirmation screen appears when movie/i-motion, Chara-den or i-appli is set as the standby display. If you select *Yes*, the movie/i-motion, Chara-den or i-appli is released.

INFORMATION

- In the following cases, i-Channel information cannot be displayed in the ticker.
 - In All Lock
 - In Personal Data Lock
 - In Omakase Lock (Remote Lock)
 - In Public mode (Driving mode)
 - When the UIM not inserted
- When 2in1 is activated, the setting is available for each mode of 2in1.
- After replacing the UIM, i-Channel Ticker returns to its default.

Restoring i-Channel information to the default settings

Reset i-Channel

You can delete all the received information of i-Channel and restore the default settings.

1  [7] [3] ► *Yes*

INFORMATION

- If Reset i-Channel is performed, tickers on the standby display disappear. Pressing  on the standby display and displaying the channel list receives the latest information and tickers will be displayed on the standby display.

Mail

FOMA terminal mail function	170
Composing i-mode Mail/Deco-mail	
Composing and sending i-mode Mail	Compose Message 171
Composing and sending Deco-mail	Deco-mail 172
Attaching files	175
Using mail templates	177
Saving i-mode Mail for sending later	178
Composing mails quickly	Quick Mail 179
Receiving and handling i-mode Mail	
Receiving i-mode Mail	Mail Auto Receive 179
Selecting i-mode Mail to receive	180
Checking for i-mode Mail	Check i-mode Message 181
Using WEB Mail	181
Replying to received i-mode Mail	182
Forwarding received i-mode Mail	182
Displaying, playing and saving attachments	183
Using the mail box	
Displaying mails	Inbox/Outbox/Unsent Messages 186
Useful functions of mail	193
Saving mails in the Data Center	Data Security Service 194
Using the mail log	
Using the mail log	Received Msg. Log/Sent Msg. Log 195
Setting mail	
Setting mail functions of the FOMA terminal	196
Using Chat Mail	
Composing and sending chat mails	201
Using SMS	
Composing and sending SMS	204
When SMS is received	205
Checking for SMS	Check SMS 206
Making SMS settings	206
Saving SMS to the UIM	207

FOMA terminal mail function

The FOMA terminal provides two types of mail functions: i-mode Mail and SMS.

- To use i-mode Mail, an i-mode subscription is required.
- You can use SMS without an i-mode subscription.

i-mode Mail

i-mode subscribers can send and receive mail to and from other i-mode terminals or via Internet e-mail.

In addition to the text, files (JPEG, ToruCa, PDF, etc.) can be attached up to 10 items within a total of 2 Mbytes. Also, it supports Deco-mail and the font color, size and background color of the mail text can be changed. Since many Deco-mail pictograms which can be inserted like pictograms are preinstalled, you can compose richly expressive mail easily and send it.

- For details of i-mode Mail, see the latest "Mobile Phone User's Guide [i-mode] FOMA version".

SMS

Text messages can be exchanged between FOMA terminals.

- Sending ➡P204
- Receiving ➡P205
- Checking for SMS ➡P206

Address of SMS

The address of SMS is the subscribed mobile phone number.

- You can exchange SMS with users of overseas service provider other than DoCoMo. For more information, visit the DoCoMo website.

Number of characters that can be sent/received

The maximum number of characters differs depending on the font type setting. ➡P206

Item	English	Japanese
Address	20 characters (numbers only)*1	
Message	160 one-byte characters*2	70 one- or two-byte characters

*1 If a one-byte "+" is contained, up to 21 characters can be entered.

*2 One-byte alphanumerics and symbols (except for " ", " ", " " and " ") can be sent.

When symbols (" ", " ", " ", " " and " ") are entered, the number of characters that can be sent is reduced.

When you cannot receive SMS

SMS sent to your FOMA terminal is received by the SMS Center and sent to your FOMA terminal immediately. When you cannot receive the messages because the terminal is turned off or outside the service area, the messages are stored in the SMS Center.

INFORMATION

- The SMS Center can store messages up to 72 hours. The sender can specify the storage period. ➡P206
- The messages are automatically deleted after the maximum storage period expires.
- You can use Check SMS to receive the messages stored in the SMS Center. ➡P206
- When the FOMA terminal receives the messages stored in the SMS Center, the messages are deleted from the Center. The received SMS is saved to the FOMA terminal.

Other useful functions

Delivered report

You can receive a delivered report informing you that the other party has received the sent SMS. ➡P206

Saving to the UIM

You can save the received and sent SMS to the UIM. ➡P207

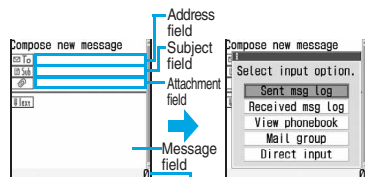
Composing and sending i-mode Mail

Compose Message

Example

Composing and sending i-mode Mail by entering an address directly

1 2 ▶ Address field



Mail composition screen

The number of total bytes of the characters and decoration data in the message (1 two-byte character is 2 bytes)

2 Direct input ▶ Enter the address (up to 50 one-byte characters)

- When sending mail to an i-mode terminal, you may omit "@docomo.ne.jp" in the mail address.
- In 5-touch Input Method, press  repeatedly in the alphabet input mode to enter ".", "@", "-", etc. In addition, ".com", ".ne.jp", ".co.jp", etc. can be entered by pressing  repeatedly in the alphabet input mode.
- When the other party has registered a secret code, enter the other party's i-mode terminal phone number followed by the 4-digit secret code.

■ Selecting from the sent message log:

Sent msg log ▶ Highlight a log ▶ 

- The address of mail receiver is set.

■ Selecting from the received message log: *Received msg log* ▶ Highlight a log ▶

- The address of mail sender is set.

■ Searching the phonebook: *View phonebook* ▶ Highlight a party ▶

■ Using a mail group: *Mail group* ▶ Highlight a mail group ▶

- If the total of entered addresses exceeds 5, the mail group cannot be added.
- To display the mail group details: Highlight a mail group ▶ 

3 Subject field ▶ Enter the subject (up to 30 one-byte or 15 two-byte characters)

- The whole part of the subject may not be received depending on the receiver.

4 ▶ Enter the message (up to 10,000 one-byte or 5,000 two-byte characters)

- A space of one- or two-byte or a line feed is also counted as a character in the message.
- If Deco-mail pictogram (pictogram D) is inserted in the message, it will become Deco-mail.

■ Inserting a signature:   

5

- Pressing  on the connecting screen or pressing  on the sending screen stops sending and saves the i-mode Mail to the folder of *Unsent messages*. However, depending on the operation timing, the mail may not be saved in the folder, or the mail may be sent even if it is saved in the folder.
- When a confirmation screen appears asking whether to send mail automatically in the service area, if you select *Yes*, the mail is saved as auto-send mail in the folder of *Unsent messages*.

INFORMATION

- When mail exceeding 10,000 bytes was automatically saved due to start of other functions, part of the mail being composed may not be saved.
- Depending on signal conditions, characters may not be displayed correctly at the receiver side.
- When transmission is completed correctly, the i-mode Mail is saved in the folder of *Outbox*. When the memory is not enough, or the maximum number of saved items is exceeded, the oldest sent mail is deleted. Be sure to protect sent mail you want to keep.
- When transmission fails, an error message appears and the i-mode Mail is saved in the folder of *Unsent messages*. i-mode Mail can be edited and sent from *Unsent messages*.
- Even if i-mode Mail is sent correctly, "Transmission failed." may be displayed depending on signal conditions.

- If you send i-mode Mail including pictograms to other mobile phone companies (au/SoftBank/Tu-Ka), it is automatically converted to the similar pictograms supported by the receiver side.
 - Depending on the model or function of the receiver's mobile phone, the pictograms may not be displayed correctly.
 - If there is no corresponding pictograms supported by the receiver side, it is converted to characters or "■".
- Depending on the settings of the receiver's terminal such as the number of characters that can be displayed, the font or its display size, face marks may not be displayed correctly and their shapes and views may be different from the original ones.
- An error message for address unknown etc. may not be received when mail is sent to addresses other than DoCoMo.
- When the memory is not enough or the maximum number of saved items is exceeded, i-mode Mail cannot be composed and sent. Delete unnecessary i-mode Mail and SMS from *Unsent messages*. ◀P192
- To send mail with the sender set to Address B of 2in1, use WEB Mail. ◀P181

Adding receivers

You can send i-mode Mail to up to 5 addresses at one time (Multi-address transmission).

- There are the following three address types:



To : Used for usual addresses.



Cc : Used when you want to inform the other party of the content of the particular mail sent to the TO address.



Bcc : Used when you want to inform the other party as with CC, but the BCC-specified address is not shown for the other party.

- Mail with no address entered in the field cannot be sent.

1 Highlight the address field on the mail composition screen ▶ ▶ Highlight an input method ▶

- When you select *Mail group*, go to Step 3.

2 TO, CC or BCC

3 Enter or select an address

- **Changing TO, CC and BCC:** Highlight an address field ▶ 9 ▶ Highlight an address type ▶

- **Deleting the added address field:**

Highlight an address field ▶ 8 ▶

Yes

- Only the address in the field is deleted when there is only one field.

INFORMATION

- The mail addresses entered in the To field and CC field are displayed at the receiver side. However, it may not be displayed depending on the terminal, device or mailing software.
- When sending of mail to some addresses fails, an error message is displayed. Pressing may display a list of mail addresses for which transmission failed.

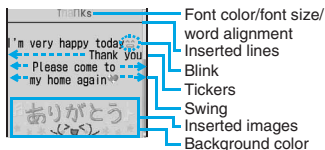
Composing and sending Deco-mail

Deco-mail

You can compose Deco-mail by decorating an i-mode mail message.

- The size of Deco-mail which can be sent is less than 100 Kbytes, which is the total size of the mail text and the images inserted in the text. In addition, the files up to 10 items or 2 Mbytes can be attached.

■ Examples of decoration



■ Flow of Deco-mail composition

Step 1 Display the message text entry screen from the mail composition screen



Step 2 Enter characters and set decorations



- "Entering characters after specifying the decoration". ●P173
- "Specifying decoration after entering characters". ●P174

Step 3 Confirm the decoration before sending

INFORMATION

- Even if you delete decorated characters, the decoration data may remain and the number of characters that can be entered may be fewer. Cancel the decoration first and then delete characters. Holding down [2nd] for over a second deletes all the characters and decoration data (except the background color).
- When sent and received to/from other than the Deco-mail compatible FOMA terminal such as a PC, the decoration in Deco-mail may not be correctly displayed.
- When Deco-mail exceeding 10,000 bytes is sent to a Deco-mail compatible terminal other than the following models*1, the mail with URL for viewing is received at the receiver side.
- *1 903i series, 904i series, 905i series, 703i series (except for P703iμ), 704i series (except for P704iμ) and 705i series
- When Deco-mail exceeding 10,000 bytes is sent to a Deco-mail non-compatible terminals, the mail with URL for viewing is received at the receiver. However, when the size of Deco-mail exceeds 10,000 bytes, some non-compatible terminal may receive only the text, and mail without URL for viewing may be received.
- The actions of decoration such as blink, ticker, swing and animation stop after a certain period of time on the mail composition screen or the preview screen.
- If Deco-mail pictogram (pictogram D) is entered in the message, it will become Deco-mail.
- To check the accurate number of bytes that can be entered and the decoration: [MENU] [0] on the message text entry screen

Entering characters after specifying the decoration

1 [Text] on the mail composition screen ▶



2 Select a decoration icon by [Decorations] and set ▶ Enter characters



Icon

Decoration selection screen

For the operations, see "Operations on the decoration selection screen" ●P173

■ Setting selected decorations:

Highlight icons on the decoration selection screen ▶ [MENU]

- Ticker, Swing and Word alignment cannot be selected at the same time.

■ Canceling a decoration and entering characters: Place the cursor on the character entry position ▶ [Enter] ▶ [Decorations]

- Font color, Font size, Blink, Ticker, Swing and Word alignment can be canceled.

■ Changing the decoration: [MENU] [1] [8]

▶ Place the cursor on the start position ▶ [Decorations]

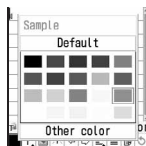
- Follow the procedure from Step 2 in "Specifying decoration after entering characters". ●P175

■ Canceling all the decorations: [MENU] [1] [9]

[MENU] [1] [9]

Operations on the decoration selection screen

■ Changing the font color: [Decorations] ▶ Highlight a color ▶ [Enter] ▶ Enter characters



- Select from 20 standard colors or 64 colors in **Other color**.
- The colors of pictograms 1 and 2 are also changed. To return to the original color, specify the range and select **Default**. For operations, see "Specifying decoration after entering characters". P174

■ Changing the font size: T (or T, T, T) ▶ Highlight a size ▶ Enter characters



- The size of Deco-mail pictogram cannot be changed.

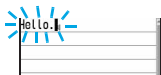
■ Inserting images (including Deco-mail pictogram): Phone memory ▶ Highlight a folder ▶ Highlight an image ▶ Enter characters



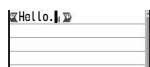
- Up to 20 types within a total of 90 Kbytes can be inserted.

- To insert an image from the microSD memory card: microSD ▶ 1 - 3 ▶ Highlight a folder ▶ Highlight an image ▶ Enter characters
- To shoot a still image and insert it: Use still camera ▶ Shoot ▶ Enter characters
- The size of still image is automatically set to 96 x 72 (phonebook).
- Deco-mail pictogram can also be inserted by the procedure for entering pictograms. P338

■ Making characters blink: T ▶ Enter characters



■ Making characters into ticker to run from right to left: Enter characters



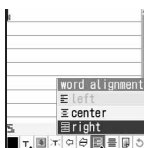
- Enter characters between and .

■ Making characters swing left and right: Enter characters



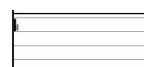
- Enter characters between and .

■ Changing word alignment: (or) ▶ Highlight the display position ▶ Enter characters



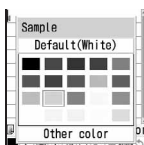
- If the cursor is in the entered characters, linefeed is inserted in the cursor position.
- The position of the image is also changed.

■ Inserting lines (ruled lines):



A line (ruled line) is inserted in the color specified with font color ().

■ Changing background color: Highlight a color ▶ Enter characters



- Select from 20 standard colors or 64 colors in **Other color**.

■ Canceling the operation: ↵

Specifying decoration after entering characters

You can decorate entered characters or change the decoration of characters by specifying the range.

- You cannot insert lines or images, or change the background color. Specify the decoration first.

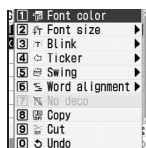
1 Place the cursor at the start position on the message text entry screen ▶

2 Place the cursor at the end position ▶



- To select from the start position to the beginning of the text: **MENU**
- To select from the start position to the end of the text:
- To select all the text:

3 Select the decoration method and set



- To cancel the decoration: **7**
- To copy characters: **8**
- To cut characters: **9**
- To cancel the operation: **0**

Attaching files

You can send i-mode Mail with files attached.

- The maximum number of files that can be attached is 10, and the total size of attachments that can be saved is a maximum of 2 Mbytes.
- Sending may take some time depending on the size of attachment.

The type of file which can be attached

File type	Restriction	Remarks
Image	Images in JPEG and GIF formats can be attached. Created animation cannot be attached.	① ②
Movie/i-motion	Only the movie/i-motion in MP4 format can be attached (i-motion in ASF format or the partially saved i-motion cannot be attached). Files with replay restriction set cannot be attached. The file without replay restrictions set may be unable to be attached, either.	③
Melody	The melodies in SMF and MFi formats can be attached. Even if the melody in MFi format is attached, it is not inserted in the message.	④
ToruCa	Depending on the settings of IP (Information Provider), some ToruCa cannot be attached, either.	⑤
PDF data	The PDF data saved partially or failed in downloading cannot be attached.	—
Schedule	—	—
Bookmark	—	—
Phonebook	—	—
Recorded voice	—	⑥
Others	Non-viewable file is attached.	—

- ① When you send mail with a JPEG image exceeding 10,000 bytes attached to the terminal other than the following models*1, the image is reduced in the i-shot Center to a size that can be received at the receiver's terminal.
*1 903i series, 904i series, 905i series, 703i series (except for P703iμ), 704i series (except for P704iμ) and 705i series
- ② Depending on the receiver's device (terminal, PC, etc.), images will be received as attachments to mail or a mail containing URLs.

- 3 Depending on the receiver's model, movie/i-motion is not received or displayed correctly, or may be degraded or displayed as continuous images. When sending movie to the terminal other than the following models*1, movie with the size restriction: Msg attach: Small, image size: QCIF (176 x 144) and quality: HQ (High quality) is recommended.
- *1 903i series, 904i series, 905i series, 703i series (except for P703iμ), 704i series (except for P704iμ) and 705i series
- 4 When melodies are sent to the terminal other than D705ip, they may not play correctly at the receiver side.
- 5 ToruCa (details) may not be received depending on the receiver's model.
- 6 The data recorded with Sound Recorder is saved as i-motion and can be attached to mail.

Attaching files

1 Attachment field on the mail composition screen ▶ Highlight a file type to attach ▶

Specify a file

- When the microSD memory card is inserted, a screen for selecting the location of the file to attach from *Phone memory* or *microSD* appears.
- The data in the folder which you cannot select cannot be attached.

Attaching an image:

- For a JPEG image with the image size exceeding 240 x 320 or 320 x 240 (standby size), a confirmation screen appears. Select *Yes* to convert to standby size.
- For a JPEG image exceeding 2 Mbytes, it is automatically reduced to a size that can be attached to mail. This operation may take some time.
- When selecting *Activate camera* at the location of the file to attach: Shoot ▶
- The size of image is automatically set to 240 x 320 (standby size).

Attaching movie/i-motion:

- When selecting *Activate camera* at the location of the file to be attached: Record ▶
- The size of movie images is automatically set to QCIF (176 x 144).

■ Attaching ToruCa:

- When ToruCa (details) can be attached, a confirmation screen appears asking whether to attach to the mail, including details.
- If ToruCa (details) cannot be attached, a confirmation screen appears asking whether to attach ToruCa without details. If *Yes* is selected, the details are cut off, but when there is detail information on the site, the details can be downloaded at the receiver side.

■ Attaching a bookmark:

- For *Phone memory*, press  in the folder list to switch between bookmarks of i-mode and bookmarks of Full Browser.

■ Attaching sound (Recorded voice):

- ① Record ▶ 

INFORMATION

- Only one JPEG image can be attached and sent to a mova terminal. In this case, it is received as a mail containing a URL (i-shot Mail). The attached file other than JPEG image will be deleted and mail with no attachment will be delivered.
- If you send mail with the file which the receiver's terminal does not support attached, the attached file may be deleted in the i-mode Center.
- Files prohibited from being attached to mail or output from the FOMA terminal (except images and melodies with the file restriction set to *File restricted* on your terminal or the PDF data which is obtained from other than i-mode) and files with the UIM operation restriction set cannot be attached.
- When the file is attached, the file name is displayed in the Attachment field. When the file name is too long to be displayed, highlight the file name field and press  [4] [3] to display the file name.
- You can display or play the attached file by selecting the file name field. However, the following files cannot be displayed and played:
 - Melody exceeding 100 Kbytes
 - ToruCa exceeding 1 Kbyte and ToruCa (details) exceeding 100 Kbytes
 - Non-viewable file
 - A file containing multiple data such as the backup of phonebook, schedules or bookmark

Changing/removing attachments

Example Removing an attachment

- 1 Display the mail composition screen
- 2 Highlight the file name ▶ ▶ Yes
 - Changing the attachment: Highlight the file name ▶ ▶ Attach a file

Using mail templates

Mail templates are samples of the i-mode Mail and Deco-mail. You can easily compose i-mode Mail or Deco-mail by using mail templates; adding and editing the content.

You can use the mail templates downloaded from the sites (▶P154) or those you have composed besides the mail templates set by default.

- Mail templates downloaded or composed are saved in *Template*.

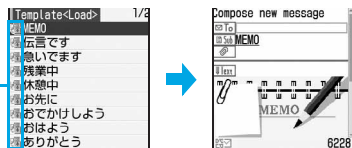
Using templates while composing mails

Load Template

- 1 6 1 on the mail composition screen

- When you read a template on the mail composition screen after entering any text, a confirmation screen appears.
 - To stop reading:

- 2 Highlight a template ▶



The received mail list screen ▶P187

- Highlight a template and press to display the template. Press to read it or press to return to the list.
- Multiple templates cannot be read for one mail.

- 3 Edit the mail ▶

Displaying templates and composing mails

Load Template

- 1 8 ▶ Highlight a template ▶
 - Press to display the previous or next template.
 - To check or change the detail information of the template: Highlight a template in the template list ▶ ▶ Detail info ▶ View or Edit
 - The detail information of preinstalled templates cannot be changed.

- 2 ▶ Edit the mail ▶

Saving templates

Composed or received/sent i-mode Mail can be registered as a template.

- The maximum number of items that can be saved ▶P416
- You can edit a preinstalled template and save it as a new template.
- In the following cases, the mail cannot be registered as a template.
 - When the total size of the text and decoration exceeds 10,000 bytes
 - The number of types of images inserted in the text exceeds 20 or the total size exceeds 90 Kbytes
 - The total size of the text, images inserted in the text and attachments exceeds 100 Kbytes
- If no text is entered, the received/sent i-mode Mail cannot be registered. In addition, the address and subject are not registered.

- 1 6 2 on the mail composition screen ▶ Yes

- To register a received/sent i-mode Mail: 4 5 on the mail view screen

2 Set each item

Display name:

Up to 20 one-byte or 10 two-byte characters can be entered.

File name:

A file name can contain up to 36 characters including one-byte alphanumerics, “.”, “-” and “_”. However, “.” cannot be used for the first character of the file name.

3

- To overwrite the saved template:   Highlight a template   **Yes**
- The preinstalled templates cannot be overwritten.

INFORMATION

- If you try to save a template containing an image that cannot be sent, the image may be deleted.
- When the memory is not enough or the maximum number of saved items is exceeded, a confirmation screen appears. Follow the instructions on the screen and delete them.

Deleting templates

- The preinstalled templates cannot be deleted.

Example Deleting one item

1 8

2 Highlight a template 2 1

■ Deleting selected templates:

 2 2  Highlight templates 

■ Deleting all the templates: 2 3

 Enter the terminal security code

3 Yes

Saving i-mode Mail for sending later

Saving unsent i-mode Mail

- The maximum number of items that can be saved 
- If none of address, subject, attachment or text is entered, the mail cannot be saved.

1 3 on the mail composition screen

i-mode Mail is saved in the *Unsent messages* folder of *Unsent messages*.

INFORMATION

- When the memory is not enough, a message or a confirmation screen may appear. Follow the instruction and delete mails in *Unsent messages* or remove the attachment before saving.

Sending i-mode Mail automatically inside the service area

Auto-send

Set i-mode Mail composed outside the service area to be sent automatically when you are within the service area.

- Up to 5 items can be saved.
- You cannot save without setting the receiver (To).

1 2 on the mail composition screen

The mail is saved as auto-send mail in the *Unsent messages* folder of *Unsent messages* and  appears at the top of the screen.

Inside the service area

Auto-send mail is sent automatically.  flashes while an auto-send mail is being sent and  disappears after all the auto-send mails are sent.

- When sending fails, the auto-send failure mail remains in *Unsent messages* and  flashes. When there is no auto-send failure mail by deleting, canceling the auto-send setting or exchanging the UIM,  disappears.

INFORMATION

- Auto-send mail is resent up to twice.
- Auto-send mail is not sent automatically while composing a mail or editing the signature.

Canceling the auto-send setting

1 Highlight a mail with the auto-send setting in the unsent mail list ▶

Yes

INFORMATION

- To display the cause of error: Highlight an auto-send failure mail in the unsent mail list ▶  **Display** ▶ **Display failed msg**
 - In case a message indicating that sending to the broadcast addresses has failed appears as the cause of the error, you can display the broadcast mail address by pressing .
- The auto-send setting is also canceled in the following cases:
 - When the mail is moved to the folder for the Message i-apppli
 - When exchanging the UIM
 - When *Host number* or *Host address* is changed in Host Selection
 - When setting 2in1 to the B mode

Editing and sending saved mail

- If an auto-send mail is edited, the setting of Auto-send is canceled.

Example Editing an unsent mail

1 4 ▶ Highlight a folder ▶

• To edit and send a sent mail:  5 ▶ Highlight a folder ▶ 

2 Highlight a mail ▶

- To edit the sent mail again: Highlight the mail ▶ 

3 Edit the mail ▶

INFORMATION

- On the sent mail view screen: 

Composing mails quickly

Quick Mail

You can compose i-mode Mail and SMS easily to the parties registered to the phonebook No. 0 to 99 in the FOMA terminal phonebook.

- The first mail address registered in the phonebook entry is set as the address of i-mode Mail and the first phone number as the address of SMS.

1 Enter the phonebook No. ▶

- Enter the phonebook No. without prefix zero (0).

■ Composing SMS: Enter the phonebook No. ▶ (for over a second)

Receiving i-mode Mail

Mail Auto Receive

- The received i-mode Mail is saved in the folder of *Inbox*.
- The maximum number of items that can be saved ➡ P416

1 An i-mode mail is received



Receiving screen

Flashing

- To stop reception:



Depending on the receiving condition, i-mode Mail may be received.

Reception completed (The reception result screen is displayed, the mail ring alert sounds and the keys light/flash.)



Reception result screen

 : Unread i-mode Mail exists.

 : Unread i-mode Mail and SMS exist.

Reception result ticker

Number of received i-mode Mail

When reception fails, "X" is indicated after Mail.

2 Highlight a folder Highlight a mail

- When a melody is attached, it plays automatically. Auto play can be turned off. 
- Displaying received mail 
- Select a Message *i-appli* folder to start the corresponding *i-appli*.

INFORMATION

- The reception result screen is displayed for about 15 seconds if you do not press any key, or until the ring alert stops if ring time is set to 15 seconds or longer in Mail Alert.
- If the data size of received mail (number of characters, attachment file size) exceeds the limit (maximum number of characters) set with **Limit Mail Size** in **Mail Settings** in **Options of English iMenu** in **iMenu**, the attachments cannot be received automatically. To receive it, select the file name on the mail view screen.
- When the memory is not enough, or the maximum number of saved items is exceeded, the oldest received mail except unread one is deleted. Be sure to protect received mail you want to keep. Note that the number of read mails to be deleted increases especially when receiving an attachment with large size, such as 2 Mbytes.
 - If the memory is full with unread mail and protected mail, reception of i-mode Mail is stopped.  or  is indicated on the screen. To receive new messages, display unread mail, change unread mail to read, delete unnecessary mail or cancel mail protection.
- i-mode Mail may not be received automatically soon after sending it. Perform Check i-mode Message.
- Extremely large i-mode Mail may not be accepted by the i-mode Center and be returned to the sender with an error message.
- The mail received by Address B of 2in1 is saved to the WEB mail site. 
- When new i-mode Mail is delivered, the i-mode Mail and Message R/F stored in the i-mode Center are also received.
- When i-mode Mail is received, i-mode Mail in the i-mode Center is deleted.
- The FOMA terminal shows which of TO, CC and BCC is specified for you when you receive a mail from a party who can specify TO, CC and BCC. 

- When i-mode Mail is received from a party with the incoming mail settings made in the FOMA terminal phonebook, the settings apply to the operation of the ring alert, vibrator and the key.
 - When multiple items of i-mode Mail or Message R/F are received at the same time, the operation depends on the conditions set for the last i-mode mail or Message R/F received.
- For each i-mode mail including the attachment, it can be automatically received up to 100 Kbytes. The attachment exceeding 100 Kbytes can be manually downloaded from the i-mode Center. 
- Incoming i-mode Mail is stored in the i-mode Center in the following cases:
 - The power is off
 - During a videophone call
 - In Self Mode
 - When reception fails
 - While being out of service area
 - While receiving SMS
 - During infrared communication
 - During iC communication
 - When Receive Option Setting is on
 - While connecting to the Data Center
 - While Omakase Lock is on
 - While connecting to the FirstPass center
 - When the storage is filled with unread mail and protected mail
- If there is unreceived i-mode Mail in the i-mode Center,  or  is indicated. However, the icon may not be displayed even when there is i-mode Mail in the i-mode Center. When the maximum number of mail that can be stored in the i-mode Center is reached, the icon changes to  or .

Selecting i-mode Mail to receive

You can select and receive i-mode Mail stored in the i-mode Center without receiving automatically.

When mail arrives in the i-mode Center

i-mode Mail received when Receive Option Setting is set to **ON** is stored in the i-mode Center and **You have mail at i-mode center** appears.

- Even if i-mode Mail is stored in the i-mode Center, the mail ring alert or vibrator is not activated.
- Press any key other than  and  to clear *You have mail at i-mode center*.

INFORMATION

- During All Lock, Omakase Lock or Personal Data Lock, *You have mail at i-mode center* does not appear for mail coming to the i-mode Center.
- Even if Receive Option Setting is on, all the i-mode mails in the i-mode Center are received when Check i-mode Message is performed. If you do not want to receive mail, unselect the mail in Message Retrieval Setting.
- SMS and Message R/F are received automatically even if Receive Option Setting is on.

Selecting mail to receive

Check the subjects of i-mode Mail stored in the i-mode Center and then select mails to receive. You can also delete mails at the i-mode Center before receiving.

- To select mails to receive, set Receive Option Setting to *ON* in advance.

1   



You are connected to the i-mode Center and the list of i-mode Mail stored appears.

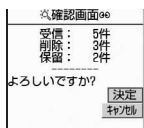
-  : Image attached
-  : Melody attached
-  : i-motion attached
-  : ToruCa attached
-  : Other files attached

2 保留 (Hold) ▶ 受信 (Receive), 削除 (Delete) or 保留

保留: The mail is stored at the i-mode Center.

- To delete all mails stored at the i-mode Center, select **削除 for i モードセンターから全てのメールを** (All the mails from the i-mode Center).

3 受信 / 削除 (Receive/Delete) ▶ 決定 (OK)



Checking for i-mode Mail

Check i-mode Message

You can check whether i-mode Mail has been delivered to the i-mode Center while the FOMA terminal was out of the service area or turned off.

Also check for Message R/F at the same time if it is set so in Message Retrieval Setting.

- The key light flashes while performing Check i-mode Message. The setting cannot be changed.
- Operate the terminal in locations with good radio wave conditions.

1 (for over a second)

- The operation on the reception result screen is the same as for auto reception.

Using WEB Mail

To send/receive a mail using Address B of 2in1, operate by connecting to the WEB mail site. The WEB mail site can be connected only when 2in1 is in the B mode or the dual mode.

- 2in1 is a pay service and requires a subscription.

1 ▶ The i-mode password entry field ▶ Enter the i-mode password ▶ 決定 (OK)

- For details of WEB mail, see "Mobile Phone User's Guide [2in1]".

Replying to received i-mode Mail

- You may not be able to reply to some received mail.
- You cannot reply to the SMS for which *Anonymous*, *Payphone* or *Unavailable* is displayed in the sender field.
- Mail Reply Format allows you to set whether to quote the message in a reply mail and to select the character to be inserted at the beginning of the quoted message.

1 Highlight a folder

2 Highlight a mail

The quick reply message selection screen appears.

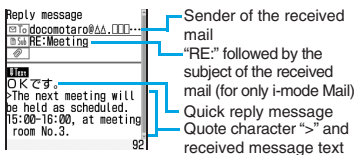
- To reply to SMS: Go to Step 4

■ Replying to all the receiver addresses:

1 **3** or **4**

You can reply to the sender and all the receivers except you. You can also select to quote the text.

3 Highlight a quick reply message



- To cancel inserting a quick reply message: *Compose Message*

4 Edit the mail

INFORMATION

- On the received mail view screen: **1**
- To select whether to quote the text regardless of the setting for Mail Reply Format: **1** on the received mail list and view screen **▶ Reply/Forward ▶ Reply or Reply with quote**
 - When there are multiple addresses, you can also select *Reply all* or *Reply all w/ quote*.
- The attachments to received mail are not attached to reply mail.

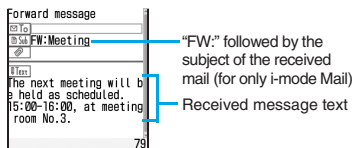
- The data attached in the message text of received mail (links to start i-appli or melodies inserted in the message) is neither attached nor quoted as characters in reply mail.
- When received Deco-mail is quoted, the text is displayed with the decoration and inserted images quoted. However, the images permitted to attach to mail or to output for the FOMA terminal set are not quoted in reply mail.
- When there are 20 types of images inserted in the text in total or the total size exceeds 90 Kbytes, a message appears indicating that the image which exceeds the limit is deleted. Pressing **1** deletes the image of the part beyond the limit and displays the mail composition screen.
- When you reply to the mail that was sent to multiple addresses, the mail addresses entered in the address field differ depending on the screen you operate from. When you reply from the received mail list, the mail address of the sender is entered. When you reply from the received mail view screen, the mail addresses of the sender and all the receivers except you are entered.

Forwarding received i-mode Mail

- You can forward received SMS in the same way. i-mode Mail is forwarded as i-mode Mail and SMS is forwarded as SMS.

1 Highlight a folder

2 Highlight a mail



- When forwarding received mail with an attachment, the attachment is also set. However, an attachment which is not downloaded or is being downloaded is not set.

3 Edit the mail

INFORMATION

- On the received mail view screen: **menu** ▶ **Reply/Forward** ▶ **Forward**
- Regarding the attachments to received mail, files that are prohibited from being attached to mail or output from the FOMA terminal are not attached to forwarding mail.
- The data attached in the message text of received mail (links to start i-appli or melodies inserted in the message) is neither attached nor quoted as characters in forwarding mail.
- When received Deco-mail is forwarded, the text is displayed with the decoration and inserted images quoted.
- When there are 20 types of images inserted in the text in total or the total size exceeds 90 Kbytes, a message appears indicating that the image which exceeds the limit is deleted. Pressing deletes the image of the part beyond the limit and displays the mail composition screen.
- When 2in1 is in the dual mode, if you forward a mail received by Address B (Number B) saved in the FOMA terminal, it is sent as the mail with the sender set to Address A (Number A).

Displaying, playing and saving attachments

The file attached to i-mode mail can be received and downloaded up to 10 files within a total of 2 Mbytes. The attachment beyond it is deleted in the i-mode Center.

The attachment is automatically downloaded up to 100 Kbytes in total. The attachment which cannot be automatically received is selected and then downloaded. The downloaded attachment can be displayed and played, or saved in the FOMA terminal or microSD memory card.

- The maximum number of items that can be saved P416

Checking the download status of attachment

- 1** ▶ **Highlight a folder** ▶ ▶ **Highlight an i-mode mail with the file attached** ▶



Icon for attachment, file name and file size

- When the file is not downloaded or is being downloaded, the storage period is displayed.
- For the melody inserted in the message, the title is displayed.
- For the links to start i-appli, and the name of i-appli is displayed. P224

- The downloaded image is displayed automatically (except for the attachment of Deco-mail).
- The downloaded melody is played automatically. Also, you can set the melody not to play automatically. P200
- The downloaded viewable files can be displayed, played or saved. P184 to P185
- Non-viewable attachment cannot be saved to the FOMA terminal. Saving to the microSD memory card (P186) or forwarding i-mode Mail (P182) with it is available.
- When the attachment is deleted in the i-mode Center, [添付ファイル削除] (Attachment deleted) appears under the subject of the received mail.

Meaning of the icon for attachment

File type	Download Status					
	Down-loaded ¹	Down-loaded ²	Not down-loaded	Download in progress	Download unavailable	Data invalid
Image						
Movie/i-motion						
Melody						
Melody (in the message)			—	—	—	
ToruCa						
PDF data						

File type	Download Status					
	Down-loaded*1	Down-loaded*2	Not down-loaded	Download in progress	Download unavailable	Data invalid
Schedule		—				
Bookmark		—				
Phonebook		—				
Non-viewable file		—				—

*1 Can be attached to mail and output from the FOMA terminal.

*2 Cannot be attached to mail and output from the FOMA terminal.

Downloading the attachment for selective reception

Download the attachment which is not downloaded or is being downloaded of the received mail.

- The file of which storage period expires cannot be downloaded.

1 Highlight the file name on the mail view screen

- To check the site: Highlight the file name on the mail view screen **Attachment** **Display URL**
- To stop downloading: **No**
 - The downloaded part is saved.

INFORMATION

- In case of downloading the attachment which is not downloaded or is being downloaded, if the memory is not enough, the unprotected read mail may be deleted according to the size of file to be downloaded.

Displaying, playing and saving the image, movie/i-motion, ToruCa or PDF data

Example Saving from Inbox

1 Highlight the file name on the mail view screen 6 3

- Saving images displayed in Deco-mail: 4 4 **Highlight an image**

- For the image inserted in Deco-mail, the display name or file name is not displayed.

■ Displaying and playing: Highlight the file name

- For the image, displaying/not displaying is switched whenever the file name is selected.
- ToruCa exceeding 1 Kbyte or ToruCa (details) exceeding 100 Kbytes cannot be displayed.

■ Checking the title: Highlight the file name 6 2

2 Set each item

- For details on setting the image, follow Step3 in "Downloading images". P152
- For details on setting movie/i-motion, follow Step3 in "Downloading i-motion from sites". P164
- For details on setting PDF data, follow Step3 in "Downloading PDF data". P153
- For ToruCa, the screen to select the destination to save (the FOMA terminal or the microSD memory card) is displayed. Depending on ToruCa, only one of registration destinations may be selected.
 - ToruCa exceeding 1 Kbyte or ToruCa (details) exceeding 100 Kbytes can be saved only to the microSD memory card.

3

- For the image, select the folder to save.
- For the location to save, see "The location to save attachments". P186

INFORMATION

- To check the title from the sent mail view screen, mail template view screen or mail view screen in the microSD memory card: Highlight the file name **Attachment** **Check title**
- You can save the file attached to the sent mail in the same way as above.
- When the memory is not enough or the maximum number of saved items is exceeded, a confirmation screen appears. Follow the instructions on the screen and delete.
- When an image is wider than the display, the reduced image is displayed.
- Some images and movie/i-motion files may not be displayed correctly.

- Images with horizontal and vertical (or vertical and horizontal) sizes exceeding 480 x 640 in GIF format or 1728 x 2304 in JPEG format cannot be saved to the FOMA terminal.
- Playing i-motion attached to the mail on a PC requires compatible software. ➤P393

Playing and saving melodies

- If the sender uses a terminal other than D705ij, the received melodies may not be correctly played.

Example Saving from Inbox

1 Highlight the file name (title) on the mail view screen ➤ 6 2

- For the melody exceeding 100 Kbytes, a message appears indicating that the melody will be saved in the microSD memory card. Press .

■ Displaying: Highlight the file name (title) ➤

- To stop playing: 
- The melody exceeding 100 Kbytes cannot be played.

■ Checking the title (melody attached after the message): Highlight the file name ➤ 6 5

- To check the title (melody inserted in the message): Highlight the title ➤  6 4

■ Displaying the melody data as characters: Highlight the title ➤ 6 5

- This function is not available with melodies attached after the message.
- To return to the title display: Highlight the first row of the melody data ➤ 

2 Enter the display name (up to 50 one-byte or 25 two-byte characters) ➤

- When  is indicated in the guide row, press  and press  to save the melody to the microSD memory card.
- For the location to save, see "The location to save attachments". ➤P186

INFORMATION

- To play and save the melody when displaying the melody data: Highlight the first row of the data ➤  Attachment ➤ Play or Save
- On the sent mail view screen: Highlight the file name ➤  Attachment ➤ Save
- To check the title on the sent mail view screen, mail template view screen or mail view screen in the microSD memory card: Highlight a file name ➤  Attachment ➤ Check title
- The attached melody of the sent mail, mail template or mail in the microSD memory card can be played similarly.
- When the memory is not enough or the maximum number of saved items is exceeded, a confirmation screen appears. Follow the instructions on the screen and delete.

Displaying and saving the schedule, bookmark and phonebook data

1 Highlight the file name on the mail view screen ➤

■ Displaying: Highlight the file name ➤ 6 1

- If multiple data is contained in one file, they cannot be displayed.

■ Checking the file name: Highlight the file name ➤ 6 2

2

- For a bookmark, enter the title (up to 24 one-byte or 12 two-byte characters).
- When the microSD memory card is inserted, press  to save to the microSD memory card.
- If multiple data is contained in one file, they can be saved to only the microSD memory card.
- For the location to save, see "The location to save attachments". ➤P186

Saving non-viewable files

The file which cannot be displayed and played by the FOMA terminal (non-viewable file), which are attached to the received/sent mail, are saved to the microSD memory card.

1 Highlight the file name on the mail view screen ▶ 6 3

■ **Checking the file name:** Highlight the file name ▶  6 2

2 Yes

- For the location to save, see "The location to save attachments". ➡P186

Deleting attachments

- Images, melodies or links to start i-appli inserted in the message cannot be deleted.

Example

Deleting a downloaded image attached to the received mail

1 Highlight the file name on the mail view screen ▶ 6 4

- To delete all the attachments:  6 5

2 Yes

- The file name of the deleted attachment is displayed in a light color and cannot be highlighted.

INFORMATION

- To delete an attachment other than downloaded image: Highlight an attachment ▶  ▶ **Attachment** ▶ **Delete** or **Delete all**
- On the sent mail view screen: Highlight an attachment ▶  ▶ **Attachment** ▶ **Delete** or **Delete all**

The location to save attachments

Attachments are saved in the following locations by the file type. Some data may not be saved to the microSD memory card.

File type	FOMA terminal	microSD memory card
Image *1	<i>My Picture</i> of Data Box • Select the folder to save from <i>i-mode</i> , <i>Deco-mail picture</i> or <i>album</i> *2.	<i>My Picture</i> or <i>Other image</i> of Data Box
Movie/i-motion	<i>i-mode</i> folder*3 of <i>i-motion</i> of Data Box	<i>Movie</i> or <i>Other movie</i> of Data Box
Melody	<i>i-mode</i> folder*3 of <i>Melody</i> of Data Box	<i>Melody</i> of Data Box
ToruCa	<i>ToruCa</i> of LifeKit	<i>ToruCa</i>
PDF data	<i>i-mode</i> folder*3 of <i>My Document</i> of Data Box	<i>My Document</i>
Schedule	<i>Scheduler</i> of Accessory	<i>Schedule</i> of PIM
Bookmark	<i>Bookmark</i> of i-mode • The bookmark of Full Browser is saved to <i>Bookmark</i> of Full Browser.	<i>Bookmark</i> of PIM
Phonebook	Phonebook list	<i>Phonebook</i> of PIM
Non-viewable file *4	—	<i>Other</i>

*1 The images which can be used as Deco-mail pictogram are saved to the *Deco-mail pict* folder in the FOMA terminal and microSD memory card.

*2 For the mail copied from the microSD memory card or the mail received via data communications, select from *Data transfer*, *Deco-mail picture* or *album*.

*3 For the mail copied from the microSD memory card or the mail received via data communications, it is saved to the *Data transfer* folder.

*4 The file name may be changed when saving.

Displaying mails

Inbox/Outbox/Unsent Messages

- The maximum number of items that can be saved ➡P416

- Folders in *Unsent messages* contain the i-mode Mail and SMS that were saved without sending or failed to be sent, as well as the i-mode Mail that is set to be sent automatically upon entering the service area.

1 1, 4 or 5

2 Highlight a folder

The mail list is displayed.

- Select a Message i-appli folder to start the corresponding i-appli.
- To display mail in a Message i-appli folder without starting i-appli: Highlight the folder 1

3 Highlight a mail

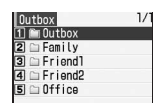
- Useful functions of mail
- Selecting mail from the unsent mail list displays the mail composition screen.

The received mail folder list screen



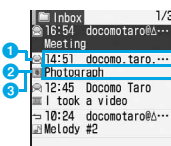
- (gray): No mail
- (yellow): No unread mail
- : No mail/No unread mail (Privacy on)
- : No mail/No unread mail (used for Message i-appli)
- : Unread mail exists
- : Unread mail exists (Privacy on)
- : Unread mail exists (used for Message i-appli)

The sent/unsent mail folder list screen



- (gray): No mail
- (yellow): Mail exists
- : Privacy on : Message i-appli

The received mail list screen



Reception date/time*1 and sender

Subject*2 (for SMS, beginning of message)

*1 For mail received when staying overseas (except for the case that *Time zone* is set to "GMT+09:00"), may be indicated.

*2 In the dual mode of 2in1, is indicated for the mail received by Address B (Number B).

1 Status icon

- : Unread
- : Unread (unable to reply)
- : Read
- : Read (unable to reply)
- : Read (replied)
- : Read (forwarded)
- : Protected
- : Protected (unable to reply)
- : Protected (replied)
- : Protected (forwarded)

- For replied/forwarded mail, icon indication priority is given to the state made later.

2 Icon for attachment

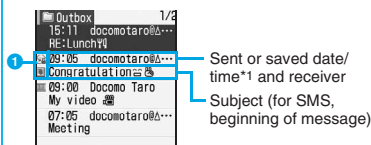
- : Image attached
- : Melody attached
- : Movie/i-motion attached
- : ToruCa attached
- : PDF data attached
- : Schedule attached
- : Bookmark attached
- : Phonebook data attached
- : Non-viewable files attached
- : Multiple files attached

3 Other icons

- : SMS
- : Delivered report
- : i-appli To exists
- : Mail used for Message i-appli
- : File attached (when the mail list is displayed in 1 row)
- When the sender is registered in the phonebook, the name is displayed.
- For SMS sent from overseas, "+" is appended at the beginning of the sender address.

- In the reception date and time field, the time is displayed on the current day and the date is displayed on the other days.

The sent/unsent mail list screen



Sent or saved date/
time*1 and receiver
Subject (for SMS,
beginning of message)

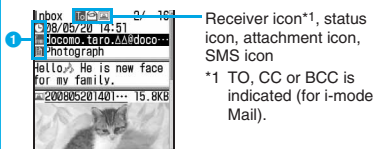
*1 For mail sent when staying overseas (except for the case that **Time zone** is set to "GMT+09:00"), may be indicated after the sent date and time.

- : Protected
- : Auto-send
- : Protected (auto-send)
- : Auto-send failure
- : Protected (auto-send failure)

- For icons for attachments or other icons, see "The received mail list screen".
- : File attached (when the sent mail list is displayed in 1 row)
- In the sent or saved date/time field, the time is displayed on the current day and the date is displayed on the other days.
- When the receiver is registered in the phonebook, the name is displayed.

The mail view screen

Received mail view screen



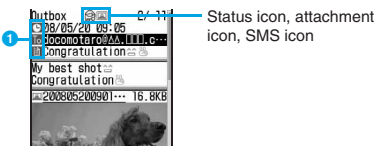
Receiver icon*1, status
icon, attachment icon,
SMS icon

*1 TO, CC or BCC is
indicated (for i-mode
Mail).

- : Reception date and time
- : Sender
- : Receiver type (for only i-mode Mail)
- : Subject (*Received SMS*, *SMS report request*, *Notify missed call* or *Answer videophone* for SMS)
- : Sender (unable to reply)
- : Receiver type in mail unable to reply (only i-mode Mail)

- For mail received when staying overseas (except for the case that **Time zone** is set to "GMT+09:00"), may be indicated.
- In the dual mode of 2in1, is indicated for a mail received by Address B (Number B).

Sent mail view screen



Status icon, attachment
icon, SMS icon

- : Sent date and time
- : Receiver type (only i-mode Mail for)
- : Subject (*Sent SMS* for SMS)
- For mail sent when staying overseas (except for the case that **Time zone** is set to "GMT+09:00"), may be indicated.

INFORMATION

- The character which cannot be displayed is replaced by a blank, etc.
- When decorated mail is received from a PC, operations may not be the same as on the PC.
- For melody and links to start i-appli inserted in the message, only one item is available. When there are multiple data items attached in the message text, they are invalid. In this case, is indicated for the attachment icon.
- For i-mode Mail, the mail address of sender or receiver is checked against the mail address field in the phonebook data. For SMS, the phone number of sender or receiver is checked against the phone number field in the phonebook data.
- The subject and sender of the received SMS, delivered report, and missed call notice are displayed on the view screen as shown below:

Item	SMS	Delivered report	Missed call notice	
Subject	Received SMS	SMS report request	Notify missed call	Answer videophone
Sender	Phone number or name	SMS Center	DoCoMo SMS	DoCoMo MSG

- When the caller ID is not notified, the following characters are displayed in the sender field:

Anonymous:

Message sent by setting not to notify the caller ID

Payphone:

Message sent from a payphone

Unavailable:

Message sent using a procedure that does not provide the caller ID

- When there are attachments (P183) or links to start i-appli (P224), the icon, the file name, etc. are displayed on the view screen.

Creating/deleting folders

Creating folders

- In **Inbox**, you can add up to 40 folders other than the **Inbox** folder and Message i-appli folders.
- In **Outbox** or **Unsent messages**, you can add up to 20 folders other than the **Outbox** folder or the **Unsent messages** folder and Message i-appli folders respectively.
- The following folder settings cannot be changed.
 - Inbox, Unsent messages or Outbox folder in default
 - Message i-appli

1 [Envelope Icon] > [1], [4] or [5]

2 [MENU] > [1]

■ **Changing folder settings: Highlight a folder** > [MENU] > [3]

■ **Changing the order of folders: Highlight a folder** > [MENU] > [7] or [8]

3 **Set each item** > [Folder Icon]

Folder name:

Enter a folder name (up to 16 one-byte or 8 two-byte characters can be entered).

Privacy:

ON: The folder is not displayed while Privacy Mode is on (with *Hide secret fldrs* set for Mail).

Deleting folders

- The following folders set by default cannot be deleted:
 - Inbox, Outbox or Unsent messages folder in default
 - Folders containing protected mail

- Message i-appli folders cannot be deleted when the i-appli for the folder exists. Although the folder can be deleted when there is no corresponding i-appli, all the folders created by the corresponding i-appli are deleted.

1 [Envelope Icon] > [1], [4] or [5]

2 **Highlight a folder** > [MENU] > [2]
• For a message i-appli folder: [MENU] > [3]

3 **Enter the terminal security code** > Yes

Checking the number of mail items

Msgs. in Folder

You can check the number of received, sent or unsent mail saved in each folder.

1 [Envelope Icon] > [1], [4] or [5]

2 **Highlight a folder** > [MENU] > [5]

INFORMATION

- On the mail list screen: [MENU] > Display > Check No. of items

Checking mail addresses

You can view an entire mail address when the whole address is not displayed or when the address is registered in the phonebook and only the name is displayed.

1 [Envelope Icon] > [1] or [5] > **Highlight a folder** > [Folder Icon] > **Highlight a mail** > [Mail Icon]

2 **Highlight a sender or receiver** > [Mail Icon]

INFORMATION

- To check multiple mail addresses at one time: [MENU] on the mail view screen > Display > Display address
 - In the received/sent/unsent mail list: Highlight a mail > [MENU] > Display > Display address
All the receiver's addresses are displayed for sent/unsent mail, and the addresses of sender and all the receivers (except you) for received mail (TO: and CC: are also displayed).

Moving received/sent mails to another folder

Mail can be moved to another folder.

Example Moving a mail

- 1 1, 4 or 5 Highlight a folder
- 2 Highlight a mail 4 1 1
 ■ Moving selected mails:
 4 1 2 Highlight mails

 ■ Moving all the mails in the folder:
 4 1 3
- 3 Highlight the destination folder
 Yes

INFORMATION

- If a mail is received when multiple received mails are selected, *Unable to display message.* appears and the operation may be canceled.
- When i-mode Mail with the auto-send setting is moved to a Message i-appli folder, the auto-send setting is canceled.

Searching mails

Search received mail by sender or received date, for sent mail, by address or sent date.

- Specify a sender/address from the phonebook, received/sent date from the calendar.

Example Searching by sender or receiver

- 1 1 or 5
- 2 9 1 Highlight the phonebook entry
 • To search by received date or sent date:
 9 2 Highlight the date
 • If you search sent mails by receiver, mails are also searched by the address after the second item (the first address is displayed on the screen).
- 3 Highlight a mail to display
 - The search result screen can be operated in the same way as the mail list.
 - To cancel mail search: 0

INFORMATION

- In the received/sent mail list: Search message With phonebook or With scheduler
 - In this operation, only the mails in the selected folder are searched.

Sorting mails

Sort

You can temporarily change the order of received or sent mail in the list. Closing the list resets the sorting order to *By date*.

- You can select from *By date*, *By sender* (*By address* for sent mail), *By title*, and *By size*.
- You cannot change the order of unsent mail and received/sent SMS in the UIM.

- 1 1 or 5 Highlight a folder
- 2 7 4 for received mail or 5 for sent mail 1 - 4

INFORMATION

- When *By sender* or *By address* is set, mails will be sorted by mail address not by name in the phonebook even if the mail address is registered in the phonebook.
- When *By title* is set, if the subject contains both one-byte and two-byte characters, mails may not be properly sorted in the order of the Japanese syllabary.
- In case of *By size*, mails are sorted in order of the mail size including attachments from large to small.
- When *By title* is set, if any SMS is saved in the same folder, mails will not be properly sorted in the order of the Japanese syllabary because the beginning of the message is displayed as subject.

Changing the read/unread status of received mail

- You cannot change the read/unread status of protected received mail.

Example Changing a read mail to unread

- 1 1 Highlight a folder
- 2 Highlight a mail 5 2
 ■ Changing an unread mail to read:
 Highlight a mail 5 1

- **Changing selected read mails to unread:** [MENU] [5] [4] ▶ **Highlight mails**
▶ ▶ ▶ Yes
- **Changing selected unread mails to read:** [MENU] [5] [3] ▶ **Highlight mails** ▶ ▶ ▶ Yes
- **Changing all the mails in the folder to unread:** [MENU] [5] [6] ▶ Yes
- **Changing all the mails in the folder to read:** [MENU] [5] [5] ▶ Yes

INFORMATION

- If a mail is received when multiple received mails are selected, *Unable to display message.* appears and the operation may be canceled.

Selecting the type of mail to display

Only mail of the specified type is displayed.

Closing the list resets the setting to *Display all items*.

- For received mail, you can select from *Display all items*, *Unread item only*, *Read item only* or *Protected item only*.
- For sent mail, you can select *Display all* or *Display protected*.
- You cannot select the display type for unsent mail and received/sent SMS in the UIM.

1 ▶ [1] or [5] ▶ **Highlight a folder**
▶

2 [MENU] [7] [2] ▶ [1] - [4] (**received mail**) or [1] - [2] (**sent mail**)

INFORMATION

- When *Read item only* is set, the protected mail is not displayed.

Changing the font size

You can change the font size of the displayed message for received mail, sent mail and mail template.

- The font size can be selected from 3 types.
- The change of font size applies to all the mails including received/sent mail, mail template, and mail in the microSD memory card.

Example

Changing on the received mail view screen

1 ▶ [1] or [5] ▶ **Highlight a folder**
▶

2 **Highlight a mail** ▶ ▶ [MENU] [3] [1]
• When a mail template is displayed: [MENU] [4] [1]

3 [1] - [3]

INFORMATION

- The font size can be changed from *All listed* or *Mail view* of Font Size Setting.
- On the view screen for received/sent/unsent mail in the microSD memory card: [MENU] ▶ *Font size*
- Even if the font size is changed, the size of Deco-mail pictogram is not changed.
- The new font size of the mail view screen is retained until it is changed.
- The settings in this function apply to *Mail view* of Font Size Setting.
- The font size at the time of composing and editing mail can be changed from *All listed* or *Text input* of Font Size Setting.

Protecting mails

You can protect received, sent and unsent mail to avoid accidental deletion or being cleared since there is not enough storage space.

- The maximum number of items that can be protected ♣P416
- Unread mail cannot be protected.

Example

Protecting a mail

1 ▶ [1], [4] or [5] ▶ **Highlight a folder** ▶

2 **Highlight a mail** ▶ [MENU] [3] [1]

The mail is protected and the icon changes to one of the following:

Received mail: (read)

(unable to reply)

(replied) (forwarded)

Sent/unsent mail:

- **Canceling protection of a mail:**
Highlight a mail ▶ [MENU] [3] [4]

2 Highlight a folder ▶

3 Highlight a mail ▶ 2 1

- Deleting selected mails:  2 2 ▶
Highlight mails ▶  ▶ 

- Deleting all the mails in the folder:
 2 3 ▶ Enter the terminal security code

4 Yes

INFORMATION

- In the folder list:  ▶ *Delete message*
- On the mail view screen:  ▶ *Delete*

Useful functions of mail

Using Phone To (AV Phone To)/Mail To/Web To

- The operation is the same as when performing the Phone To (AV Phone To), Mail To or Web To function from sites. ◀P155
- When mail is received from a PC, these functions may not be available.
- In the B mode of 2in1, the Mail To function is not available.

Copying text

You can copy characters in the i-mode Mail, SMS or mail template. Copied text can be pasted in entry fields on the mail composition screen, phonebook registration screen, etc.

- For SMS stored in the UIM, you can copy the message text, receiver and sender.
- Decoration data is not copied. Only the text can be copied.
- The copied text is recorded until the power of the FOMA terminal is turned off and it can be pasted into other locations any number of times.
- Only one item can be retained. When you copy a new item, it overwrites the previously copied text.

Example

Copying text from the received mail view screen

1 Display the received mail view screen

- Highlight the item to copy when copying a selected item.

2 2

- When a mail template is displayed:  3

3 Highlight the copying method ▶

Copy text:

Copies a specified range of the message text.

- For *Copy text*, specify the copy range. Follow Step 2 in “Copying the URL”.
◀P156

Copy title:

Copies the subject.

Copy selected item:

Copies a highlighted item.

4 Display a character entry screen ▶ Paste the copied text

INFORMATION

- When text in the Date To format is included in the message, it needs to be pasted and saved to Notepad before saving as schedule.

Making calls from the received/sent mail

Calls can be made to the sender of received mail or the receiver of sent mail.

- The mail address (except for “mobile phone number@docomo.ne.jp”) and phone number must be registered in the phonebook.

Example

Making a call from the received mail

1 Display the received mail list

2 Highlight a mail ▶ 6

- On the received/sent mail view screen: Highlight the party (sender/receiver) ▶  7
- When there are multiple receivers, select a mail address.

3 Set dialing conditions

4

- On the mail view screen:  **Yes**

Registering phone numbers, mail addresses and URLs in the phonebook

You can register phone numbers, mail addresses and URLs in i-mode Mail or SMS in the phonebook.

Example

Registering a new entry from the received mail view screen

1 Display the mail Highlight an item

- You can register only the items that can be highlighted.

2

- To add the data to the existing phonebook entry:   

- Following procedures:

For phone number or mail address, follow Step 3 in "Registering phone numbers and mail addresses in the phonebook".  P156
For URL, follow Step 3 in "Registering URLs in the phonebook".  P157

INFORMATION

- On the view screen for sent mail, SMS in the UIM, or mail in the microSD memory card:  **Save**
- Registration may not be made from Deco-mail.
- When multiple addresses are listed with no space in the message text, you may not be able to register them.

Registering URLs in Bookmark

You can register URLs in the message text of the i-mode Mail or SMS in Bookmark.

Example

Registering a bookmark from the received mail view screen

1 Display the mail Highlight the URL

2 Highlight a folder

- Follow Step 2 of "Registering in Bookmark".  P149

INFORMATION

- Registration may not be made from Deco-mail.

Saving mails in the Data Center

Data Security Service

Data Security Service allows you to save i-mode Mail and SMS in the Data Center.

- Data Security Service is a pay service and requires a subscription. For more information, see "Mobile Phone User's Guide [i-mode] FOMA version".

Saving mails

- Mail for which the file capacity of one item exceeds 10,000 bytes cannot be saved.
- You can check the log of communication with the Data Center.  P81

1 , or Highlight a folder

2 for received/sent mail or for unsent mail Highlight a mail

- Up to 10 items can be selected.
- Delivered report of SMS cannot be saved.

3 Yes Enter the terminal security code

The mail is saved in the Data Center and the result is displayed.

- The result disappears in about 5 seconds.

INFORMATION

- If you have not yet subscribed to Data Security Service, a screen appears to inform you of that effect.

Restoring mails

Mail saved in the Data Center is restored from the site of the Data Center to the FOMA terminal. For more information, see "Mobile Phone User's Guide [i-mode] FOMA version".

- Mails will be protected when restored. However, this is not applicable in the following cases:
 - When unread mail saved in the Data Center is restored
 - When the maximum number of protected mails that can be saved in the FOMA terminal is reached

Using the mail log

Received Msg. Log/Sent Msg. Log

This function records the log of the received/sent mails. You can compose i-mode Mail/SMS, or make a voice/videophone call from the log.

- When a mail is sent to multiple addresses, it is recorded on the sent message log for every address.
- When multiple mails are sent to the same address, only the latest one is recorded on the sent message log.
- The logs of the received mails which are unable to reply are not recorded.
- Up to 30 items are recorded, respectively. If it exceeds 30 items, the oldest one will be deleted.
- When you subscribe to 2in1, up to 30 items for Address A (Number A)/Address B (Number B), which is 60 items in total, are recorded on the received message log.

1 or

2 Highlight a log

- If you select the log, the details screen of the log is displayed.

3 Press the key to perform the operation

- You can perform the operation in the same way from the details screen of the log.

■ Composing i-mode Mail:

The mail composition screen appears and a mail address is set in the address field as follows:

- For the log of i-mode Mail, the mail address of the sender or receiver is set.
- For the log of SMS, when the phone number of the sender or receiver is registered in the phonebook entry and the mail address is registered in the same phonebook entry, the mail address is set. If the mail address is not registered in the phonebook, the phone number is set.

■ Composing SMS: (for over a second)

The SMS composition screen appears, and a phone number is set in the address field as follows:

- For the log of SMS, the phone number of the sender or receiver is set.
- For the log of i-mode Mail, when the mail address of the sender or receiver is registered in the phonebook and the phone number is registered in the same phonebook entry, the phone number is set. If the phone number is not registered in the phonebook, you cannot compose SMS.

■ Making a voice call:

- To use the speakerphone function:  (for over a second)

■ Making a videophone call:

- To use the speakerphone function:  (for over a second)

■ Using Call Option: 3

The screen for Call Option is displayed.

Follow the procedure from Step 2 in "Making calls by setting the conditions".  P50

■ Adding to the phonebook: 4

- To add to an existing entry:  5
- Follow Step 3 in "Registering phone numbers and mail addresses in the phonebook".  P156
- The mail address is registered for i-mode Mail, and the phone number is registered for SMS.

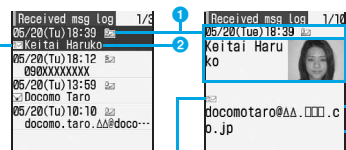
■ Setting whether to display an image on the log details screen: 9 on the log details screen 1 - 3

INFORMATION

- Even if mails sorted automatically to the folders with the privacy set to **OFF** is moved to the folders with the privacy set to **ON** and Privacy Mode is set (with *Hide secret fldrs* set for *Mail*), the mails are displayed on the mail log. On the contrary, even if mails sorted automatically to the folders with the privacy set to **ON** is moved to the folders with the privacy set to **OFF**, the mails are not displayed on the mail log when Privacy Mode is on (with *Hide secret fldrs* set for *Mail*).
- The phone number used when making a voice/videophone call or using Call Option is as follows depending on whether you use the log of i-mode Mail or SMS.

- For SMS, a call is made to the phone number of the log.
- For i-mode Mail, when the mail address of the sender or receiver is registered in the phonebook and the phone number is registered in the same phonebook entry, a call is made.

Received/sent message log list screen



Log list screen

Log details screen

Displayed when they are registered in the phonebook.

- 1 Received/sent date and time*1, icon for log*2
- 2 Mail address of sender/receiver (Phone number for SMS) or name*3
- 3 Name*3 and image*4

*1 In the log of message received/sent when staying overseas (except for the case that **Time zone** is set to "GMT+09:00"), ☺ may be indicated.

*2 During the dual mode of 2in1, B is indicated on the received message log of Address B (Number B).

*3 When the mail address of sender/receiver (phone number for SMS) is registered in the phonebook, the name is displayed.

*4 When the mail address is registered in the phonebook, the image is displayed.

- To display the sent message log list: **[MENU]** on the received message log list or details screen
▶ **Sent msg log**
- To display the received message log list: **[MENU]** on the sent message log list or details screen
▶ **Received msg log**
- To display the received call list of phone: **[☎]** on the received message log list or details screen
- To display the redial list: **[☎]** on the sent message log list or details screen

Deleting message logs

Delete Msg. Log

1 **[☰] or [☷] ▶ [☐]**

2 **Highlight a log ▶ [MENU] [6] [1]**

■ **Deleting selected logs:** **[MENU] [6] [2] ▶ Highlight logs ▶ [☰] ▶ [☐]**

■ **Deleting all the logs:** **[MENU] [6] [3] ▶ Enter the terminal security code**

3 Yes

INFORMATION

- On the mail log details screen: **[MENU] ▶ Delete**
- Even if the received/sent message log is deleted, the received/sent mail is not deleted.
- Even if the received/sent mail is deleted, the received/sent message log is not deleted.

Setting mail functions of the FOMA terminal

Sorting mails automatically into designated folders

Sort Method

Received/sent i-mode Mail and SMS can be sorted into the specified folders automatically according to the set method.

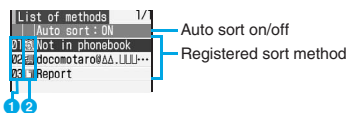
- Up to 30 methods can be registered for received mail and sent mail respectively.

Setting sort method

- To set and activate the method, set auto sort to **ON** for received mail and sent mail. **▶P198**
- The method is valid for the mail received/sent after setting the method. Previously received/sent mail is not resorted.
- You can sort normal mail to Message i-appli folders.
- If the corresponding Message i-appli folder exists, any mail for Message i-appli is saved in that folder, regardless of the sort method.

Example Setting sort method for incoming mail

1 **[☐] [9] [3] ▶ [1] or [2]**



1 Priority

2 To : Receiver mail address

From : Sender mail address

No. : Phonebook No.

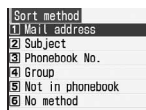
☐ : Not in phonebook

 : Subject

 : Group

 : No method

2 1 ▶ Set the sort method



Sort method setting screen

■ Specifying a mail address: ▶

Enter a mail address ▶ 

- To select from the sent message log:
  ▶ Highlight a log ▶ 
- To select from the received message log:
  ▶ Highlight a log ▶ 
- To specify a mail address registered in the phonebook:   ▶ Highlight a party ▶ 

Sorts mail by sender/receiver mail address. Specify an entire address including characters following the @ symbol (up to 50 one-byte characters). You cannot sort mail by specifying part of the mail address. If “@docomo.ne.jp” is contained into sort method for i-mode terminal, a sent mail omitted “@docomo.ne.jp” is not sorted into the folder. If you specify a phone number, you can sort SMS as well.

■ Specifying a subject: ▶ Enter a subject (up to 30 one-byte or 15 two-byte characters) ▶

Sorts mail having a subject that includes the specified characters. You cannot sort SMS by subject.

■ Specifying a phonebook No.: ▶ Enter the phonebook No. ▶ ▶ Highlight the phonebook data ▶

Sorts mail to/from the mail address or phone number corresponding to the specified FOMA terminal phonebook No. i-mode Mail is sorted by checking the mail address in the phonebook. SMS is sorted by checking the phone number in the phonebook.

■ Specifying a group: ▶ or ▶ Highlight the group ▶

Sorts mail to/from the mail address or phone number saved in the phonebook group.

■ Specifying “Not in phonebook”:

Sorts mail to/from the mail address or phone number not saved in the phonebook. i-mode Mail is checked against the mail address in the phonebook. SMS is checked against the phone number in the phonebook.

■ Setting no method:

Sorts all the mails without setting method.

3 Highlight the folder to sort mail ▶

- When a Message i-appli folder is selected, a confirmation screen appears. To set as the folder to sort mail to, select *Yes*.

4 Highlight a position to insert the method in ▶

The new method is inserted in above the selected rank.

- To set the first method in the list: *[Add last]*
- To add the method to the end of the list: *[Add last]*

INFORMATION

- If the sender uses an i-mode terminal with its phone number set as the mail address, only the phone number is received as the address. Therefore, no sorting occurs when “mobile phone number @docomo.ne.jp” is specified in the method.
- When the same mail address is registered in both of the FOMA terminal phonebook and the UIM phonebook, the FOMA terminal phonebook addresses are given priority for sorting. In such a case, the sort priority set in this function may not apply.
- When 2in1 is on, the sort methods of *Phonebook No.* and *Group* may be unavailable. Set the sort methods of *Mail address*, *Subject*, *Not in phonebook* and *No method*.
- When multiple methods are set, a mail is checked according to the priority and is saved to the folder whose method matches the mail first. When all the criteria are not met, the mails are saved to the *Inbox* folder or the *Outbox* folder.

Checking and changing sort method

1 9 3 ▶ 1 or 2

2 **Highlight the sort method** ▶

- You can change or delete sort method while checking it.

■ Changing the registered sort method:

Highlight a sort method ▶ 2 ▶

Specify the sort method ▶ Yes

■ Changing the priority: Highlight a sort method

▶ 5 ▶ **Highlight the position to insert in** ▶

- The method is moved to just above the selected row. To move to the end of the list, select *[Move to last]*.

■ Deleting a method: Highlight a sort method

▶ 3 ▶ Yes

- To delete all: 4 ▶ Enter the terminal security code ▶ Yes

Setting auto sort

1 9 3 ▶ 1 or 2 ▶ 6
▶ 1 or 2

Registering signature for mail

Signature

You can register the signature to be inserted in the message of i-mode Mail and SMS. You can also set whether to automatically insert the signature when you compose mail.

Editing and registering signature for mail

- The signature can be decorated. The procedure of decoration is the same as for Deco-mail. Decoration reduces the number of characters you can enter accordingly.
- Mail becomes Deco-mail if any decorated signature is inserted into the mail.

1 9 4 ▶ 2 ▶

2 **Enter the signature (up to 9,998 one-byte or 4,999 two-byte characters)** ▶

- Up to 10,000 one-byte or 5,000 two-byte characters can be entered. However, since a line feed is entered when you insert a signature, reduce 2 one-byte or 1 two-byte for line feed.

Setting whether to insert signature automatically

1 9 4 ▶ 1 ▶ 1 or 2

INFORMATION

- The signature text is counted as characters in the message. If there is no available space for number of characters of the signature and line feed, a signature cannot be inserted.
- When *Auto add* is set to *ON*, the signature is always inserted at the end of message when replying and forwarding. However, as for the background color which is set for Signature, it is applied only when composing i-mode Mail or replying to received i-mode Mail without quoting.
- When a signature is registered, you can insert the signature by pressing on the message text entry screen and selecting *Phrase/Kuten/Quote* ▶ *Add signature*. However, as for the background color which is set for Signature, it is applied only when the text is not input in i-mode Mail.
- The signature cannot be inserted in SMS in following cases:
 - When the number of characters exceeds 70 (one- or two-byte), after you add the signature.
 - When the signature is decorated.
 - When composing new SMS in case the font type is set to *English* in SMS Setting.
 - When replying to or forwarding SMS for which the font type is set to *English*.

Setting items to inquire to the i-mode Center

Message Retrieval Setting

- If you do not want to check for an item, change it to .

1 6 4 ▶ **Highlight an item to inquire** ▶

Setting to select and receive only necessary mail

Receive Option Setting

1 9 7 2 ▶ 1 or 2

ON: Mail is selected to be received. Chat Mail cannot be used.

- If *ON* is selected, a message appears indicating that mails cannot be received automatically. Press .

OFF: Mail is received automatically.

Registering addresses in a mail group

Mail Group

By registering multiple mail addresses in a mail group, multiple addresses can be set by a simple operation when composing i-mode Mail.

- Up to 20 mail groups can be registered. Up to 5 mail addresses can be saved in each mail group.

1 9 6

2

■ **Renaming a mail group:** Highlight a mail group 2

■ **Copying a mail group:** Highlight a mail group 3

■ **Deleting a mail group:** Highlight a mail group 4 1 Yes

■ **Deleting all the mail groups:**
 4 2 Enter the terminal security code Yes

3 **Enter a mail group name (up to 16 one-byte or 8 two-byte characters)**

- To add another group:

4 **Highlight a mail group**

5 **Set each item**

Address Type:

Set TO, CC or BCC. P172

Address:

Up to 50 one-byte characters can be entered.

- To select from the sent message log: 1 Highlight a log
- To select from the received message log: 2 Highlight a log
- To select from the phonebook: 3 Highlight a party

6

- To add another mail address to the mail group: Repeat Step 5 and Step 6

■ **Editing a mail address:** Highlight a mail address (or name) Edit the mail address

■ **Deleting a mail address:** Highlight a mail address (or name) 2 Yes

■ **Displaying mail address details:**
 3 after checking the details

7

- Highlight a mail group and press to compose i-mode Mail.

Setting whether to quote the message when replying

Mail Reply Format

You can set whether to quote the message text when you reply to i-mode Mail or SMS. In addition, you set the quote characters that are added to the quoted message.

1 9 5 1

2 **Set each item**

Quote:

Sets whether to quote the message when replying to mail.

Quote characters:

Up to 2 one-byte or 1 two-byte character can be entered.

- The quote characters are counted as characters in the message.
- If a character that cannot be sent is specified, the default character is used.

Setting whether to insert a quick reply message when replying

Quick Reply Setting

- Quick reply messages cannot be inserted in SMS.

1 9 5 2 1 or 2

Registering quick reply messages to be inserted when replying

- Up to 5 messages can be registered.
- To add a new quick reply message when there are 5 default messages, edit or delete a default message.

1 9 5 3 ▶ Highlight a message



2 Enter the message (up to 40 one-byte or 20 two-byte characters) ▶ ▶ Yes

- A line feed cannot be inserted.

■ Referring a registered message:

Highlight a message in the quick reply message list ▶ 

■ Deleting a registered message:

Highlight a message in the quick reply message list ▶  1 ▶ Yes

■ Registering a new message: <New reply format> in the quick reply message list ▶ Enter the message ▶

■ Restoring the default settings:

 2 in the quick reply message list ▶ Enter the terminal security code ▶ Yes

Setting the display style of the mail list

The display style of the mail list can be set for received/sent mail.

- The 2-row display applies to unsent mail and SMS in the UIM regardless of this setting.

1 9 7 5 ▶ 1 or 2

Setting whether to receive attachment automatically

Incoming Msg. Attach.

- Set the attachment which is not received automatically (is selected to receive) to .
- *Tool data* means schedule data, bookmark data and phonebook data.
- *Other* means non-viewable file.

1 9 7 3 ▶ Highlight a type of the file to change the setting ▶ ▶

INFORMATION

- The images or melodies inserted in the message are received automatically regardless of this setting.

- The file with  set is not received when receiving mail. To receive the file, select the file name on the mail view screen.

- Even if  is set, message text, images inserted in the text and attachments are received automatically up to 100 Kbytes in total. If the total size exceeds 100 Kbytes, they are selected to be received.

Setting whether to play melodies automatically

Attachment Auto-play

You can set whether to play melodies attached to i-mode Mail or Message R/F automatically when the mail or message is displayed.

1 9 7 4 ▶ 1 or 2

INFORMATION

- When *Auto play* is set, displaying received mail, sent mail, mail template or Message R/F with a melody attached plays the melody once at the volume set for the melody. When more than 1 melody is attached, the melodies play one after another. Press  to stop playing.
- When Message R/F is displayed automatically, melodies are not played automatically even *Auto play* is set.

Setting mail reception notification

Display Priority

You can set whether or not to display the receiving screen and reception result screen, when i-mode Mail, SMS, or Message R/F is received and sending screen for auto-send mail during the FOMA terminal operation.

1 9 7 1 ▶ 1 or 2

Continue operation: Displays neither the receiving screen, reception result screen nor sending screen for auto-send mail while operating the FOMA terminal.

Show message: Displays the receiving screen, reception result screen and sending screen for auto-send mail even if the FOMA terminal is operated.

INFORMATION

- When **Continue operation** is set, the receiving screen, reception result screen or sending screen for auto-send mail is not displayed in any mode other than the standby mode (while other function is running).
- Even when **Show message** is set, the receiving screen, reception result screen and sending screen for auto-send mail are not displayed in the following cases:
 - During a voice call
 - During a videophone call
 - While using the camera
 - While operating i-appli
 - While playing streaming type i-motion
 - While alarm clock or alarm is sounding
- When All Lock, Personal Data Lock or Public mode (Driving mode) is active, the receiving screen, reception result screen and sending screen for auto-send mail are not displayed.
- When the reception result screen is not displayed, the mail ring alert does not sound. The key for incoming mails does not light/flash, either.

Composing and sending chat mails

Mail can be sent and received to/from multiple addresses like making conversation. The sent and received mail can be read on the same screen.

- Mail addresses of the receivers must be registered as chat members in advance.
- Chat Mail is not available in the following cases:
 - When **ON** is set for Receive Option Setting
 - When no free storage area for received/sent mail
 - When 2in1 is in the B mode
- When chat mail is sent to a non-compatible terminal, it is received as a mail with the subject "チャットメール (Chat mail)". If a mail with the subject containing "チャットメール" is sent from a registered chat member who uses a non-compatible terminal, the FOMA terminal receives it as chat mail.
- The communication fee for sending and receiving chat mail to/from multiple parties is the same as that for sending broadcast mail.

Chat mail screen

Sender's nickname
: For mail received/sent when staying overseas (except for the case that **Time zone** is set to "GTM+09:00"), this icon may be indicated.

Broadcast address not registered as a chat member exists.

When the details cannot be displayed in a single page, **▶** is indicated. Press **⇐⇒** to switch between pages.

Received or sent date/time of the chat mail

1 Sent/received log

100 items from the latest history can be displayed.

- Press **⇐⇒** to scroll the log when **△▽** is displayed in the guide row.
 - To scroll by a page: **⇐⇒** or **⇐⇒**
 - To move to the first row: **MENU** **5** **1**
 - To move to the last row: **MENU** **5** **2**

2 Details field

Displays details of the latest chat mail or the highlighted chat mail. Up to 500 one-byte or 250 two-byte characters can be displayed.

3 Text entry field

Adding chat members Chat Member Setting

- Up to 5 chat members can be registered.

Registering first chat members

1 **[X] 3 ▶ Yes ▶ [X]**

2 Set each item

Address:

Up to 50 one-byte characters can be entered.

- To select from the sent/received message log or the phonebook: **MENU** **▶**
1 - **3** **▶** Highlight the log or address **⇐⇒**

Nickname:

Up to 8 one-byte or 4 two-byte characters can be entered.

- When the mail address matches an address registered in the phonebook, the name registered in the phonebook (the first 8 one-byte or 4 two-byte characters) is displayed in the *Nickname* field.
- When no nickname is entered, the first 8 characters preceding the @ symbol in the mail address are displayed on the chat mail screen.

Font color:

Select the font color of nickname.

3

The chat member is displayed.

- To add another member:  ▶ Repeat Steps 2 to 3

4

INFORMATION

- When registering a member whose mail address has a secret code, register the mail address to the phonebook and set the secret code, and then register only the phone number for the chat member.

Adding, editing and deleting chat members

Example Adding a chat member

1 3 7

2 ▶ Set each item

- To edit: Highlight a member  ▶ Set each item
- To delete one item: Highlight a member   2 ▶ Yes
- To display the detail information:  3  after checking the details
- To replace all the members by mail group:  5 ▶ Highlight a group  ▶ Yes

3

Setting personal information (your nickname and the font color)

1 3 8 ▶ Set the nickname and font color

- When your nickname was not set, *Myself* is displayed.

Composing and sending chat mails

- Chat mail is sent to all the registered members by default. You can select members when sending. However, if you quit Chat Mail or edit chat member information, the setting returns to the default.
- The sent chat mail is saved in the folder of *Outbox*.

1 3

- When a confirmation screen appears, select *Yes* and register a member.

2 ▶ Enter a message (up to 500 one-byte or 250 two-byte characters)

- You do not need to press  to enter characters.

■ Copying and pasting text from chat mail log:

① Highlight a chat mail 6 ▶

Specify the range

- Specifying the range ▶ P340

② The text entry field ▶ Specify the paste location 3

■ Selecting members to send mail:

3 ▶ Highlight addresses

3

- When the chat mail is sent normally, the sent chat mail is displayed on the chat mail screen.

■ Replying to all the broadcast

addresses of received mail: Highlight a chat mail 2 2

INFORMATION

- If Chat Mail fails to be sent or is unsent when quitting chat mail, it is saved in the *Unsent messages* folder of *Unsent messages*. In this folder, only one chat mail is saved.
- The chat mail saved in the *Unsent messages* folder is displayed in the text entry field next time chat mail is started. To resend unsent chat mail, start operation from the chat mail screen.

Quitting Chat Mail

1 [Back] or [クア] on the chat mail screen ▶

No

Chat Mail is quit. The previous chat mail log is displayed next time Chat Mail is started.

Yes: All the chat mails are deleted when quitting. The chat mail in *Inbox* or *Outbox* is also deleted.

Receiving chat mails

Receive Chat Mail

When Chat Mail has been started

When mail with the subject containing “チャットメール” in one-byte or two-byte characters is received from a registered chat member, a message indicating that the log is updated appears and the received chat mail is read on the chat mail screen.

- The ring alert or vibrator does not start even if a chat mail is received. The key for incoming mails does not light/flash, either.
- When a chat mail is received from a sender not registered as a chat member, follow the procedure in “When Chat Mail has not been started” below to display the mail on the chat mail screen.

When Chat Mail has not been started

Chat mail is saved in the folder of *Inbox* as i-mode Mail.

1 Highlight the mail in the received mail list ▶ [MENU] [7] [5]

- On the received mail view screen:

[MENU] [3] [3]

- For the chat mail from the party not registered as a chat member, a confirmation screen appears. When selecting *Yes* to register a member, a confirmation screen is displayed. Then select *Yes*. ▶P201
- If the broadcast addresses contain any address not registered as chat member, the confirmation screen appears. Select *Yes* when registering as member.
- Chat mail received from a registered chat member is also read by pressing [☑] [3] to start Chat Mail.
- Deco-mail or HTML mail received from PCs cannot be displayed on the chat mail screen.

INFORMATION

- Chat mail can be displayed on the chat mail screen by the following operations:
 - In the sent mail list: Highlight a chat mail ▶ [MENU] ▶ *Display* ▶ *Start chat mail*
 - On the sent mail view screen: [MENU] ▶ *Display* ▶ *Start chat mail*

Receiving chat mails stored in the i-mode Center

1 [MENU] [1] on the chat mail screen

If there is a chat mail stored in the i-mode Center, a message indicating that the log is updated appears and the received chat mail is added on the chat mail screen. At this time, if i-mode Mail is stored in the i-mode Center, it is received at the same time.

- When [i] blinks, the log cannot be updated.

INFORMATION

- Even if the message on the chat mail screen contains phone number, mail address or URL, the Phone To (AV Phone To), Mail To, Web To or i-appli to function is not available. No attachments are displayed. When you quit Chat Mail without deleting chat mails, you can use these functions by displaying a chat mail on the *Inbox* folder.
- When you delete chat mail from *Inbox* or *Outbox*, the nickname appears as “-----”, date/time as “--/--” and text as *Deleted*. on the chat mail screen.
- The chat mail displayed on the chat mail screen will be marked as read in *Inbox*.
- When a mail is sent or received from Message i-appli, the mail is displayed on the chat mail screen when received as a chat mail.

Displaying broadcast addresses

Broadcast addresses of received mail can be displayed.

1 Highlight a mail on the chat mail screen



- In the field of address registered as a chat member, the registered nickname and mail address appear. In the field of address not registered as a chat member, *Not recorded* and the mail address appear.
- When the mail address is registered in the phonebook, the registered name appears instead of the mail address. Press to display the mail address.

■ Adding unregistered broadcast address for chat member: Highlight an address

- Follow the procedure from Step 2 in "Registering first chat members".
☛P201

■ Copying broadcast addresses: Highlight an address

Deleting all the chat mail logs

- The chat mail in *Inbox* or *Outbox* is also deleted except for protected mail.

1 on the chat mail screen ▶ Yes

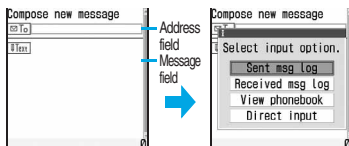
Composing and sending SMS

- The maximum number of items that can be saved ☛P416
- If you use one-byte katakana, the receiver may not be able to display them correctly.
- International SMS can be sent and received to/from the parties that use overseas carriers other than DoCoMo. Please visit the DoCoMo website for the countries where the service is provided and available overseas carriers.
- Reading the received/sent/unsent SMS list/view screen ☛P187

Example

Composing and sending an SMS message by entering address directly

1 ▶ Address field



2 Direct input ▶ Enter the address (the other party's phone number)

- To send to a party that uses an overseas carrier other than DoCoMo, enter "+" (by holding down for over a second) and the country code plus the party's mobile phone number. Omit the first zero (0) of the phone number. You can also send by entering "010" and the country code plus the party's mobile phone number (add "010" when replying to a received SMS message from overseas).
- You can enter up to 26 characters in the address field. However, up to 20 characters (21 characters if "+" is contained) can be sent as address.

■ Searching the phonebook: View phonebook ▶ Highlight a party

■ Selecting from the sent message log of SMS: Sent msg log ▶ Highlight a log

- The phone number of the address of SMS is set.

■ Selecting from the received message log of SMS: Received msg log ▶ Highlight a log

- The phone number of the sender of SMS is set.

3 ▶ Enter the message

- When the font type is set to *Japanese* in SMS Setting, up to 70 one-byte or two-byte characters (including blank) can be entered.

- When the font type is set to **English** in SMS Setting, up to 160 one-byte characters including blank can be entered. Alphanumerics and symbols (except for `、`,` and ` `) can be sent.
- A line feed is also counted as a character in the message. However, it is replaced by a space on the receiver's terminal.

■ **Inserting a signature:**

4

■ **Saving without sending SMS:**

INFORMATION

- Depending on signal conditions, the type of characters to be sent or the other party's terminal, characters may not be displayed correctly at the receiver side.
- Even if **Not notify** is set for Caller ID Notification, the caller ID is sent to the receiver when SMS is sent.
- If you enter some symbols (| ^ {} [] ~ and ¥) when the font type is English, the number of characters that can be sent is reduced. In this case, you may not be able to send the message even if the number of characters is less than the limit.
- When the memory is not enough, or the maximum number of saved items is exceeded, SMS cannot be composed. Delete unnecessary i-mode Mail and SMS from **Unsent messages**.
☛P192
- Even when SMS has been sent, a model incompatible with SMS reception cannot receive SMS normally.
- SMS cannot be sent by Number B of 2in1.
- The font type and whether to receive the delivered report must be set in SMS Setting beforehand. You can also change the settings for the delivered report and storage period while composing SMS.
- When transmission is completed correctly, SMS is saved in the folder of **Outbox**. When the memory is not enough, or the maximum number of saved items is exceeded, the oldest sent mail is deleted. Be sure to protect sent mail you want to keep.
- When transmission fails, an error message appears and SMS is saved in the **Unsent messages** folder of **Unsent messages**.

- When you set the delivered report to **Request** and send SMS, you will receive a delivered report that notifies you that the message has been received by the other party's FOMA terminal. The delivered report is saved in **Inbox**.

When SMS is received

- The maximum number of items that can be saved ☛P416

1 An SMS message is received



Receiving screen

Flashing

- To stop reception:
 SMS may be received depending on the situation.

Reception completed (The reception result screen appears, the mail ring alert sounds and the keys light/flash.)



Reception result screen

: Unread SMS exists.

: Unread SMS and i-mode Mail exist.

Reception result ticker

Number of received SMS
When reception fails, "X" is indicated after **Messages**.

2 or ► Highlight a folder ► ► Highlight an SMS message ►

- You can reply to (☛P182) or forward (☛P182) the received SMS.

INFORMATION

- The reception result screen is displayed for about 15 seconds if you do not press any key, or until the ring alert stops if ring time is set to 15 seconds or longer in Mail Alert.
- While receiving i-mode Mail or Message R/F or connecting to the Data Center, SMS is not automatically received. Perform Check SMS.

- When the memory is not enough, or the maximum number of saved items is exceeded, the oldest received mail except unread one is deleted. Be sure to protect received mail you want to keep.
- When the memory is full with unread mail and protected mail, reception of SMS is stopped.  or  is indicated on the screen. To receive new messages, you need to display unread mail, change unread mail to read, delete unnecessary mail or cancel mail protection.
- When the UIM already contains messages in the maximum number to be saved, SMS may not be received even though there is space available in *Inbox*.  or  is indicated on the screen. Move messages to the FOMA terminal (P208) or delete them from the UIM (P208).
- In case that a phone number or URL is described in SMS, a caution appears indicating that the phone number or URL is described when displaying the SMS for the first time. To display the SMS, press . You can also set not to display the caution in Scanning Setting. P412
- When the received SMS has been set to be saved directly to the UIM, it will be saved directly on the UIM. Note that, when the number of messages in the UIM reaches the maximum to be saved, SMS cannot be received any more. Delete unnecessary messages and perform Check SMS again.
- The received SMS is saved in *Inbox*.
- When SMS is received from a party with the incoming mail settings made in the FOMA terminal phonebook, the settings apply to the operation of the ring alert, vibrator and the key.
 - When multiple SMS messages are received at the same time, the operation depends on the conditions set for the last SMS received.
- When SMS is received from overseas carriers other than DoCoMo, "+" is added before the sender address. If the sender address prefixed with "+" is registered in the phonebook, the name in the phonebook is displayed.

Checking for SMS

Check SMS

You can make inquiry for any SMS delivered while the FOMA terminal was out of service area or turned off.

- The key light flashes while performing. The setting cannot be changed.
- Operate the terminal in locations with good signal condition.

1  6 2

INFORMATION

- It may take time to receive SMS with Check SMS.

Making SMS settings

Usually, you do not need to change *SMSC*, *Address* and *Type of Number* settings.

1  7 4

2 Set each item 

Font type:

Selects Japanese or English.

- The maximum number of characters that can be sent differs depending on the font type.

SMS report request:

Specifies whether to request a delivered report.

Keep in SMS center:

Sets the storage period of sent SMS in the SMS Center in cases the receiver cannot receive the message.

0 day: SMS is resent after fixed time has passed and then deleted from the SMS Center.

SMSC:

Sets SMSC when you use SMS services other than DoCoMo.

Others: Select when you enter the address in the *Address* field (up to 20 one-byte characters can be entered).

Type of Number:

Selects either *international* or *unknown*.
unknown: Select when you select *Others*
for *SMSC* and enter only numbers or
numbers including “*” or “#” in the
Address field.

INFORMATION

- On the SMS composition screen:  **SMS settings**
In this case, only **SMS report request** and **Keep in SMS center** can be set and the settings are valid only for the SMS being composed.
- The settings for **Font type**, **Keep in SMS center**, **SMSC** and **Type of Number** are saved in the UIM.

Saving SMS to the UIM

Moving/copying SMS to the UIM

- The maximum number of items that can be saved ➡ P416
- SMS in *Unsent messages* cannot be saved to the UIM.
- When you move or copy sent SMS, any corresponding delivered reports are moved or copied to *Received SMS* together. You cannot move or copy only delivered reports.

Example Moving/copying an SMS message

- 1    or   **Highlight a folder**

- 2 **Highlight an SMS message**   
 or   
 **Moving/copying selected messages:**
    or    
Highlight messages   

3 *Yes*

INFORMATION

- On the received/sent mail view screen:  **Move/Copy** ▶ **Move to UIM** or **Copy to UIM**
- When the UIM already contains messages in the maximum number to be saved, you cannot move or copy additional messages to the UIM. Delete unnecessary messages from the UIM.
- The protection setting is not moved or copied to the UIM.
- If SMS received by Number B of 2in1 is moved or copied to the UIM, it is saved as SMS received by Number A.

Displaying SMS in the UIM

Example Displaying received SMS

- 1 ☒ 7 2
- To display sent SMS: ☒ 7 3

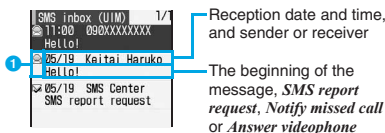
2 Highlight an SMS message ▶

INFORMATION

- When you reply to/forward or resend SMS in the UIM, the sent SMS is saved in *Outbox* of the FOMA terminal.

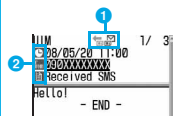
SMS in the UIM list screen

Example FOMA received SMS



- 1  : Unread (able to reply)
 -  : Unread (unable to reply)
 -  : Read (able to reply)
 -  : Read (unable to reply)
 -  : Delivered report/missed call notice
- The read/unread icon in the list indicates whether SMS in the UIM has been displayed. The status of unread/read before moving or copying is also carried over.
 - In the reception date and time field, the time is displayed on the current day and the date is displayed on the other days.
 - The sent/received date and time of the SMS in the UIM are deleted and not displayed. However, for the sent SMS with delivered report, the date and time of delivered report is displayed.

SMS in the UIM display screen



- 1
- : Received (able to reply)
 - : Received (unable to reply)
 - : Sent
 - : Delivered report/missed call notice
 - : SMS in the UIM
- 2
- : Date and time
 - : Receiver
 - : Sender
 - : Sender (unable to reply)
 - : Subject (*Received SMS, Sent SMS, SMS report request, Notify missed call or Answer videophone*)
- *SMS Center* is displayed as the sender of delivered report, *DoCoMo SMS, DoCoMo MSG* as the sender of missed call notice.

i-mode Mail are not overwritten. Delete unnecessary mails/messages.

Deleting SMS from the UIM

- When you delete sent SMS, any corresponding delivered reports are also deleted from the UIM.

- 1 7 ▶ 2 or 3
- 2 **Highlight an SMS message** ▶ 2 1
 - **Deleting selected messages:**
 2 2 ▶ **Highlight messages** ▶
 - **Deleting all the messages:**
 2 3 ▶ **Enter the terminal security code**
 - **Deleting all the delivered reports:**
 2 4 ▶ **Enter the terminal security code**
- 3 *Yes*

Moving/copying SMS to the FOMA terminal

- When you move or copy sent SMS, any corresponding delivered reports are moved or copied to *Inbox* together. You cannot move or copy only delivered reports.

Example Moving/copying an SMS message

- 1 7 ▶ 2 or 3
- 2 **Highlight an SMS message** ▶ 3 ▶ 1 or 3
 - **Moving/copying selected messages:**
 3 ▶ 2 or 4 ▶ **Highlight messages** ▶
- 3 ▶ **Highlight the folder** ▶ ▶ *Yes*

INFORMATION

- On the received/sent SMS (UIM) view screen:
 ▶ *Move/Copy* ▶ *Move to phone* or *Copy to phone*
- When the memory is not enough or the maximum number of saved items is exceeded, you cannot move or copy SMS. Unprotected SMS and

INFORMATION

- On the received/sent SMS (UIM) view screen:
 ▶ *Delete*

i-α ppli

i-α ppli	210
Downloading i-α ppli from sites	210
Starting i-α ppli	211
Using the preinstalled i-α ppli	214
Starting i-α ppli with One-key Shortcut	One-key Shortcut 222
Starting i-α ppli with Two-key Shortcut	Two-key Shortcut 223
Starting i-α ppli automatically	223
Starting i-α ppli from sites or mails	i-α ppli To 224
Operating the i-α ppli standby display	i-α ppli Standby Display 224
Managing i-α ppli	225
Using various functions from i-α ppli	227

Downloading i-appli software from sites allows more convenient use of the i-mode terminal. For example, you can download various games to your i-mode terminal and enjoy playing them. Also, depending on the i-appli, you can register its items directly to the phonebook and the schedule. Some i-applis use Data Box of the FOMA terminal to obtain or save images.

- Some i-applis are not available in the dual mode or the B mode of 2in1.
- For details about i-appli, see “Mobile Phone User’s Guide [i-mode] FOMA version”.

Downloading i-appli from sites

- Maximum number of i-applis that can be saved ➡ P416
- The i-appli that has failed in downloading due to poor signal condition, etc. will not be saved.
- The maximum size of an i-appli that can be downloaded is 1 Mbytes.

1 Display an i-appli site ▶ Highlight an i-appli ▶

The selected i-appli is downloaded.

- To stop downloading:  ▶ **Yes**

■ When Software Info Display is set to ON:

When you select **Yes** on the i-appli information screen, the i-appli is downloaded.

- To check the detail information of the i-appli: 

■ When downloading an i-appli that uses the saved data, the serial number of the mobile phone/UIM/IC card or the microSD memory card:

When you select **Yes** on the confirmation screen, the i-appli is downloaded.

- When **Guide** is displayed in the guide row, the details of the data to be used by the i-appli application can be checked by pressing .

■ When the selected i-appli is already downloaded:

Already downloaded. is displayed. If you select **Yes** when the new version of i-appli is released, i-appli is downloaded to upgrade.

■ When the selected i-appli is already downloaded to a UIM other than the current UIM:

When you select **Yes** on the confirmation screen, the downloaded i-appli is overwritten.

2 Highlight a folder to save ▶

A confirmation screen appears asking whether to use the i-appli application.

- Some i-applis show setup screens for the standby display (**Set i-appli display**) or NW transmission.

For items to set, see Step 2 in “Setting Preference”. ➡ P213

3 Yes or No

- If you select **Yes** on the confirmation screen when **Set stand-by disp.** is set to **Yes** on the setting screen, the ticker setting is canceled if **Show ticker** is set to **Yes**.
- Press  if the setup screen appears after an i-appli application that uses the mail function is downloaded in the B mode of 2in1.

INFORMATION

- If you stop downloading or the network connection breaks while downloading i-appli data, the data is saved partially. You can download it again from the software list screen. Follow Step 3 in “Starting i-appli”. ➡ P211
- When there is not enough available storage space or the maximum number of saved items is exceeded, follow the instructions on the screen to delete saved i-applis. The deleted i-appli application and the deleted data in the microSD memory card cannot be restored even if downloading has failed.

- Depending on the amount of data in the IC card, even if there is enough storage space available for i-applis, Osaifu-Keitai compatible i-appli may not be downloaded. In this case, delete saved i-applis according to the instructions on the screen. Note, however, that some types of i-applis are not indicated as being deletable. Also note that you cannot delete some types of i-applis until you activate or download them again to delete the data in the IC card.

Downloading Message i-appli

When Message i-appli is downloaded, folders for Message i-appli are automatically created in the folder lists of **Outbox**, **Inbox** and **Unsent messages**. The name of downloaded Message i-appli is used as the folder name which cannot be changed.

- Message i-appli can be saved up to 5 applications (included in the 100 maximum number of i-applis). If the maximum number of saved items is exceeded, follow the instructions on the screen to delete an existing Message i-appli folder (when the folder is deleted, the corresponding i-appli is also deleted).
- If Message i-appli that uses the same mail folder has already been saved in the FOMA terminal, the i-appli cannot be downloaded.

INFORMATION

- If you delete a Message i-appli without deleting the corresponding mail folder and try to download the Message i-appli that will use the undeleted mail folder, a confirmation screen appears. Select whether to use the existing mail folder.
- If mails that support Message i-appli to be downloaded have been saved, they can be automatically sorted. However, when Privacy Mode is on (with *Hide secret fldrs* set for *Mail*), you cannot sort them.

Viewing i-appli information when downloading

Software Info Display

1 [MENU] [3] [2] [3] ▶ [1] or [2]

Starting i-appli

1 (for over a second)

- **Displaying only the IC card software (Osaifu-Keitai compatible i-appli):**

[MENU] [6] [4] [1]

The IC card software list screen appears.
Go to Step 3.

2 Highlight a folder ▶

The software list screen appears.

: i-appli present

: No i-appli

3 Highlight an i-appli ▶

- Each time you press , the list display and the thumbnail display are switched.
- When **Confirm every session** is set for NW transmission of the i-appli to be started, a confirmation screen appears asking whether to connect.
- If you select the IC card data transferred by iC transfer service and download the corresponding Osaifu-Keitai compatible i-appli answering the confirmation screen, you can start it.
- If you select partially saved i-appli, selecting **Yes** on the confirmation screen starts downloading. When downloading the remaining part has finished, you can start the i-appli. If the remaining data fails to be downloaded, the partially saved i-appli may be deleted.

Quitting i-appli

Quit the i-appli following the procedure specified for each.

- You can also quit the i-appli by pressing  and selecting **Yes**.

The software list screen

Example List display



Software list screen



IC card software list screen

- : Osaifu-Keitai compatible i-appli
- : Message i-appli
- : i-appli DX
- (orange):
 - Normal i-appli
- : i-appli being currently set for the i-appli standby display
- : i-appli that can be set for the i-appli standby display
- : i-appli with Auto Start on
- (half gray and half orange): Partially saved i-appli*1
- : i-appli that is stopped by IP*1
- : Unavailable because of the UIM operation restriction*1
- : i-appli downloaded from SSL pages
- : Unavailable because of the B mode of 2in*1
- : i-appli registered in One-key Shortcut
- : i-appli registered in Two-key Shortcut

*1 Only these icons are displayed in the IC card software list screen.

INFORMATION

- Partially saved i-appli can be deleted and moved to another folder. Downloading the remaining data or showing the detail information is also possible. Any other operation is unavailable.
- For the IC card data transferred by iC transfer service, you can only download or delete the corresponding Osaifu-Keitai compatible i-appli.

- i-appli operation may be interrupted when a call arrives or alarm sounds. When you quit the function being used and running the operation resumes. However, some i-applis may not return to the state before interruption when to resume. If Osaifu-Keitai compatible i-appli is interrupted, the read/write operation on data from/to the IC card is also interrupted. In that case, the data being read or written may be discarded.

- Some i-appli and i-appli DX applications cannot be used in the Privacy mode.

- When you are outside the service area or the saved data cannot be used, i-applis may not start or operate correctly.

- Images used by i-applis or the data you entered may be sent to the server via Internet. Images used by i-applis are such as those shot with the camera activated by i-applis and those obtained through the infrared communication/iC communication function of i-applis.

- Depending on the i-appli, the IP (Information Provider) can access the i-appli saved in the mobile phone and directly stop its use. This disables the i-appli to be started, upgraded, or set for the standby display. You can only delete it or view its detail information. To use it again, contact the IP to release the suspension of i-appli usage.

- Depending on the i-appli, the IP may send data to the i-appli saved in the mobile phone.

- When the IP requests to stop/restart an i-appli or send data to an i-appli, the FOMA terminal communicates and blinks. In this case, the communication charge is not required.

- Some software allows data to be saved in the microSD memory card. Show the detail information to see whether the microSD memory card is used. The data saved in the microSD memory card may not be used by other FOMA models.

- The i-appli continues its operation even if you set Key Lock and the display indication disappears while i-appli is operating.

- The sound volume for i-appli operation can be set by *i-appli effect sound*. However, some i-applis have no sound effect.

- To i-appli creators

If an i-appli being created does not operate normally, "trace information" may help. Note that trace information cannot be displayed unless an i-appli created to record trace information is saved.

- To display the trace information: **MENU** **3** **3**

4

- To delete the trace information: **MENU** **3** **3**

4

▶ **□** **▶** Yes

Displaying the security error history

When an i-appli ended because of an error such that the i-appli cannot use the saved data, the i-appli name, date and time, and cause of the security error are recorded.

- Up to 20 errors are recorded. When the number exceeds 20, the oldest record is deleted.

1  3 3 3

■ **Deleting the history:**  on the log display screen ▶ Yes

Displaying detail information

Detail information such as the name and version of an i-appli can be checked.

1  (for over a second) ▶ Highlight a folder ▶  ▶ Highlight an i-appli ▶ 

- The displayed items differ depending on the i-appli.
- For the i-appli downloaded from SSL pages, you can check the site certificate by pressing  on the software detail information screen.

Setting Preferences

Settings

- Items that can be set depend on the i-appli.
- In the dual mode or the B mode of 2in1, you cannot set *Set i-appli display* and *Set NW transmission during i-appli display*.

1  (for over a second) ▶ Highlight a folder ▶ 

2 Highlight an i-appli ▶  6 ▶ Set each item ▶ 

Set i-appli display:

- Set whether to set the i-appli as your standby display.
- Only one i-appli can be set.

Set NW transmission during i-appli display:

- Set whether to allow automatic connection while the i-appli standby display is operating.

Set NW transmission:

- Set whether to allow automatic connection while the i-appli is running.

Use icons:

- Set whether the i-appli uses icon information for mail, Message R/F, remaining battery level, Silent Mode and reception level.

Start from browser:

- Set whether to permit starting the i-appli (i-appli To) from sites.

Start from ToruCa:

- Set whether to permit starting the i-appli (i-appli To) from ToruCa.

Start from mailer:

- Set whether to permit starting the i-appli (i-appli To) from mails.

Start from Location Service menu:

- Set whether to permit starting the i-appli (i-appli To) from link items for location information in sites, Message R/F and ToruCa.

Start from external:

- Set whether to permit starting the i-appli (i-appli To) from external devices.

*Allow ring tone/image changes by software*1:*

- Set whether to allow the i-appli to change the settings of ring alerts or images on the screen such as the standby display.

*Confirm all changes*1:*

- Set whether to display a confirmation screen each time the setting for ring alert or image is changed by the i-appli.

*Allow access to phonebook/call records by software*1:*

- Set whether to allow the i-appli to refer to the phonebook, redial data and received call history.

- This setting also applies to ToruCa saved in the FOMA terminal.

*1 This setting is available only for i-appli DX.

- When *Set i-appli display* is changed to *Yes*, selecting *Yes* on the confirmation screen cancels the ticker setting if *Show ticker* is set to *Yes*.

INFORMATION

- Note that if you set *No* for *Set NW transmission*, i-appli may not be started or may not provide timely information such as stock prices or weather forecast.
- If *Yes* is set for *Use icons*, information about icons for unread mail, unread Message R/F, remaining battery level, Silent Mode, and antenna may be sent to IPs through the Internet, which may give the information to a third party. When *Use icons* is set to *No*, i-applis that require the icon information may not operate.

Setting the lighting and vibrator

Display Light/Vibrate Effect

Setting display light

- The i-appli standby display light operation conforms to the setting of *Normal use of Display light time* of the Display Light Setting. ➡P95
- In the Public mode (Driving mode), the light does not operate while an i-appli is running even if *Software* is set.

1 [MENU] 3 2 4 ▶ 1 or 2
Terminal Setting: The setting of *Normal use of Display light time* of Display Light Setting is applied.

Software: Lighting depends on the i-appli.

INFORMATION

- For some i-applis, *Terminal Setting* does not take effect even if you set it.
- This setting also applies to *i-appli of Display light time* of Display Light Setting. ➡P95

Setting vibrator

This setting allows the i-appli to operate the vibrator.

- In the Public mode (Driving mode) is on, the vibrator does not operate while an i-appli is running regardless of this setting.

1 [MENU] 3 2 5 ▶ 1 or 2

INFORMATION

- This setting also applies to Vibrator Setting. ➡P88

Starting another i-appli from an i-appli

Depending on the running i-appli, you can start another one without returning to the software list.

- If the i-appli to be started is not specified, select it.
- If the i-appli to be started is not saved in the FOMA terminal, you need to download it.

Using the preinstalled i-appli

The following i-applis are registered by default:

- iD 設定アプリ (iD setting application)
- DCMX クレジットアプリ (DCMX Credit application)
- i アプリバンキング (i-appli Banking)
- Gガイド番組表リモコン (G-GUIDE TV Remote Controller)
- 地図アプリ (Map application)
- 楽天オークション (Rakuten Auction i-appli2)
- スケートボードダッシュ! (Skateboarding game)
- ケータイ! 日本語テスト 明鏡クイズ編 (Japanese vocabulary test - Meikyo mobile quiz)
- 簡単! デコメっちゃ for D705iμ (Easy Deco-Mecha for D705iμ)

- Some i-appli names may be different from those on the display.
- You can download i-appli registered by default from the i-mode site "My D-style". ➡P282

スケボーダッシュ ! (Skateboarding game)

You can play this racing game by using .

- On the title screen, you can set the sound effects or refer to Help. For details about the game menu, items and operations during the game, see Help.



ケータイ！日本語テスト 明鏡クイズ編 (Japanese vocabulary test - Meikyo mobile quiz)

This application provides you daily drills and a monthly test about Japanese vocabulary. If you submit your test answer, you can know the average score and your rank among all persons who submitted the answers in the next month.

- When using this application for the first time, you have to accept the license agreement.
- Packet communication fee is required separately.
- The contents of drills and test questions are updated every month. If *Set NW transmission of Settings* is set to *No*, they are not updated. Also you cannot know the rank of your test result. It is recommended that you should set *Set NW transmission* to *Yes*.
- You can refer to Help from the main menu. For details about playing this application, see Help.

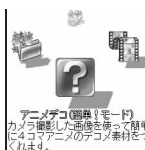


簡単！デコメっちゃ for D705ip (Easy Deco-Mecha for D705ip)

You can create a Deco-mail animation of up to 4 frames using images you shot with the camera and save it as a Deco-mail picture. You can also edit the shot images.

You can also create a Deco-mail pictogram from scratch without using the camera.

- You can refer to Help from the top menu. For details about operation, see Help.



地図アプリ (Map application)

地図アプリ is an i-appli that allows you to check your current location using the open i-area, refer to the specified location on the map or check the route to the destination.

- For using this application, it is recommended to subscribe to Pake-Houdai or Pake-Houdai Full.
- If you deleted this software, you can download it from *i エリアー 周辺情報* (i-area - Area Information).
- You cannot use this application in the B mode of 2in1 because it uses the mail function.
- DoCoMo will not be held responsible for the accuracy or instance of the map or the route information.
- While you are driving, be sure to have another person operate this application.
- The screens shown below are for information purpose only. They may differ from the actual screens.

Basic service and additional service

This software provides two services: the basic service and the additional service.

- **Basic service** : The service which DoCoMo provides free of charge
- **Additional service** : The charged service which ZENRIN DataCom provides

For 90 days from the first usage, you can use all the additional services (except the traffic information) free of charge.

To use the additional services after the first 90 days, you need to apply for the membership of **ゼンリン 地図+ナビ** (Zenrin Map + Navigation) which ZENRIN DataCom provides for a fee.

When you apply for the membership during the first 90 days, you can continue to use the software without downloading it again.

Menu	Contents	Up to 90 days	After 90 days
このあたりの場所 (Around here)	Uses Open i-area to show the map of the current location or send the map via mail.	Free	Free
周辺を調べる (Area information)	- Checks the information about shops, facilities and ID accepting stores around the current location or the specified location. You can also get coupons from the gourmet information. - Checks the weather or the information of parking lots in the area.	Free	Free
地図を見る (Read map)	Shows the map corresponding to the entered keyword, genre, address or phone number.	Free	Free
	- Checks the maps of places searched previously or saved in this software, the server. - If you save a place to the server, you can also check it on your PC.	Free	Charged

Menu	Contents	Up to 90 days	After 90 days
ルートを探す (Route search)	- Searches for a route to the destination for driving, walking or using any other means of transportation. - Searches for a route to the registered home location.	Free	Charged
乗換案内 (Transfer information)	- Checks the transfer information or the timetables of trains. - Checks the train route on the map and sets the alarm before departure.	Free	Charged
設定 (Settings)	Checks the settings of the screen displaying a map and confirms the usage.	Free	Free

The TOP menu of 地図アプリ and available operations

- When you first activate this software, the terms of use and notes for usage are displayed.



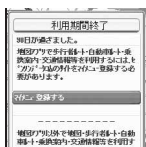
TOP screen

Menu items appear on the TOP screen. When you close the menu, the map previously searched appears.

■ When 90 days has passed without applying for the membership

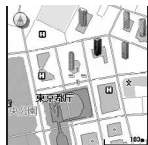
When you activate this application for the first time after the initial 90 days, you will see a message indicating that the service has been restricted. Also a message that asks you if you want to apply for the membership appears.

When you select the additional service menu, you will see the same messages.



- To apply for the membership, go to **ゼンリン 地図ナビ** site from this software.

The map screen and available operations



©ZENRIN DataCom CO.,LTD. 2007

Map display screen

■ Key operations during map display

Key	Operation
[MENU]	Displays menu.
[Quick Access Menu Icon]	Displays quick access menu.
[Scale Bar Icon]	Displays the map scale bar. Press [Zoom Out Icon] to zoom out the map view, or press [Zoom In Icon] to zoom in. Pressing [Scale Bar Icon] determines the scale and the bar disappears.
[Map Navigation Icon]	Scrolls the map up/down and right/left.
[Close Menu Icon]	Closes the menu or returns to the map of the original search result.
[Rotate Map Icon]	Rotates the map counterclockwise.
[North Arrow Icon]	Sets the map direction to the North.
[Rotate Map Clockwise Icon]	Rotates the map clockwise.

■ Key operations on the quick access menu screen

Key	Operation
[Search Icon]	Searches the information of and around the displayed area in the map.
[Route Search Icon]	Sets the departure place and searches for a route to the center of the displayed map.
[Send URL Icon]	Sends the URL of the displayed map.
[Save Location Icon]	Saves the location information of the center of the displayed map to this software or server. By saving it to the server, you can check the same place on your PC.
[Close Quick Access Menu Icon]	Closes the quick access menu.
[1]	Displays the spots where a 3D-image of intersection view or a panorama view is available. Select a spot to see such a view.

Key	Operation
[2]	Displays the buildings nearby and allows you to check their tenants by selecting a point.

The area search result screen and available operations

- The screen and operations described below are for the search result displayed as a map. They are not for the result selected from a list.



©ZENRIN DataCom CO.,LTD. 2007

Area search result screen

■ Key operations when the search result of area information is displayed

If no information from the search result has been selected, the quick access menu appears.

Key	Operation
[Quick Access Menu Icon]	Checks the details of search result.
[Map Navigation Icon]	Scrolls the map up/down and right/left.
[5]	Searches information again focusing around the displayed map.
[4]	Checks the previous search result.
[6]	Checks the next search result.
[MENU]	Displays the menu.
[Scale Bar Icon]	Displays the map scale bar. Press [Zoom Out Icon] to zoom out the map view, or press [Zoom In Icon] to zoom in. Pressing [Scale Bar Icon] determines the scale and the bar disappears.

Search a route to destination

This application searches for a route between the departure place and destination. It displays a route for walking, driving or using other transportation.

- 1 [MENU] during activating this software ▶ ルートを探す (Route search) ▶ ルートを探す

2 出発地 (Departure place) ▶ Set the departure place by the following items

このあたり (Around here)	Position the ballpark position by the open i-area to set.
キーワード検索 (Keywords search)	Set the departure place by searching with a keyword.
地図上で指定 (Setting on the map)	Set the departure place on the map.
TEL / 〒検索 (Phone number/ Zip code search)	Set the departure place by searching with a phone number or Zip code.
住所一覧から (From the address list)	Set the departure place by selecting an address.
ジャンルから (From genre)	Set the departure place by selecting a genre.
履歴から (From log)	Set the departure place by selecting a log item.
登録地点から (From the saved location information)	Select the departure place from the location information saved in this application or the server.
自宅 (Home)	Set the location of home as the departure place.
出発地の確認 (Checking the departure place)	Check the information of departure place.

3 目的地 (Destination) ▶ Set the destination in the same way as Step 2

4 時間指定 (Specify the time) ▶ Specify the time by the following items

現時刻で指定 (Current time)	Specify the current time to search for a route.
出発時刻指定 (Departure time)	Specify the departure time to search for a route.
到着時刻指定 (Arrival time)	Specify the arrival time to search for a route.
終電を利用 (Last train)	Specify the last train of the day to search for a route.

5 条件設定 (Set the condition) ▶ Specify the condition by the following items ▶ 上記で設定 (Confirm the settings) ▶

乗換条件 (Transfer condition)	Select a transfer condition from 早い (fast), 安い (less expensive) or 楽々 (easy).
徒歩ルート (Walking route)	Select search condition for the route from おまかせ (recommended), 屋根多い (roofed) or 階段少ない (less stairs).
特急利用 (Use express)	Select whether to use the express for the route less than 100 km in total.
通常利用車種 (Vehicle type for ordinary use)	Select a type of vehicle to use.

6 員車で検索 (Search by 員車) for the total route search or のみで検索 (Search only by 員車) for cars

As the search result, up to 6 routes are displayed.

- If the route includes a transfer to different means of transportation, the characteristics of the route are displayed by icons.

Icon	Meaning
早 (Fast)	The fastest route
安 (Less expensive)	The least expensive route
楽 (Easy)	The route with least transfer times
オススメ (Recommended)	The route that satisfies above 3 conditions
有料 (Toll road)	The route for driving including toll roads
一般 (Ordinary road)	The route for driving excluding toll roads

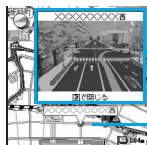
- Saving the route: ルートを登録 (Save the route)

7 Highlight the route ▶

The details of the route are shown.

- Checking the route on the map: ルート確認 (Check the route) ▶ はい (Yes)
- Showing the timetable: Highlight a train route ▶ 時刻表 (Timetable)

The screen of the Route (Driving) and the operation



Highlight a red circle on the map and press . A pop-up screen appears as shown here.

The route to the destination is shown.

©ZENRIN DataCom CO.,LTD. 2007

Screen displaying the route (Driving)

■ Key operation while the route is displayed

Key	Operation
	Close the route display and displays the menu.
	Displays the quick access menu.
	Displays the map scale bar. Press to zoom out the map view, or press to zoom in. Pressing determines the scale and the bar disappears.
	Scrolls the map up/down and right/left.
	Returns to the point of departure.
	Switches to the intersection mode.
	Rotates the map counterclockwise.
	Sets the map direction to the North.
	Rotates the map clockwise.

■ Key operations on the quick access menu

Key	Operation
	Displays the route search result such as time or expenses and sets the route display.
	Searches for a route to the destination via 3 or less points you specify.
	Searches again for a route from the current location to the destination.
	Deletes the displayed route.
	Switches to the intersection mode.

Performing various settings

1 while activating this software ▶ 設定 (Setting) ▶ 設定 ▶ Select from the following items

会員情報確認 (Check the membership information)	Checks whether you have registered to “ゼンリン 地図+ナビ” or not.
基本設定 (Basic setting)	Sets general settings for the software such as the color and font size used in the map.
ルート検索設定 (Route search setting)	Sets the general settings for route search.
自宅設定 (Set the location of home)	Sets the location of your home.
履歴系クリア (Delete log)	Deletes the log of map or route search usages.

Referring to Help

1 while activating this software ▶ 設定 (Setting) ▶ ヘルプ (Help)

Checks the explanation of the usage, FAQ or the terms of use.

Gガイド番組表リモコン (G-GUIDE TV Remote Controller)



- The screen shown here is for information purpose only. It may differ from the actual screen. TV channels of your local area are displayed.

This is a convenient, fee-of-charge application that provides a combination of the TV program guide and the AV remote controller.

With this i-appli, you can easily access the digital terrestrial, analog terrestrial or digital BS TV program information from anywhere at any time. The TV program information includes program titles, brief description of program content, starting and ending time, etc. You can schedule to record your favorite TV programs onto the DVD recorder from a remote place via Internet. This function is available with DVD/hard-disk recorders that support remote record scheduling. Before using this i-appli, it is necessary to perform initial settings. This i-appli allows you to search for the program information using keywords such as the TV program genre or your favorite entertainer. You can also operate the TV, video player and DVD player remotely (some devices do not support this function).

- When you use this application for the first time, it is necessary to make initial settings and agree to the terms of use.
- Packet communication fee is required separately.
- You cannot use this i-appli in the B mode of 2in1 because it uses the mail function.
- To use this i-appli overseas, set the date and time of your FOMA terminal to the Japanese Standard Time.
- For more information about Gガイド番組表リモコン, see "Mobile Phone User's Guide [i-mode] FOMA version".
- For remote control operation ◀P287

Remote record scheduling

If your DVD recorder supports remote record scheduling, you can schedule to record TV programs using the program guide of this i-appli from a remote place via Internet.

For remote scheduling, it is necessary to perform initial settings with this i-appli.

■ Performing initial settings

- ① **Connect your DVD recorder to Internet**
 - See the manual of your DVD recorder.
- ② **Start this i-appli and select *リモート録画予約* (Remote record scheduling) on the menu.**
 - The guidance appears. Perform initial settings according to the guidance.

■ Scheduling to record TV programs

After the initial settings is completed, specify your favorite TV program and select *リモート録画予約* on the menu. Your FOMA terminal connects via Internet to your DVD recorder at home and schedules to record the program.

- If recording is already scheduled for the same time, a message appears on the program list.
- Packet communication fee is required separately.

Osaifu-Keitai compatible i-appli

iD 設定アプリ (iD setting application)



- The screen shown here is for information purpose only. It may differ from the actual screen.

The charge-free electronic money "iD" is a service that enables shopping by holding Osaifu-Keitai or iD-supported credit card over the reader/writer. You do not need to sign the slip and thereby you can enjoy shopping more conveniently. Some card companies support cashing.

- To use iD, first you have to apply for a credit card that supports iD. Then prepare your Osaifu-Keitai using the iD application and the card application issued by the card company, or obtain an iD-supported credit card.

- Before using iD by Osaifu-Keitai, you have to activate the iD application, agree to *ご利用上の注意* (Terms of Use) and perform necessary settings of the iD application. Then download or activate the card application and perform the card application settings.
 - The cost for using an iD-supported service, such as the annual fee, depends on the card company.
 - To download iD application and card application, packet communication fee is required.
 - For information about iD,
see the i-mode site of iD.
i-mode site:
- 

iMenu → ✕二フー／
検索 (Menu/search)
→ *iD* /



QR code for site connection

「DCMX」 クレジットアプリ (DCMX credit application)



- The screen shown here is for information purpose only. It may differ from the actual screen.

"DCMX" is a credit service that NTT DoCoMo group provides for the iD credit payment service. DCMX is available in two types: DCMX mini and DCMX. DCMX mini allows credit payment of up to ¥10,000 per month and DCMX offers a credit line of more than that. With DCMX, you can also earn DoCoMo points. You can apply for DCMX mini from this i-appli to use the iD credit payment service immediately.

■ Functions of this i-αppli

Application and screening*¹

Card information setting

Use

No cumbersome charge required.
You can enjoy shopping only by holding your FOMA terminal over the reader/writer at a shop. You do not need to sign a slip.*2

Check*3

You can check your credit card balance and usage details from this [i-apppli](#).

Change

You can update the card from this i-appli.
Also, when you change your FOMA terminal
to a new one, you can set the card
information from this i-appli.

- *1 Your application for DCMX mini will be examined online. For any application for other than DCMX mini, your terminal automatically connects to the online application page of i-mode.
- *2 Entering a password may be required under a certain condition.
- *3 Checking the usage details, etc. is available only for DCMX mini.

- For details of the service or the application procedure, see the DCMX i-mode site.
i-mode site:



QR code for site connection

iMenu → *DCMX iD*

INFORMATION

- When you use this i-appli for the first time, you have to agree to **ご利用上の注意** (Terms of Use) before using it.
- For setting and operating this i-appli, packet communication fee is required separately.

Precautions for Osaifu-Keitai compatible i-appli

DoCoMo assumes no responsibility for the information saved in the IC card.

i アプリバンキング (i-appli Banking)



- The screen shown here is for information purpose only. It may differ from the actual screens.

This i-appli enables you to use mobile banking conveniently. Mobile banking is a service by which you can use a mobile phone to check your account balance and account activity or transfer money from anywhere at any time. All you need is to enter your password when starting this i-appli. You can use mobile banking services of up to 2 financial institutions.

- To use mobile banking, you have to open your account at a financial institution and apply for the mobile banking service of the institution.
- Packet communication fee is required separately.
- For information about i アプリバンキング, see "Mobile Phone User's Guide [i-mode] FOMA version".

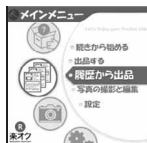
- For details about i アプリバンキング, see the i-mode site:

iMenu → メニュー／検索 → モバイルバンキング (mobile banking) → i アプリバンキング



QR code for site connection

楽天オークションアプリ2 (Rakuten Auction application2)



- The screen shown here is for information purpose only. It may differ from the actual screens.

楽天オークションアプリ2 is a convenient i-appli that allows you to exhibit your items at Rakuten Auction from anywhere at any time.

- Even the first-time exhibitor can use this application easily because of its convenient guidance. Other convenient functions include photographing, photo editing and logging. These allow you to exhibit your items more quickly than you do from a website.
- You need to agree to 利用規約 (Terms of Use) when you use this i-appli for the first time.
- The service requires a packet communication fee separately.
- For details about Rakuten Auction, see "Mobile Phone User's Guide [i-mode] FOMA version".
- To exhibit your items at Rakuten Auction, you have to apply for Rakuten membership and exhibitor registration.
- For information about Rakuten Auction, see the i-mode site:



QR code for site connection

iMenu → 楽天オークション (Rakuten auction)

Starting i-appli with One-key Shortcut

One-key Shortcut

Registering i-appli to One-key Shortcut

- Only one i-appli can be registered. By default, iD 設定アプリ (iD setting application) is registered.

- 1 (for over a second) ▶ Highlight a folder ▶
- 2 Highlight an i-appli ▶ 8 1
 - To cancel, repeat the same procedure.

Starting i-appli with One-key Shortcut

- 1 (for over a second)

Starting i-appli with Two-key Shortcut

Two-key Shortcut

Registering i-appli to Two-key Shortcut

- Up to 10 i-applis can be registered.

1  (for over a second) ▶ Highlight a folder ▶ 

2 Highlight an i-appli ▶   

- To cancel, repeat the same procedure.

3 Highlight the number to register ▶ 

- The icon numbers ( to ) correspond to  to  to be pressed to start the i-appli.
- When you select a number that has already been assigned to another i-appli, a confirmation screen appears.

Starting i-appli with Two-key Shortcut

1  -  or  ▶  (for over a second)

Displaying the Two-key Shortcut list

1    

- To start: Highlight an i-appli ▶ 
- To display details: Highlight an i-appli ▶ 
- To cancel registration: Highlight an i-appli ▶   ▶ Yes

Starting i-appli automatically

Setting whether to start automatically

Auto Start

1     ▶  or 

Setting the date and time of auto starting

Auto Start Info Setting

You can set Auto Start on/off or the start time for each i-appli and display the preset details.

- The conditions that can be set depend on the i-appli.
- Some i-applis may not be started automatically.
- When Auto Start is set to **OFF**, this setting is not available.

1  (for over a second) ▶ Highlight a folder ▶ 

2 Highlight an i-appli ▶   ▶ Set each item ▶ 

User:

Select whether to set conditions of Auto Start.

Time:

Enter the time to automatically start the i-appli.

Repeat:

Set the condition to repeat automatic starting.

Weekly:

Set a day of the week for auto starting when **Weekly** is set for **Repeat**.

Date:

Set the date for auto starting when **Onetime** is set for **Repeat**.

Software:

Set whether to automatically start at the intervals preset for the i-appli.

i-appli 1 to 4:

Depending on the i-appli DX, up to 4 conditions of Auto Start can be set while it is running. Set whether to enable those settings.

INFORMATION

- Even when auto starting is set, the i-appli does not start in the following cases. Instead,  appears on the standby display and Start Failure History logs the case.
 - When a screen other than the standby display is displayed

- When the UIM restricts operation (except for preinstalled i-appli)
- When the UIM cannot be detected
- The interval of auto starting is too short
- During All Lock, Omakase Lock (Remote Lock), Personal Data Lock, or Privacy Mode (when *Authorized access* is set for i-appli)
- In the B mode of 2in1 (only for i-applis that use the mail function)
- When i-appli usage is stopped by the IP
- If 2 or more i-applis in a different repeat setting are specified to start automatically at the same time, only one i-appli is activated. The failed i-appli information is recorded in Start Failure History, but  is not displayed on the standby display.

Displaying the start failure history

If automatic start of i-appli fails,  appears on the standby display and the i-appli name, the date and time and the failure reason are recorded.

- Up to 20 failures are recorded. When the number exceeds 20, the oldest record is deleted.
- When you display the start failure history or when the next automatic start is successful,  on the standby display disappears.

-    
 ■ **Deleting the history:**  on the log display screen ▶ *Yes*

Starting i-appli from sites or mails

i-appli To

- Highlight a link item enabled to start i-appli from sites or mails** ▶  ▶ *Yes*

INFORMATION

- If the i-appli you attempt to start with i-appli To is not saved in the FOMA terminal, it cannot be started. Note that some i-applis may start just after downloaded from sites even if they are not saved.
- If the specified i-appli is set not to start with i-appli To, it cannot be started. ◀P213

Operating the i-appli standby display

i-appli Standby Display

When an i-appli is set for the standby display, you can start it from the standby display to operate.

- On the i-appli standby display,  or  is indicated at the top of the screen.
- It is necessary to set an i-appli for the standby display beforehand. ◀P92

INFORMATION

- When you set an i-appli that performs communication, it may not operate correctly depending on signal conditions, etc.
- While All Lock, Personal Data Lock, Privacy Mode (when *Authorized access* is set for i-appli), Omakase Lock, or the B mode or dual mode of 2in1 is active, the i-appli standby display will be canceled temporarily. If you cancel All Lock, Personal Data Lock, Omakase Lock, or Privacy Mode, the i-appli standby display restarts.
- If an error occurs, a confirmation screen appears asking whether to cancel the i-appli standby display. Selecting *Yes* cancels it, which is recorded in Abnormal Exit History.
- You cannot connect to a site (Web To) from the i-appli standby display.
- When the power of the FOMA terminal is manually turned on with the i-appli standby display set, a confirmation screen appears asking whether to start the i-appli standby display.

Starting i-appli of the i-appli standby display

-  on the i-appli standby display
 or  at the top of the display blinks.

Quitting i-appli to return to the i-appli standby display

-  while an i-appli is running ▶ *End*
 The screen returns to the i-appli standby display.
 - The operation procedure depends on the i-appli.
 - To cancel: *Cancel*

INFORMATION

- On the software list screen: Highlight the i-appli of the i-appli standby display ▶ ▶ *i-appli display* ▶ *End or Cancel*

Displaying the abnormal exit history

When an error that will cancel the i-appli standby display occurs, the i-appli name, date and time are recorded.

- Up to 20 abnormal exits are recorded. When the number exceeds 20, the oldest record is deleted.

1

- Deleting the history: on the log display screen ▶ *Yes*

Managing i-appli

Upgrading i-appli

1 (for over a second) ▶ Highlight a folder ▶

2 Highlight an i-appli ▶ ▶ *Yes*

INFORMATION

- When you upgrade an i-appli, data such as game scores stored by the i-appli may be erased.
- Some i-applis may inquire the DoCoMo server about the availability depending on time duration or number of times of use.
- Some i-applis may be upgraded automatically.

Creating/deleting folders

Creating a folder

- Up to 20 folders can be created including *My folder*.

1 (for over a second)

2

- Changing the folder name: Highlight a folder ▶

- Changing the order of folders:

Highlight a folder ▶ or

3 Enter a folder name (up to 16 one-byte or 8 two-byte characters) ▶

Deleting folders

- When only one folder exists, it cannot be deleted.

- For cautions about deleting folders, see "Deleting i-appli". ▶ P226

1 (for over a second) ▶ Highlight a folder ▶

- To delete a folder with any i-appli stored in it, enter the terminal security code.

2 *Yes*

- If the folder contains the following i-applis, a confirmation screen appears. For details, see Step 3 in "Deleting i-appli".

▶ P226

- Message i-appli
- Osafu-Keitai compatible i-appli that cannot be deleted unless the data in the IC card are deleted
- i-appli having data in the microSD memory card

Moving i-appli to another folder

1 (for over a second) ▶ Highlight a folder ▶

2 Highlight an i-appli ▶

- Moving the selected items:

▶ Highlight items ▶ ▶

- Moving all items in folder:

3 Highlight the folder to move to ▶ ▶ *Yes*

Deleting i-appli

- Depending on the i-appli to be deleted, the data in the IC card is also deleted. Some i-applis cannot be deleted unless you start them and delete the data in the IC card.
- If the IC card data is transferred by the iC transfer service, some i-applis cannot be deleted until being downloaded again to delete the data in the IC card.
- Some of the Osaifu-Keitai compatible i-applis may not be deleted.

1  (for over a second) ▶ Highlight a folder ▶ 

2 Highlight an i-appli ▶  2 1
 ■ Deleting selected items:  2 2
 ▶ Highlight items ▶  ▶ 
 ■ Deleting all items in the folder:
 2 3 ▶ Enter the terminal security code

3 Yes

- When you delete a Message i-appli, a confirmation screen appears asking whether to delete the mail folder as well. Select **Yes** to delete the mail folder and all the messages stored in it. Select **No** to delete the i-appli only. However, if there are any protected message in the mail folder, you cannot delete the i-appli or mail folder even when you select **Yes**.
- If the i-applis to be deleted include Osaifu-Keitai compatible i-appli that cannot be deleted unless the data in the IC card is deleted, a confirmation screen appears asking whether to delete the other i-applis.
- When you delete the i-appli that has data in the microSD memory card, a confirmation screen may appear asking whether to delete the data in the microSD memory card as well.

INFORMATION

- To delete all i-applis in a folder from the folder list: Highlight the folder ▶  ▶ Delete ▶ Delete software
- If the folder for the Message i-appli to be deleted is in use (as while displaying a list), the i-appli may not be deleted.
- When only the i-appli has been deleted and the mail folder used for the Message i-appli is left undeleted, the message can be displayed from the submenu in the folder list of mail. ◀P186

Sorting i-appli

Sort Software

1  3 2 1
 2 1 - 5

- For **By access time** and **By download time**, i-applis are sorted by the date/time set by Date and Time Setting.
- For **By name**, the sorted order may not match the order of the Japanese syllabary if both one-byte and two-byte characters are included in the i-appli name.
- For **By access frequency**, the frequency does not include the number of times of being started as the i-appli standby display. The access frequency is carried over even when the i-appli version is upgraded.
- For **By software size**, the total of the software size of the i-appli and scratchpad is compared.

INFORMATION

- On the software list screen:  ▶ Sort

Checking the number of i-appli in a folder

Software in Folder

1  (for over a second) ▶ Highlight a folder ▶ 

- For the meaning of icons ◀P212

Checking the current settings of i-appli

Software Information

- You can check the following:
 - Software storage area and the number of saved applications
 - i-appli standby display, one-key shortcut, the names and the folders of i-applis set for automatic start, and the date/time of the next automatic start

1 (for over a second)

Displaying i-appli data saved in the microSD memory card

microSD Data

- The content of data cannot be displayed.

1

The folder list of data saved in the microSD memory card by the i-appli is displayed.

■ Confirming the information of folder:

Highlight a folder

- Items displayed are availability of the folder, the i-appli name and the reason why it is not available. Some items may not be displayed depending on the folder.

■ Deleting the folder:

① Highlight a folder

- Deleting selected items:   
- Highlight folders   
- Deleting all items:    Enter the terminal security code

② Yes

Using various functions from i-appli

- It is necessary to download an i-appli that supports individual functions beforehand.
- Depending on the i-appli, the operation varies or may be unavailable.

Using the camera

1 Operate an i-appli to use the camera

INFORMATION

- Shot images or recorded movies may be automatically sent to the server.
- When the camera has been activated from an i-appli, a shot image is saved in the *i-mode* folder, the *Deco-mail picture* folder or an additional album of *My Picture* or within the i-appli itself. A recorded movie is saved in the *i-mode* folder or an additional album of *i-motion* or within the i-appli itself.

Using Bar Code Reader

1 Operate an i-appli to scan barcodes

- The scan results are used and saved in the i-appli.

Using infrared communication

- Infrared communication may not be made depending on the other device, even if it is provided with the infrared communication function.

1 Operate an i-appli to perform infrared communication

- The i-appli can also be started by receiving the i-appli starting data via infrared communication.

Osaifu-Keitai/ToruCa

What's Osaifu-Keitai?	230
What's iC transfer service?	231
Starting Osaifu-Keitai compatible i- α ppli	231
What's ToruCa?	231
Obtaining ToruCa	232
Displaying ToruCa	233
Setting ToruCa	235
Locking the IC card functions	IC Card Lock 236

What's Osaifu-Keitai?

The i-mode terminal which is equipped with an IC card and provides useful functions of i-mode using the IC card (i-mode FeliCa) is called "Osaifu-Keitai".

FeliCa is the contactless IC card technology, which allows reading and writing data just by holding an IC card over a reader/writer.

The Osaifu-Keitai can be used more conveniently, as electronic money for payment, as airplane tickets, or as rewards card, just by holding it over a compatible reader/writer. Also, compared to a conventional contactless IC card compatible with FeliCa, the Osaifu-Keitai provides more useful functions; you can charge electronic money into the IC card of the terminal or check the balance or usage history using communication.

Note 1: Before using Osaifu-Keitai compatible services, make settings using the i-appli compatible with the IC card function (IC appli). For details, contact the IP (Information Provider) of each service.

Note 2: For usage precautions, see "Mobile Phone User's Guide [i-mode] FOMA version".

- Data in the IC card may be lost or modified due to failure of Osaifu-Keitai. (DoCoMo will not receive to repair your Osaifu-Keitai with the data remaining in the terminal. You will be required to delete the data.) Use backup services provided by IPs, other than iC transfer service, to have the data reissued, restored, temporarily stored or moved. Availability and usage conditions (required procedures, charges, etc.) of backup service and compatibility with iC transfer service differ depending on the Osaifu-Keitai service. Contact the IP in advance for details. When important data is involved, make sure to use the Osaifu-Keitai service that is provided with backup service.
- For any damage resulting from using Osaifu-Keitai compatible services, including loss or modification of the data in the IC card, DoCoMo assumes no responsibility in any circumstances.

- If your Osaifu-Keitai is lost or stolen, contact the IP of your Osaifu-Keitai compatible service immediately. Note that you can restrict the IC card function by Omakase Lock (Remote Lock) or IC Card Lock on the FOMA terminal.
▶P110, P236

Using the Osaifu-Keitai

Step 1: Download Osaifu-Keitai compatible i-appli ▶P210

Osaifu-Keitai compatible i-appli, iD 設定アプリ (iD setting application) and DCMX クレジットアプリ (DCMX Credit i-appli) are registered by default.

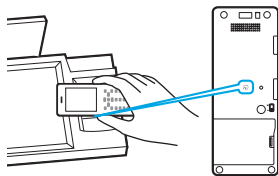
Step 2: Start Osaifu-Keitai compatible i-appli to read and write data in the IC card ▶P231

Use Osaifu-Keitai compatible i-appli to charge electronic money and tickets or to check the balance and usage history.

Step 3: Hold the FeliCa mark over a reader/writer

- When *ON* is set for the lighting during IC card transaction in Light Alert Setting, the key flashes according to the setting of lighting pattern if reading and writing become available.

You can use the FOMA terminal as electronic money for shopping or as tickets by holding the FeliCa mark on the terminal over a reader/writer. This function can be used without starting Osaifu-Keitai compatible i-appli.



INFORMATION

- If the IC card is not recognized when you hold the FeliCa mark over the reader/writer, try again by changing the position, angle, etc.
- Do not have an impact on the FOMA terminal when holding the FeliCa mark over the reader/writer.

- The IC card can be used during a call or i-mode by holding the FeliCa mark over the reader/writer. However, you cannot start Osaifu-Keitai compatible i-appli during i-mode.
- To use IC card by holding the FeliCa mark over the reader/writer while the power is turned off, set **Remain lock status** for IC Lock (power-off) and turn off the power without IC card locked.
- IC card function cannot be used when the battery pack is removed. The IC card may not be used if an attached battery pack is not used for long period or not charged after a low battery alert. In this case, charge the battery.
- When the power is off, you cannot start Osaifu-Keitai compatible i-appli to read and write data in the IC card. You cannot obtain ToruCa either.
- Setting Omakase Lock disables the IC card function regardless of the setting of IC Card Lock.
- When you hold the FeliCa mark over the reader/writer, i-appli may start. However, when the target i-appli is not saved or is set not to start with i-appli To, the i-appli does not start.

What's iC transfer service?

iC transfer service*1 is a service which transfers all the data of IC card to new Osaifu-Keitai*3 at once*2, when you need to change the terminal for a new model or repair. After the data of IC card is transferred, you can easily use Osaifu-Keitai compatible service by downloading Osaifu-Keitai compatible i-appli. iC transfer service is available at a DoCoMo Shop.

For details, see "Mobile Phone User's Guide [i-mode] FOMA version".

*1 A fee is needed for use of iC transfer service. (There is the case that fee is not needed.) Also, for downloading the IC appli and for various settings, packet communication fee is required.

*2 Some Osaifu-Keitai compatible services are not supported. Since the services that are not supported will be deleted when you use iC transfer service, make backup of data using the Osaifu-Keitai compatible service or delete it, in advance.

*3 iC transfer service is available if a new Osaifu-Keitai model is compatible to the service.

Starting Osaifu-Keitai compatible i-appli

- In case you start or download Osaifu-Keitai compatible i-appli for the first time, "**Current UIM necessary to use IC card.**" appears. From the next time, the IC card function cannot be used without inserting the associated UIM. When you use your terminal with another UIM, IC card function cannot be used unless you insert the associated UIM and delete all the Osaifu-Keitai compatible i-appli.

1    

- For the subsequent steps, follow Step 3 in "Starting i-appli". ➡ P211

INFORMATION

- While Osaifu-Keitai compatible i-appli is started, the IC card may not be used by holding the FeliCa mark over the reader/writer.
- Some Osaifu-Keitai i-appli may not be activated or operated correctly when you are failed in the communication outside the service area or the saved data is disabled.

What's ToruCa?

ToruCa is an electronic card that is available through Osaifu-Keitai, which can be used as a flyer, restaurant card, coupon, etc.

You can obtain ToruCa from the reader/writer and sites and exchange the obtained ToruCa easily by using mail, infrared/iC communication and microSD memory card.

The obtained ToruCa is saved in **ToruCa** in the **LifeKit** menu.

- ToruCa is available in the compatible models. For details of ToruCa compatible models, see "Mobile Phone User's Guide [i-mode] FOMA version".

Procedure for using ToruCa

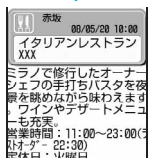
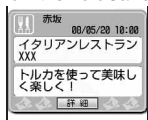


Hold the Osaifu-Keitai over a reader/writer to obtain ToruCa.

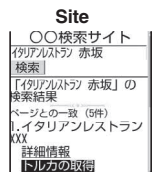
Select obtained ToruCa from the ToruCa list.



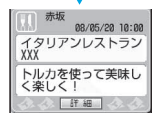
For more details, press **詳細** (Details) button.



How to get ToruCa



Reader/Writer



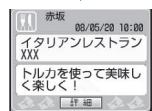
i-appli



QR code

Infrared/iC communication

i-mode Mail



Exchange ToruCa between i-mode terminals

INFORMATION

- Exchanging ToruCa in i-mode communication needs packet communication fee.

Obtaining ToruCa

- Maximum number of items that can be saved
● P416
- The ToruCa size that can be saved is up to 1 Kbyte per item. For ToruCa (details), up to 100 Kbytes can be saved.
- The obtained ToruCa is saved in the **ToruCa** folder. However in case of obtaining ToruCa from reader/writer, it is saved in the specified folder when ToruCa matches the sort method set in ToruCa Sort Rule.

Obtaining ToruCa from a reader/writer

- **ToruCa receive** must be set to **ON** in ToruCa Setting.
- You cannot obtain ToruCa while IC Card Lock is on.

1 Hold the FeliCa mark over a reader/writer

You will hear a sound that lets you know ToruCa is obtained and the key flashes.

■ **When a confirmation screen appears asking whether to download details:**
Yes or No

Yes: ToruCa (details) is saved by connecting to i-mode.

■ **When a confirmation screen appears asking whether to use the auto reading function:** **Yes or No**

- To use the auto reading function: **Yes** ▶
☐ 1
- To set the auto reading function in advance ● P236

■ **When Auto-display is set to ON in ToruCa Setting:**

The obtained ToruCa is displayed only while on the standby display. It is displayed for about 15 seconds, if you do not press any key.

INFORMATION

- You can also obtain ToruCa by the following methods:
 - Downloading from sites*1 ● P154
 - Received mail or Message R/F*1 ● P183, P160
 - i-appli*1
 - Bar Code Reader*1 ● P142
 - Infrared communication ● P285

- iC Communication ☛P289
- microSD memory card ☛P270
- *1 Saved as already read.
- When **Duplication check** of ToruCa Setting is set to **ON**, the obtained ToruCa cannot be obtained.
- If the auto reading function is not used, ToruCa may not be used.
- When the memory is not enough or the saved items exceed the maximum number, follow a message and delete unnecessary ToruCa.
- When you obtain ToruCa from reader/writer while **Auto-display** is set to **ON** in ToruCa Setting, it is regarded as unread if you press or to exit.

Displaying ToruCa

- The details screen of ToruCa in the *Used ToruCa* folder cannot be displayed.

1 ▶ Highlight a folder ▶

- To switch to the folder list of the microSD memory card: on the folder list

■ Sending mail with ToruCa attached: Highlight ToruCa on the ToruCa list ▶

- Depending on ToruCa (details), a confirmation screen appears. Select *Yes(w/ detail)* to send with details or *Yes(w/o detail)* to send without details.
- Depending on ToruCa (details), the confirmation screen indicating that details are not included appears.
- Some ToruCa cannot be sent. ☛P175

2 Highlight ToruCa ▶

■ Obtaining ToruCa (details): 詳細 in the ToruCa view screen ▶ Yes

The FOMA terminal is connected to i-mode and saves ToruCa (details).

■ Updating ToruCa (details): in the ToruCa (details) view screen ▶ Yes

The FOMA terminal is connected to i-mode and updates and saves ToruCa (details).

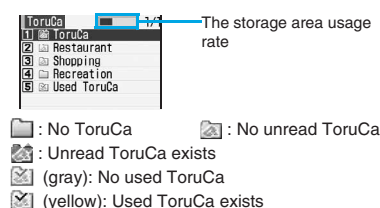
INFORMATION

- To send mail with ToruCa attached on the view screen:
- Some ToruCa may not be updated, moved, copied, sent via mail or exchanged via infrared communication.

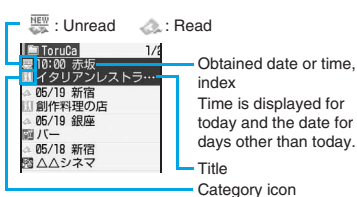
- If an expiration date is set for ToruCa and the date is expired, the background color of ToruCa list screen is displayed with different color.
- In some cases, the issuer's original category icon is displayed on the ToruCa list screen or view screen. However, it is not included in the category icon of *Category* in the search or sort method (ToruCa Sort Rule).
- Even if a receiver's model is compatible with ToruCa, some models may not receive ToruCa (details) attached to mail.
- In the B mode of 2in1, operations concerning mail cannot be made.
- If the displayed text includes a phone number, mail address or URL, you can use Phone To (AV Phone To), Mail To or Web To function.
- To register new data in the phonebook, highlight the phone number or mail address on the view screen and press . To update the data in the phonebook, press . To register a URL in Bookmark, highlight the URL and press . To save an image, press and select the image. The background images can be saved by pressing .
- To replay the animation on the view screen, press .

Reading the list screen

The folder list screen



The ToruCa list screen



Creating/deleting folders

- You cannot change the name or order of *ToruCa* and *Used ToruCa* folders, and cannot delete them.

Creating a folder

- You can create up to 20 folders other than the *ToruCa* and *Used ToruCa* folders.

- 1**

 - Changing the folder name: Highlight a folder on the folder list**
 - Changing the order of folders: Highlight a folder on the folder list** or
- 2** Enter the folder name (up to 16 one-byte or 8 two-byte characters)

Deleting a folder

- 1** **Highlight a folder** **Enter the terminal security code** *Yes*

Moving/copying ToruCa to a folder

- You cannot move or copy to the *Used ToruCa* folder.

Example Moving one item

- 1** **Highlight a folder**
- 2** **Highlight ToruCa**

 - Moving multiple items:** **Highlight ToruCa**
 - Moving all ToruCa in a folder:**
 - Copying one item to another folder: Highlight ToruCa**
 - Copying multiple items to another folder: Highlight ToruCa** **Highlight ToruCa**
 - Copying all items to another folder:**
- 3** **Highlight the folder to move or copy** *Yes*

INFORMATION

- On the view screen: -

Checking the information of the saved ToruCa

- 1**

Information such as the number of ToruCa saved in the FOMA terminal and the percentage of the used area to the total capacity is displayed.

 - ToruCa in the *Used ToruCa* folder is not included.
 - Checking the number of ToruCa in a folder: Highlight a folder on the folder list**

Searching for ToruCa

- ToruCa in the *Used ToruCa* folder cannot be searched.

- 1**

 - To search a folder: Highlight a folder on the folder list
- 2** **Search method field** -

Search all	
Search method	Category
Category	restaurant
Search text	

Category: Select a category displayed in the *Category* field.

Title or Index: Enter the title or index to the *Search text* field (up to 21 one-byte or 10 two-byte characters for a title and up to 15 one-byte or 7 two-byte characters for an index). You can search by entering only a part of a title or index. Two-byte characters can be distinguished from one-byte characters, but the cases of alphabets are ignored.

Sorting ToruCa

Sort

You can change the sorting order of the ToruCa list temporarily. Once ending the display, the order is returned to *By date*.

- You can sort by date, category, title, index or name.

1 [MENU] 6 3 ▶ Highlight a folder ▶

INFORMATION

- When sorted by title or index, ToruCa may not be sorted in the order of Japanese syllabary if the titles or indexes include both one-byte and two-byte characters.
- When sorted by name, ToruCa is sorted according to the order of ID allocated for each (ID cannot be displayed).

Deleting ToruCa

1 [MENU] 6 3 ▶ Highlight a folder ▶

2 Highlight ToruCa ▶ [MENU] 3 1

- Deleting multiple items: [MENU] 3 2 ▶ Highlight ToruCa ▶

- Deleting all ToruCa in a folder: [MENU] 3 3 ▶ Enter the terminal security code

- Deleting ToruCa in the *Used ToruCa* folder: Highlight ToruCa ▶

3 Yes

INFORMATION

- On the view screen: [MENU] 8

Setting ToruCa

Specifying whether to obtain ToruCa

ToruCa Setting

1 [MENU] 8 5 2 2

2 Set each item ▶

ToruCa receive:

Set whether to obtain ToruCa.

Duplication check:

Set whether to check if the read ToruCa is already obtained.

ON: The obtained ToruCa cannot be obtained.

Auto-sort:

Set whether to sort into the specified folder automatically.

Even if **ON** is set, no sorting occurs when sort method is not set in ToruCa Sort Rule.

Auto-display:

Set whether to display automatically.

INFORMATION

- Duplication check is not applied to ToruCa in the *Used ToruCa* folder or whose expiration date has passed.

Sorting ToruCa automatically into the folders

ToruCa Sort Rule

Set sort method for ToruCa obtained by reader/writer.

- Up to 20 methods can be registered.
- To enable this setting, set *Auto-sort* of ToruCa Setting to **ON**.
- This setting is valid for ToruCa which is obtained after setting. The ToruCa already obtained cannot be sorted.
- ToruCa cannot be sorted into the *Used ToruCa* folder.

Setting sort method

1 [MENU] 8 5 2 4



Registered sort method

1 Priority

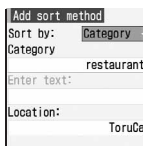
2 GENRE : Category

INDEX : Index

TITLE : Title

: No method

2



3 Sort by field ▶ 1 - 4

Category: Select a category displayed in the **Category** field.

Title or Index: Enter the title or index to the **Enter text** field (up to 21 one-byte or 10 two-byte characters for a title and up to 15 one-byte or 7 two-byte characters for an index). You can make a sort by entering only a part of a title or index.

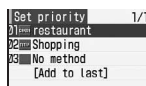
No method: All ToruCa is sorted without setting method.

4 Location field ▶ Highlight the folder to sort ▶



5 Highlight a position to insert the method ▶

The new sort method is inserted above the selected rank.



- To set the first method in the list: **[Add to last]**
- To add the method to the end of the list: **[Add to last]**

INFORMATION

- The sort methods are checked in accordance with their priority. ToruCa does not match any methods is saved in the **ToruCa** folder.

Checking and changing sort method

Example Checking the sort method

1 [MENU] 8 5 2 4

2 Highlight the sort method ▶

- You can change or delete sort method while checking it.

■ **Changing sort method:** Highlight the sort method ▶ [MENU] 2 ▶ Specify the sort method

■ **Changing the priority:** Highlight the sort method ▶ [MENU] 5 ▶ Highlight the position to insert ▶

■ **Deleting sort method:** Highlight the sort method ▶ [MENU] 3 ▶ Yes

- To delete all: [MENU] 4 ▶ Enter the terminal security code ▶ Yes

Setting the auto reading function

ToruCa Auto-read

When you hold the FOMA terminal over the reader/writer to use ToruCa, specify whether to permit the terminal to read available ToruCa automatically.

- When **ON** is set, the available ToruCa is automatically recognized and moved to the **Used ToruCa** folder.
- Up to 20 items can be saved in the **Used ToruCa** folder. When the number exceeds 20, the oldest one is deleted in order.

1 [MENU] 8 5 2 3 ▶ 1 or 2

INFORMATION

- When you hold the FOMA terminal over the reader/writer, when **OFF** is set, the message indicating that the auto reading function is invalid may appear. Before you use ToruCa, select **Yes** and set this function to **ON**.

Locking the IC card functions

IC Card Lock

IC Card Lock disables using the IC card and obtaining ToruCa by holding the FeliCa mark over reader/writer. In addition, you cannot download and use Osaifu-Keitai compatible i-appli or perform iC Communication.

- IC Card Lock cannot be set when All Lock is active. To set both IC Card Lock and All Lock, first set IC Card Lock and then set All Lock.

1 (for over a second) ▶ Yes

IC Card Lock is set and appears on the standby display.

Canceling

- When **Voice+SecurityCode** is set as the procedure to cancel IC Card Lock, and voice keyword for authentication is recorded, voiceprint authentication is needed for canceling IC Card Lock.
- For voiceprint authentication, please take the following items into account:
 - For the usage environment or how to hold, follow the operations in recording. P237
 - A voice is hard to be recognized when using the Flat-plug Earphone/Microphone with Switch (optional), etc.

Example

Canceling IC Card Lock with Voice+SecurityCode

1 (for over a second)

After about 2 seconds, a beep is heard and authentication starts.

- When **Security code** is set as the procedure to cancel IC Card Lock, go to Step 3.

2 Say the authentication keyword within 5 seconds

When the voice is authenticated, the terminal security code entry screen appears.

- To stop the authentication: 



- Say the keyword which was set in IC Card Lock Setting.

- The terminal security code screen is displayed by pressing  for over a second without voiceprint authentication operation.

3 Enter the terminal security code

INFORMATION

- You can also set/cancel in shortcut operations.
 [MENU] 6 4 2 or [MENU] 8 3 1 3 1 
 Enter the terminal security code  1 or 2
- When **Voice+SecurityCode** is set as the procedure to cancel IC Card Lock, voiceprint authentication is needed before entering the terminal security code.
- If there is a noise around or the voice is not authenticated, the message appears. Press  and say the keyword again.
- Depending on words you registered or conditions where you recorded, voice data may be authenticated by the neighboring sounds or the similar words. It may happen easily when you registered too short a word or recorded at a noisy place.
- When you fail in voiceprint authentication 5 times consecutively, the voiceprint authentication stops.
- Even if the power is turned off or the battery runs out during IC Card Lock, the lock will not be canceled.

Recording a voice for canceling a lock

IC Card Lock Setting

Set the authentication operation necessary for canceling IC Card Lock.

- A voice for about 0.5 to 2 seconds can be recorded.
- When recording, please take the following items into account.

Usage environment	It is recommended that a voice be recorded in a quiet place where there is little noise around.
How to hold	- In the same way as talking on the phone, hold the terminal beside your face or in the front of your face 5 cm away. - Be careful not to cover the microphone with your finger.
Word to register	- It is recommended to register word of 5 to 10 syllables and to avoid the word that you do not usually use, because the pronunciation might not be stabilized. - Note that if the keyword contains sound such as サ(sa) line sounds, シャ(sha), シュ(shu) or ショ(sho), the authentication may be performed by another person's voice.

Word to register	- If the registered keyword contains the following, the voice may not be authenticated correctly. - Some prolonged sounds (ー) :e.g. “セーター” (sweater) - Some geminate sounds (っ) :e.g. “とっちゃって” (totchatte)
How to say	- Speak as clearly as possible. Please do not register in a low or loud voice. - Please do not make the sound unnecessary for the voice data, such as cough, “Uh...” or tongue-clicking. In addition, please do not blow your breath to the microphone. - Please do not make a silent part while recording. If you speak too slowly, the part may be judged as silence and not be registered correctly.

1 6 4 5 ▶ Enter the terminal security code

2 Cancel method field ▶

- To set the authentication only with the terminal security code entry:  ▶ Go to Step 6

3 Record in Voice data field ▶

- When the voice data is already recorded, after selecting **Record**, a confirmation screen appears.

4

- After about 2 seconds, a beep is heard and recording starts.

5 Say the keyword within 5 seconds ▶ Say the keyword again within 5 seconds

- Record the keyword twice. It is registered when the first and second recordings match.
- To stop the recording: 

6

INFORMATION

- In the following cases, the message appears. Press  to change the volume of your voice or the keyword and try again.
 - When a voice is small

- When the keyword is too short or long
- When the keyword has few syllables
- When there is some noise around
- When the first and second keywords do not match

- Since the voice of a person may change by age or other reasons, using the same keyword for long term may become hard to match the recorded voice data. In that case, please register the voice data again.

- Voiceprint authentication makes no warranty of complete certification. For any damage or loss, which the user shall sustain by being used by a third party or an error in voiceprint authentication, NTT DoCoMo assumes no responsibility.

Setting IC Card Lock automatically

Timed Lock

You can set to lock IC card to be locked automatically after the specified time (1 to 90 minutes) elapses.

1 6 4 3

2 Timed lock field ▶

To cancel: **Timed lock** field ▶  ▶ Go to Step 4

3 Time to lock (min) field ▶ -

4

INFORMATION

- Even if **ON** is set, IC Card Lock will not be set automatically when **i-appli** is running. The setting is made after **i-appli** ends.
- If the power is turned off or the battery runs out while **ON** is set, IC Card Lock is set, before the specified time elapses.
- When IC Card Lock is on, **Osaifu-Keitai** compatible **i-appli** may not be deleted.

Locking the IC card function when you turn the power off

IC Lock (power-off)

1 6 4 4 ▶ Enter the terminal security code ▶ or

Full Browser

Viewing web pages designed for PC	Full Browser 240
Setting Full Browser	Browser Setting 245

You can view Internet web pages designed for PCs on the FOMA terminal.

- Some web pages may not be downloaded or displayed properly.
- Note that communications of large-size data such as for viewing and downloading websites containing images will require high charges. For details of packet communication fee, see "Mobile Phone User's Guide [i-mode] FOMA version".

Example Entering the URL of a page to view

1 9 3 1 ▶ Enter the URL (up to 512 one-byte characters) ▶

- When No is set for Access Setting such as the setting by default, Access Setting screen is displayed. ▶P246
- From the next time, the last URL you connected to appears.
- To stop connecting:  while connecting
- To discontinue to download:  while downloading the data

■ Viewing the home page: 9 1

- Your FOMA terminal is connected to the web page registered as a home page in advance. ▶P245

■ Selecting the URL from Bookmark:

9 2 ▶ Highlight a folder ▶

▶ Highlight a bookmark ▶

- To register the URL to a bookmark ▶P243

■ Using the URL History to view:

9 3 2 ▶ Highlight the URL



- URL History contains last 20 URLs you connected to.

■ Reconnecting to the page displayed in the past (Last Visited URL):

9 3 3 ▶ Highlight the last

visited URL ▶

- Last Visited URL contains last 10 URLs you connected to.
- Some pages may not be displayed. Or a page other than you visited in the past may be displayed.

2 when you finish viewing Internet web pages ▶ Yes

INFORMATION

- Some pages may take some time to appear.
- The following functions are not supported:
 - Viewing Flash movies
 - Plug-in
 - Playing sound
 - Saving screen memos
 - Phone To (AV Phone To)
- The following icons may appear instead of images.
 - : While data is being downloaded or when Image Display is set not to display images
 - : When the image data is invalid, cannot be found or cannot be received because of being outside of the service area
 - : When the image cannot be displayed because of the incorrect URL
- Some functions may not be operated during data downloading.
- Operations available on the folder list of bookmark, bookmark list, URL history list or Last Visited URL and the input method of the URL are the same as for i-mode. ▶P149, P148, P145
- Some pages may be connected to the network automatically. A confirmation screen appears when starting the communication.
- Full Browser can display SSL/TLS pages. SSL/TLS is a safer data communication method that uses certification/encryption technology to protect privacy.
 - When the user certificate or original certificate registered in the FOMA terminal is needed for SSL/TLS communication, the selection screen for certificate appears.
 - During SSL/TLS communication,  appears on the screen.
 - To display a certificate of SSL/TLS page:  8 3 while an SSL/TLS page is displayed
 - When you close an SSL/TLS page, a confirmation screen appears.

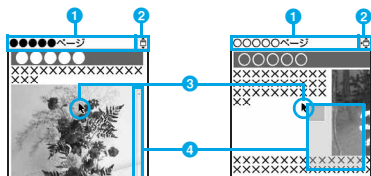
Displaying and operating in the Full Browser

The Full Browser screen

The Full Browser screen is available in the mobile mode and the PC mode. In the mobile mode, the layout of a page is adjusted to the width of the FOMA terminal screen and scroll up and down to view the page. In the PC mode, a web page is displayed without being adjusted to the screen size of the FOMA terminal and scroll both vertically and horizontally to view the page. The mobile mode is set by default.

Mobile mode

PC mode



1 Status/Page title or URL

- : Frame thumbnail P242
- : Enlarged frame P242
- (green): Downloading the data
- (gray): Downloading the data of other frame while displaying in enlarged frame
- : Downloading document file

2 Display mode icon

- : Mobile mode : PC mode

3 Pointer

You can use a pointer to operate like a PC when you display a pointer. P242

4 View position

When a page is displayed or the screen is scrolled, a bar that indicates the current position of the page appears for a second. (Except for thumbnail display)

Red : Displaying range (The color can be changed)

Gray : Range not displayed

- The frame size depends on the display mode or a page.

● Multi-window display P242

■ Switching between the mobile mode and the PC mode: [4]

- The setting is retained even after Full Browser ends.

■ Scrolling: in the mobile mode and in the PC mode

- The page scrolls when the pointer touches the end of the page while the pointer is displayed.

■ Scrolling by a page:

- Mobile mode:
 - [1], [2], [3] or to scroll up
 - [7], [8], [9] or to scroll down
 - and cannot be used while the pointer displayed.
- PC mode: [1] - [4] or [6] - [9] (Scroll to the direction of the key)

■ Displaying the previous or next page: or

- If the pointer is not displayed in the mobile mode, operate by or .

■ Switching between displaying/not displaying the guide row:

- Operation is available only when *Full screen view* is set for Screen View Setting.

■ Reloading the data: [4]

■ Showing the URL of a page: [8] [1]

- You can copy the URL. Follow the procedure in "Copying the URL". P156

■ Showing the URL of a linked page:

Highlight a link [8] [2]

- To copy the displayed URL: Follow the procedure from Step 2 in "Copying the URL". P156

■ Switching the character encode:

[8] [5] [1]

- Each time you press the key, the character encode switches in the following order: SJIS → EUC → JIS → UTF8
- To set auto switch: [8] [5] [2]
- Characters may not be displayed correctly even if you change character encodes.

■ Playing animation from the beginning:

[8] [6]

■ Displaying the view position manually:

[8] [8]

- To set the color: [8] [9] [1] - [3]
- To set not to display: [8] [9] [4]

■ Sending the URL via mail: [6]

The mail composition screen appears with the URL of the current page entered in the message text.

■ Viewing another page:

• To display the home page: [1]

• To select the URL from Bookmark:

[2] [2] Highlight a folder Highlight a bookmark

• To enter the URL of a page to view:

[3] [1] Enter the URL (up to 512 one-byte characters) [1]

• To view web pages using Entry URL log:

[3] [2] Highlight a URL

- To reconnect to the page displayed in the last (Last Visited URL): [3] [3] Highlight a URL

■ Showing Help: [8]

INFORMATION

- In case of scrolling, hold down the corresponding key to scroll continuously.
- While the pointer is not displayed, procedures to select links or use entry fields are the same as on the i-mode site screen. However, numbered items cannot be selected even by pressing corresponding keys.

Switching between displaying/not displaying the pointer

1 # on the Full Browser screen

- The setting is kept even after Full Browser ends.
- The pointer does not appear on the search screen or image selecting screen.

Selecting the item by using the pointer

1 to place the pointer on the item

- Holding  down moves the pointer continuously.
- The page scrolls when the pointer touches the end of the page while an undisplayed range exists.
- When the pointer is placed on the item which can be selected, **Select** appears in the middle of the guide row.
- You cannot select a guide row or submenu.

INFORMATION

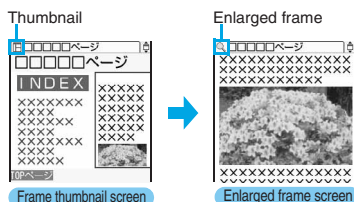
- The pointer's move may be limited depending on the frame.

Displaying a page divided into frames

The frame thumbnail screen is displayed at first. Selecting a frame displays the enlarged frame screen and allows operations such as scrolling or selecting items.

- A page divided into many frames may not be displayed. In the multi-window mode, the number of frames that can be displayed is fewer than the standard mode.

1 Highlight a frame on the frame thumbnail screen



- While displaying the pointer, move the pointer to the frame by  and press .
- When the pointer is not displayed, press  to move the focus and press . In the PC mode, pressing  can also move the focus.
- To return to the frame thumbnail screen:

- The screen automatically returns to the frame thumbnail screen in some cases such as selecting a link.

INFORMATION

- All the page content may not be displayed depending on the frame composition.
- On the frame thumbnail screen, the following operations are unavailable:
 - Scrolling
 - Showing link destination
 - Saving image or document files
 - Searching
 - View position indication/setting
- The frame which needs certificate is shown in yellow, and the frame in which a trouble is detected by Virus Scan Function is shown in red.

Viewing multiple windows

You can open multiple windows concurrently and view the pages by switching windows.

- Up to 5 windows can be displayed. However, depending on the number of frames or the page content, you may not open 5 windows at a time.
- Multiple pages cannot be displayed on the same screen concurrently.

1 Highlight a link on the Full Browser screen

The page appears on a new window. The previous page remains in the rear window.



- To display the home page: **[MENU] [3] [1]**
- To display web pages using Bookmark, the URL entry field, URL History or Last Visited URL: **[MENU] [3] [2] - [4] or [6]**
- In the multi-window mode, a confirmation screen for the operation on the rear window may appear. The rear window's tab blinks while the rear window's confirmation screen is displayed.
- Some operations may not be made while downloading the data in current window or rear window.
- Pressing **[STOP]** while downloading the data may stop downloading of current window. Also, pressing **[MENU] [8]** may stop downloading the data of all the windows.

■ **Switching windows:** **[MENU] [1]** ▶

Highlight a window ▶ **[OK]**

■ **Closing a window: Show the window to close** ▶ **[STOP]** ▶ **Yes**

INFORMATION

- Some links will open a new window automatically.
- In the multi-window mode, switching the display mode of a window changes the display mode of all the open windows as well.

Displaying horizontally

While in horizontal display, keys for scrolling by page or forward/back will change.

1 **[MENU] [6]** on the Full Browser screen

The display is switched horizontally and vertically.

- The guide row is not displayed in horizontal display.

■ Scrolling by a page:

- Mobile mode:

[3], **[6]**, **[9]** or **[OK]** to scroll up
[1], **[4]**, **[7]** or **[STOP]** to scroll down
[OK] and **[STOP]** cannot be used while the pointer displayed.

- PC mode: **[1] - [4]** or **[6] - [9]**

■ Displaying the previous or next page:

[OK] or **[STOP]**

- When the pointer is not displayed in mobile mode, operate by **[Left Arrow]** or **[Right Arrow]**.

Switching from i-mode to Full Browser

While viewing Internet websites via i-mode, you can switch to Full Browser to view them.

- Some web pages, however, may not be downloaded or displayed properly.
- You cannot switch Full Browser to i-mode.

1 Connect Internet web pages via i-mode

2 **[MENU] [3] [3]** ▶ **Yes**

- If you save the settings or press **[STOP]** with Access Setting set to **No**, the i-mode screen does not reappear.

Various operations on the Full Browser screen

- When the memory is not enough or the number of saved items exceeds the maximum, you can delete data following the screen instruction.

Registering in Bookmark

- Maximum number of URLs that can be registered: P416
- You cannot register URLs longer than 512 one-byte characters in Bookmark.
- Some pages may not be registered in Bookmark.

1 **[MENU] [2] [1]** on the Full Browser screen

Highlight the folder to save the URL ▶ **[OK]**

- For the subsequent steps, follow Step 2 in "Registering in Bookmark" of i-mode.
 P149

Saving images

The images in GIF or JPEG format can be registered in the FOMA terminal or microSD memory card. Also, images in PNG or BMP format can be registered in the microSD memory card.

- Maximum number of images that can be registered: P416
- The images in PNG or BMP format are saved in the **Other** folder of the microSD memory card, and cannot be displayed on the FOMA terminal. You can send these images by attaching to i-mode Mail, or use them by PC, reading from the microSD memory card.
- Images with horizontal and vertical (or vertical and horizontal) sizes exceeding 640 x 480 in GIF format or 1728 x 2304 in JPEG format cannot be saved. Also, some JPEG images may not be saved.
- Image files larger than 500 Kbytes cannot be saved.
- Even if an image file is of valid format and size, it may not be saved depending on pages.
- Background images cannot be saved. Any other data than images cannot be downloaded.

1 5 on the Full Browser screen ▶ Highlight an image

- When the images in GIF or JPEG is selected, the saving screen for image appears.

Follow the procedure from Step 3 in "Downloading images". P152

Downloading files

PDF data can be downloaded.

- The maximum size of file that can be received is 500 Kbytes.
- Maximum number of files that can be saved: P416

1 Highlight the item for obtaining files on the Full Browser screen

- To cancel downloading:  ▶ Yes

2 Save

- To display: **Preview**
- To cancel the operation: **Back** ▶ No

3 Enter the display name (up to 36 characters regardless of one- or two-byte)

PDF data is saved in the **i-mode** folder of **My Document** in Data Box. P290

- When  is displayed in the guide row, press  and then  to save in the microSD memory card.

Searching for a character string in the page

- Some pages may not be searched.

1 on the Full Browser screen

The screen switches to the search screen and the character string entry field appears at the bottom of the screen.

2 Enter a character string (up to 40 one-byte or 20 two-byte characters)

Searching is executed and the words matched the entered character string is highlighted.

- To search the next matched word: 
- To search the previous matched word: 
- To end searching: 

■ Setting the detailed criteria: on the search screen ▶ Set each item

- To search for a completely matched one-byte character string, set the search method to **Exact match**.
- To search while distinguishing between upper and lower cases, set **Yes** for **Case-sensitive**.
- The setting is kept even after Full Browser ends.

INFORMATION

- The search results sometimes overlap the character string entry field. To check the overlapping content, press .

Uploading images

You can upload images of the FOMA terminal to the website supporting image uploading.

- Images in GIF and JPEG format can be uploaded. The image file size must be up to 80 Kbytes. If uploading the files containing multiple images or character strings, the total size must be up to 100 Kbytes.
- You cannot upload images not permitted to attach to mail or to output from the FOMA terminal (excluding images with file restriction set at your terminal). Any other data than images and character strings cannot be uploaded.
- The uploading method varies depending on web pages.

1 Browse on the page for uploading the image ▶ Highlight a folder ▶ ▶ Highlight an image ▶

- If the microSD memory card is inserted, select **Browse** and then select **Phone memory** or **microSD**.
- The **Browse** appears when images can be uploaded from the FOMA terminal. If you view the same page by PC, you will see a different button in place of **Browse**.

■ **Changing a selected file:** **Browse** ▶ **Change**

■ **Canceling a selected file:** **Browse** ▶ **Cancel**

Setting Full Browser

Browser Setting

- The following i-mode settings are also valid for Full Browser:
 - Connection Timeout Setting
 - Host Selection
 - Manage Certificate
 - Display Light Setting
 - Skip Password

Setting a home page

Home URL

1 ▶ Enter a URL (up to 512 one-byte characters) ▶

INFORMATION

- You can also set a home page by pressing  while a web page to be set as a home page is displayed and selecting **Set as home URL** and **Yes**. However, you cannot set the URL longer than 512 one-byte characters.

Setting cookies

Cookie Setting/Deleting

Cookie is the mechanism for temporarily saving the data about a user (the user name, etc.) in the FOMA terminal when the user accesses Internet websites and sending the saved data to the same website when the user accesses again. Cookie is used, for example, to display automatically the user-specific page.

- Please note that NTT DoCoMo is not responsible for any reveal of your information to third parties because of enabling cookies.
- If cookies are disabled, some web pages will not be displayed properly or cannot be used.

1

2 Set each item ▶

Cookie:

Valid: Cookies are always enabled.

Valid(notify): A confirmation screen appears before transmission.

Invalid: Cookies are always disabled.

Notify:

Select when to display the confirmation screen from among **Sending**, **Receiving**, and **Sending/receiving**, while **Valid(notify)** is set.

■ **Deleting all cookies:**  ▶ Enter the terminal security code ▶ **Yes**

INFORMATION

- When you change the UIM with another, **Cookie** is set to **Invalid**.
- When you change **Cookie** from **Invalid** to **Valid** or **Valid(notify)**, the terminal security code may be required. A confirmation screen may appear asking whether to delete saved cookies.
- You cannot display saved cookies or delete each of them.

Setting script

Script Setting

Make the setting of JavaScript of the Internet web pages.

- JavaScript is a program running on the Internet web pages.
- If you set *Script Setting* to *Invalid*, some web pages may not be displayed correctly.

1 9 4 3 ▶ Set each item ▶

Script Setting:

Set whether to enable JavaScript.

Window Open Guard:

Specify the operation when JavaScript demands to open a new window.

Invalid: A confirmation screen appears asking whether to open a new window. Selecting *Yes* on that screen opens a new window.

Valid: A new window does not open.

INFORMATION

- To set Window Open Guard on the Full Browser screen:  ▶ *Display* ▶ *Window open guard* ▶ *Yes*
- With *Window Open Guard* set to *Valid*, when JavaScript requests to open a new window on the Full Browser screen and Window Open Guard function works,  appears in the position of the display mode icon.

Setting the display mode

Display Mode Setting

Select a display mode (the mobile mode or PC mode) in which Full Browser opens.

1 9 4 4 ▶ 1 or 2

Setting the display of images

Image Display

1 9 4 5 ▶ Set each item ▶

Image:

Specify whether to display images or animation.

Not display: *Animation* cannot be set.

Animation:

Specify whether to play animation.

Not display: The first frame of animation appears.

INFORMATION

- The setting on the Full Browser screen:  ▶ *Display* ▶ *Image settings*

Setting whether to use Full Browser

Access Setting

1 9 4 6 ▶ Activate Full Browser? field ▶ 1 or 2

- If you set to *Yes*, please confirm the notes.

2 Set

INFORMATION

- When you change the UIM with another, Access Setting is set to *No*.

Setting Referer

Referer Setting

You can set whether to send "Referer" (the link source information to show the page from which you accessed the linked page) when you select a link to view the link destination page.

- Select *Send*, *Notify* or *Unsend*. Selecting *Notify* displays a confirmation screen before sending Referer.
- Please note that NTT DoCoMo is not responsible for any reveal of your information to third parties because of sending Referer.

1 9 4 7 ▶ 1 - 3

Hiding the guide row

Screen View Setting

Hide the guide row from the Full Browser screen and show the page content on the full screen.

- On the full screen, you can perform operations in the same manner as the standard screen.

1 9 4 8 ▶ 1 or 2

Data Display/Edit/Management

Making full use of images

Displaying images	My Picture 248
Editing still images	250
Saving images in the Data Center	Data Security Service 253

Making full use of movie/i-motion

Playing movie/i-motion	i-motion 254
Editing movie/i-motion	257
Managing/using the playlist	259

Making full use of Chara-den

Chara-den	261
Displaying Chara-den	Chara-den 261
Recording Chara-den	Record Chara-den 262

Making full use of Machi-chara

Displaying Machi-chara	Machi-chara 264

Making full use of melodies

Playing melodies	Melody 264

Making full use of the microSD memory card

microSD memory card	265
Copying/moving data from the FOMA terminal to the microSD memory card	269
Copying/moving data from the microSD memory card to the FOMA terminal	270
Backing up the phonebook, mails, schedules, etc.	271
Restoring the backup data to the FOMA terminal	271
Displaying or playing data in the microSD memory card	272
Deleting data in the microSD memory card	274
Managing the microSD memory card	274
Using the microSD memory card from PC	275

Managing various data

Using the album (folder)	278
Copying data	279
Viewing/editing detail information of the data	View/Edit Detail Info 279
Deleting data	281
Sorting data	Sort 282
Checking the memory status of the FOMA terminal	Memory Status 282

Making full use of the infrared communication

Infrared communication	283
Sending data by infrared communication	Send Ir Data 283
Receiving data by infrared communication	Receive Ir Data 285
Activating infrared communication mode	Infrared Communication Mode 286
Using the infrared remote control function	287
Setting operations for data transfer	Data Exchange Setting 287

Making full use of the iC communication function

iC communication function	iC Communication 288
Using iC communication to send data	288
Using iC communication to receive data	289

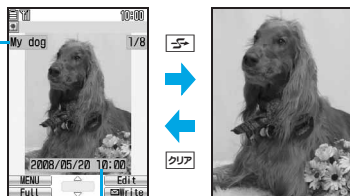
Making full use of PDF viewer

Displaying the PDF data	PDF Viewer 289
Using bookmarks or marks	292

- GIF images and animations larger than 480 x 640 or 640 x 480 and JPEG images larger than 1728 x 2304 cannot be displayed.

- To switch to the folder list display of the microSD memory card: on the folder list **1** - **3**
- For details about the microSD memory card P272

The image is displayed. Pressing allows you to view the image on the full screen.



Display name	Comment
...	...

- Press  to display the previous or next image.
- When an animation, created animation or Flash movie is displayed, it will be played automatically. The following operations are available (except for the full-screen display).
 - Pause/replay: 
 - Retry (replay from the beginning):
 
 - Slow-down playback:  (only while created animation is paused)

 to scroll

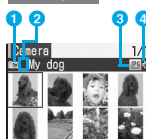
- It is available for only the still image larger than 240 x 320.
- To end actual size display: クリア

Folder	Saved data
Camera	Still images shot by the camera or still images captured from movie/i-motion or PDF data
i-mode	Images obtained by i-mode, Full Browser, i-mode Mail and i-appli or saved by Music Player
Deco-mail picture	Preinstalled images for Deco-mail and images downloaded from sites or received via i-mode mails
Deco-mail pict	Deco-mail pictograms preinstalled, downloaded from sites or received via i-mode mails
Item	Frame images preinstalled by default and frame images/stamp images downloaded from sites
Preinstalled	Images preinstalled by default
Data transfer	Images read by Bar Code Reader, images moved/copied from the microSD memory card and images received from external devices

- You can create albums. ➡ P278

Image list screen and available operations

Example Thumbnail display



1 **Originated**

-  : Camera  : i-mode
 : Preinstalled  : Item
 : Data transfer  : Chara-den

2 Type of image

No icon: Still image

-  : Created animation
 : Animation/Flash movie

3 File format

- GIF** : GIF format **JPG** : JPEG format
 : SWF (Flash movie)

No icon: Created animation

4 File restriction

- ➔ (blue): Without file restriction
➔ (gray): With file restriction

- In the thumbnail display, the following images may appear.
 -  : Without a preview image
 -  : With UIM operation restriction (other than Deco-mail pictograms)
 -  : With UIM operation restriction (Deco-mail pictograms)
- To change display names and other items
 - ▶P280

■ Switching between the thumbnail and title displays:

■ Sending mail with images attached: Highlight an image ▶

The mail composition screen appears with the selected image attached.

- When the file size of image is equal to or under 90 Kbytes, a confirmation screen appears. Select *Yes* to paste it in the text field and select *No* to attach it to mail.
- For JPEG images whose image size exceeds Standby (240 x 320 or 320 x 240), a confirmation screen appears allowing you to change the size to Standby.
- For details about images that can be attached ▶P175

Viewing a slide show

The images in the folder are displayed one by one automatically.

- The speed of switching images or the order of images depend on Settings.

- 1  1 ▶ Highlight a folder ▶  5
 - The folder list returns after displaying all the images in the folder.
 - Created animation is not displayed.
 - Sound effects of an image are not played.
 - To quit halfway: 

Setting images to the standby display, etc.

- Some images cannot be set to the standby display.
- Images larger than 176 x 144 and images prohibited from being sent out of the FOMA terminal cannot be used for the following videophone images: substitute image, Answer Machine image, response hold image, on-hold image and movie memo.

- The same image as set for outgoing messages, incoming messages or the reception result screen is also displayed when Message R/F is received or SMS is sent or received.
- Created animation, Flash movies and item images cannot be set as menu icons.

- 1  1 ▶ Highlight a folder ▶  2 ▶ Highlight an image ▶  2 ▶ Specify a destination

- A confirmation screen appears depending on the destination.
- When you set the image to the standby display, you can select the actual size or enlarged size depending on the image size.
- If you update a registered phonebook entry, select the party.

Creating animation

You can create animation by selecting and saving still images (up to 9) in the same folder.

- Still images larger than 640 x 480 cannot be used to create an animation.
- Still images saved as a created animation cannot be displayed or edited separately. Also, they cannot be saved in the microSD memory card or sent via mail attachment or infrared/iC communication.

- 1  1 ▶ Highlight a folder ▶ 
- 2  4 1
 - Canceling the setting: Highlight a created animation ▶  4 2

- 3 Highlight images ▶ 

Sequence numbers are assigned to the images in the order of selection.

 - To cancel all the selections: 

- 4  ▶ Enter a display name (up to 36 one-byte or two-byte characters) ▶ 

INFORMATION

- Still images taken by continuous shooting are saved as a created animation. When you cancel the animation, each image is saved as a separate file. A number such as "-1" and "-2" is appended to the end of each file name.

Setting preferences for displaying images

Settings



Display icons:

Yes: The thumbnail display (default)

No: The title display

Display title:

Set whether to show a display name on the image display screen (the default is **Yes**).

Display number:

Set whether to display the number of images on the image display screen (the default is **Yes**).

Display comments:

Set whether to display comments on the image display screen (the default is **Yes**).

Scale up image:

Set whether to scale up an image smaller than the display area without changing aspect ratio when displaying it (the default is **No**).

- Even when set to **Yes**, the image is not scaled up in case of the full-screen display.

Sound effect:

Set whether to play sound effects set for images when an image is displayed (the default is **Yes**).

Auto scroll mode:

Set whether to enable automatic scrolling of JPEG still images larger than the screen. If you select **Yes**, pressing  while such an image is on the screen scrolls it automatically (the default is **No**).

- When the aspect ratio of the image is the same as that of the screen, no scrolling takes place.
- To stop or restart scrolling, press . Pressing  will not restart scrolling when the scrolling has finished.

Slide show speed:

Select among **Fast**, **Normal** or **Slow** (the default is **Normal**).

Slide show random:

Set whether to display images randomly (the default is **No**).

Editing still images

You can edit still images saved in **My Picture** of the FOMA terminal. The items you can edit and the maximum editable image size are as follows:

Item	Maximum editable image size (dots)*1
Change size	1728 x 2304 (352 x 288 for enlarging/reducing)
Clip	1728 x 2304 (1224 x 1632 for a clipping range)
Brightness/Tone	480 x 640
Effects	480 x 640
Reverse/Rotate	480 x 640
Frames	352 x 288
Paste stamp	352 x 288
Paste text	352 x 288
Cut	240 x 320
Size limitation	1728 x 2304 (480 x 640 for still images of up to 2 Mbytes)
Adjust	352 x 288

*1 When the image cannot be edited because its size is too large, it can be reduced to the editable size using **Change size**.

- The following still images cannot be edited:
 - Item images and still images in the **Preinstalled** folder
 - Still images not permitted to attach to mail or to output from the FOMA terminal (excluding still images for which you set **File restricted**)
 - Still images with either the vertical or horizontal size is under 8 dots



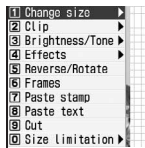
The still image edit screen appears.

- To adjust the image P253

2 Edit the still image



Still image edit screen



Edit menu screen

- For details about editing, see "Using the edit menu". P251

3 after editing ▶ Save

The edited still image is saved as a new still image in the same folder.

- Select *As frame/stamp* to save as an image for frame or stamp. For details about images that can be used as frame/stamp P281
- Images that can be used as Deco-mail pictograms are saved in the *Deco-mail pict* folder.
- To send images via mail:  on the still image edit screen
 - A still image exceeding the size of 1200 x 1600 cannot be attached.

INFORMATION

- Editing of *Brightness/Tone* or *Effects* may display the image smaller. Save as it is because the actual image size is not changed. The image is saved with a proper size.
- After editing, the still image file size may become larger.

Using the edit menu

Changing the size

- Changing the size may deteriorate the image quality.

1 on the edit menu screen ▶ Change the image size

■ Changing the size:  - 

If the aspect ratio of the specified size differs from that of the still image, a size frame appears. Press  or  to adjust the position of the size frame, and press  to change the area enclosed by the frame to the specified size.

- To put the entire still image in the specified size by ignoring the aspect ratio (*Stretch*): 
- To put the entire still image in the specified size by maintaining the aspect ratio (*Fit*): 

■ Enlarging/reducing an image:

①  ▶  to enlarge/reduce

You can enlarge/reduce by 5 % with horizontal and vertical ratio held.

- Press  to zoom out by 20 % or press  to zoom in by 20 %.
- The vertically long still image can be enlarged up to 288 x 352 and the horizontally long still image can be enlarged up to 352 x 288 (up to the limit of either size).
- Images can be reduced down to a size having 8 horizontal or vertical dots.

② 

Clipping images to desired sizes

You can clip a part of a still image by specifying the size or range.

- When the original still image is less than 16 x 16, clipping is unavailable.

1 on the edit menu screen ▶ Clip the still image

■ Clipping the image to the specified size:

①  - 

②  to adjust the clipping position

- To switch between the vertical/horizontal orientation of the clipping frame: 
- To change the clipping size: 
- To specify the clipping range: 

③ 

■ Specifying a range for clipping:

①  ▶  to adjust the position of



The position of upper left corner of the range frame is determined and  appears at the lower right corner of the frame.

②  to adjust the position of 



The clipping range is determined and the range frame is displayed in solid line.

- Press  instead of  to change the position of the upper left corner again.
- Use  after pressing  to move the range frame.

③ 

Changing brightness and tone

1 3 on the edit menu screen ▶ Change the brightness and tone

■ Adjusting the brightness:

①  ▶  to adjust the brightness

- To maximize: 
- To minimize: 

② 

■ Changing the tone (monotone or sepia): or

Applying special effects

1 4 on the edit menu screen ▶ 1 - 6

Soften: Softens the image.

Spherical: Swells the still image spherically from the center.

Emboss: Changes the color to leaden and emphasizes concavity and convexity.

Spiral: Makes the still image look as if it is spiraling out from the center.

Shiny: Attaches glistening marks.

Mosaic: Attaches a mosaic.

Reversing/rotating

1 5 on the edit menu screen ▶ Reverse/rotate the still image

- To reverse up and down: 
- To reverse left and right: 
- To rotate 90 degrees to the left: 
- To rotate 90 degrees to the right: 

2 

Overlaying a frame

1 6 on the edit menu screen

Frames of the same size as the still image being edited are displayed.

- The frames preinstalled by default are applicable to image sizes of 176 x 144 and 240 x 320.

- Images set as frame options in Edit Detail Info are displayed even if their size differs from that of the still image edited.

2 Highlight a frame ▶ ▶ Check the still image

- To switch frames: 
- To rotate a frame 180 degrees: 

3 

Pasting stamps

1 7 on the edit menu screen

The stamps smaller than the still image being edited are displayed.

- Images set as stamp options in Edit Detail Info and stamps preset by default are displayed even if their size is larger than that of still image edited.

2 Highlight a stamp ▶

3 to move the stamp ▶

- You can also paste it to any additional places.
- Delete all the pasted stamps: 

4 

Pasting characters Paste Text

1 8 on the edit menu screen ▶ Set each item ▶

Text:

Enter up to 40 one-byte or 20 two-byte characters.

Font type:

Set the type of the font.

Font size:

Set the size of the font.

Font color:

Set the color of the font.

Font border color:

Set the bordering color of the font.

Background color:

Set the background color of the text.

Paste method:

Set whether to paste all characters as a single text in a place or paste each character separately in different places.

2 to move the text

- You can also paste it to any additional places.
- When *By character* is set for *Paste method*, each pressing of  pastes each character. When the last character is pasted, the first character appears again.
- To delete all the pasted text: 

3

Cutting out a part of an image

You can select a color and cut the part of the color out of the image.

1 on the edit menu screen to place to the color to cut out

- You can also cut out any additional parts.

2

Limiting file size for saving

You can limit the file size to save to below 90 Kbytes for *Msg attach:Small* and a size below 2 Mbytes for *Msg attach:Large*.

1 on the edit menu screen or

The image is saved as a new image in the same folder.

- For still images larger than 480 x 640, you cannot select *Msg attach:Small*.
- For still images of 2 Mbytes or less, you cannot select *Msg attach: Large*.

Adjusting brightness and tone balance

- Adjusting may not have much effect depending on the still image.

1 on the still image edit screen

2 to switch the adjustment mode

Close-up: Makes appropriate adjustment for images such as still objects and plants.

Near view: Makes appropriate adjustment for the background.

Distant view: Gives vivid brightness and contrast to a landscape image.

Beautiful skin: Gives an effect to make the skin look white and smooth on a portrait image.

Tanned: Gives an effect to make the skin look tanned on a portrait image.

Pale: Gives an effect to make the skin look pale on a portrait image.

Drunk: Gives an effect to make the skin look ruddy on a portrait image.

- The adjustment mode can also be selected by pressing  and  - .

3 to adjust the level

- To maximize:  • To minimize: 
- The brightness and color tone vary depending on the level.

4

- For subsequent operations, follow Step 3 in "Editing still images". •P251

Saving images in the Data Center

Data Security Service

You can save images in the Data Center using Data Security Service.

- This is a pay service and requires a subscription. For more information about the service, see "Mobile Phone User's Guide [i-mode] FOMA version".

Saving images

- The image that exceeds 100 Kbytes cannot be saved.
- Images not permitted to attach to mail or to output from the FOMA terminal cannot be saved (excluding images for which you set *File restricted*).
- Item images or images in the *Preinstalled* folder cannot be saved.
- You can check the log of communications with the Data Center. P81

1 [1] ▶ Highlight a folder ▶

2 [5] [6] ▶ Highlight an image ▶

- Up to 10 images can be selected.

3 Yes ▶ Enter the terminal security code

- Images are saved to the Data Center and the result is displayed.
- The result disappears in about 5 seconds.

INFORMATION

- In case you have not subscribed to Data Security Service, a screen for indicating that appears.

Restoring images

You can restore images saved in the Data Center from the sites of the Data Center to the FOMA terminal. For more information, see "Mobile Phone User's Guide [i-mode] FOMA version".

Playing movie/i-motion

i-motion

You can play movie/i-motion saved in *i-motion* of Data Box in the FOMA terminal.

1 [3] ▶ Highlight a folder ▶

- To switch to the folder list of the microSD memory card: on the folder list ▶ [4] - [6]
- To handle the microSD memory card P272

2 Highlight a movie/i-motion file ▶



1 **Play volume:** The current volume

2 **Playing duration:**

Indicates the current playing time/full duration.

3 **Playing status**

: In play : In stop
 : In pause

4 **Data type**

: Image : Sound
 : Text

5 **Enlargement/reduction**

: Enlarged : Reduced
 No icon: Actual size

- In case *Size adjustment* is *Normal* in Settings, a message appears when you try to play a movie in a reduced size.
- The following operations are available while playing movie/i-motion:
 - : Pause/replay, play from the beginning (after stopping)
 - : Adjust volume : Stop
 - : Play at fast speed*1
 - : Rewind and play*1
 - : Stop playing (Return to the movie/i-motion list)

*1 These functions are unavailable for some i-motion files.

- You cannot play partially saved i-motion files. When you select such a file, a confirmation screen appears. If you select *Yes*, downloading starts.
 - If the playable period has expired or the replay expiration date has passed, the remaining data cannot be downloaded. A confirmation screen appears. Select *Yes* to delete it.
 - If an error that will disable re-downloading is detected, the partially saved i-motion file may be deleted.

- The stopped position is saved to have the movie/i-motion file start at that position next time. Stopped positions of the last 5 files are recorded for each of the FOMA terminal and the microSD memory card. The stopped position is not recorded if the power is turned off during playing.

■ Playing horizontally (the landscape play):

✳ while playing movie/i-motion

- Each time you press, playing horizontally and vertically are switched.
- For movie/i-motion with the ticker, switching is unavailable.

■ Using chapters:

The following operations are available for chaptered i-motion.

Function	Operation
Chapter rewinding	[4] during playing
Chapter forwarding	[6] during playing
Chapter selection	[MENU] [3] during playing ▶ Highlight a chapter ▶ *1

*1 To check the play start position, highlight a chapter and press [MENU].

- Depending on the chaptered i-motion file, only either chapter rewinding or chapter forwarding is available or chapters before or after the current playing position cannot be selected.
- You cannot select chapters near the current playing position from the chapter list. Also, the chapter list cannot be shown for the first 1 second from the beginning of an i-motion file.

■ Setting a bookmark:

If you set a bookmark in a movie/i-motion file, a confirmation screen appears asking whether to play from the bookmark when you select that movie/i-motion file to play from the list next time.

- The number of bookmarks you can set is one for all the movie/i-motion files in the FOMA terminal, and one for each of the *Movie*, *Movie* and *Other movie* folders of the microSD memory card.
- You cannot set a bookmark in i-motion for which replay restriction is set.

① During playback, at the position to set a bookmark ▶ Yes

- To continue playing:

- To cancel the bookmark: after stopping the playback

■ When the replay restriction (times/date/period) is set:

A confirmation screen appears before playback starts, allowing you to check the restrictions.

- Playback is unavailable before the playable period. When the number of playable times, the expiration date or the playable period is exceeded, playback is disabled and a confirmation screen appears. Select *Yes* to delete the i-motion file.
- You can check the remaining playback count, replay expiration date and playable period with Detail Info.
- If you change the date/time of the FOMA terminal when the replay expiration date or playable period has passed, playback is still disabled.

Folders of i-motion

Folder	Saved data
<i>Playlist</i>	Playlist created on the FOMA terminal
<i>Camera</i>	Movies recorded with the camera, sounds recorded with Sound Recorder and movie memos
<i>i-mode</i>	i-motion acquired in i-mode or via i-mode mail, or i-motion compatible with Movable Contents that is moved from microSD memory cards
<i>Preinstalled</i>	i-motion files preinstalled by default
<i>Data transfer</i>	Movie/i-motion files moved/copied from the microSD memory card or received from external devices (excluding i-motion files compatible with Movable Contents)

- You can create albums.

Movie/i-motion list screen and available operations

Example Thumbnail display



1 Originated

- : Camera
- : Preinstalled
- : Chara-den
- : i-motion
- : Data transfer
- : Videophone

2 Replay restriction

- : No restriction
- : Restriction on the number of times
- : Restriction on expiration
- : Restriction on period

3 File types

- : MP4
- : MP4 with bookmark
- : ASF
- : ASF with bookmark
- : i-motion file saved partially

4 File restriction

- (blue): Without file restriction
- (gray): With file restriction

- In the thumbnail display, the following images may appear.

- : Sound-only movie/i-motion files (i-motion without image such as music), partially saved i-motion files, i-motion files which cannot be played because of replay restriction and sounds recorded with Sound Recorder
- : Movie/i-motion of which thumbnail image cannot be obtained
- : UIM operation restricted

- To change display names and other items
- ➡ P280

Switching between the thumbnail and title displays:

Sending mail with a movie/i-motion attached: Highlight a movie/i-motion file



The mail composition screen appears with the movie/i-motion attached.

- Movie/i-motion that can be attached ➡ P175

INFORMATION

- You can play movie/i-motion files of the following format. The playable image size is 48 x 48 to 320 x 240.

File format (extension)	Encoding method	
MP4 (MP4, 3GP)	Image	MPEG4, H.263, H.264
	Sound	AMR, AAC, HE-AAC, Enhanced aacPlus
ASF (ASF)	Image	MPEG4
	Sound	G.726

- Depending on the i-motion, the total playing time is indicated as “-:-:-” on the playback screen. In this case the following functions are unavailable:
 - Playing fast forward/Rewind and play
 - Playing from a bookmark or playing from an interrupted position
 - Operations using chapters
- Movie memo cannot be played from a bookmark or a playing interrupted position.

Setting movie/i-motion to the standby display, etc.

- You cannot set ASF-format movie/i-motion and partially saved i-motion.
- Movie/i-motion without an image, i-motion whose replay restriction is set and movie/i-motion whose image size is beyond 320 x 240 cannot be set as the standby display.
- Only the image-only movie/i-motion files can be set for the phonebook or incoming image.
- The movie/i-motion for which *Available* is set for *Ring alert* and *Receive display* in detail information can be set as Movie ringtone and incoming image. However, the setting is unavailable for the following movie/i-motion:
 - Movie/i-motion files sent back to your terminal after transferred to a PC or another FOMA terminal using infrared/iC communication or DoCoMo's data link software
 - Movie/i-motion files (except for i-motion compatible with Movable Contents) copied/moved to the FOMA terminal from the microSD memory card (including the case where files are copied/moved to your terminal again after saved in the microSD memory card from your FOMA terminal)

1 3 ▶ Highlight a folder ▶

Highlight a movie/i-motion file ▶

2 ▶ Specify a destination

- A confirmation screen appears depending on the destination.
- When you set the movie/i-motion file to the standby display, you can select the actual size or enlarged size depending on the image size.
- To set a melody as contact phone alert or contact mail alert or to update a registered phonebook entry, select a party from the phonebook.

INFORMATION

- On the movie/i-motion list screen of the playlist:  ▶ Use selected movie
- Some movie/i-motion files may not be set as the standby display and other items.

Setting preferences for playing movie/i-motion

Settings

1 3 ▶ 4 ▶ Set each item ▶



View thumbnails:

Yes: The thumbnail display (default)

No: The title display

Size adjustment:

Zoom: Movie/i-motion is played in an enlarged or reduced size.

Normal: Movie/i-motion with a size smaller than the display area is not enlarged. Movie/i-motion with a size larger than the display area is reduced and played (default).

Repeat play:

Set whether to repeat play when you play a playlist or continuously play movie/i-motion files saved in the microSD memory card (the default is *ON*).

Backlight:

Set the display light during playback (the default is *Always on*).

Phone setting: Depends on *Display light time (Normal use)* in Display Light Setting.

Volume:

Set the sound volume for playback (the default is *Level 13*).

INFORMATION

- The setting for *Backlight* also applies to *Display light time (i-motion)* in Display Light Setting.
- P95

Editing movie/i-motion

You can edit movie/i-motion saved in *i-motion*.

- The following movie/i-motion can be edited:
 - The movie shot with your terminal
 - The movie/i-motion without file restriction or replay restriction except the movie shot with your terminal
- You cannot edit preinstalled movie/i-motion files, partially saved i-motion files and ASF format movie files. Also, depending on the encoding method, some movie/i-motion files cannot be edited.

Clipping a still image

Capture

You can specify any position while playing movie/i-motion and capture it as a still image.

- Tickers are not included in the captured still image.

1 3 ▶ Highlight a folder ▶

Highlight a movie/i-motion file ▶

The movie/i-motion is played.

2 4 at a desired position to capture



The still image is captured and saved in the *Camera* folder of *My Picture*.

■ Sending mail with the image attached: on the screen before saving

The still image is saved and the mail composition screen appears with the still image attached.

- If the file size of still image is below 90 Kbytes, a confirmation screen appears. Select *Yes* to paste the image in the mail message and select *No* to attach it to mail.

Clipping a part of movie/i-motion Custom Edit

You can clip a part of movie/i-motion from the beginning to the desired position.

- A movie/i-motion file of 11 Kbytes to 2,048 Kbytes can be edited.

1 [3] ▶ Highlight a folder ▶ ▶ Highlight a movie/i-motion file ▶

 [4] [1]

The custom edit mode is activated and  is displayed.

- When tickers are inserted in movie/i-motion, a confirmation screen appears. Tickers may be deleted depending on the clipping position.

2 (start position) ▶ at the position to end the clipping (end position)



Current file size/Maximum file size

- Press  to retry the operation after pressing  (start position). Press  to cancel clipping.
- If you play the movie/i-motion file till its end without pressing  (end position), clipping terminates automatically.
- In case the size of a movie/i-motion file exceeds 2,038 Kbytes, clipping ends automatically when reaching 2,038 Kbytes regardless of the limit size.

■ Setting the limit of clipping size: on the screen before pressing (start position) ▶ *Msg attachment S*, *Msg attachment L* or *No settings*

- A size of 500 Kbytes and 2,038 Kbytes are set for *Msg attachment S* and for *Msg attachment L*, respectively.
- Depending on the size of the original file, this setting is unavailable or some items are unselectable.

3 Enter the display name (up to 36 one-byte or two-byte characters) ▶

The clipped movie/i-motion is saved as a new file in the same folder as the original file.

■ Playing movie/i-motion: on the screen before saving

■ Sending mail with the file attached:

on the screen before saving

The edited movie/i-motion is saved and the mail composition screen appears with the movie/i-motion attached.

Clipping by specifying the file size

Edit by Size

You can clip a part of a movie/i-motion file from the beginning up to the specified file size.

- A movie/i-motion file of 11 Kbytes to 2,048 Kbytes can be edited.
- The file size which you can specify is from 10 Kbytes to 2,038 Kbytes. However, the maximum size varies depending on the movie/i-motion.

1 [3] ▶ Highlight a folder ▶ ▶ Highlight a movie/i-motion file ▶

 [4] [2]

- When tickers are inserted in movie/i-motion, a confirmation screen appears. Tickers may be deleted depending on the clipping position.

2 Enter the size to clip

■ Setting the size for mail attachment:

▶ *Msg attachment S* or *Msg attachment L*

- A size of 500 Kbytes and 2,038 Kbytes are set for *Msg attachment S* and for *Msg attachment L*, respectively.
- Depending on the size of the original file, this setting is unavailable or some items are unselectable.

3 Enter the display name and save the data

- Follow Step 3 in "Clipping a part of movie/i-motion". ➡P258

Inserting tickers

Edit Ticker

- A movie/i-motion file of up to 2,038 Kbytes without tickers or up to 2,043 Kbytes with tickers can be edited.
- The number of tickers that can be inserted differs depending on movie/i-motion (up to 10).
- Movie/i-motion with inserted tickers cannot be set for Movie ringtone.

1 3 ▶ Highlight a folder ▶ ▶ Highlight a movie/i-motion file ▶ 4 3 1

- If tickers are already inserted, a confirmation screen appears. If **Yes** is selected, tickers are deleted.

■ **Deleting tickers:**  4 3 2 ▶ **Yes**
All tickers inserted are deleted. Go to Step 8.

2 Set each item

Time interval to show:

User specified: Specify a desired position to insert the ticker.

Regular interval: Tickers of the specified number are inserted at regular intervals within movie/i-motion replay duration.

Tickers:

Enter the number of tickers when *Time interval to show* is set to *Regular interval*.

3

- When *Time interval to show* is set to *User specified*, a confirmation message appears and  is displayed.
- If *Regular interval* is set for *Time interval to show*, go to Step 6.

4 to start the replay ▶ at the ticker insertion position

Each time you press , the inserting position of tickers is set.

- When replay is started, the first inserting position is set at the beginning.
- When replay ends or you have set a total of 10 tickers (including one ticker at the beginning), the setting ends automatically.
- To end halfway: 

5 Yes

6 Ticker entry field ▶ Enter characters (up to 40 one-byte or 20 two-byte characters)

■ **Modifying tickers: Highlight a ticker** ▶  ▶ **Set each item** ▶ 

Ticker1 to 10:

Characters entered on the ticker edit screen are displayed (you can enter characters).

Font color:

Set the color of the font.

- When you select **Default**, white is set.
- The font color has no effect on pictograms.

Background color:

Set the background color of tickers.

- When it you select **Default**, black is set.

Scroll:

Scroll in: Brings characters gradually into view.

Scroll out: Sends characters gradually out of view.

Scroll in & out: Brings characters into view and sends them out of view gradually.

Scroll direction:

Set the scrolling direction.

Word alignment:

Set the display position of characters.

Font size:

Set the size of font.

Under line:

Set whether to underline the characters.

Blink:

Set whether to blink the characters.

7

- If the size of a movie/i-motion file is 500 Kbytes or less before insertion of tickers and exceeds 500 Kbytes after insertion, a message appears indicating that the size of *Msg attachment S* is exceeded.

8 Enter the display name and save the data

- Follow Step 3 in "Clipping a part of movie/i-motion". ▶P258

Managing/using the playlist

In the playlist, you can register the order of playing movie/i-motion files. The playlist plays them one after another automatically.

- Up to 100 playlists can be created.
- In a single playlist, up to 100 movie/i-motion files can be registered.

- Only the movie/i-motion files saved in the FOMA terminal can be registered to a playlist.
- i-motion files saved partially or with the restriction on the number of playable times cannot be registered to a playlist. i-motion files with restrictions on expiration date or period can be registered if they are before the expiration.

Creating a playlist

Create a playlist and register movie/i-motion files.

- 1 [3] ▶ **Playlist** ▶ [1]
 - If there is no playlist, selecting **Playlist** makes a confirmation screen to appear. Select **Yes**.
- 2 **Enter a display name (up to 20 one-byte or 10 two-byte characters)** ▶
- 3 **Highlight a folder containing movie/i-motion files** ▶ ▶ **Highlight a movie/i-motion file** ▶ ▶ ▶ **Yes**

INFORMATION

- When the number of playlists exceeds the limit, follow the instructions on the screen and delete some.

Playing a playlist

- 1 [3] ▶ **Playlist** ▶ **Highlight a playlist** ▶
 - If the playlist contains no movie/i-motion files, a confirmation screen appears. Select **Yes**, select a folder, select a movie/i-motion file, press and select **Yes**.
- 2 **Highlight a movie/i-motion file to play** ▶
 - (ON) or (OFF) appears according to the **Repeat play** setting of Settings. When the setting is **ON**, the first music is played again after the last music of the playlist. In case of **OFF**, the movie/i-motion list returns after the last music of the playlist is played.

- During playback, the following operations are available:

- : Pause/play : Adjust volume
- : Return to the beginning of the movie/i-motion file or to the previous file
- : Move to the next movie/i-motion file
- : Stop
- : Stop playing (Return to the movie/i-motion list)

- The following operations are unavailable: the landscape play, playing from a bookmark position, chapter-related operations, and forwarding/rewinding. The Phone To, AV Phone To, Mail To and Web To functions are unavailable for tickers.

Editing a playlist

- 1 [3] ▶ **Playlist**
 - **Changing the playlist name:** Highlight a playlist ▶ [2] ▶ **Enter a display name (up to 20 one-byte or 10 two-byte characters)** ▶
- 2 **Highlight a playlist** ▶
- 3 **Edit a playlist**
 - **Registering a movie/i-motion file**
 - 1 [3] [1] [1] ▶ **Highlight a folder** ▶ ▶ **Highlight a movie/i-motion file** ▶
 - To register selected items: [3] [1] [2] ▶ **Highlight a folder** ▶ ▶ **Highlight movie/i-motion files** ▶ ▶
 - To add all items: [3] [1] [3] ▶ **Highlight a folder** ▶ ▶ **Highlight movie/i-motion files not to register** ▶ ▶
 - 2 **Yes**
 - **Unregistering a movie/i-motion file:**
 - The selected movie/i-motion file is removed from the playlist but the file itself remains saved.

1 Highlight a movie/i-motion file ▶

[3] [2] [1]

- To unregister selected items:

[3] [2] [2] ▶ **Highlight movie/i-motion files** ▶ ▶

- To unregister all items:
3 **2** **3** ▶ Enter the terminal security code

② **Yes**

■ Changing the order of movie/i-motion files in the list:

① **3** **3**

② **Highlight a movie/i-motion file to move** ▶ or to move it

③ after moving is completed

INFORMATION

- When the number of the registered movie/i-motion files exceeds the limit, follow the instructions on the screen and unregister movie/i-motion files.
- If you delete a movie/i-motion file or move it to the microSD memory card, it is removed from the playlist.

Deleting a playlist

1 **3** ▶ **Playlist**

2 **Highlight a playlist** ▶ **3** **1**

- To delete selected items: **3** **2** ▶ **Highlight playlists** ▶ ▶
- To delete all items: **3** **3** ▶ Enter the terminal security code

3 **Yes**

Chara-den

Chara-den is a character to display on the other party's screen when you use the videophone. By pressing dial keys during a videophone call, you can move the character and make it express your feeling casually. In addition, you can set Chara-den to the standby display and have Chara-den make specific actions during standby or for missed calls. The still image and movie of Chara-den being displayed can be shot and saved.

- Some Chara-den images move their mouths according to the sounds from the microphone.

- Chara-den characters perform two types of actions: action using the whole body (*Action*) and action using only parts of body (*Action of Parts*). Some Chara-den images perform only either of them or no action.

Displaying Chara-den

Chara-den

1 **6** ▶ **Highlight a folder** ▶

2 **Highlight a Chara-den image** ▶



Action mode

: Action

: Action of parts

- Pressing a dial key performs action in accordance with the key.
- To stop the action: **0**

■ Switching between the large size and same size displays:

- If a comment is added to a Chara-den image, switch the display to the same size to show the comment.

■ Switching Chara-den images:

① **9** **1** ▶ **Highlight a folder** ▶

② **Highlight a Chara-den image** ▶

■ Displaying the action list:

The action list for the current action mode is displayed with the action number that corresponds to dial keys and the description.

- Selecting an action activates the Chara-den image.
- Highlight an action and press to read the whole description.

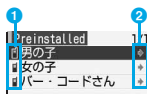
■ Switching between *Action* and *Action of Parts*: (for over a second)

Folders of Chara-den

Folder	Saved data
<i>i-mode</i>	Chara-den downloaded in i-mode
<i>Preinstalled</i>	Chara-den preinstalled by default

- You can create folders. ➡ P278

Chara-den list screen and available operations



1 Originated

- i-mode
- Preinstalled

2 File restriction

- (gray):
With file restriction
 - To change display names and other items
- ➡P280

■ Making a videophone call

① Highlight a Chara-den image ➡

② Enter the phone number ➡

- To enter a phone number from the phonebook:
- After entering the phone number, press to set the conditions and make a videophone call. ➡P50

■ Setting Chara-den to the videophone substitute image: Highlight a Chara-den image ➡

- On the Chara-den display screen: for over a second

■ Setting Chara-den to the standby display:

① Highlight a Chara-den image ➡ 4

② Set the type of action and the interval of the action ➡

- For details, see "Setting the action of Chara-den". ➡P91

③ Yes(Same size) or Yes(Large size)

- If the i-appli standby display has already been set, a confirmation screen appears.

INFORMATION

- Chara-den cannot be edited. Also Chara-den cannot be sent and saved outside the FOMA terminal by being attached to mail or via data transfer.

Setting the preferences for displaying Chara-den

Settings

1 6 ➡ 4 ➡ Set each item ➡

Display size:

Set whether to enlarge Chara-den or to display it in the same size (the default is *Large*).

Set lighting:

Set the display light while Chara-den is being displayed (the default is *Terminal settings*).

Terminal settings: The display light follows the setting of *Display light time (Normal use)* of Display Light Setting. ➡P95

Recording Chara-den

Record Chara-den

- Still images and movies you record are saved in the same file format as still images and movies shot with the camera. For details about image file saving format ➡P124

1 6 ➡ Highlight a folder ➡ ➡ Highlight a Chara-den image ➡

The Chara-den recording screen appears.

2 to switch the recording types



Recording type

Video & Voice:

Records Chara-den with sounds from the microphone.

Only video (w/mic):

Records only the image.

- Chara-den that reacts with the sounds moves its mouth according to the sounds from the microphone.

Only video (w/o mic):

Records only the image.

Still image:

Shoots still images.

■ Switching Chara-den images:

- 1 1 ➡ Highlight a folder ➡ ➡ Highlight a Chara-den image ➡

3 Start an action to shoot

In case of shooting still images, the shutter sound is heard and the still image is saved. In case of recording movies, the shutter sound is heard and the shooting is started. Recording is stopped by pressing  or if the size of movie file exceeds the limit. The recorded movie is saved after the shutter sound is heard.

- The still image or movie you shot or recorded is saved in the following folders.
 - The *Camera* folder of *My Picture* or *i-motion* when the FOMA terminal is selected as the memory to save
 - The *My Picture* folder or *Movie* when the microSD memory card is selected as the memory to save.
- Press  during recording movie to pause or restart recording.

■ When *Auto save* is set to *No* in **Still Image Setting** or **Movie Setting**:

A confirmation screen appears. The following operations are available on the confirmation screen:

- : Save the still image/movie
- : Cancel (Delete the still image/movie without saving)
- : Switch the memory to save
- : Compose mail
- : Replay (only for movie)

■ **Checking the saved still image/movie immediately:** **Highlight the still image/movie**

- When the microSD memory card is selected as the memory to save:  **Highlight the folder**  **Highlight the still image/movie** 

Setting the preference for still image/movie recording Still Image Setting/Movie Setting

1 4 **on the Chara-den recording screen** **Set each item**

Quality (Still Image Setting):

Set the quality of still images to shoot (the default is *Standard*). Higher quality requires a larger size of files.

Quality (Movie Setting):

Set the quality of movie to shoot (the default is *STD*). Higher quality requires a larger size of files.

Size restriction (Movie Setting only):

Set the size restrictions of the movie to shoot (the default is *Msg attach:Small*)

Shutter sound:

Select the shutter sound from 1 to 5 (the default is *Shutter sound 1*).

Rec. File Restriction:

Set whether to restrict the still image/movie you send to another mobile phone as mail attachment from being sent to others (the default is *File unrestricted*).

- Downloaded Chara-den may not be changed with *File restricted* indicated.

Auto save:

Yes: The shot still image or movie is automatically saved (default).

No: A confirmation screen appears after shooting.

Save to:

Select *Terminal* or *microSD* (the default is *Terminal*).

Display size:

Set whether to enlarge Chara-den or to display it in the same size when shooting (the default is *Large*).

Set lighting:

Set the display light while Chara-den is being shot (the default is *Terminal settings*).

Terminal settings: The display light follows the setting of *Display light time (Normal use)* of Display Light Setting. 

INFORMATION

- If a still image/movie is taken from the Chara-den for which file restriction is set in *Rec. File Restriction* of detail information, this still image/movie cannot be edited, forwarded or attached to mail. Even when you set the memory to save to *microSD*, the setting is changed to *Terminal*.

Displaying Machi-chara

Machi-chara

1 [7] ▶ Highlight a folder ▶

2 Highlight a Machi-chara image ▶

Machi-chara is displayed.

- Press to display the previous or next item of Machi-chara.
- When you select a partially saved Machi-chara image, a confirmation screen appears. If you select *Yes*, downloading starts.
 - If an error that will disable re-downloading is detected, the partially saved Machi-chara image may be deleted.

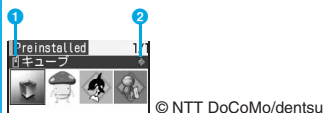
Folders of Machi-chara

Folder	Saved data
<i>i-mode</i>	Machi-chara downloaded in i-mode
<i>Preinstalled</i>	Machi-chara preinstalled by default

- You can create folders. ▶P278

Machi-chara list screen and available operations

Example Thumbnail display



1 Originated

: i-mode : Preinstalled

2 File restriction

▶ (gray): With file restriction

- In the thumbnail display, the following images may appear.
 - : No thumbnail image exists or the date and time have not been set for the FOMA terminal.
 - : Partially saved (upper half is gray)
 - : UIM operation restricted

- To change display names ▶P280

Switching between the thumbnail and title displays:

Setting Machi-chara to the standby display: Highlight a Machi-chara image ▶

- Note that you cannot set a Machi-chara image that is partially saved.
- To cancel: [2]
- When Machi-chara is set to the standby display, *Display* of Machi-chara Setting is changed to *ON*, and when you cancel it, it is changed to *OFF* automatically.

Resetting the elapsed time: Highlight a Machi-chara image ▶ [3] ▶ Yes

The elapsed time information recorded for the Machi-chara image is reset and the download state returns.

Playing melodies

Melody

Play melodies saved in *Melody* of Data Box in the FOMA terminal.

1 [4] ▶ Highlight a folder ▶

- To switch to the folder list of the microSD memory card: on the folder list
 - For handling the microSD memory card ▶P272

2 Highlight a melody ▶



- The following operations are available while playing a melody:

: Adjust volume

: Play the previous/next melody

/ : Stop playing (Return to the melody list)

Folders of Melody

Folder	Saved data
<i>i-mode</i>	Melodies obtained by i-mode or i-mode Mail
<i>Preinstalled</i>	Melodies preinstalled in the FOMA terminal
<i>Mail attach melody</i>	Melodies preinstalled for mail attachment
<i>Data transfer</i>	Melodies read by Bar Code Reader, melodies moved/copied from the microSD memory card and melodies received from external devices

• You can create albums. P278

Melody list screen and available operations



1 Originated

: i-mode : Preinstalled
 : Data transfer

2 File types

: SMF : MFI

3 File restriction

➡ (blue): Without file restriction
 ➡ (gray): With file restriction

• To change display names and other items P280

Sending mail with melodies attached:

Highlight a melody ▶

The mail composition screen with the melody attached appears.

- If the receiving side is other than the D705i, the received melody may not be played properly.
- For details about melodies that can be attached to mail P175

Setting melodies as ring alert

- Melodies in the *Mail attach melody* folder cannot be set as the ring alert.

1 [4] ▶ Highlight a folder ▶ ▶ Highlight a melody ▶ [MENU] [2] ▶ Specify a destination

- To set a melody as contact phone alert or contact mail alert, select a party from the phonebook.

Setting the preferences for playing melodies

Settings

1 [4] ▶ [MENU] [5] ▶ Set each item ▶

Volume:

Set the sound volume for playing melodies (the default is *Level 4*).

Lighting:

Set whether to light the keys during melody playing (the default is *ON*).

Light pattern:

Set the lighting pattern of keys for melody playing (the default is *Rhythm(Normal)*).

Vibrate:

Set the pattern of vibration for melody playing (the default is *OFF*).

Play position:

Set whether to play a whole melody (*Play all*) or part of a melody (*Play portion*) (the default is *Play all*).

- Even if *Play portion* is set, it may not take effect for some melodies.

Play background:

Set an image to be displayed as the background screen for melody playing (the default is *Standard*).

- To set an image of *My Picture*, set *Select* and select an image.

microSD memory card

You can use the microSD memory card to save data such as shot still images, movies and melodies in the microSD memory card or to save backup of data such as the phonebook entries or schedules. In addition, you can save music files created with external devices (PC, etc.) in the microSD memory card and play them on the FOMA terminal (P295) or operate the data in the microSD memory card from your PC (P275).

- The microSD memory card is not included in the package. If you have no microSD memory card, you can purchase it at electric appliance stores.

- Unformatted microSD memory cards must be formatted with the FOMA terminal before they can be used. If formatting of a microSD memory card is not completed, its operation is not guaranteed. ●P274
- The microSD memory card formatted by a PC may not operate properly on the FOMA terminal (formatting may be unavailable).
- D705iμ supports commercial microSD memory cards of up to 2 Gbytes (as of December, 2007). For the latest information about the supported microSD memory cards (such as the manufacturers and capacities), access the following i-mode site or Internet website. Note that microSD memory cards other than those listed in the sites may not operate properly.

- From the FOMA terminal:

iMenu → メニュー / 検索

(Menu/search) → ケータ

イ電話メーカー (Mobile

phone manufacturer) →

My D-style → クイックマ

ニュアル (Quick Manual)

of D705iμ サポート (D705iμ Support) (as of December, 2007)

- From the PC:

Mitsubishi Electric Corporation's website at

<http://www.MitsubishiElectric.co.jp/mobile/>

→ FAQ of FOMA D705iμ → 外部メモリ

(External memory)

The information described in the above sites is the results of confirming the operation, but it does not mean that all operations are guaranteed.



QR code for site access

Data	Operation		Page
Images, movie/i-motion (other than those compatible with Movable Contents), melodies, PDF data, ToruCa	Move/copy	From FOMA terminal	P269
		To FOMA terminal	P270
i-motion compatible with Movable Contents*1	Move	From FOMA terminal	P270
		To FOMA terminal	P270
Music data (Chaku-Uta Full®)	Move		P299
Music data (WMA files)	Only save from PC		P295
Non-viewable files*2	Only save received/downloaded files		P186 P244
i-appli data	Only save from i-appli		—

*1 Copyrighted i-motion files downloaded from sites and permitted to be moved to the microSD memory card

*2 Files that are received via mails or downloaded by Full Browser but cannot be opened on your FOMA terminal (such as PNG or BMP format images)

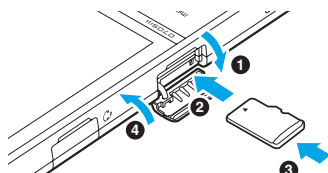
Inserting/removing the microSD memory card

- Turn the power off before inserting/removing the microSD memory card.
- In the microSD memory card slot, do not insert anything other than the microSD memory card.
- Do not attach the microSD memory card if the card is damaged, soiled on the surface or deformed.
- Be careful not to touch metal contacts with your finger when you insert or remove the microSD memory card.
- Insert the microSD memory card correctly into the FOMA terminal. You cannot perform operation such as copying data or making backup if you have not the microSD memory card inserted correctly.
- Note that the microSD memory card may pop out of the slot occasionally when you insert/remove it.

Data saved to the microSD memory card and available operations

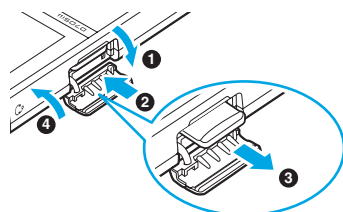
Data	Operation		Page
PIM data (phonebook data, schedules, received mail, unsent mail, sent mail, notepad, bookmarks)	Copy (only one item)	From FOMA terminal	P269
		To FOMA terminal	P270
	Backup		P271
	Restore		P271

Inserting the microSD memory card



- 1 Open the microSD memory card slot cover.
- 2 Insert slowly the microSD memory card into the slot with its printed surface upward.
- 3 Insert the microSD memory card until it clicks.
- 4 Close the microSD memory card slot cover.

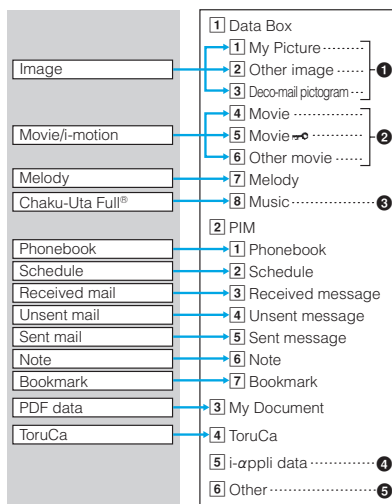
Removing the microSD memory card



- 1 Open the microSD memory card slot cover.
- 2 Push the microSD memory card lightly, and leave your finger.
The microSD memory card pops out a bit.
- 3 Pull out the microSD memory card slowly.
 - Pull it straight out.
- 4 Close the microSD memory card slot cover.

Locations to save data on the microSD memory card

Data of the FOMA terminal microSD memory card



- 1 Image files are sorted and saved into corresponding folders.

Memory to save	Saved data
<i>My Picture</i>	Still images shot with the camera, still images in JPEG format (DCF standard*1) and images in GIF format
<i>Other image</i>	Still images in JPEG format (non-DCF standard*1), Animation GIF
<i>Deco-mail pictogram</i>	Deco-mail pictograms

*1 DCF is an abbreviation of Design rule for Camera File system and it is a standard for file systems.

- Images obtained via mail, etc. are saved in corresponding folders. Images other than those shot by the FOMA terminal may be saved in *My Picture*. Also, images shot by the FOMA terminal may be saved in the *Other image* folder.

- ② Movie/i-motion files are sorted and saved into corresponding folders.

Memory to save	Saved data
Movie	Movie/i-motion with images
Movie	i-motion compatible with Movable Contents
Other movie	Movie/i-motion without images

- ③ Music files (WMA files) obtained from a PC are also saved in this folder.
- ④ The data used by i-appli is saved.
- ⑤ Files attached to the received mails or downloaded by Full Browser which cannot be opened are saved.

About folders

- Data items other than PIM are saved in the corresponding folders. If the corresponding folder does not exist, it is created automatically. For folders other than **Movie** , you cannot specify a folder to save.
- For **Movie** , you can create a folder, change the folder name or move data between folders.
- For folders other than **Movie** , you cannot operate folders on your FOMA terminal. Depending on the data, you can use a PC to create folders to save.
- For folders of **Music**

Maximum number of items that can be saved

The maximum number of data items shown below is the number that can be saved from the FOMA terminal irrespective of the capacity of a microSD memory card. The actual number of data items that can be saved differs depending on the capacity or saved data size.

Memory to save		Maximum number of items
My Picture, Other image, Deco-mail pictogram, Other movie, Melody		9,999 items for each
Movie		4,095 items
Movie 		1,000 items
Music	Chaku-Uta Full®	1,000 items
	WMA file	500 items
	Playlist	100 items

Memory to save	Maximum number of items
Phonebook, Schedule, Received message, Unsent message, Sent message, Note, Bookmark	9,999 items in total
My Document, ToruCa, Other	999 items for each
i-appli data	1,200 items

Usage precautions of the microSD memory card

- Do not remove the microSD memory card, turn the power off or apply impact while saving or deleting data, checking usage status or formatting.
- Be careful not to drop or give strong impact to the FOMA terminal containing the microSD memory card. It may cause the microSD memory card to pop out.
- Do not attach labels or stickers on the microSD memory card.
- While data is being copied, moved, deleted, or when the microSD memory card is being formatted or information is being updated, is shown at the upper part of the screen and the FOMA terminal is in the data transfer mode (same condition as out of service area). In this mode, you cannot make a phone call, i-mode connection or data communication. Also you cannot switch the function to another by pressing . During a call, i-mode or data communication, you cannot copy, move or delete data because you cannot use the data transfer mode.
- In the microSD memory card which is write-protected by other devices such as a PC, the data cannot be saved, deleted and formatted.
- Data saved from other devices into the microSD memory card may not be displayed or played on the FOMA terminal. Also, the data saved in the microSD memory card from the FOMA terminal may not be displayed or played on other devices.
- Depending on the microSD memory card you are using, the saved movie may be distorted.

- Images, movie/i-motion files, melodies or music data in the microSD memory card cannot be set for the standby display, ring alert or incoming image, etc.
- It is recommended that the data saved in the microSD memory card be separately backed up for storage. DoCoMo assumes no responsibility for accidentally erased or changed data.

Copying/moving data from the FOMA terminal to the microSD memory card

- For details about data that can be copied or moved ➡P266
- The following data cannot be copied or moved:
 - The data prohibited from being output from the FOMA terminal (excluding the data with file restriction set to *File restricted* at your terminal and the data saved in the *Data transfer* folder)
 - Created animation
 - i-motion and PDF files saved partially
- Copying/moving may be unavailable depending on ToruCa.
- When copying/moving ToruCa (details), when copied or moved, may be saved as the state before obtaining ToruCa (details).
- To move music files from *Music* ➡P299

Example When copying/moving images to the microSD memory card

-  **1**  **Highlight a folder** 
- 2** **Highlight an image**  **5**  **or** 
- 3** 
 - **Copying/moving selected items:** 
 - ▶ **Highlight images**  
 - **Copying/moving all items:** 
- 4** *Yes*

INFORMATION

- To move an item or items on the screen of the movie/i-motion list, melody list, PDF data list, or ToruCa list:  **Move/Copy**  **Move to microSD**  **One item, Selected items or All items**
 - When an i-motion file compatible with Movable Contents is moved, a destination folder selection screen appears after Step 3. ➡P270
- To copy an item or items on the screen of the movie/i-motion list, melody list, PDF data list, or ToruCa list:  **Move/Copy**  **Copy to microSD**  **One item, Selected items or All items**
- On the phonebook list screen:  **Data backup**  **Copy to microSD**
- On the day view screen of schedule or the note list screen:  **Ir/iC/microSD**  **Copy to microSD**
- On the screen of received mail list, sent mail list or unsent mail list:  **Move/Copy**  **Copy to microSD**  **One item**
- On the bookmark list screen:  **Move/microSD**  **Copy to microSD**  **Copy one item**
- When images, movie/i-motion or melodies set as the standby display or ring alert, etc. are moved to the microSD memory card, each setting returns to the default. When images, movie/i-motion or melodies set in the phonebook data are moved, the operation follows the settings of Sound Setting or settings for outgoing/incoming images.
- If you copy or move movie/i-motion files not compatible with Movable Contents from the FOMA terminal to the microSD memory card, and copy or move them back from the microSD memory card to the FOMA terminal, such files cannot be set as ring alert or incoming image.
- When an image, movie/i-motion, melody or ToruCa file is copied or moved from the FOMA terminal to the microSD memory card, the file name is changed. PDF file names may be changed depending on the PDF data. For information about file names ➡P277
- If images are copied/moved to the microSD memory card from the FOMA terminal, the size displayed on the microSD memory card may be larger than that displayed on the FOMA terminal. In this case, the size displayed on the microSD memory card is the actual size.
- When the phonebook data is copied, images saved in the phonebook data are also copied. However, the images are not displayed when you see the phonebook data copied to the microSD memory card. They are displayed again if the data is moved back to the FOMA terminal.

- Even if the phonebook data is copied, the saved movies are not copied.
- If the mail size exceeds 100 Kbytes, the attachment corresponding to the excess will not be copied.
- When you copy a received mail, any attachment that has not been received yet will not be copied.
- The member list saved in the schedule is not copied. Also, images other than those saved in the *Preinstalled* folder of Data Box are not copied.
- Some images, movie/i-motion or melodies saved on D705iuj may not be displayed or played on other FOMA terminals because of the difference in the data size limit.
- The setting of data protection is not copied on the microSD memory card.

Moving i-motion compatible with Movable Contents

Movable Contents

Copyrighted i-motion files downloaded from sites can be moved from the FOMA terminal to the microSD memory card if they are compatible with Movable Contents. You cannot copy them.

- Refer to View Detail Info to check whether the file is movable. P279

1 [3] ▶ Highlight a folder ▶

2 Highlight an i-motion file compatible with Movable Contents ▶

[MENU] [5] [4] [1]

■ Moving selected items:

[MENU] [5] [4] [2] ▶ Highlight i-motion files ▶  ▶ 

■ Moving all items: [MENU] [5] [4] [3]

3 Highlight a destination folder ▶

- When you select a folder, the list of data within the folder is displayed. However, if the folder contains no folders, a message appears.
- To highlight the home folder: 

4 Yes

- When you are moving multiple items or all items, a confirmation screen appears. Select *Yes*.

INFORMATION

- If you create a new folder and move i-motion files to it, the folder may not be checked by another FOMA terminal.

Copying/moving data from the microSD memory card to the FOMA terminal

- For details about data that can be copied/moved P266

Copying/moving data in Data Box, PDF data or ToruCa

- To move music files from *Music* P299

1 [MENU] [6] [5] ▶ Specify a location to save data

2 Highlight a folder ▶

3 Highlight a data item ▶ [MENU] [3] for data in Data Box and PDF data, [MENU] [3] [1] for Movie or [MENU] [2] for ToruCa

4 [1] or [4]

- Data copying is unavailable for *Movie* .

■ Copying/moving selected items: [2] or [5] ▶ Highlight data items ▶  ▶ 

■ Copying/moving all items: [3] or [6]

- When you move all items of *Movie* , enter the terminal security code.

5 Yes

Data is copied or moved to the corresponding *Data transfer* folder of Data Box or the *ToruCa* folder of the ToruCa list.

- i-motion files compatible with Movable Contents are moved to the *i-mode* folder of *i-motion*.
- Images that can be used as Deco-mail pictograms are copied or moved to the *Deco-mail pict* folder of *My Picture*.

INFORMATION

- To move i-motion files compatible with Movable Contents, it is necessary to insert the same UIM that was used for downloading them from the sites or moving them from the FOMA terminal to the microSD memory card. Some i-motion files cannot be moved between different FOMA models.
- Some i-motion files compatible with Movable Contents cannot be moved to the FOMA terminal.

Copying PIM data

- Backup data cannot be copied. Perform recovery to return the data to the FOMA terminal.

1 ▶ **Specify a location to save data**

2 **Highlight an data item** ▶ ▶

Yes

- In case of bookmarks, appears for i-mode bookmark and appears for Full Browser bookmark.

Backing up the phonebook, mails, schedules, etc.

You can make a backup of the PIM data (phonebook, schedules, received mails, sent mails, notepad, bookmarks) to the microSD memory card in a batch.

1 ▶ **Specify a location to save data**

2 ▶ **Enter the terminal security code** ▶ *Yes*

Data in the FOMA terminal are collectively saved as backup data (data with , , , or)

- To cancel the backup:
 - The data backed up partially will be discarded.

INFORMATION

- Backup operation is also available from each data list in the FOMA terminal.
 - On the phonebook list screen: ▶ *Data backup* ▶ *Backup to microSD*
 - On the day view screen of schedule or the note list screen: ▶ *Ir/iC/microSD* ▶ *Backup to microSD*
 - On the screen of received mail list, sent mail list or unsent mail list: ▶ *Move/Copy* ▶ *Copy to microSD* ▶ *Backup*
 - On the bookmark list screen: ▶ *Move/microSD* ▶ *Copy to microSD* ▶ *Backup*

- When you back up the phonebook, Own Number data is also backed up. However, the Own Number data is not shown when you check the content of the backup data on the screen.
- To back up bookmarks of both i-mode and Full Browser, select . If you perform backup operation from the bookmark list of i-mode or Full Browser, only the i-mode bookmarks or Full Browser bookmarks are backed up, respectively.

Restoring the backup data to the FOMA terminal

There are two types of recovery: recovery by adding and overwritten recovery.

- If recovery by adding is performed, the data will be saved separately from the one saved in the FOMA terminal.
- Note that when overwritten recovery is performed, the current data saved in the FOMA terminal are deleted and overwritten by the restored data.
- The Own Number data included in the backup of the phonebook is added to the phonebook in case of recovery by adding, or overwrites the existing number in case of recovery by overwriting.

1 ▶ **Specify a location to save data**

2 **Highlight the backup data** ▶ ▶ or

- : Phonebook
- : Schedule
- : Received, sent or unsent mail
- : Note
- : Bookmark

3 **Enter the terminal security code** ▶ *Yes*

- To cancel the recovery:
 - Backup data processed before canceling are restored in the FOMA terminal.
- The order of the restored phonebook groups may be different from the order before backup.

Displaying or playing data in the microSD memory card

- The content of data in *Other* cannot be displayed. However, list display, mail attachment, detail information display and delete operations can be performed.
- When you select *Music* of Data Box, Music Player is activated. For operating Music Player ➤P297
- For operation with *i-appli data* ➤P227

1 6 5 ➤ Specify a location to save data

- Select a folder depending on the data.
 - To select the home folder (only for *Movie* ):  on the screen of the folder list or the data list of the folder 
 - To switch to the folder list of the FOMA terminal (except for *Other*):  on the folder list screen for other than *Movie*  /  4 on the folder list screen for *Movie* 

2 Highlight a data item

The data is displayed or played.

- When you select backup data (, ,  or ), the list of data contained in backup data is displayed. Select a data item.
-  appears for i-mode bookmark and  appears for Full Browser bookmark.
- Refer to the following pages for operations while movie/i-motion, melody or PDF data is being displayed/played.
 - movie/i-motion ➤P254
 - Melodies ➤P264
 - PDF data ➤P290
- The following operations are available while the image is displayed:
 - : Display the detail information
 - : Compose mail
 - : Full-screen display (the auto scroll is unavailable.)
 - : Switch between showing/hiding the file name

INFORMATION

- The images saved in the phonebook data are not displayed and  appears instead. Returning the data to the FOMA terminal allows to display such images.
- Schedules saved in the microSD memory card do not sound an alarm on the set date and time.
- To play or use i-motion files compatible with Movable Contents, it is necessary to insert the same UIM that was used when downloading them from sites or moving them to the microSD memory card. Note that some types of i-motion cannot be played or used on a different model of the FOMA terminal.
- In case the *i-appli* using the microSD memory card is set to the standby display, the i-motion compatible with Movable Contents saved in the microSD memory card may not be able to be played or moved.
- You cannot obtain the details from a ToruCa file saved in the microSD memory card.
- From the submenu of the mail view screen, you can change the font size, add the mail address to the phonebook, update the existing address in the phonebook, show or hide the attached data or check the title. In case of a received mail, you can also reply to or forward the mail.
- From the submenu of the phonebook details screen, you can check the view preference and other basic information.
- From the submenu of the bookmark details screen, you can copy URL, add a new entry to the phonebook or update the phonebook entries.

Available operations on the data list screen

■ Switching between the thumbnail and title displays:

- This function is available only for the data in *My Picture*, *Other image*, *Deco-mail pictogram*, *Movie*, *Movie* , *Other movie* and *My Document*.

■ Attaching data to mail: Highlight a data item

- This function is unavailable for the data in *Movie* , *Received message*, *Unsent message*, *Sent message* and *Note*.
- ASF format movie files cannot be attached.

■ Jumping to the specified page: ➤ Enter the page number

- This function is unavailable for the data in the *Movie* .
- When no page number is entered, the first page is displayed.

■ **Searching data:** **MENU** [5] for the data in *Data Box* and *My Document* or **MENU** [3] for the data in *PIM* ▶ **Enter the date** ▶

- This function is unavailable for the data in *Movie* , *Other* and *ToruCa*.

■ **Displaying detail information: Highlight a data item** ▶ **MENU** [2] for the data in *My Picture*, *Other image*, *Deco-mail pictogram*, *Movie*, *Other movie*, *Melody*, *My Document* and *Other* or **MENU** [2] [1] for *Movie*

- This function is unavailable for the data in *PIM* and *ToruCa*.

■ **Changing the detail information (only for *Movie*): Highlight a data item** ▶

MENU [2] [2] ▶ **Enter a display name (up to 36 one-byte or two-byte characters)** ▶

- Only the display name can be changed.

■ **Continuously playing movie/i-motion:**

MENU [6]

Movie/i-motion files in a folder are played continuously.

- This function is unavailable for the data in the *Movie* .

• The following operations are available during continuous playing:

: Pause/play : Adjust volume

: Play the previous or next file

: Stop

: Stop playing (Return to the movie/i-motion list)

- The landscape play is unavailable.

■ **Setting preferences for movie/i-motion:**

MENU [7] for *Movie* and *Other movie* or

MENU [8] for *Movie* ▶ **Set each item** ▶

- For detail about settings ▶ P257

■ **Setting i-motion to the standby display, etc. (only for *Movie*): Highlight a data item** ▶ **MENU** [1] ▶ **Specify a destination**

- For the conditions of i-motion that can be set, see “Setting movie/i-motion to the standby display, etc.”. ▶ P256
- The set i-motion file moves to the FOMA terminal.

Creating or using the folder of *Movie*

- The meaning of folder icons is as follows:

(Red) : 初期フォルダ (for home folder)

(Yellow): Regular folder (for home folder)

- 初期フォルダ (initial folder) is automatically created. You can change the name of 初期フォルダ.

■ **Creating a folder:**

- Up to 1,000 folders can be created.
- You can also create folders within a folder.

① **MENU** [1] on the folder list of *Movie* or

MENU [5] on the data list of a folder

② **Enter a folder name (up to 20 one-byte or 10 two-byte characters)** ▶

■ **Moving i-motion to the folder:**

① **Highlight an i-motion file** ▶

MENU [3] [2] [1]

• To move selected items: **MENU** [3] [2]

[2] ▶ Highlight i-motion files ▶ ▶

• To move all items: **MENU** [3] [2] [3]

② **Highlight a destination folder** ▶ ▶ **Yes**

- When you select a folder, the list of data within the folder is displayed. If the selected folder contains no folders, a message appears.

• To select the home folder:

■ **Changing the folder name:**

① **Highlight a folder** ▶ **MENU** [2] on the

folder list of *Movie* or **MENU** [6] on the data list of the folder

② **Enter a folder name (up to 20 one-byte or 10 two-byte characters)** ▶

■ **Setting the home folder: Highlight a folder** ▶ ▶ **Yes**

■ **Deleting a folder:**

- When deleting the folder set as home folder, 初期フォルダ becomes the home folder.

- When deleting 初期フォルダ, only the folder and data in 初期フォルダ are deleted.

① **Highlight a folder** ▶ **MENU** [3] on the folder list of *Movie* or **MENU** [7] on the data list of the folder

② **Yes**

- If an invalid file (not displayed in the list) exists in the folder, i-motion files compatible with Movable Contents in the folder are deleted, but the folder remains undeleted. In this case, retry to delete after removing invalid files via PC, etc.

Deleting data in the microSD memory card

- To delete music files from *Music* ▶ P299
- To delete i-appli data ▶ P227

Example Deleting an image from *My Picture*

1 [MENU] [6] [5] [1] [1] ▶ Highlight a folder ▶

2 Highlight a data item ▶ [MENU] [4] [1] ▶

Yes

■ Deleting selected items: [MENU] [4] [2] ▶ Highlight data items ▶ ▶

Yes

■ Deleting all items: [MENU] [4] [3] ▶ Enter the terminal security code ▶ Yes

INFORMATION

- On the data list screen of other than *My Picture*: [MENU] ▶ Delete ▶ Delete one item, Selected items or Delete all items

Managing the microSD memory card

Formatting the microSD memory card Format

Format a new microSD memory card before using it or the used microSD memory card when you want to delete all the data saved in it.

- Depending on their conditions, microSD memory cards may not be formatted.

1 [MENU] [6] [5] ▶ ▶ Highlight a format method ▶

Quick format:

Only the data management area in the microSD memory card is formatted.

- This method performs the minimum necessary processing to shorten the format period.
- The saved data are all deleted.
- Use this method only when the microSD memory card has been formatted and has no problem.

Regular format:

Both the data management and data areas in the microSD memory card are formatted.

- This method is used to format a new microSD memory card.

2 Enter the terminal security code ▶ Yes

Checking free space in the microSD memory card

Memory Status

1 [MENU] [6] [5] ▶ [MENU]

Memory status	
Used	: 26,016 KB
Free	: 35,248 KB
Total	: 61,264 KB

The rate of used area to full capacity

INFORMATION

- The actually available microSD memory card capacity is smaller than the capacity specified on the microSD memory card.
- The used area includes the data which the FOMA terminal cannot recognize.

Updating the microSD memory card information

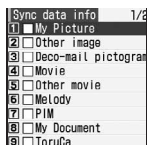
Sync Data Info

If the data is no longer correctly displayed on the FOMA terminal because data in the microSD memory card is changed, added or deleted using the other devices, update the information in the microSD memory card.

- If information update is performed, the display name of data is changed as follows:

- In case of the data in *My Picture*, *Other image*, *Deco-mail pictogram*, or *Other*, the display name is changed to the same as the file name (including the extension for *Other*).
- In case of the data in *Movie*, *Other movie*, *Melody* or *My Document*, the display name is changed to the same as the title name. When the data has no title, it is changed to the file name.
- The data within *ToruCa* is changed to the same name as the title name. When the data has no title name, it is changed to 無題 (Untitled).

1 [MENU] [6] [5] [F5] ▶ Highlight an item



2 [M] ▶ Yes

INFORMATION

- If data is saved from any other device to the microSD memory card, the amount of free space may become insufficient for the FOMA terminal to create management information. In this case, data saved in the microSD memory card cannot be displayed correctly on the FOMA terminal.
- In case the movie/i-motion containing only sound is saved in *Movie*, it will not be displayed after updating the information. It is recommended to move it to the FOMA terminal before updating information or save in the folder for *Other movie* (PRIVATE¥DOCOMO¥MMFILE) in the microSD memory card after renaming via PC, etc. ▶P276
- For *Movie* (M), *Music* and *i-appli* data cannot be updated.
- When there are many data items saved on the microSD memory card, updating information will take some time.

Checking the microSD memory card

Scan Card

You can check the data saved in the microSD memory card and restore it if there is any problem.

- The data may not be restored depending on the condition of the microSD memory card.

1 [MENU] [6] [5] [M] ▶ Yes

Using the microSD memory card from PC

Connect the FOMA terminal to PC with the FOMA USB Cable with Charge Function 01(optional). Then you can operate the data of the microSD memory card inserted in the FOMA terminal from PC.

Setting the microSD mode/MTP mode

USB Mode Setting

The following three USB modes are available.

- microSD mode
This mode enables you to operate data in the microSD memory card from your PC.
- MTP mode
This mode enables you to transfer music files from the PC to the microSD memory card using Windows Media Player
For transferring music files ▶P295
- Communication mode
This mode enables you to connect the FOMA terminal to a PC for data communication. See “Manual for PC connection setting” in the supplied CD-ROM for details.

1 [MENU] [6] [2] [6] [1] - [3] ▶ Yes

- If you set the microSD mode,  (dark blue) is displayed on the standby display. If you set the MTP mode,  (dark blue) is displayed on the standby display. If no microSD memory card has been inserted,  (gray) or  (gray) is displayed.
- In the communication mode,  is displayed when the microSD memory card is inserted.
- No confirmation screen appears if the selected mode is already set.

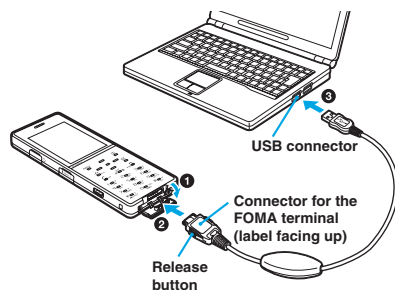
INFORMATION

- The microSD mode supports the Windows 2000, Windows XP and Windows Vista operating systems. The MTP mode supports the Windows XP Service Pack 2 and Windows Vista.

- You can change the USB mode setting even while the FOMA terminal is connected to the PC. Note, however, that only the communication mode may be set if the PC is set to start data communication automatically when the FOMA terminal is connected.

Connecting the FOMA terminal to a PC

- Turn on the power of both the PC and the FOMA terminal.



- 1 Open the cap on the FOMA terminal's external connection terminal
- 2 Insert one end of the FOMA USB Cable with Charge Function 01 into the FOMA terminal's external connection terminal until it clicks
- 3 Insert the other end of the FOMA USB Cable with Charge Function 01 into the PC USB connector
 - While the FOMA terminal is connected to the PC in the microSD mode or MTP mode, the keys flash at about 6-second intervals.

■ Removing the FOMA USB Cable

Press release buttons on both sides of the connector for the FOMA terminal and pull it straight out. Remove carefully as forcing it may be the cause of damage. Pull out the connector for PC.

INFORMATION

- When you connect your PC to the FOMA terminal in the microSD mode or MTP mode, the PC may not recognize the FOMA terminal in the following cases:
 - When *microSD of LifeKit* is active.
 - While data is being copied, moved or saved from the FOMA terminal to the microSD memory card.

- While still image shooting, movie recording, Sound Recorder, Chara-den recording or Music Player is active.
- When you disconnect the FOMA USB Cable with Charge Function 01 from the PC and the FOMA terminal in the microSD mode, click on the PC's task tray and then click **USB大容量記憶装置 デバイスドライバ(E:)*1** を安全に取り外します*2 (Release safely the USB large memory device-Drive E:*1*2). Check that **'USB大容量記憶装置デバイス'** は安全に取り外すことができます。 (Now you can remove the USB large memory device safely) appears.

*1 The character to be assigned to a drive varies by the system of PC.

*2 For Windows 2000, 停止します (Terminate) is displayed.

- Never remove the FOMA USB Cable with Charge Function 01 during the data transfer between the PC and the microSD memory card. It can cause the malfunction or loss of data.
- While the FOMA terminal is connected to the PC in the microSD mode or MTP mode, you cannot operate the data in the microSD memory card (such as saving and displaying) or activate Music Player on the FOMA terminal.
- If you connect a PC and the FOMA terminal, is displayed on the standby display. Press and select , then press to display the screen for USB Mode Setting.

Folder structure and file names

When the content of the microSD memory card are displayed on a PC, the folder structure and file names are as shown below.

- The microSD memory card contains no folders immediately after being formatted by the FOMA terminal. When data is moved, copied or saved to the microSD memory card, folders corresponding to such files are automatically created.
- When saving data to the microSD memory card from a PC, etc., save it according to the folder structure and file names shown below and then update the information. Updating is also required if data cannot be displayed correctly on your FOMA terminal after you edit or delete the data on your PC. P274
- Use Windows Media Player to save music data (WMA files) of *Music*. You do not need to update the information. P295

Folder structure

DCIM	
└ xxxD705i	My Picture* ¹
PRIVATE	
└ DOCOMO	
└ DECOIMG	
└ DUDxxx	Deco-mail pictogram* ²
└ DOCUMENT	
└ PUDxxx	My Document
└ MMFILE	
└ MUDxxx	Other movie* ³
└ WM*	Music (WMA file)
└ WM_SYSTEM* ^{4, 5}	
└ OTHER	
└ OUDxxx	Other
└ RINGER	
└ RUDxxx	Melody
└ STILL	
└ SUDxxx	Other image* ⁶
└ TABLE* ⁴	
└ TORUCA	
└ TRCxxx	ToruCa
SD_BIND* ⁴	
└ SVCxxxxx	Data compatible with Movable Contents (Movie, Music (Chaku-Uta Full®) or i-zippli data)* ⁷
SD_PIM	PIM (Phonebook, Schedule, Mail, Note, Bookmark)
SD_VIDEO	
└ PRLzzz	Movie* ⁸

xxx: 001 to 999 in one-byte characters (100 to 999 for xxxD705i)

xxxxx: 00001 to 65535 in one-byte characters

zzz: 001 to FFF in one-byte character (hexadecimal number)

*¹ DCF standard JPEG and GIF

*² JPEG, GIF and animation GIF with image size of 20 x 20 or less and file size of up to 2.6 Mbytes

*³ Sound-only movie/i-motion (including AAC format music data)

*⁴ Never delete or rename files in this folder. Otherwise, the FOMA terminal cannot display or play data properly.

*⁵ This is a hidden folder. This folder may not be shown depending on the PC settings.

*⁶ Non-DCF standard JPEG and animation GIF

*⁷ The data compatible with Movable Contents cannot be displayed or played on a PC.

*⁸ Movie/i-motion files with images

File name

Data type	File name
My Picture	aaaaxxxx.JPG/GIF
Other image	STILxxxx.JPG/GIF
Deco-mail pictogram	DIMGxxxx.JPG/GIF
Movie	MOLzzz.3GP/ASF/MP4* ¹
Other movie	MMFxxxx.3GP/ASF/MP4
Melody	RINGxxxx.MID/MLD/SMF
PIM	PIMxxxx.VCF/VCS/VMG/VNT/VBM
My Document	PDFDCxxx.PDF* ²
ToruCa	TORUCxxx.TRC
Other	OTHERxxx.yyy, aaaaaaaa.yyy

a: Upper case A to Z, 0 to 9, and _ (underscore) in one-byte characters

xxx: 001 to 999 in one-byte characters

xxxx: 0001 to 9999 in one-byte characters

xxxxx: 00001 to 65535 in one-byte characters

zzz: 001 to FFF in one-byte characters (hexadecimal number)

yyy: Extension

*¹ Files with extension of 3GP or MP4 are treated as MP4 format files.

*² The long file name format up to 64 one-byte characters (including the extension) is supported. If it is found that the same file name already exists, the name of the new file may be changed to a name of this format.

• Files with the following extensions are also saved.

\$DF : PDF data that failed to be downloaded

DDF : Files for managing the information of i-mode bookmarks or marks

JPG : Files for the thumbnail display

INFORMATION

- If you change or delete the folder name in the microSD memory card using PC, etc., the FOMA terminal cannot display the data correctly.
- If files with the same file name but different extensions exist in a folder, they may not be displayed.
- If a still image in JPEG format cannot be displayed after you save it in the folder of **My Picture** and update the information, change its file name into the format for **Other image** and save the file in the **Other image** folder. Then the image may be displayed.

- Music Player in D705ij does not support AAC format files that can be played by Music Player in the D902iS or earlier models of FOMA D Series. However, such files can be played as MP4 format movie/i-motion files, not as music files, on D705ij. Save them in the **Other movie** folder and update the information. However, files with a name other than MMFxxxx (xxxx is 0001 to 9999) or with an extension .m4a cannot be displayed or played.

Using the album (folder)

You can add albums (folders) in *My Picture*, *i-motion*, *Melody*, *My Document*, *Chara-den*, *Machi-chara* or *Kisekae Tool* in Data Box of the FOMA terminal and sort out the data.

- In the menu, either **album** or **folder** is displayed depending on the data type.

Creating/deleting albums (folders)

- You can create up to 100 albums (folders) in *My Picture* and up to 10 albums (folders) for each type of data.

Example Creating an album in *My Picture*

1  1

2  1

■ **Changing the album name:** Highlight an album  3

■ **Deleting an album:**

① **Highlight an album**  2

- When data is saved in the album to delete, enter the terminal security code.

② **Yes**

3 **Enter the album name (up to 20 one-byte or 10 two-byte characters)** 

- For *Chara-den* and *Machi-chara*, up to 10 one-byte or two-byte characters can be entered.

INFORMATION

- On the folder list screen of *i-motion* or *Melody*:  **Create album**, **Delete album** or **Rename album**

- On the folder list screen of *My Document*, *Chara-den*, *Machi-chara* or *Kisekae Tool*:  **Create folder**, **Delete folder** or **Rename folder**

- The fixed folder preinstalled by default cannot be deleted or renamed.

Moving data to the album (folder)

- Data saved in the *Preinstalled*, *Deco-mail pict* or *Mail attach melody* folder cannot be moved.
- You cannot move partially saved i-motion files.
- You cannot move data to the fixed folder preinstalled by default (except for some folders).

Example Moving data from *My Picture*

1  1 **Highlight a folder** 

2 **Highlight a data item**

 5 1 1

■ **Moving selected items:**  5 1

2 **Highlight data items** 



■ **Moving all items:**  5 1 3

3 **Highlight a destination album**  **Yes**

INFORMATION

- On the screen of movie/i-motion list or melody list:  **Move/Copy** **Move to album** **One item**, **Selected items** or **All items**
- On the screen of PDF data list:  **Move/Copy** **Move to folder** **One item**, **Selected items** or **All items**
- On the screen of Charaden list or Machi-chara list:  **Move** **One item**, **Selected items** or **All items**
- On the screen of Kisekae tool list:  **Move** **Move to folder** **One item**, **Selected items** or **All items**

Returning data from the album (folder) to the fixed folder

- This operation is unavailable for the data in *Chara-den* or *Machi-chara*.

Example

Returning data from an album in *My Picture* to the fixed folder

1 1 **Highlight an album**

2 **Highlight a data item**

5 2 1

Returning selected items: 5 2

2 **Highlight data items**

Returning all items: 5 2 3

3 *Yes*

INFORMATION

- On the screen of movie/i-motion list, melody list or PDF data list: **Move/Copy** **Return to folder** or **Restore to folder** **One item, Selected items** or **All items**
- On the screen of Kisekai tool list: **Move** **Return to folder** **One item, Selected items** or **All items**
- Images preinstalled in the *Deco-mail picture* folder are moved to the *i-mode* folder by returning them to the fixed folder.

Playing all melodies in an album

You can play melodies in an album continuously.

- This function is unavailable for the fixed folder preinstalled by default.

1 4 **Highlight an album**

1

- The following operations are available while the album is being played:

: Adjust volume

: Play the previous/next melody

/ : Stop playing (Return to the folder list)

Copying data

You can copy the data in *My Picture*, *i-motion* or *My Document* of Data Box of the FOMA terminal into the same album or folder.

- The following data cannot be copied:
 - Created animation, item images, images in the *Preinstalled* folder in *My Picture*

- i-motion* whose replay restriction is set, partially saved *i-motion* and movie/*i-motion* downloaded from sites or received via mail which can be set as the ring alert
- Data set to *File restricted* (excluding the data whose file restriction is set to *File restricted* by your FOMA terminal and the data saved in the *Data transfer* folder)

Example Copying data from *My Picture*

1 1 **Highlight a folder**

Highlight a data item 5 3

INFORMATION

- On the screen of movie/i-motion list or PDF data list: **Move/Copy** **Copy**
- If you return the data copied in an album (folder) to the fixed folder, it moves to the fixed folder which contains the original data.

Viewing/editing detail information of the data

View/Edit Detail Info

- The detail information of partially saved data may include lack of some items or may not be displayed or edited.
- To view or edit the detail information of music data in *Music* P300

Viewing detail information

Example Viewing the detail information of an image in *My Picture*

1 1 **Highlight a folder**

Highlight an image 3 1

• To scroll by pages: or

• To edit detail information:

INFORMATION

- On the screen of the movie/i-motion list, melody list, PDF data list, Chara-den list, Machi-chara list or Kisekai tool list: **Detail info** **View**

Editing detail information

Example

Editing the detail information of an image in *My Picture*

1  1  **Highlight a folder**  **Highlight an image**  3 2

2 **Set each item** 

INFORMATION

- On the screen of the movie/i-motion list, melody list, PDF data list, Chara-den list, Machi-chara list or Kisekai tool list:  **Detail info**  **Edit** or **Change**
- For movie/i-motion, melody, Chara-den, Machi-chara and Kisekai tool, selecting **Back to original** or **Restore original** returns the display name to the original title preset to the data.

Displayed items and their availability

- Depending on the data, some items cannot be changed even if shown as changeable in the list.

● : Changeable ○ : Displayed only — : Not displayed

Displayed item	Image	Movie/i-motion	Melody	PDF data	Chara-den	Machi-chara	Kisekai tool
Display name	●	●	●	●	●	●	●
Title/Title (Original)/Original title	—	○	○	—	○	○	○
File name	●	●	●	○	○	○	○
Type	○	—	—	—	—	—	—
Creator	—	●	—	—	—	—	—
Copyright	—	●	—	—	—	—	—
Description	—	●	—	—	—	—	—
File restriction	●	●	●	○	○	○	○
Rec. file restriction	—	—	—	—	○	—	—
Move to microSD/ Moved to microSD (Moved to phone)	○	○	○	○	○	○	○
Format/File format	○	○	○	○	—	—	—
Sound	—	○	—	—	—	—	—
Display size	○	○	—	—	○	—	—
Size	○	○	○	○	○	○	○
Size on disk	○	○	○	○	○	○	○
Msg attach size	○	—	—	—	—	—	—
Playing time	—	—	○	—	—	—	—

Displayed item	Image	Movie/i-motion	Melody	PDF data	Chara-den	Machi-chara	Kisekai tool
Saved date & time	○	○	○	○	○	○	○
Use as frame	●	—	—	—	—	—	—
Use as stamp	●	—	—	—	—	—	—
Comment	●	—	—	—	●	—	—
Ring alert	—	○	—	—	—	—	—
Receive display	—	○	—	—	—	—	—
Replay restriction	—	○	—	—	—	—	—
Originated	○	○	○	○	○	○	○

Descriptions of displayed items

Display name:

Title displayed on the FOMA terminal (To change it, enter up to 50 one-byte or 25 two-byte characters for melodies and up to 36 one-byte or two-byte characters for others.)

Title/Title (Original)/Original title:

Original title preset in data

File name:

File name displayed when the file is attached to mail (To change it, enter up to 36 one-byte alphanumeric characters including ".", "-", and "-").

- "." cannot be used for the first character of the file name.

Type: Type of image

Creator:

The creator's name (To change it, enter up to 256 one-byte or two-byte characters.)

- The name registered in Own Number appears in **Creator** when you have recorded movie using your FOMA terminal. If the name is not registered in Own Number, **Creator** is not set.

Copyright:

The author's name and the release date of the copyrighted work (To change it, enter up to 256 one-byte or two-byte characters.)

Description:

Description of movie/i-motion (To change it, enter up to 256 one-byte or two-byte characters.)

File restriction:

When you send data to the other party's mobile phone via mail attachment, you can set whether to restrict sending data to other mobile phones from the received party's mobile phone.

- This item is not shown for the movie/i-motion in ASF format.
- For i-motion or melodies downloaded from sites, etc., this item cannot be changed.

Rec. file restriction:

Specification of whether or not to set file restriction for the still image/movie shot with Record Chara-den

Move to microSD/Moved to microSD (Moved to phone):

Specification of whether the data can be moved to the microSD memory card

- For the data in the microSD memory card, **Moved to phone** is displayed to indicate whether or not the data can be moved to the FOMA terminal.

Format/File format:

File type ("----" for Flash movie)

Sound: Type of sound data**Display size:**

Display size of data (dots)

- Not displayed for Flash movie.

Size: The actual size of the data file**Size on disk :**

Memory space size used for saving data

- The same data may require different memory space sizes on the FOMA terminal and the microSD memory card.

Msg attach size:

File size suitable for attaching to i-mode Mail

- Displayed only when file attachment is possible.

Playing time: Playing time of data**Saved date & time:**

Date and time when data was saved

Use as frame:

Specification of whether the image can be pasted as frame image

- You can change the setting only for the still images. However, **Yes** cannot be set for the still images larger than 352 x 288 or merged with item images.

Use as stamp:

Specification of whether the image can be pasted as stamp image

- You can change the setting only for the still images. However, **Yes** cannot be set for the still images larger than 240 x 320 or merged with item images.

Comment:

Description of data (To change it, enter up to 100 one-byte or two-byte characters.)

Ring alert:

Specification of whether the movie/i-motion can be set to ring alert

Receive display:

Specification of whether the movie/i-motion can be set to incoming image

Replay restriction:

Replay restrictions on movie/i-motion

Originated: Origination of data**INFORMATION**

- Even if **Yes** is set for **Use as frame** or **Use as stamp** in the image detail information, images are saved in the original folder and are not displayed in the **Item** folder.
- The detail information stored in the microSD memory card may differ from the information displayed on the FOMA terminal.
- **Ring alert** is always set to **Available** for the movie recorded with the recording type of **Video + Voice** set with your FOMA terminal or the sound recorded via Sound Recorder. However, for the movie/sound with an inserted ticker, **Ring alert** is set to **Unavailable**.
- If **Ring alert** or **Receive display** is **Unavailable** for i-motion compatible with Movable Contents saved in the microSD memory card, the setting may be changed to **Available** when the i-motion is moved to the FOMA terminal.

Deleting data

- The data saved in the **Preinstalled** folder of **My Picture**, **i-motion**, **Melody** or **My Document** or in the **Mail attach melody** folder of **Melody** cannot be deleted.
- To delete music data from **Music** ▶ P299

Example Deleting data from *My Picture*

- 1 1 **Highlight a folder**
- 2 **Highlight a data item** 6 1
 ■ **Deleting selected items:** 6 2
 ▶ **Highlight the data**
 ■ **Deleting all items:** 6 3 ▶ **Enter the terminal security code**
- 3 **Yes**

INFORMATION

- On the screen of movie/i-motion list, melody list, PDF data list, Chara-den list, Machi-chara list or Kisekai tool list: **Delete** ▶ **One item**, **Selected items** or **All items**
- If data set for the standby display or ring alert are deleted, each setting returns to the default. When data set to the phonebook are deleted, the operation follows the settings of Sound Setting or settings for outgoing/incoming images.
- If you delete created animation, the original images composing created animation are also deleted.
- If Chara-den, Machi-chara, Deco-mail pictures, Deco-mail pictograms, frames and Kisekai tool preinstalled by default are deleted, they can be downloaded from the i-mode site "My D-style".

How to access i-mode site "My D-style"

To access "My D-style", select *iMenu* → *メニュー検索* (Menu/search) → *ケータイ電話メーカー* (Mobile phone manufacturer) (as of December, 2007).

- Scanning QR code shown right with Bar Code Reader allows you to connect to "My D-style".



QR code for
site connection

Sorting data

Sort

You can change the order of data items on the list screen.

- To sort music files in *Music* ▶ P300

Example Sorting data in *My Picture*

- 1 1 **Highlight a folder** 7
- 2 **Set each item**

By : Sets the sorting method (the default is *Saved date & time*).

Order: Sets the sorting order of data (the default is *Descending*).

INFORMATION

- On the screen of the movie/i-motion list, melody list, PDF data list, Chara-den list, Machi-chara list or Kisekai tool list: **Sort**
- If one-byte and two-byte characters are mixed in the display names, the sorted result may not correspond to Japanese syllabary.

Checking the memory status of the FOMA terminal

Memory Status

For each item of data, the memory status for Data Box of the FOMA terminal and the data storage memory of i-appli is displayed.

- 1 8 6 6 3 **Highlight an item**

Memory status		1/3
My Picture		
Music		
i motion		
Melody		
My Document		
Used : 3,622 KB		
Free : 11,238 KB		
Total : 14,860 KB		

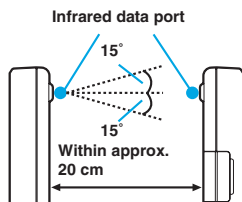
Memory usage rate to storage memory

You can send and receive data to/from other FOMA terminals, mobile phones or PCs provided with an infrared communication function. Also, by using the i- α ppli compatible with infrared communication, you can link to devices having an infrared communication function.

- During infrared communication or saving received data,  are displayed at the top of the screen and the terminal is in the data transfer mode (the same status as outside the service area). In this mode, phone calls, i-mode connection and data communication are disabled. Also you cannot switch to other functions by pressing . You cannot use infrared communication during a call, i-mode or data communication because you cannot use the data transfer mode.
- The infrared communication function of the FOMA terminal conforms to IrMC 1.1.
- Even if the terminal of the other party conforms to IrMC 1.1, some data may not be sent/received depending on the data type.

Using infrared communication

The maximum communication range is about 20 cm and the angle is within 15 degrees from the center. Keep the FOMA terminal pointing at the other device's infrared data port and do not move it until all the data have been sent or received.



- Infrared communication may not work properly in a place with direct sunlight or right under fluorescent lamps.

You can send data by selecting one item at a time or send all data items of the specified function at once. The following data are available for sending:

 : Sending all is possible

Data type	Remarks
Phonebook	- Own Number data are also sent when sending all is performed. - In <i>Ph.book image sending</i> of Data Exchange Setting, you can set whether to send still images saved in the phonebook data together with the phonebook data when sending all is performed. - Images saved in the phonebook data may not be received depending on the receiving device.
Schedule	—
Received mail Sent mail Unsent mail	- Attached data in the text (link items that activate i-αppli) is deleted. - Mail exceeding 10,000 bytes may fail to be sent correctly, depending on the receiving device. - An attached file will not be sent if downloading of the file has not completed yet. - If the mail size exceeds 100 Kbytes, the attachment corresponding to the excess will not be sent. - Part of a title may not be received depending on the receiving device.
Note	—
Bookmark (i-mode/Full Browser)	Folder settings may not be reflected depending on the receiving device.
Image	A display name of up to 18 one-byte or 9 two-byte characters can be sent. Characters that exceed the maximum number will be deleted.
Movie/i-motion	- Data of over 500 Kbytes cannot be sent. - Partially saved i-motion files cannot be sent.
Melody	—
PDF data	PDF data which is over 512 Kbytes*1, partially saved or failed in downloading cannot be sent.

Data type	Remarks
ToruCa	- When sending one file, you can select whether to include details in a ToruCa (details) file to send. When sending all ToruCa files, details are included. For some ToruCa (details) files, however, they may sometimes be sent in the state before obtaining the details, irrespective of sending one file or all files. - Depending on IP (Information Provider) settings, ToruCa may not be sent. - Depending on the destination, ToruCa (details) may not be sent.
Own Number	Images may not be received depending on the receiving device.

*1 Sending is available in case the file size excluding the data of i-mode bookmarks or marks is within 512 Kbytes.

- The data prohibited from being output from the FOMA terminal cannot be sent (excluding the data for which File restricted is set at your terminal and the data saved in the **Data transfer** folder)
- Data may not be transferred correctly when communication is performed with an infrared communication device or a terminal other than D705i_u. Items that cannot be saved by the receiver side are discarded.
- Because of the difference in the data size limit, the receiving FOMA terminal may not save the image, movie/i-motion file or melody that you send.
- The data including pictograms may not be displayed correctly when sent to other than i-mode terminals. Even when sending to i-mode terminals, the data including pictogram 2 may not be displayed correctly depending on receiving terminals.

Sending one data item

Example Sending a phonebook entry

1 Make the FOMA terminal of the other party ready to receive

- 2 Search the phonebook ▶ Highlight a phonebook data to send ▶ 8 1
▶ Yes

INFORMATION

- On the screen of bookmark list, received mail list, sent mail list, unsent mail list, image list, movie/i-motion list, melody list or PDF data list: ▶ Send via Ir/iC or Send Ir/iC ▶ Send Ir data
- On the schedule day view screen or list of notes: ▶ Ir/iC/microSD ▶ Send Ir data
- On the screen of ToruCa list: ▶ Send Ir data
When you send ToruCa (details), a confirmation screen appears.
- On the Own Number screen:
The name, reading, first phone number and first mail address are sent.
• To send all items: on the details screen ▶ Send all own info ▶ Send Ir data

Sending all data items

You can send all the data of phonebook, schedule, mail, note, bookmark, and ToruCa.

- To send all the data, the same authentication password must be entered both by the sender and receiver. Determine a 4-digit authentication password from 0000 to 9999 in advance.

1 Make the FOMA terminal of the other party ready to receive

- 2 6 2 2 ▶ Highlight a data type ▶ ▶ Enter the terminal security code

3 Enter the authentication password ▶ Yes

INFORMATION

- On the screen of phonebook list, bookmark list, received mail list, sent mail list or unsent mail list: ▶ Send via Ir/iC or Send Ir/iC ▶ Send all Ir data
- On the schedule calendar screen, day view screen or list of notes: ▶ Ir/iC/microSD ▶ Send all Ir data
- On the screen of ToruCa folder list: ▶ Send all Ir data
- When all the data items are sent, the order of items may change in receiver's side.

- When you press **[MENU] [6] [2] [2]** and select **Bookmarks**, all bookmarks for both i-mode and Full Browser are sent. If you operate from the bookmark list of i-mode or Full Browser, all the bookmarks of either i-mode or Full Browser are sent.

Receiving data by infrared communication

Receive Ir Data

You can receive data by selecting one item at a time or receive all data items of the specified function at once. The following data are available for receiving:

☐ : Receiving all is possible

Data type	Storage after receiving
Phonebook	Phonebook
Schedule	Scheduler
Received mail	Inbox
Sent mail	Outbox
Unsent mail	Unsent messages
Note	Notepad
Bookmark (i-mode/Full Browser)	Bookmark of i-mode/Full Browser
Image	Data transfer folder of <i>My Picture</i> *1
Movie/i-motion	Data transfer folder of <i>i-motion</i>
Melody	Data transfer folder of <i>Melody</i>
PDF data	Data transfer folder of <i>My Document</i>
ToruCa	ToruCa folder of the ToruCa list
Own Number	Phonebook

*1 Images that can be used as Deco-mail pictograms are saved in the *Deco-mail pict* folder.

- Phonebook data and Own Number data are saved in the smallest free phonebook No.
- If you receive and overwrite all phonebook entries, Own Number data except your phone number is overwritten.
- For precautions of saving data, see INFORMATION in "Saving received data".
P286

Receiving one data item

- You cannot receive data that exceeds 512 Kbytes.

1 **[MENU] [6] [2] [1] [1]**

2 **[1] or [2]**

Confirm & save:

Received data are saved temporarily in INBOX. You cannot select this if INBOX has no free space.

Save:

Received data is saved to the corresponding folders in the FOMA terminal.

3 **Yes**

The FOMA terminal becomes ready to receive data.

4 **Send one data item on the sender side**

- When **Confirm & save** is selected in Step 2, the INBOX screen appears after receiving data. For details about the subsequent operations, follow Step 2 in "Saving received data". P286

Receiving all data items

You can receive the data of phonebook, schedule, mail, note, bookmark and ToruCa at one time.

- To receive all the data, the same authentication password must be entered both by the receiver and sender. Determine a 4-digit authentication password from 0000 to 9999 in advance.

1 **[MENU] [6] [2] [1] [2]**

2 **[1] or [2]**

Confirm & save:

Received data are saved temporarily in INBOX. You cannot select this if INBOX has no free space. Select **Add** or **Overwrite** when you save data from INBOX.

- If you select **Confirm & save**, go to Step 4.

Overwrite:

Received data overwrites the data saved in the corresponding folders of the FOMA terminal.

- Note that the original data in the FOMA terminal is all deleted by overwriting and replaced by new data.

3 **Yes ▶ Enter the terminal security code**

4 Enter the authentication password ▶ Yes

The FOMA terminal becomes ready to receive data.

5 Send all data items on the sender side

- When **Confirm & save** is selected in Step 2, the INBOX screen appears after receiving is finished. For details about the subsequent operations, follow Step 2 in "Saving received data". ▶ P286

INFORMATION

- It may take time to receive large data or a large number of data items.

Saving received data

Save the data stored temporarily in INBOX to the FOMA terminal.

- The data saved in the FOMA terminal is deleted from INBOX.

1 [MENU] 6 2 4

2 Highlight a data item ▶ Yes

- In case of multiple items: Highlight a data item ▶  Enter the terminal security code ▶ Add or Overwrite**
 - Note that the original data in the FOMA terminal is all deleted by selecting **Overwrite** and replaced by new data.

- Deleting the data item without saving it: Highlight a data item ▶ [MENU] 2 ▶**

Yes

- Deleting all items: [MENU] 3 ▶ Enter the terminal security code ▶ Yes

INBOX list screen

 : Single item/multiple items of phonebook data

 /  :
Single data item of i-mode bookmark/
single data item of Full Browser
bookmark/Multiple items of bookmark
data

 : Single item/multiple items of mail data

 : Single item/multiple items of schedule
data

 : Single item/multiple items of notes

 : Image

 : Movie/i-motion

 : Melody

 : PDF data

 /  : Single item/multiple items of ToruCa

INFORMATION

- Depending on the size of data to save, the number of items that can be received is fewer than the maximum number of items that can be saved or registered in the FOMA terminal.
- ToDo data (items in the ToDo list for managing business activities) cannot be saved in D705iμ. When all items of ToDo data and schedule data are received at a time, only the schedule data is saved.
- When the data received all at once are saved by overwriting, the protected data in the FOMA terminal are also deleted.
- Even if you receive all mails from the other party's FOMA terminal, the folder name that is set by the terminal may not be used.
- When you receive all bookmarks from a FOMA terminal, you will also receive the folders created to save the bookmarks in that terminal. Depending on the other terminal, however, bookmarks may be saved in the first folder.
- Images, movie/i-motion or melodies received from a FOMA terminal other than D705iμ may be saved as notes.
- When invalid characters are included in the received data, they are replaced by blanks or removed.
- Mail data received from such a device that has a function to sort mails to folders may be saved in the Message i-appli folder. To check the saved mail data, highlight the Message i-appli folder in which the data is saved and press [MENU] 1.

Activating infrared communication mode

Infrared Communication Mode

Activate an i-appli by receiving the data to start the i-appli via infrared communication device having the function of starting i-appli.

- It is necessary to download the specified software from sites, etc. beforehand.
- If an i-appli is set not to start with the i-appli To function via an external device, it cannot be activated.

1 [MENU] 6 2 1 1 2 ▶ Yes

The FOMA terminal becomes ready to receive data.

2 Receive the data to start i-appli via infrared communication device

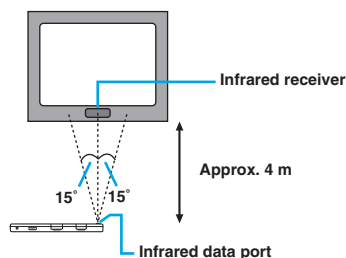
Using the infrared remote control function

The FOMA terminal can be used as an infrared remote controller if you download the i-appli for infrared remote control.

- Download the i-appli suited for the individual device.
- If the preset i-appli "Gガイド番組表リモコン (G-GUIDE TV Remote Controller)" is activated, the FOMA terminal can be used as an infrared remote controller for TV, etc. ▶ P220
- Control may be affected by nearby devices that support infrared communication or ambient brightness.
- Some equipment cannot be operated even if it supports infrared remote control.

Remote control operation

Perform remote control operation with the infrared data port of the FOMA terminal pointed at the infrared receiver of the supported device used (operation differs depending on i-appli). The angle for remote control is 15 degrees from the center and the distance is about 4 m at the maximum. However, the angle and distance allowed for the operation differs depending on the type of devices to operate and the level of ambient brightness.



Setting operations for data transfer

Data Exchange Setting

Set operations for data exchange via infrared communication, iC communication and USB connection.

1 [MENU] 6 2 5 ▶ Set each item ▶



End alert:

Set whether to sound a communication end tone at the end of communication.

Auto authentication:

Set the authentication method for communication via USB connection to use DoCoMo keitai datalink, etc.

ON: The authentication codes are exchanged automatically with the other party.

OFF: Enter the authentication password every time.

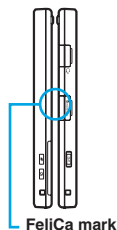
- When **ON** is selected: Enter the terminal security code ▶ Enter the 4 to 8-digit authentication codes for a mobile phone terminal (the FOMA terminal) and for PC (the other party) ▶ []

Ph. book image sending:

Set whether to send images saved in the phonebook along with the all phonebook data when you send all data items.

- When **OFF** is set, no image can be included even in a backup of the phonebook saved to the microSD memory card.

Data is exchanged between the FOMA terminals equipped with the iC communication function by overlapping the FeliCa marks () of both terminals.



Overlap the FeliCa marks so that the distance between them is 1 cm or less. Also take care not to move them while data is being exchanged.

- When you overlap FeliCa marks, be careful not to give shocks to the FOMA terminals.

- The type of data that can be sent or received is the same as with infrared communication.
 ◀ P283, P285
- During iC communication or saving received data,  is displayed at the top of the screen and the terminal is in the data transfer mode (the same status as outside the service area). In this mode, phone calls, i-mode connection and data communication are disabled. Also you cannot switch to other functions by pressing . You cannot use iC communication during a call, i-mode or data communication because you cannot use the data transfer mode.
- Depending on the other party's FOMA terminal, it may be difficult to send or receive data. Try adjusting the distance between the FeliCa marks or moving either terminal slightly up, down, right or left.

You can send data by selecting one item at a time or send all data items of the specified function at once.

Sending one data item

Example Sending a phonebook entry

- 1 Search the phonebook ▶ Highlight a phonebook entry ▶**  **8** **3** ▶ *Yes*
- 2 Overlap the FeliCa marks of the FOMA terminals**

INFORMATION

- On the screen of bookmark list, received mail list, sent mail list, unsent mail list, image list, movie/i-motion list, melody list or PDF data list:  ▶ *Send via Ir/iC or Send Ir/iC* ▶ *iC transmission*
- On the schedule day view screen or list of notes:  ▶ *Ir/iC/microSD* ▶ *iC transmission*
- On the screen of ToruCa list:  ▶ *iC transmission*
 When you send ToruCa (details), a confirmation screen appears.
- On the Own Number screen: 
 The name, reading, first phone number and first mail address are sent.
 - To send all items:  on the details screen ▶ *Send all own info* ▶ *iC transmission*

Sending all data items

You can send all the data of phonebook, schedule, mail, note, bookmark and ToruCa.

- To send all the data, the same authentication password must be entered both by the sender and receiver. Determine a 4-digit authentication password from 0000 to 9999 in advance.

-  **6** **2** **3** ▶ **Highlight a data type ▶**  ▶ **Enter the terminal security code**
- 2 Enter the authentication password ▶** *Yes*
- 3 Overlap the FeliCa marks of the FOMA terminals**

INFORMATION

- On the screen of phonebook list, bookmark list, received mail list, sent mail list and unsent mail list:  ► *Send via Ir/iC* or *Send Ir/iC* ► *Send all via iC*
- On the schedule calendar screen/day view screen or list of notes:  ► *Ir/iC/microSD* ► *Send all via iC*
- On the screen of ToruCa folder list:  ► *Send all via iC*
- When all the data items are sent, the order of items may change in the receiving side.
- Press     and select **Bookmarks** to send all bookmarks for both i-mode and Full Browser. If you operate from the bookmark list of i-mode or Full Browser, either all the bookmarks in i-mode or all the bookmarks in Full Browser are sent.

Using iC communication to receive data

- Data cannot be received while you are using other functions. Return to the standby display to receive data.
- For precautions of saving data, see INFORMATION in “Saving received data”.
◀P286

Receiving one data item

- You cannot receive data that exceed 512 Kbytes.

- 1 **Send a data item on the sender side**
- 2 **Show the standby display on the receiver side and overlap the FeliCa marks of the FOMA terminals**

The INBOX screen appears after receiving data. For details about the subsequent operations, follow Step 2 in “Saving received data”. ◀P286

Receiving all data items

You can receive the data of phonebook, schedule, mail, note, bookmark and ToruCa at one time.

- To receive all the data, the same authentication password must be entered both by the receiver and sender. Determine a 4-digit authentication password from 0000 to 9999 in advance.

- 1 **Send all data items on the sender side**
- 2 **Show the standby display on the receiver side and overlap the FeliCa marks of the FOMA terminals**
- 3 **Enter the authentication password**
- 4 **Overlap the FeliCa marks of the FOMA terminals again**

The INBOX screen appears after receiving is finished. For details about the subsequent operations, follow Step 2 in “Saving received data”. ◀P286

INFORMATION

- It may take time to receive large data or a large number of data items.

Displaying the PDF data

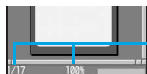
PDF Viewer

View the PDF data saved in *My Document* of Data Box in the FOMA terminal.

- You can also display PDF data saved in the microSD memory card from a PC, etc. To use the microSD memory card from a PC ◀P275

- 1   ► **Highlight a folder** ► 
 - To switch to the folder list of the microSD memory card:  on the folder list screen
 - For operations using the microSD memory card ◀P272

2 Highlight a PDF file ▶



PDF display screen

Status (page No./total pages and display magnification)

- When a password is set for PDF data, enter the password and press .
- When you select the PDF data (with a file type of ) which failed to be downloaded, a confirmation screen appears. If you select *Yes*, downloading starts.
- To download the rest of PDF data (with a file type of ) which was partially saved, press   while the PDF data is displayed. When you try to view a page not downloaded yet, a confirmation screen appears. Select *Yes* to download. (You need to select *Yes* only once. The subsequent pages are downloaded without being asked by the confirmation screen).
-  is displayed on a page where the mark is registered.

■ Terminating the display: ▶ *Yes*

- If the PDF data is changed, a confirmation screen appears. Select *Yes* and press  to save. The original PDF data is overwritten.
- You can save it by pressing   on the PDF display screen as well.

Folders of My Document

Folder	Saved data
<i>i-mode</i>	PDF data acquired by i-mode, Full Browser or i-mode Mail
<i>Preinstalled</i>	PDF data preinstalled by default
<i>Data transfer</i>	PDF data moved/copied from the microSD memory card or received from external devices

- You can create folders. ◀P278

PDF data list screen and available operations

Example Thumbnail display



1 Originated

 : i-mode

 : Preinstalled

 : Data transfer

2 File type

 : Downloaded completely

 : Saved partially

 : Failed to be downloaded

 : With UIM operation restriction

3 File restriction

➡ (blue): Without file restriction

➡ (gray): With file restriction

- In the thumbnail display, PDF files which have not been displayed, have no thumbnail images or have the UIM operation restriction are identified with the same images as the file type icons.

- To change display names ◀P280

■ Switching between thumbnail and title displays:

■ Sending mail with PDF data attached: Highlight a PDF file ▶

The mail composition screen with the PDF file attached is displayed.

- For details about PDF data that can be attached ◀P175

Operations while displaying PDF data

■ Scrolling:

- Hold down the key to scroll continuously.

■ Switching pages:

Page to display	Operation
Previous page	
Next page	
First page	
Last page	
Specified page	   ▶ Enter a page number

■ Changing display magnification:

Function	Operation
Zoom in	[3]
Zoom out	[1]
Show the entire page	[2]
Show in the actual size	[MENU] [6] [2] ▶ [2]
Fit the page to the screen width	[MENU] [6] [2] ▶ [3]
Specify magnification	[MENU] [6] [3] ▶ Enter a magnification

■ Rotating the display: [MENU] [6] [4] ▶ [1] - [3]

- You can also rotate the display 90 degrees clockwise by pressing [7].
- To scroll up and down the pages, press regardless of the page orientation.

■ Switching between the standard and full-screen displays: [X]

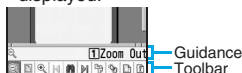
- In the full-screen display, the scroll bar, status and guide row are hidden.
- Set the display items for the standard display: [MENU] [7] in the standard display ▶ Set each item ▶

■ Using the toolbar

①

The toolbar and the guidance are displayed.

- In the full-screen display, no guidance is displayed.



② to highlight an icon ▶

- : Zoom out
- : Zoom In
- : Search
- : Right 90 degrees
- : Display link
- : Capture screen
- : Document information
- : Fit page
- : First page
- : Last page

- You can also select a mark by pressing the key indicating on the Guidance row.
- If you press while the toolbar is selected, the guidance disappears, enabling you to operate PDF data (such as scrolling). Press to select the toolbar again.

- To hide the toolbar: [X]
- While the toolbar is selected, press and then [X].
- To show the hidden tool bar, press [X].

■ Switching the page layout: [MENU] [6] [5] ▶ [1] - [3]

- You can select from *Single page* (each page is displayed), *Continuous* (pages are displayed continuously) and *Continuous-facing* (2 page-spread is displayed).
- The setting is not available for PDF data containing only one page or saved partially.

■ Searching for the character strings:

- When the PDF data is saved partially, searching is made only on the displayed page.

① [5] ▶ Entry field for the character string ▶ Enter the string (up to 16 one-byte or 8 two-byte characters)

- To search for a completely matched word, set the search method to *Exact match*.
- For search operations distinguishing upper/lower case, select *Yes* in *Case-sensitive*.

②

Searching is made and the words matching to entered character strings are highlighted.

- To search the next matching phrase:
- To search the previous matching phrase:
- To end the search: [MENU]

■ Using the link: [8] ▶ Highlight a link item ▶

- While the link display is *ON*, the operation of scrolling or moving the page is unavailable. Perform operation after displaying the link item to use.
- To end the link display: [MENU]

■ Saving page images (Capture screen):

[9]

The content on the current screen is saved in the *Camera* folder of *My Picture* as an image of JPEG format.

- Capturing screen may not be available depending on the PDF data.
- Availability of saved images for output from the FOMA terminal depends on the settings of the original PDF data.

■ **Showing Help:**

- You can press the key to operate while Help appears.

■ **Showing the document information:** **INFORMATION**

- It may take some time to display PDF data.
- If the PDF file includes a style not supported by PDF Viewer or a complicated design, the data may not be displayed properly.

Using bookmarks or marks

Pages can be displayed quickly by selecting bookmarks or marks. There are three types of bookmarks or marks as follows:

Type	Description
Bookmark	These are preset bookmarks and cannot be added, changed or deleted. Some PDF files contain no preset bookmarks.
i-mode bookmark	Can be added later. The description of the page can be registered as the bookmark information. The current display status (magnification, display range and the direction of rotation) is also registered.
Mark	Can be added later in the PDF data as i-mode bookmarks. The information cannot be registered.

- i-mode bookmarks or marks may be preset depending on PDF data.
- i-mode bookmarks or marks can be registered up to 10 items for each (including the number of preset items). Depending on the PDF file, however, fewer i-mode bookmarks or marks can be registered.
- If you view a PDF file on a PC, i-mode bookmarks or marks may not be displayed.

Using bookmarks

-    on the PDF data display screen ▶ **Highlight a bookmark** ▶ 

Using i-mode bookmarks**Registering i-mode bookmarks**

- Display the page to register an i-mode bookmark** ▶    
- Enter the information (up to 128 one-byte or 64 two-byte characters)** ▶ 

Displaying i-mode bookmarks

-     on the PDF data display screen ▶ **Highlight an i-mode bookmark** ▶ 
 - **Editing: Highlight an i-mode bookmark** ▶   ▶ Enter the information ▶ 
 - **Deleting one item: Highlight an i-mode bookmark** ▶    ▶ Yes
 - **Deleting selected items:**    ▶ **Highlight i-mode bookmarks** ▶  ▶  ▶ Yes
 - **Deleting all items:**    ▶ Enter the terminal security code ▶ Yes

Using marks**Registering marks**

- Display the page to register a mark** ▶    
The mark is displayed.

Displaying marks

-     on the PDF data display screen ▶ **Highlight a mark** ▶ 
 - **Deleting one item: Highlight a mark** ▶   ▶ Yes
 - **Deleting selected items:**   ▶ **Highlight marks** ▶  ▶  ▶ Yes
 - **Deleting all items:**   ▶ Enter the terminal security code ▶ Yes

Music Playback

How to play music.....	294
Music Player	294
Saving music data.....	294
Folders and screens of Music Player	296
Playing music data.....	297
Managing or using music data	299
Managing the playlist.....	302
Setting Music Player	Settings 303

Notes on handling of music data

- In this manual, both the Chaku-Uta Full[®] files and the WMA (Windows Media[®] Audio) files are referred to as “music files” or “music data”.
- With the FOMA terminal, you can play WMA files and Chaku-Uta Full[®] files protected by the copyright protection technology.
- Before downloading music files from Internet websites, read carefully the terms and conditions of use (permitted/prohibited acts).
- WMA files protected by the copyright protection technology are played using the information specific to the FOMA terminal. If the FOMA terminal specific information changes because of failure, repair or changing to another model, the existing WMA files may become unplayable.
- DoCoMo assumes no responsibility for handling Copy Control CDs (CCCDs) or failed conversion of music files into WMA files.
- Music files saved in the FOMA terminal and the microSD memory card are for personal use only. You must not infringe on the rights of third parties including copyright and any other intellectual property rights. Music files saved in the FOMA terminal or the microSD memory card must not be copied or moved into other media such as PCs.

How to play music

You can enjoy music on your FOMA terminal in the following two ways:

- Playing music on Music Player

You can play Chaku-Uta Full® music files downloaded from sites and other music files (WMA files) transferred to the microSD memory card from PC.

- Playing music as i-motion ⓂP254, P272

You can play sound-only i-motion files which are obtained in i-mode.

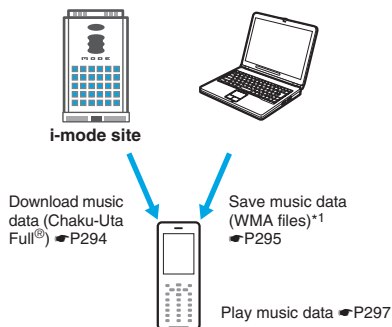
This section explains how to play music on the Music Player.

Music Player

Music Player plays Chaku-Uta Full® downloaded from sites and WMA files obtained from music CDs or Internet websites via the PC.

Get music data (WMA files) from:

- Music CDs
- Internet websites



*1 To save WMA files, the microSD memory card is required.

Background playing

While listening to music with Music Player, you can use the Multitask function to display or create mail or view an i-mode site (Background playing).

- Multitask combinations ⓂP391

- Music may stop for a while depending on the function you use.
- Playing the music may be interrupted if you use multiple functions at the same time.

Saving music data

Downloading Chaku-Uta Full®

- Maximum total size of saved items on the FOMA terminal ⓂP415
- The downloadable size of a Chaku-Uta Full® file is up to 5 Mbytes.

1 Display a site ▶ Highlight a Chaku-Uta Full® file ▶

- To stop downloading: ▶ No

2 Save

- To play and check: **Play**

During playback, the following operations are available:

- Pause/play:
- Adjust the volume:
- Rewind: (for over a second)
- Fast forward: (for over a second)
- To display detail information: **File property**
- To cancel saving: **Back** ▶ No

3 Enter a display name (up to 50 one- or two-byte characters) ▶

- By default, the title name and artist name of the Chaku-Uta Full® file are used as a display name in the form of "title name-artist name".
- When is indicated in the guide row, press and press to save it to the microSD memory card.

INFORMATION

- When there is not enough storage space, or the maximum number of saved items is exceeded, follow the instructions on the screen and delete some.
- If you stop downloading or the network connection breaks while downloading a Chaku-Uta Full® file, the data is saved partially. You can download the file again from Music Player. ⓂP298

Saving WMA files

Download or obtain WMA files to PC from Internet websites or CDs and save them on the microSD memory card. Use Windows Media Player to obtain and save WMA files.

- Maximum number of items that can be saved ➡P268
- To transfer WMA files, use the following versions of Windows Media Player on either Windows XP Service Pack 2 or Windows Vista.
 - For Windows XP Service Pack 2: Windows Media Player 10 (Version 10.00.00.3802 or later) or Windows Media Player 11 (Version 11.0.5721.5145 or later)
 - For Windows Vista: Windows Media Player 11 (Version 11.0.6000.6324 or later)
- Before connecting your PC to the FOMA terminal, be sure to check the version of Windows Media Player.
- The FOMA USB Cable with Charge Function 01 (optional) is required for connecting the FOMA terminal to PC.
- Playlists can be transferred from the PC to the FOMA terminal. The maximum number of WMA files that can be transferred is 400 per playlist.
- WMA files cannot be saved in the FOMA terminal.

1 Save WMA files in a PC using the Windows Media Player

- For details about Windows Media Player, refer to Help of Windows Media Player 10/11.

2 Switch the USB mode setting of the FOMA terminal to the MTP mode

- USB Mode Setting ➡P275
- Change the mode to MTP after inserting the microSD memory card.

■ Switching the mode to MTP while Music Player is active: [MENU] on the folder list screen or music list screen of Music Player ➡MTP mode ➡Yes
The MTP mode is set and Music Player terminates.

- This function is unavailable during playback.

3 Activate the Windows Media Player

4 Connect the FOMA terminal to a PC with the FOMA USB Cable with Charge Function 01

- To connect a PC to the FOMA terminal ➡P276

5 Transfer WMA files from the PC to the microSD memory card of the FOMA terminal using the Windows Media Player

6 Remove the FOMA USB Cable with Charge Function 01 after completion of transfer

- To remove the cable ➡P276

Napster® application

You can use the Napster® application to save music files.

- Download the Napster® application from the web page shown below. You can also access the following web page from the supplied CD-ROM.
<http://www.napster.jp/>
- If you have any questions about the Napster® application, visit the following web page.
<http://www.napster.jp/support/>

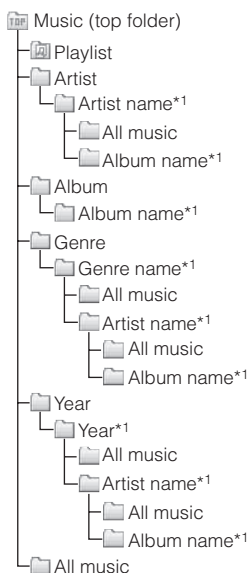
INFORMATION

- It is recommended that Windows XP, Windows Vista and Windows Media Player be updated to the latest versions. Without the latest versions, some problems may occur such as slow operation or display of the transferred WMA files.
- If you use the microSD memory card to which WMA files are transferred by another FOMA terminal, it may not be recognized by a PC even in the MTP mode. Then format the microSD memory card (➡P274). Note that all the data including music files is deleted if you format the microSD memory card.

- Music Player in D705ij does not support AAC format files that can be played by Music Player in D902iS or earlier models of FOMA D Series. However, such files can be played on D705ij if they are saved in the **Other movie** folder of Data Box in the microSD memory card. To save files to the microSD memory card. ➡P278

Folders and screens of Music Player

Folder structure of Music Player



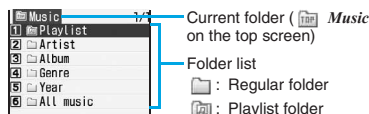
*1 The registered name or year of the music file is used as the folder name. If the name or year has not been registered, a folder named **Unknown artist** or **Unknown year** is displayed.

Description of folders

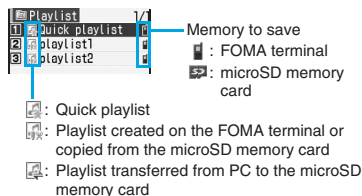
Folder	Description
Music	Top folder of Music Player. The folder list of this folder is displayed when you activate Music Player for the first time or when the information at the end of the previous playing does not exist.
Playlist	Playlists are saved into this folder. ➡P302
Artist/ Album/ Genre/Year	Music files are sorted into folders according to the artist name, album name, genre and year. Selecting a folder displays the music files sorted in it.
All music	All the music data are displayed.

Viewing the Music Player screens

The folder list screen



The playlist list screen



The music list screen

Example Title display



1 Originated

: i-mode : Forwarded from PC

2 Status/replay restriction

- : No restriction
 - : Partially saved
 - : Restricted by the number of times*¹
 - : Restricted by expiration date*¹
 - : Restricted by period*¹
 - (green):
Before the replay expiration date of Uta-hodai*¹
 - (gray):
After the replay expiration date of Uta-hodai or replay prohibited
 - : Replay disabled*¹
- *¹ Displayed only for Chaku-Uta Full®

3 File format and Digital Rights Management (DRM)

- : Chaku-Uta Full®, DoCoMo
- : WMA file, Windows Media Digital Rights Management (WMDRM)
- : WMA file without DRM

4 Memory to save

- : FOMA terminal
- : microSD memory card

5 File restriction

- ▶ (gray): With file restriction
- In the thumbnail display, the jacket images included in the music files are shown. The following images appear depending on the music file.
 - : No jacket image
 - : Partially saved
 - : UIM operation restricted

Switching between the thumbnail and title displays:

The playback screen



1 Artist name

2 Title (Original)

3 Playing status

- : Playing : Playing the intro
- : Pause

4 Repeat play settings ◀P304

- : Play all : Play one

5 Shuffle on/off ▶P304

6 Equalizer settings ▶P304

7 Jacket image

- If no jacket image is included, the preinstalled image is displayed.

8 Volume

9 Play progress bar and the playing time/total playing time

INFORMATION

- The name of a music file on a playlist changes to "..." when you delete the file registered to the playlist of the FOMA terminal or remove the microSD memory card containing the file. When you delete a music file, remove it also from the playlist. When you remove the microSD memory card, reinserting the card makes the registered music name appear again, thus enabling you to play the music.

Playing music data

- Use the optional Flat-plug Stereo Earphone Set. However, you cannot operate Music Player by the switch of the Flat-plug Stereo Earphone Set.
- Chaku-Uta Full® can be played only when you insert the same UIM as used for downloading it from a site. Some Chaku-Uta Full® files cannot be played depending on the FOMA model.

- Note that Music Player consumes a lot of battery power when being used.

1 1

The top screen appears.

- If you stop Music Player while the music file is being played or paused or after pressing  to stop playing, starting Music Player next time will display the playback screen and have the stopped music play from the beginning. If the information at the end of the previous playing does not exist because of turning off and on the power of the FOMA terminal or the like, the top screen appears.

2 Highlight a folder or playlist

3 Highlight a music file to start playing

The music file starts to play.

- The following operations are available.
 - Pause/play: 
 - Adjust the volume: 
 - Return to the beginning of the current music file or return to the previous one: 
 - Move to the next music file: 
 - Rewind:  (for over a second)
 - Fast forward:  (for over a second)
 - Stop playing (return to the list): 

■ Returning to the list without interrupting the playing:

- Select a music file to play the music.
- To move to the next higher-level folder: 
- Pressing  on the top screen stops Music Player.
- To return to the playback screen: 

■ Chaku-Uta Full® file downloaded via Uta-hodai that needs updating the replay expiration date:

"Some data are needed to update replay period. Send phone/terminal and UIM ID, and connect to site?" appears. When you press  (Yes), your FOMA terminal connects to the site to update the expiration date (packet communication fee is required).

- You can also update the expiration date by selecting a Chaku-Uta Full® file and selecting *Yes*.

- The replay expiration date of Uta-hodai may allow for several additional days after the expiration date. During this additional period, you can play Uta-hodai without updating the expiration date. After this period without updating, Chaku-Uta Full® become unplayable. If you download a Chaku-Uta Full® file without updating the expiration date, you cannot play the music before saving it.
- If you insert a UIM different from the one used for downloading a Chaku-Uta Full® file via Uta-hodai, the Chaku-Uta Full® file cannot be played.
- If you use Music Player with a UIM different from the one used for downloading Chaku-Uta Full® (in such a case where you are given a used FOMA terminal), it is recommended to perform Delete All Data. 
- During international roaming, the fee of packet communication to renew the replay expiration date is not included in the Pake-Houdai or Pake-Houdai Full service.

■ When replay restriction (times, date or period) is set:

When the number of playable times has not been exceeded, the confirmation screen shows the remaining playback count and you can play music. Within the playable period or before the expiration date, the music file is played without a confirmation screen.

- Playback is unavailable before the playable period. When the number of playable times, the expiration date or the playable period is exceeded, playback is disabled and a confirmation screen appears. Select *Yes* to delete the Chaku-Uta Full®.
- You can check remaining playback count, expiration date or playable period of a Chaku-Uta Full® file with Detail Info.
- If you change the date/time of the FOMA terminal when the replay expiration date or playable period has passed, playback is still disabled.

■ Downloading the remaining data of a Chaku-Uta Full® file that was partially saved before: Highlight the Chaku-Uta Full® file *Yes*

Music Player stops and downloading starts.

- Partially saved Chaku-Uta Full® files cannot be played.

- If the playable period has expired or the replay expiration date has passed, the remaining data cannot be downloaded. A confirmation screen appears allowing you to delete the selected file.
- If an error that will disable re-downloading is detected, the partially saved Chaku-Uta Full® file may be deleted.

INFORMATION

- The playback stops temporarily, when a call, mail or Message R/F is received (in case Display Priority is set to **Show message**), the time set for the alarm clock or schedule reminder arrives, or Check i-mode Message is performed.
- WMA files transferred in the microSD memory card by another FOMA terminal may not be displayed or played on your D705ij terminal.
- If you use the microSD memory card to which WMA files are transferred by another FOMA terminal, Music Player may not start. You have to format the microSD memory card (P274). Note that all the data including music files is deleted if you format the microSD memory card.
- To enable playing of an WMA file that cannot be played because the replay expiration date was reached or cannot be confirmed, use a PC to check that the file is within the expiration period. Then connect the FOMA terminal to the PC and synchronize them.

Playing continuously only the beginning of music files

Intro Playing

This function sequentially plays only the beginning part (for about 7 seconds) of each music file.

1 Highlight a music file in the music list



The intro playing starts from the selected music file.

- To cancel the intro play mode to play the remaining part, press during intro playing.

Managing or using music data

Moving music files

If the Chaku-Uta Full® file downloaded from a site is compatible with Movable Contents, it can be moved between the FOMA terminal and the microSD memory card.

- Refer to View Detail Info to check whether the music file is movable. P300
- You cannot move the WMA file, partially saved Chaku-Uta file® or Chaku-Uta Full® for which replay restrictions are exceeded.
- This function is unavailable during playback.

Example

Moving music files from the FOMA terminal to microSD memory card

1 Highlight a music file in a music list other than the playlist



- To move selected items: 4 2 2

▶ Highlight music files

- To move all items: 4 2 3

■ Moving from the microSD memory card to the FOMA terminal: Highlight a music file



- To move selected items: 4 1

2 ▶ Highlight music files



- To move all items: 4 1 3

2 Yes

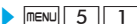
INFORMATION

- If a music file that is set as the ring alert is moved from the FOMA terminal to the microSD memory card, the ring alert setting returns to the default setting.

Deleting music files

- This function is unavailable during playback.

1 Highlight a music file in a music list other than the playlist



- To delete selected items: 5 2 ▶

Highlight music files

- To delete all items: 5 3 ▶ Enter the terminal security code

INFORMATION

- If you delete the music file that is set as ring alert, the ring alert setting returns to the default setting.

Changing the order of music files on the screen

Sort

The order of music files in the music list can be changed.

- This function is unavailable during playback.

1 6 in a music list other than the playlist

2 Set each item

By:

Set the sorting method (the default is *Track number*).

Order:

Set the sorting order of data (the default is *Ascending*).

Setting a music file as ring alert

- Music files can be set as ring alert in two ways: full song ring tone and point ring tone. Full song ring tone enables a whole music file to be set as the ring alert. Point ring tone enables a part of a music to be set as the ring alert.
- WMA files and partially saved music files cannot be set as the ring alert.
- Some music files cannot be set as ring alert, or can only be set as either the full song ring tone or point ring tone. Refer to View Detail Info to check whether the music file can be set as ring alert.
- This function is unavailable during playback.

Example Setting full song ring tone

1 Highlight a music file in the music list

 1  Highlight a type of ring alert



- To set a melody as contact phone alert or contact mail alert, select a party from the phonebook.

■ Setting point ring tone:

Highlight a part of a music file to play



- To play and check the music: Highlight the part to play from the playback position list 

■ Setting a music file of the microSD memory card:

The image varies depending on the setting method and the music file.

- When the confirmation screen appears asking whether to move the music file to the FOMA terminal before setting:

Yes

The music file moves to the FOMA terminal.

- When the confirmation screen appears asking whether to clip the music file as i-motion before setting: *Yes*  Enter the display name 

The part of the music to be set as ring alert is saved in the FOMA terminal (the *i-mode* folder of i-motion) as an i-motion file compatible with Movable Contents.

INFORMATION

- If the Chaku-Uta Full[®] file, which was downloaded via Uta-hodai and set as ring alert, becomes unplayable because the expiration period has expired, the default ring alert sounds.

Viewing/changing detail information

View/Change Detail Info

Viewing detail information

1 Highlight a music file in the music list

 2 

- To switch between the music information, copyright information, file information and availability information: 
- To change the detail information (Chaku-Uta Full[®] file only): 
- Some items of information are different between Chaku-Uta Full[®] and WMA files.
- The track number of the music information indicates the music number and the total number of music files in the album.

- **Music** of the file type indicates Chaku-Uta Full[®] and **Music(subscription)** means Chaku-Uta Full[®] downloaded via Uta-hodai.
- If the file information contains a URL and you want to connect to the site, press on the file information screen and select **Yes**.
- The **Permit** screen allows you to check the availability of following items.

Chaku-Uta Full[®]

Item	Description
<i>File restriction</i>	Whether the music may be transferred from the FOMA terminal
<i>Replay restriction</i>	Details of replay restriction
<i>Full song ring tone</i>	Whether the whole music may be set as the ring alert or the like
<i>Point ring tone</i>	Whether a part of the music may be set as the ring alert or the like
<i>Savable jacket image</i>	Whether the jacket image may be saved to the FOMA terminal
<i>Savable image</i>	Whether the image for the standby display may be saved in the FOMA terminal
<i>Savable lyric</i>	Whether the lyrics may be saved in the FOMA terminal
<i>Moved to the microSD (Moved to the phone)</i>	Whether the music may be moved to the microSD memory card or the FOMA terminal

WMA file

Item	Description
<i>DRM</i>	Whether or not Digital Rights Management is applied

INFORMATION

- While you are overseas, the expiration period of Uta-hodai is indicated by the date of local time. Note that the replay becomes disabled when the expiration date has passed in Japan, regardless of the local time indicated on your FOMA terminal.

Changing detail information

- The detail information of WMA files cannot be changed.
- This function is unavailable during playback.

1 Highlight a music file in the music list ▶

2 2 ▶ Set each item ▶

Display name:

Enter the name to be displayed in the music list (up to 50 one-byte or two-byte characters).

Title:

Enter the title to be displayed on the playback screen (up to 128 one-byte or two-byte characters)

Artist/Album/Genre/Comment:

Up to 128 one-byte or two-byte characters can be entered.

Year/Track number/Total track number:

Enter a 4-digit number.

- When you select **Auto create disp name**, the display name changes to "title name-artist name".
- When you select **Back to original** for each item, the setting returns to the default when the music file was downloaded.

Viewing/saving images and lyrics

If a music file contains an image, you can display the image and save it in the FOMA terminal.

- Images in JPEG and GIF formats can be displayed. The maximum number of images that can be displayed is 1 jacket image, 2 standby display images and 7 images of lyrics.
- Depending on the music file, you cannot save the image.
- For a WMA file, you can view only the jacket image embedded in the data. You cannot save it.
- The image is saved in the *i-mode* folder of My Picture.

1 Highlight a music file in the music list ▶

2 3 ▶ 1 - 3

- If there are multiple images, use to display the previous or next image.
- To display in the full-screen mode: during displaying an image
 - To cancel the full-screen display:
- To save images: during displaying an image

Deleting all WMA files at one time

Delete All WMA files

This function deletes all WMA files and playlists saved in the microSD memory card at a time.

- This function is unavailable during playback.

1 **1** on the top screen ▶ Enter the terminal security code ▶ Yes

INFORMATION

- When you delete all WMA files, the WM folder and the WM_SYSTEM folder of the microSD memory card are deleted together with the data contained. Note that the data not used by Music Player is also deleted.

Managing the playlist

In the playlist, you can register the order of music files to be played. Only the registered music files are played sequentially.

- The maximum number of playlists that can be saved and the maximum number of music files per playlist are shown below.

Memory to save	Maximum number of playlists that can be saved	Maximum number of music files per playlist
FOMA terminal	20	100
microSD memory card	100	400

- You can transfer the playlists created by your PC to the microSD memory card together with music files and save them. ◀P295
- You can play or delete the playlists in the microSD memory card on the FOMA terminal but cannot create or edit them.
- Partially saved music files cannot be added to a playlist.
- Quick playlist is registered to the FOMA terminal by default. You can add the currently played music to the quick playlist with a simple operation. ◀P303

Creating a playlist

- You cannot create a quick playlist.

Creating an empty playlist

- 1** Top screen ▶ Playlist ▶ **1**
- 2** Enter a display name (up to 16 one-byte or 8 two-byte characters) ▶

Creating a playlist after selecting music files to be registered

- 1** Highlight a music file in the music list other than the playlist ▶ **3** **1** **1**
- Registering selected items: **3**
- 1** **2** ▶ Highlight music files ▶
- Registering all files: **3** **1** **3**
- 2** Enter a display name (up to 16 one-byte or 8 two-byte characters) ▶

INFORMATION

- When the number of playlists exceeds the limit, delete playlists according to the instructions on the screen.

Registering music files to a playlist

- This function is unavailable during playback.

- 1** Highlight a music file in the music list other than the playlist ▶ **3** **2**
- 1**
- Registering selected items: **3**
- 2** **2** ▶ Highlight music files ▶
- Registering all files: **3** **2** **3**
- 2** Highlight a playlist to register the music file ▶
- New music files are added to the playlist.

Registering to the quick playlist

You can register the music file being played to the preinstalled quick playlist.

1 (for over a second) on the playback screen

The confirmation sound is heard and the music file is added to the quick playlist.

Editing a playlist

1 Top screen ▶ Playlist

- Changing the playlist name: Highlight a playlist ▶  4 ▶ Enter a display name (up to 16 one-byte or 8 two-byte characters) ▶ 

- You cannot change the display name of the quick playlist.

2 Highlight a playlist ▶

A list of music files in the playlist is displayed.

- If the playlist contains no music file, a confirmation screen appears. To register a music file, select *Yes*, select a folder, select a music file, and press .

3 Edit a playlist

- This function is unavailable during playback.

- Registering a music file:  3 1

1 ▶ Highlight a folder ▶  ▶ Highlight a music file ▶ 

- To register selected files:  3 1

2 ▶ Highlight a folder ▶ 

Highlight music files ▶  ▶ 

- To add all music files:  3 1 3

▶ Highlight a folder ▶  ▶ Highlight music files to exclude ▶  ▶ 

- Unregistering music files from a playlist:

- Only the registration of music files is deleted from the playlist. The saved music files remain.

1 Highlight a music file ▶  3

2 1

- To unregister selected files:  3

2 2 ▶ Highlight music files ▶  ▶ 

- To unregister all files:  3 2

3

2 Yes

- Changing the order of music files:

1  3 3

2 Highlight a music file to move ▶

 or  to move it

3  after the order of files changes

Deleting a playlist

- You cannot delete the quick playlist.
- This function is unavailable during playback.

1 Top screen ▶ Playlist ▶ Highlight a playlist ▶ 3 ▶ Yes

Copying a playlist

1 Top screen ▶ Playlist ▶ Highlight a playlist ▶ 2

- The copied playlist is saved in the FOMA terminal.
- A confirmation screen appears when you copy a playlist from the microSD memory card.
- When you copy the playlist from the microSD memory card, up to 100 information items registered for the music files can be copied.

Setting Music Player

Settings

1 8 in the music list

- To make settings from the music list of a playlist:  5

2 Set each item ▶

- During playing, you cannot change the settings of *Repeat play*, *Shuffle* and *Equalizer*.

Show thumbnails:

Yes: Thumbnail display

No: Title display (default)

Volume:

Set the volume of playing music files (the default is *Level 13*).

Repeat play:

Select from **OFF**, **Play one** and **Play all** (the default is **Play all**).

Shuffle:

Select **ON** to play music files in random order (the default is **OFF**).

Equalizer:

Set the sound effects to apply (the default is **Normal**).

Bass1: Stresses the low-pitched sounds.

Bass2: Makes up for deep bass, which tends to be insufficient when you use the earphone.

Rock, Jazz, Vocal, Classic or Pop: Causes the music to play according to the setting suitable for each genre.

In-a-train: Reduces sound leaks when you are listening through the earphone.

Other Convenient Functions

Multiaccess	306
Multitask	306
Turning power on/off automatically at the specified time	Auto Power ON/OFF 307
Alerting with alarms after the specified time period has passed	Timer 307
Ringing the alarm clock at the set time	Alarm Clock 308
Turning power on automatically at the time specified for the alarm	Alarm Auto Power ON 309
Managing schedules	Scheduler 310
Registering often-used functions	Custom Menu 316
Using Speed Menu	Speed Menu 319
Registering your own name and mail address	Own Number 320
Recording the voice and image	Voice Memo/Movie Memo 321
Checking the call duration and the call cost	Call Duration/Call Cost 322
Resetting the call cost automatically	Reset Call Cost 323
Setting to notify the limit of call cost	Call Cost Limit 324
Using Calculator	Calculator 324
Composing notes	Notepad 325
Using electronic dictionaries	327
Enlarging complex characters	Dekanji 328
Using the Earphone/Microphone with Switch	Earphone/Microphone with Switch 328
Reducing the start-up time after power-on	Quick Start-up 330
Checking current settings of functions	Confirm Settings 330
Resetting functions	Reset 330
Deleting registered data collectively	Delete All Data 331

Multiaccess

Multiaccess is a function that 3 functions (the voice call, packet communication, SMS) can be used at the same time.

- The icons for the functions in progress are displayed on the task bar.
- The following functions can be used simultaneously:
 - Voice call: 1 line
 - i-mode, i- α ppli, i-mode Mail or packet communication with PC connected: 1 line
 - SMS: 1 line
- Multiaccess combinations $\blacktriangleleft$ P390

INFORMATION

- During Multiaccess you are charged separately for each communication.

Operations available during Multiaccess

Receiving a voice call during communication

Example Receiving a voice call during i-mode

- 1 A voice call arrives during i-mode**
 - The screen displayed when a voice call is received depends on Priority Comm Mode.

- 
 - To end the call:  in the talking screen
 - To quit the site display:  $\blacktriangleright$ Switch to the site screen $\blacktriangleright$  $\blacktriangleright$ Yes

Performing communication during a voice call

Example Connecting to i-mode during a voice call

-  **during a voice call** $\blacktriangleright$  
 - To quit the site display:  in the site screen $\blacktriangleright$ Yes
 - To end the call:  $\blacktriangleright$ Switch to the talking screen $\blacktriangleright$ 



New Task menu

Example

Sending i-mode Mail during a voice call

-  **during a voice call** $\blacktriangleright$  

When transmission of i-mode Mail is completed, the talking screen returns.

- To quit the mail composition:  in the mail composition screen
- To end the call:  $\blacktriangleright$ Switch to the talking screen $\blacktriangleright$ 

Multitask

Multitask allows you to execute several functions at the same time and perform operations by switching screens.

- The icons for the functions in progress are displayed on the task bar.
- Up to 2 functions can be performed simultaneously. In some cases, the function of *Dial*, *Own number* or *Silent mode ON/OFF* can be activated even when 2 other functions are already active.
- Some functions may be restricted or unable to start simultaneously with one another.
- Multitask combinations $\blacktriangleleft$ P391

Executing a new function

Example

Displaying a schedule during a voice call

-  **during a voice call** $\blacktriangleright$  

2 View a schedule

- To quit the schedule:  in the schedule screen
- To end the call:  $\blacktriangleright$ Switch to the talking screen $\blacktriangleright$ 

INFORMATION

- If many functions are executed at once, for example, a mail arrives while movie/i-motion or music data is being played or camera is operated, the image displayed on the screen may not appear smoothly or the sound may be disrupted during play.

Switching functions to operate

Pressing while you are using multiple functions, the *Switch Task* menu appears, which allows you to switch screens and perform your desired operation.

Example Switching to the mail composition screen during a voice call

1 during a voice call ▶ Compose message



Switch Task menu

- To return to the talking screen: ▶

Phone

- You can start a new function by pressing in the *Switch Task* menu to display the *New Task* menu.

Quitting all running operations at once

1 during Multitask ▶ Yes

Turning power on/off automatically at the specified time

Auto Power ON/OFF

Example Setting Auto Power ON

1 8 6 1 2

■ Setting Auto Power OFF:

8 6 1 3

2 Set each item ▶

Auto power ON:

Set or cancel Auto Power ON.

Time:

Set the time to automatically turn the power on.

- Enter the time in the 24-hour clock. For single-digit hours or minutes, precede the digit with a zero (0).

Repeat:

- Set Auto Power ON to repeat every day.

INFORMATION

- Even if Auto Power OFF is set to *ON*, when the specified time arrives while the FOMA terminal is in any mode except standby, the power is not turned off. The power is turned off after the running function completes each job. However, if the specified time arrives while the terminal security code entry screen is displayed following the standby display or the PIN1 code or PIN2 code entry screen is displayed when the FOMA terminal is turned on, the power is turned off.
- Set Auto Power ON to *OFF* in areas where mobile phone use is prohibited, such as in hospitals, medical facilities and airplanes.

Alerting with alarms after the specified time period has passed

Timer

1 Enter time period ▶ or 1

The countdown screen of the timer appears and countdown starts.

- Enter the period from 1 to 60 minutes. For 1 to 9 minutes, do not enter the preceding a zero (0).
- Countdown continues even if a call arrives or is pressed to start another function during countdown.
- If you press or during countdown, a confirmation screen appears asking whether to stop countdown. Countdown continues even while the confirmation screen is displayed.

After the specified time has passed

1 The alarm sounds



The alarm (アラーム・メロディ (Alarm, melody)) sounds at the volume set for the alarm clock volume, and the key flashes. When the vibrator is set for the alarm clock sound in Vibrator, the alarm conforms to the setting.

2 to stop the alarm

The standby display reappears.

- Also the alarm stops when 1 minute has passed without any operation or any key other than  or  is pressed.

Alarm indication while another function is being used

Function	Alarm indication
During a call	A warning tone sounds. The keys do not flash and the vibrator does not vibrate.
On-hold	The above operation takes place after the end of the on-hold state.
During data transfer*1, while a call dialing, calling, receiving or terminating	The alarm is issued after the operations mentioned on the left.

*1 Receiving/sending by packet communication is excluded.

Ring the alarm clock at the set time

Alarm Clock

Setting the alarm clock time and sound

- Up to 9 alarms can be set.

1  7 3  1 -  9

- For the alarm to sound,  is displayed on the left of the title.

■ **Canceling:** Highlight a title from the alarm clock list 

2 Set each item

Time:

Enter the time when an alarm sounds.

Repeat:

Select the repeat setting.

None: The alarm sounds once.

Every day: The alarm sounds every day.

Day of week: Select *Day/Week* to select the days of the week and press .

Title:

Up to 14 one-byte or 7 two-byte characters can be entered.

Snooze:

Set whether to repeat Snooze operation (the alarm sounds and stops) for 30 minutes.

ON: The alarm sounds for 1 minute and pauses for 4 minutes.

3 to switch to Set sound screen ▶ Set each item

Alarm sound:

Set the alarm clock sound at the set time.

- When *i-motion*, *Melody* or *Music* is selected, set the alarm clock sound. Setting music data 

- To play and check a melody or movie/ *i-motion* when selecting 

Phone setting: The alarm sound conforms to *Alarm clock sound* in Sound Setting.

Volume:

Set the volume.

Phone setting: The alarm volume conforms to the setting of Adjust Volume.

4 to switch to Set others screen ▶ Set each item

Vibrate alert:

Set the vibration used at the set time.

Select: Select a vibrator type.

Phone setting: The vibration conforms to the setting of Vibrator Setting.

Lighting:

Set whether to light the keys when the set time arrives.

Lighting pattern:

Set the lighting pattern of the key for the set time.

Select: Select a lighting pattern.

Phone setting: The lighting pattern conforms to the setting of Light Alert Setting.

5 or (when a schedule alarm is also set) is displayed on the standby display.

INFORMATION

- If you delete the data specified as an alarm clock sound, *Phone setting* is assumed.

When the set time comes

1 The alarm clock rings



The alarm clock operates according to the settings. If movie/i-motion is set for the alarm clock, it is displayed.

- For alarm indication while another function is being used ●P308

2 to stop the alarm

■ When Snooze is set to ON:

When the set time comes



- Leave the alarm clock ringing for 1 minute
- Press any keys other than  or 

Snooze operation starts
(The alarm sound stops)

Return to the
screen before
ringing

- When you receive a call while the alarm clock is ringing, the snooze operation starts.

■ When Snooze is set to OFF:

When the set time comes



- Leave the alarm clock ringing for 1 minute
- Press any keys other than  or 

The alarm sound
stops

Return to the
screen before
ringing

- When you receive a call while the alarm clock is ringing, the alarm sound stops.

When alarm clock does not ring at the set time

- When All Lock or Personal Data Lock is activated, the alarm clock does not ring.
- If an alarm clock and a schedule alarm are set for the same date and time, the alarm clock operates first and then the schedule alarm follows it. After the schedule alarm operation finishes, the snooze operation continues when you set the snooze of the alarm clock to ON. When you set it to OFF, the screen continues to be displayed as the alarm clock sound stops.

Turning power on automatically at the time specified for the alarm

Alarm Auto Power ON

Set the power to turn on automatically and the schedule alarm or alarm clock sound to operate in case the power is turned off when the date and time set in Scheduler or Alarm Clock arrives.

1

 8 6 1 5  1 or 2

INFORMATION

- Set this function to **OFF** in areas where mobile phone use is prohibited, such as in hospitals, medical facilities and airplanes.
- This function and PIN1 Code ON/OFF have been set to **ON**, the power is turned on and the alarm sounds before displaying the PIN1 code entry screen when the set date and time for an alarm clock or schedule alarm arrives. When stopping the alarm, the PIN1 code entry screen appears.

Managing schedules

Scheduler

Registered schedule such as your work is notified by display or alarm when the set time comes.

Displaying the calendar

1 [Item Icon] (for over a second)

The date is displayed in pink for the current day, blue for Saturday, and red for Sunday and national holidays (The color depends on the setting of Color Scheme).



Item icon

Calendar screen

- For a day with multiple schedules set, the item icon for the earliest schedule is indicated. Even if the time of the item set at the earliest time of the day passes, the item icon does not change.
- Press [Left Arrow] to move to another date. Pressing [Right Arrow] displays the day view screen.
- To switch between the previous or next month: [Left Arrow] or [Right Arrow]
- The calendar appears as the display format which quit the last time.

■ Specifying a day to display: [MENU] [4] [2] in the calendar screen ▶

Enter the year, month and day

- To return to today: [MENU] [4] [1]
- On the day view screen: [MENU] [5] [2] (To return to today: [MENU] [5] [1])

INFORMATION

- The national holidays on the calendar are based on the law to amend the part of the Law Concerning National Holidays and the Elder Law (law no. 43, 2005). However, the Vernal Equinox Day and Autumnal Equinox Day may be different from the date in a calendar because they are based on the announcement from an official gazette on February 1 of the previous year (as of December 2007).
The above law went into effect on January 2007, however, the date and the name of some national holidays and substitute holidays before the end of 2006 are displayed as they are displayed after amendment to the law.
- The calendar can display dates between January 1, 2000 and December 31, 2060.

Setting display style for the calendar

Calendar View Mode

1 Display the calendar screen ▶ [MENU] [6] [1] ▶ Set each item ▶ [Item Icon]

Scroll mode:

Set the calendar display mode when you move between dates by pressing [Left Arrow] or [Right Arrow].

Monthly mode: Switch the display every month.

Slide mode: Scroll the screen for each week.

Display mode:

Set the beginning of the week.

Normal mode: Set Sunday.

Business mode: Set Monday.

Setting days off

Day Off Setting

You can set days off by specifying the date or day of the week.

- The maximum number of items that can be registered (by specifying dates) ◀P416

Example Setting days off by specifying dates

1 Display the calendar screen ▶ Highlight the date ▶ [MENU] [6] [2] [1]

The color of the date set to a day off changes.

- To set a day off to be repeated yearly: Highlight the date to set to days off ▶

[MENU] [6] [2] [2]

■ Canceling: Highlight the day to cancel Day Off Setting

- To cancel all: 6 2 3

■ Setting days off by specifying the day of the week:

- 6 3 1 - 7

- Reset** is indicated in the guide row when a day of the week other than Sunday is selected or the selection of Sunday is canceled. Pressing restores the default setting.

-

- If you register the calendar without selecting the day of the week, it returns to the default state.

Setting national holidays Holiday Setting

- The maximum number of items that can be registered

1 Display the calendar screen

■ Changing: Highlight the holiday

- Go to Step 3

■ Deleting: Highlight the holiday

- Yes**
- You cannot delete holidays set by default.

2

3 Set each item

Holiday:

Enter the holiday name (up to 22 one-byte or 11 two-byte characters).

- You cannot change the holiday name set by default.

Mark on calendar:

Set **ON** or **OFF** for displaying the holiday.

ON: The date set as holiday is displayed in the same color as other holidays on the calendar screen and its name is displayed beside year and month when highlighted. In the day view screen, and the name of the holiday is displayed.

Date:

Enter a date to set as a holiday.

- To change the date of holiday set by default, select **Change** and enter the date.

Registering the schedule

- You can register multiple schedules for a day.
- The maximum number of items that can be registered

1 (for over a second)

2 Highlight the date to register the schedule

- In the day view screen, press as well.

3 Set each item

Settings	Main(New)	Select
Schedule		
All day		OFF
Start time		
	2008/05/20(Tue)	10:00
End time		
	2008/05/20(Tue)	10:00
Note		

(Item icon):

- Select an icon.
- The selected icon is indicated in the schedule heading.

Schedule (Description input column):

The description for the selected icon is displayed. Change the description as required (up to 200 one-byte or 100 two-byte characters).

- The entered description is not changed if you replace the icon by another after changing the description.

All day:

Set the schedule as a day long event without specifying the time.

ON: The time and date display of the schedule is marked with **AllDay** on the day view screen. If **ON** is set for the long-term schedule, the date is followed by **AllDay**.

- The alarm operates at 00:00 on the set date for the schedule with **All day** set to **ON**.

Start time:

Enter a start date and time.

- You can set dates up to December 31, 2060.
- You cannot set the time if you set **All day** to **ON**.

End time:

Enter an end date and time.

- If you set this later than the start date (Long-term schedule),  is displayed at the upper right of the date set on the calendar screen.  appears under the item icon on the day view or schedule details screen as well.

Note:

Enter schedule details (up to 600 one-byte or 300 two-byte characters).

4 to switch to **Select members screen**

5 <Select member list> **Highlight members to register**

- Up to 5 members can be registered. You can make a call and send mail.
- The first phone number, mail address and URL in each phonebook entry are registered.

 **Deleting: Highlight the member** 

6 to switch to **Reminder screen** **Set each item**

Alarm on time (Schedule alarm):

Set whether to sound an alarm.

- If you select *Yes* and select *i-motion*, *Melody* or *Music*, set the alarm sound. Setting music data 
- To play and check a melody or movie/i-motion when selecting 
- If you select *Yes* and *Phone setting*, the alarm conforms to the setting of schedule reminder in Sound Setting.

Alarm in advance:

Set whether to sound an alarm before the start time.

- The alarm sound selection method is the same as for *Alarm on time*.

Alarm before time:

Set how many minutes before the start date and time to sound an alarm.

7 to switch to **Other settings screen** **Set each item**

Repeat:

Set the details of the repeating schedule.

None: The schedule alarm is activated only once.

Day of week: Select *Day/Week* field. And select a day of the week to sound the alarm, then press .

- When you set a 31st day or February 29 in a leap year as the schedule starting date and *Every month* or *Every year* is set in the repeat setting, the schedule repeating date becomes the last day for the month without the specified date (that is, 30th or February 28).

- When you set a repeat for the schedule (Repeat schedule),  is displayed at the upper right of the date set on the calendar screen. However, the item icon appears only on the first repeating date on the calendar. Also,  appears under the item icon on the day view and schedule details screens.

Image:

Set the image to be displayed on the schedule alarm screen.

Yes: Select *Image*, and then select an image. Flash movies cannot be set for images.

No: The default image is displayed.

8

- When a schedule set with an alarm or advance alarm is registered,  or  (when an alarm clock is also set) is indicated on the standby display.

Registering a schedule from the standby display

1 Enter the date and time (8 digits) to register schedule

The registration screen is displayed.

Example: For 3 p.m. on May 20: Enter "05201500"

- If you enter only hour and minute in 4 digits without the date, the current date is assumed. However, if you enter hour and minute earlier than the current time, the next day is assumed.

2 Register the schedule

- Follow the procedure from Step 3 in "Registering the schedule". ➡P311

INFORMATION

- If you delete the data specified as a schedule alarm or alarm in advance (movie/i-motion, melody or music), *Phone setting* is assumed.

When the set time comes

1 The alarm sounds



Schedule alarm screen

The schedule alarm operates according to the settings. If an image or movie/i-motion is set for the schedule alarm, it is displayed. If created animation is set for the image, the first frame is displayed.

2 [Stop] to stop the alarm

- The alarm stops when 1 minute has passed without any operation or any key other than [Stop] or [On] is pressed.
- When multiple schedules are set for the same date and time, you can check other schedules by [List] after stopping the alarm.
- Press [List] after the alarm stops and then schedule details screen appears. You can change the contents of the schedule. Follow Step 3 in "Checking the schedule". ➡P314
- For alarm indication while another function is being used ➡P308
- The schedule does not operate when Privacy Mode is on (with *Schedule* set to *Authorized access*). When Secret Attribute is set, you need to set Secret Mode to enable the schedule. If the schedule alarm is not issued at the set date/time in any cases other than the above, see "When alarm clock does not ring at the set time". ➡P309

INFORMATION

- The alarm sounds at the volume set by Adjust Volume.
- Lighting or vibrator is operated according to Light Alert Setting or Vibrator Setting respectively.
- An alarm in advance, when set, sounds before the schedule start time.

Setting defaults for the schedule alarm

Reminder Option

- If you change the defaults, it may not affect the settings of the registered schedules.

1 Display the calendar screen [MENU] [6] [5] ▶ Set each item [On]

Set by scheduler:

Set the default values for the schedule alarm in registering schedules on the calendar screen (the default is *Alarm: Yes*).

Set by quick-schedule:

Set the default for the schedule alarm in registering schedules from the standby display (the default is *Alarm: Yes*).

Checking the schedule

1 Display the calendar screen

■ Displaying schedules for the specific item only (Display by type):

① [MENU] [3] [2] on the calendar screen

To show all items: [MENU] [3] [1]

On the day view screen:

[MENU] [4] [2]

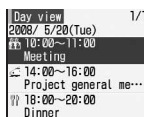
To restore the all items display:

[MENU] [4] [1]

② Select an item icon

The selected item icon appears on the upper right of the calendar screen and the day view screen. Only the schedules for which the icon is set are displayed.

2 Highlight the date of the schedule [List] [On]



Day view screen

- Pressing [List] on the day view screen switches dates.

3 Highlight the schedule ▶

Settings	Details	Member
Meeting		
Start time		
2008/ 5/20(Tue) 10:00		
End time		
2008/ 5/20(Tue) 11:00		
Note		

Details screen

■ Changing:

- 1 on the schedule details screen
 - On the day view screen: Highlight a schedule ▶
- 2 Change the schedule data ▶ ▶

Yes

INFORMATION

- If the displayed schedule contains phone numbers, mail addresses and URLs, Phone To (AV Phone To), Mail To and Web To functions can be used.

Copying/Pasting schedules

- When a long-term or repeat schedule is copied and pasted, the entire schedule is pasted in all the corresponding days.
- The copied schedule is retained until Scheduler is ended and can be pasted any number of times. However, only one item can be saved and copying new schedule overwrites the retained item.

1 Display the calendar screen ▶ Highlight the date of the schedule ▶

2 Highlight the schedule ▶

3

4 Highlight the date to paste the schedule to ▶

- On the day view screen, press .

Composing mail

Schedules can be sent as a mail message.

- The number of schedule items that can be sent depends on the screen operated.

○: Available ×: Unavailable

Sending type \ Screen	Send selected item	Send selected day/ Send all*1
Calendar screen	×	○
Day view screen	○	○
Details screen	○	×

*1 All the schedules (including past schedules).

- Schedules are entered to a mail message by the Date To format. ➡P326
- If schedule data exceeds the mail message capacity, the excessive part will be deleted.
- When schedules are displayed in the display mode by type, only the displayed items are inserted in the mail message.
- To send schedules with Secret Attribute set, set Secret Mode on.

Example Sending a schedule from the day view screen

1 Display the day view screen ▶ Highlight the schedule to send ▶

- To send one day schedule:
- To send all the schedules:
- On the calendar screen: ▶ or
- On the schedule details screen:

Attaching the schedule data to the mail

You can send the mail attaching one schedule.

- You cannot perform the same operation from the calendar screen.

Example When attaching the schedule data on the day view screen

1 Display the day view screen ▶ Highlight the schedule to send ▶

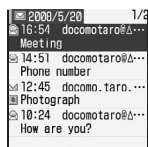
- On the schedule details screens:

Searching mail

You can search mail sent and received on the schedule.

Example Searching for received mail on the calendar screen

1 Display the calendar screen ▶ Highlight the date to search ▶ 8 2 1



- To display sent mail:  8 2 2
- To display received mail on the day view screen:  7 2 1
- To display sent mail:  7 2 2
- How to view received/sent mail ◀ P186
- To cancel mail search:  0

Deleting schedules

- The number of items that can be deleted depends on the screen operated.

○: Available ×: Unavailable

Deleting type \ Screen	Selected item	One day/ Before date/ Delete all
Calendar screen	×	○
Day view screen	○	○
Details screen	○	×

- If a long-term or repeat schedule is deleted, the schedule is deleted from all the days that include the long-term or repeat schedule in addition to the selected day. Even when *Before date* is selected, if a long-term schedule includes the day before, all days of the schedule after the selected date are also deleted.

Example Deleting a schedule on the day view screen

1 Display the day view screen ▶ 3

2 1 - 3

- When *One day* or *Before date* is selected if the long-term schedule including the selected date is registered, a confirmation screen appears asking whether to delete the long-term schedule too.

■ Deleting all: 4 ▶ Enter the terminal security code

- If you delete the schedules without setting to Secret Mode, schedules with Secret Attribute set will not be deleted.

3 Yes

INFORMATION

- On the calendar screen:  ▶ *Delete* ▶ *One day, Before date or Delete all*
- On the details screen:  ▶ *Delete entry*
- To delete a long-term or repeat schedule: Display the day view screen ▶ Highlight a long-term or repeat schedule ▶  ▶ *Delete* ▶ *Selected item*

Using the member list

Make calls or compose i-mode Mail by selecting a member from the member list recorded in a schedule.

1 Display the calendar screen ▶ Highlight the date of the schedule ▶

2 Highlight the schedule ▶ ▶ to display the member list screen



Recorded members

The first phone number, mail address and URL of the selected member

- For members with Secret Attribute set, the name and detail information are masked with “*” unless Secret Mode is on. When Privacy Mode is activated (with *Authorized access* set for *PHbook/Logs/Choku-den*), the name and detail information of all members are also masked with “*”.

3 Use the phonebook data

- **Making a voice/videophone call:**
Highlight a member ▶ for a voice call or for a videophone call

- **Composing i-mode Mail: Highlight a member** ▶

The mail address of the selected member is set for the receiver and the schedule is saved in the message by the Date To format.

- Press 5 2 to send i-mode Mail to all the members.

- **Displaying a site: Highlight a member** ▶ 6 ▶ Yes

- To display the site in Full Browser, press after 6.

INFORMATION

- To use the second or subsequent phone number and mail address registered in the phonebook data, select a member from the member list screen to display the phonebook details screen. You can make a call or compose i-mode Mail by highlighting the phone number or mail address. Note that, if i-mode Mail is composed from the phonebook details screen, the schedule is not entered in the message and the Date To function cannot be used.
- When you press on the member list screen, the member selection screen appears enabling you to add or delete members.
- When you make a call in the dual mode of 2in1, the screen to select the number for the call may appear. Select *Number A* or *Number B*.

Protecting secret schedules Secret Attribute

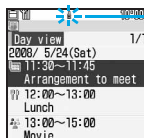
Once Secret Attribute is set, data can be displayed only in Secret Mode.

- Secret Attribute cannot be set or canceled when Secret Mode is not set.

1 Activate Secret Mode

- 2 (for over a second) on the standby display ▶ **Highlight the date of the schedule** ▶

3 Highlight the schedule ▶ 9



blinks when Secret Attribute is set for the highlighted schedule.

- To cancel: Highlight the schedule with Secret Attribute set ▶ 9
- To set or cancel on the schedule details screen: 6

INFORMATION

- Secret Attribute is automatically set for schedules registered while Secret Mode is on.

Checking the number of registered schedule items

Check No. of Items

1 Display the calendar screen ▶ 7

INFORMATION

- The number of registered items includes the schedules to which Secret Attribute is set.

Registering often-used functions

Custom Menu

In addition to the normal menu displayed by default by pressing , you can create your own menu by registering the functions you often use and menu items like phonebook data.

Reading a template

- The 4 types of preset templates are provided.
- When a template is read, all custom menu items are replaced.
- After reading a template, you can add, delete or replace menu items.

1

- When *Custom* is set for *Default MENU* in Menu Setting: on the standby display

2 [MENU] 7 1 ▶ 1 - 4

Standard:

Alarm clock, Dictionaries, Calculator, Notepad, Receive Ir data, Movie camera, Bar code reader, Dekanji, 2in1 mode switching

Data/Security:

My Picture, i-motion, My Document, Music, microSD, Privacy mode setting, Key lock timer, Lock/Unlock, IC card lock setting

User data:

Phonebook, Access Data Center, microSD, Bookmark, Scheduler, Notepad, Save word, Save phrase, Memory status

Customize:

Style theme, Image/i-appli, Machi-chara setting, Call ring alert, Font size, Call alert volume, Listen volume, Info/calendar layout, Clock display format

3 Enter the terminal security code ▶ Yes

A template is read and set in the custom menu.

- When all menu items in the custom menu have been deleted, the template is read after the terminal security code is entered.

Creating the custom menu

- Up to 9 menu items can be registered in the custom menu.

1 Display the custom menu

- Follow Step 1 in "Reading a template".
☛P316
- When you newly register all menu items, delete all the existing items in the custom menu before adding new items. To delete all ☛P319

2 Add menu items

- When you attempt to overwrite a group, a confirmation screen appears. Selecting *Yes* deletes all menu items in the group.
- Delete items before adding menu items.
☛P318

- To select, overwrite or delete *2in1 mode switching* in the preset templates (Standard), you need to subscribe to the 2in1 service and activate the 2in1 function (☛P351). In case that you do not subscribe to the 2in1 service and change menu items, read another templates or delete all items before adding new items.

■ Registering people:

① Highlight a menu item to overwrite

▶ [MENU] 2 1

- To add an item: [MENU] 1 1

② Highlight the person to register ▶



- When the phonebook data with no image or the phonebook data that contains Flash movie or movie/i-motion is registered in the custom menu, a pre-registered icon is displayed on the menu screen.

■ Registering functions:

① Highlight a menu item to overwrite

▶ [MENU] 2 2

- To add an item: [MENU] 1 2
- The screen for selecting functions is displayed in the format of the normal menu set in Menu Setting. However, when the normal menu is set to *Animation*, *Simple display* or *Kisekake tool*, *Tile display* is applied. However, *Simple display* cannot be selected in English display.

② Highlight the menu item to register

▶ []

- A menu item that does not have a lower level can be registered by pressing a key corresponding to the item number or by selecting the menu item.

■ Registering groups:

Create group folders.

① Highlight a menu item to overwrite

▶ [MENU] 2 3

- To add an item: [MENU] 1 3

② Enter a group name (up to 18 one-byte or 9 two-byte characters) ▶



■ Registering into a group:

① Highlight a group ▶

- When items are already registered in the group, the menu items in the group are displayed. Highlight an item to overwrite or add a new item.

② Phonebook entry, Function or Group ▶

Register an item

The item is added to the group and all the menu items in that group are displayed.

- On the third level menu, you cannot create a group.

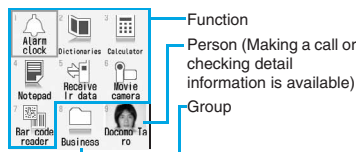
③ Add other menu items

Using the custom menu

You can execute functions registered in the custom menu, and also make a call to a person registered in it.

Example Executing functions

1 Display the custom menu ▶ Select the menu item



■ Operation for a person you selected: Highlight a person ▶ Press keys listed below

Operations	Keys
Making a voice call*1, *2	/ = [1]
Making a videophone call*1, *2	/ = [1]
Composing i-mode mail*1	/ = [2]
Composing SMS*1	(for over a second) / = [3]
Displaying a site*3	= [4] ▶ Yes
Displaying a phonebook details screen	= [5]

*1 When several phone numbers or mail addresses are registered, the phonebook details screen appears. Highlight a phone number or mail address and press .

*2 Press = [1], then the screen for setting Call Option appears. ▶ P50

*3 To display the site in Full Browser, press after = [4].

To execute registered functions quickly

A function registered in the first level of the custom menu can be started by holding down [1] - [9] for over a second on the standby display. However, when the menu item is a person, group or a menu that has submenus, the function is not activated.

INFORMATION

- For a person with Secret Attribute set in the phonebook, the name is displayed as “* * * *” unless Secret Mode is on. is displayed for the icon.
- Persons cannot be selected when Personal Data Lock or Privacy Mode is on (with *Authorized access* set for *PHbook/Logs/Choku-den*). The icon changes to and the name of the person is displayed as “* * * *”.
- When Secret Attribute is set together with Personal Data Lock or Privacy Mode (with *PHbook/Logs/Choku-den* set to *Authorized access*), the phone operations and icon display are the same as for Personal Data Lock or Privacy Mode.
- When you make a call in the dual mode of 2in1, the screen to select the number for the call may appear. Select *Number A* or *Number B*.

Editing the custom menu

1 Display the custom menu ▶ Highlight a menu item

2 Perform each operation

- Rearranging menu items:** [4] ▶ Highlight the destination item ▶
- Changing icons:** [5] ▶ Highlight an icon ▶
 - To restore the icon: [5] ▶
- Changing group names:** [6] ▶ Enter the group name ▶
- Deleting menu items:** [3] ▶ Yes
 - When the group is deleted, menu items in the group are also deleted.

Deleting all items in the custom menu

This operation is performed to create a new custom menu.

1 Display the custom menu 7

2 Enter the terminal security code

▶ Yes

- Pressing  displays the item selection screen.

Using Speed Menu

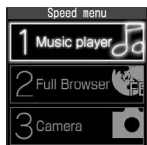
Speed Menu

Speed Menu allows you to select and get started quickly the functions below. You can use voice command or the keypad to select the function.

- Music Player
- Full Browser
- Camera
- You address the voice command of Speed Menu with Japanese keywords in the Japanese display. Switch to Japanese display before performing these operations.

Selecting the function using the keypad

1



Keypad input screen

Speed Menu is displayed.

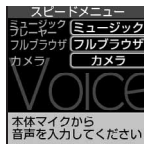
- To select the function by voice:  Follow Step 2 in "Selecting the function using the voice command".
▶P319

2 1 - 3

Each function is started.

Selecting the function using the voice command

1 (for over a second)



Voice command input screen

Speed Menu is displayed.

- To start the functions by the keypad:  Follow Step 2 in "Selecting the function using the keypad".
▶P319

2 Say the keyword in Japanese to select the function within 5 seconds

Here is information on the keywords to select the function by using voice command and the operations after the keywords are recognized.

Function	Keyword	Operation
ミュージックプレーヤー (Music Player)	オンガク (ongaku), ミュージック (myujikku), オンガクサイセイ (ongakusaisei), オンガクサイセー (ongakusaise), ミュージックプレーヤー (myujikkupureya), チャクウタフル (chakuutafuru)	Music Player is started. ▶P297
フルブラウザ (Full Browser)	ブラウザ (burauza), フルブラウザ (furburauza), ウェブ (webu), ウェブ (webbu)	The home page registered by Home URL is displayed.*1 ▶P240
カメラ (Camera)	カメラ (kamera), サツエイ (satsuei), サツエー (satsue), カメラサツエイ (kamerasatsuei), カメラサツエー (kamerasatsue)	Still Camera is activated. ▶P126

*1 When No is set for Access Setting, the screen for Access Setting appears.

- To cancel voice command: 

- When English display is set in Select Language, the keypad input screen is displayed instead of the voice command input screen if you press  for over a second.
- When **Headset microphone** is set for Microphone Setting and the Flat-plug Earphone/Microphone with Switch (optional) is connected, the voice is sent through only the microphone of the FOMA terminal on the voice command input screen.
- When you do not say the keyword in a quiet environment, the message, “もう一度静かな場所で音声を入力してください。(Please try again to verify voiceprint in a quiet place)” is displayed. When voice command is not recognized correctly, the message appears. Press  and say it again.
- Hold the FOMA terminal within 10 cm in front of your face or close to your ear and mouth in the same way as an usual call.
- The voice command may not be recognized in a noisy environment. You should say to the FOMA terminal closer.
- Say clearly and carefully in a natural tone. Too slow, quick, small or big voice will be unrecognizable.
- You should not cough, haw, click your tongue or breathe to the FOMA terminal during a voice command operation.
- Make sure not to put your hand over the microphone.
- You need to keep talking and avoid silence during a voice command.

Registering your own name and mail address

Own Number

1  0

Own number
Name
My phone number
090XXXXXXXXX
Mail address

- **My phone number** shows the phone number of the UIM inserted in the FOMA terminal.

2 Enter the terminal security code

Set each item

Edit own number	1/2
(Name)	
(Reading)	
(Select/Shoot image)	
090XXXXXXXXX	
(Phone number)	
(Mail address)	
(Birthday)	

- Press  to switch pages.

- For the setting procedure for each item, follow Step 3 in “Registering entries into the FOMA terminal phonebook”.  P69 Note that phonebook No. and group cannot be set.
- The subscribed terminal phone number (**My phone number**) is displayed in the first phone number location. It cannot be changed.

INFORMATION

- Changing the mail address in Own Number does not change your i-mode Mail address. Similarly, changing your i-mode Mail address does not change the mail address in Own Number. For details on how to check and change an i-mode Mail address, refer to “Mobile Phone User’s Guide [i-mode] FOMA version”.
- Your phone number (**My phone number**) is registered in the UIM. If you enter other items, they will be registered on the FOMA terminal.
- In the A mode of 2in1 or dual mode, Number A appears in the My phone number field. In the B mode of 2in1, Number B appears. In the dual mode, press  to switch between Number A and B.

Displaying Own Number details

1  0

2 Enter the terminal security code

Own info	
Keitai Ha...	
KeitaiHenako	
id.	
Mobile phone	
090XXXXXXXXX	

- You can switch the display by pressing .

- If Caller ID Setting is applied to registered phone numbers,  appears on the right side of **Own info**.
- From the submenu of the Own Number details screen, the following operations can be performed:

- Composing mail ➡P73
- Composing SMS ➡P73
- URL access (Display sites) ➡P73
- Call Option*1 (excluding making calls to your phone number) ➡P50
- Copy items ➡P77
- Caller ID Setting*1 ➡P79
- Mail address exchange ➡P77
- User information ➡P75
- View Preference ➡P76

*1 Excluding when your phone number is displayed

- **Editing registered data:** [MENU] 2 ▶
Edit registered data ▶ [OK]
- **Resetting registered data:** [MENU] 3 ▶
Yes

INFORMATION

- In the dual mode of 2in1, you can make a call from Number A while displaying the own number of Number A and from Number B while displaying the own number of Number B.
- When 2in1 is ON, displayed own number is reset.

Recording the voice and image

Voice Memo/Movie Memo

Your voice can be recorded in standby as talking note (Standby Voice Memo) or the other party's voice and image can be recorded during a voice or videophone call (Talking Voice Memo/Movie Memo).

- Talking Voice Memo and Standby Voice Memo can be recorded up to 30 seconds long for each message and up to 4 messages in total.
- Movie Memo can be recorded for up to 30 seconds per message. For the maximum number of saved movie memos ➡P416
- The recorded voice or image of Talking Voice Memo or Movie Memo may be disrupted if the signal conditions are poor.
- Guidance messages such as out-of-service area notice or number change information cannot be recorded.

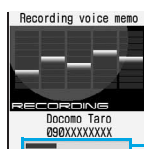
Recording voice or image of the other party while talking

Only the voice of the other party is recorded during a voice call. During a videophone call, the voice and image of the other party are recorded.

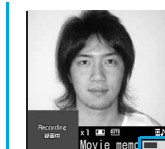
1 [CAMERA] (for over a second) during a call

Recording starts.

An indication of the allowable recording time



Voice Memo during a voice call



Movie Memo during a videophone call

- While recording a movie memo, an image is sent according to the setting for the movie memo in Videophone Image Setting.
- Each time you press [CAMERA] while recording a movie memo, indication is switched between the allowable recording time and the call duration.
- When the remaining time reaches 5 seconds, rapid beeps are heard. A long beep is also heard at the end of the recording. However, these beeps are not recorded.
- To stop recording: [CAMERA] (for over a second)
- Movie memos are saved in the *Camera* folder of *i-motion*.
How to replay the movie/i-motion ➡P254

Recording your own voice during standby

1 [CAMERA] 3

After about 3 seconds, a beep is heard and the recording starts.

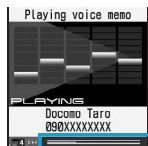
- When the remaining time reaches 5 seconds, rapid beeps are heard. A long beep is heard at the end of the recording. These beeps are not recorded.
- To cancel recording: [CAMERA], [END] or [STOP]

Playing voice memos



The list of voice memos appears. It shows both talking and standby voice memos.

Select a voice memo



The voice memo is played.

- To stop playback:
- To adjust the volume:
- To switch on/off the speakerphone:

An indication of the elapsed playing time

Yes or No

Yes: The voice memo you played is deleted.

The list of voice memos and available operations



1 Status icon

: Talking memo

No icon: Standby voice memo

2 Making/receiving a call with Number B in the dual mode of 2in1

3 Voice memo during a stay overseas*1

4 Talking voice memo during an international call

5 Phone number/Name (when registering phone number in the phonebook/ Reason for no caller ID/Voice memo (for standby voice memo)

6 Date and time or the local time during a stay recorded of a voice memo highlighted

7 Phone number/Reason for no caller ID/ Voice memo (for standby voice memo)

8 The name of multi-number (when making an application for the Multi Number service)*1

*1 It may not be displayed if the time zone is set to "GMT+09:00" or date and time of the voice memo has not been recorded.

Deleting a voice memo on the list of voice memos: Highlight the voice memo

▶ [2] [1] ▶ Yes

- To delete all: [2] [2] ▶ Enter the terminal security code ▶ Yes

Registering phone number in the phonebook from the list of voice memos:

① Highlight the talking voice memo ▶

[4]

- To add the number to the existing phonebook data: Highlight the talking voice memo ▶ [5]

② [1] or [2] ▶ Save the name and mail address

- To add the data to the existing phonebook data: [1] or [2] ▶ Highlight a party ▶ ▶ Edit phonebook data

INFORMATION

- You can make calls by using talking voice memos. Highlight a party in the list of voice memos and press to make a voice call and to make a videophone call.
- In the A mode of 2in1, only talking voice memos of Number A are displayed. In the B mode of 2in1, only talking voice memos of Number B are displayed. In the dual mode, all talking voice memos are displayed. The standby voice memos are displayed regardless of the 2in1 mode.
- The movie memo is displayed regardless of the 2in1 mode.
- When you delete all for the voice memos, all voice memos are deleted, regardless of the 2in1 mode.

Checking the call duration and the call cost

Call Duration/Call Cost

The call duration and the call cost of the last and total of voice/videophone call can be checked.

- The duration includes the voice call, videophone call and 64K data communication, and both of incoming and outgoing are counted for each.
- The call cost data is counted only for outgoing. However, when calling the toll-free party or the directory assistance service (104), "0 YEN" or "***** YEN" is displayed.

- The call cost is stored in the UIM, so stored total cost is displayed (starting from December 2004) when using the current UIM to the FOMA terminal you newly purchased.
 - For FOMA terminals released before 901i series, call cost data is stored in the UIM, but cannot be displayed.
- The displayed call duration and call cost can be reset.
- The displayed call duration and call cost are estimates and may be different from the actual. Note that the call cost does not include consumption tax.
- When subscribing to the 2in1 service, the total call cost of Number A and B is displayed as the call duration and cost.

Checking the call duration

1     

- If the total duration of calls was reset in the past, the duration of the total calls made up to the present after the reset is displayed.

Last call:

The duration of the last voice/videophone call or of the last data communication

Total voice calls, Total videophone calls or Total data sessions:

The total duration of voice/videophone calls made or data communication established

Reset:day&time(Voice), Reset:day&time(VP) or Reset:day&time(Data):

The last date and time when *Total voice calls*, *Total videophone calls* or *Total data sessions* was reset

Resetting the total calls duration:

①  on the call duration screen ▶

Enter the terminal security code

②   ▶ Yes

- To return to the call duration screen: 

Checking the call cost

1      

- If the total cost of calls was reset in the past, the cost of the total calls made up to the present after the reset is displayed.

Last call cost: Voice, Last call cost: VP or Last call cost: Data:

The cost of the last voice/videophone call or data communication

Total calls cost:

The total cost of voice/videophone call and data communication

Reset: day & time:

The last date and time when *Total calls cost* was reset

- **Resetting the total call cost:**  on the call cost screen ▶ Enter the PIN2 code ▶ Yes

INFORMATION

- The call cost for sending Chaku-moji is not included.
- The call cost for the international call services, WORLD CALL is included.
- No last charge information appears as "***** YEN".
- When you switch between the voice/videophone calls during a call, the last call cost shows the total amount of each call respectively. During switching, no call cost is required.
- When the last or total duration of voice/videophone call or data communication exceeds 9,999 hours 59 minutes 59 seconds, counting is restarted from 0 seconds.
- When the FOMA terminal is turned off, the last call duration is stored, but the last call cost is displayed as "***** YEN".
- The duration of receiving a call and ringing time are not counted.
- The call duration and call cost are not counted for i-mode communication and packet communication. For details of those usage fees, see "Mobile Phone User's Guide [i-mode] FOMA version" you received when you subscribed to i-mode.

Resetting the call cost automatically

Reset Call Cost

Total call cost can be reset automatically when the 1st day of each month comes.

1      

2 Enter the terminal security code ▶ 1

- To cancel: Enter the terminal security code ▶ 2

3 Enter the PIN2 code

INFORMATION

- Even if the setting is *ON*, the setting is canceled when the UIM different from the one used during the setting is inserted and then turn the power on. It does not return to the previous setting even if the UIM used when setting it is inserted again.
- When the setting is *ON*, the call cost will be reset if you change the date and time to the next month in Date and Time Setting.
- When the setting is *ON*, if the terminal is not turned on or if you are talking on the terminal at 00:00 of the 1st day of the month comes, a reset will take place when you turn the power on or end the call.
- If the setting is *ON*, the PIN2 code is required every time you turn the power on and the terminal security code is required when you set the date and time.

Setting to notify the limit of call cost

Call Cost Limit

Set the maximum limit of call cost, and when the total call cost exceeds the set amount, it is notified with an alarm or icon.

- The amount shown in Call Cost Limit is an estimate and may be different from the actual.

1 [MENU] 8 6 6 2 2

2 Enter the terminal security code ▶ Set each item ▶

Alert:

Set to notify when the total call cost exceeds the set amount.

Limit:

Set the maximum amount of call cost (10 to 100,000 yen, 10 yen unit).

Alert method:

- Select the alarm with icon or the icon only.
- When *Sound + icon display* is set for this field, also set *Alert sound* and *Alert time*.

Alert sound:

Select an alarm sound from the melody list.

Alert time:

Set how many seconds the alarm sound should ring (1 to 60 sec.).

INFORMATION

- If the call cost exceeds the maximum limit while talking or during communication, ¥ is displayed at the top of the display.
- When *Sound + icon display* is set for *Alert method*, the alarm sounds and message informing that the call cost exceeds the maximum limit is displayed on the standby display after a call/communication. In the general silent mode, a message appears but the alarm does not sound. In the personalized silent mode, the alarm sounds according to the call alert volume set for Customize Silent Mode. If the call cost exceeds the limit during a call or communication at 00:00 of the 1st day of the month when Reset Call Cost is set to *ON*, neither the alarm sounds nor the message appears.
- The alarm sounds at the volume set for the call alert volume.
- If any key is pressed or other function is started while an alarm is sounding, the alarm sound stops.
- Even if the UIM is replaced after Call Cost Limit is set to *ON*, the setting is stored.

Removing the icon of alert

Hide Call Cost Icon

1 [MENU] 8 6 6 2 3 ▶ Enter the terminal security code ▶ Yes

Using Calculator

Calculator

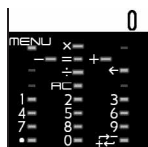
You can perform addition, subtraction, multiplication and division (+, -, ×, ÷) on your FOMA terminal.

- Up to 8 digits can be entered.
- You can start the calculator on the entry fields for the schedules or notes, and insert the result of a calculation into the entry field.

▶ P339

1 [MENU] 7 4

2 Calculate using $\boxed{1}$ - $\boxed{9}$, $\boxed{0}$ and $\boxed{+}$, $\boxed{-}$, $\boxed{\times}$, $\boxed{\div}$



- To delete the last digit entered: $\boxed{\leftarrow}$
- To delete all: $\boxed{\text{C}}$
- To enter a decimal point: $\boxed{.}$
- To switch the displayed value between the positive and negative: $\boxed{+/-}$

3 $\boxed{=}$

The calculation result is displayed.

- To delete the calculation result: $\boxed{\text{C}}$

■ Copying the calculation result:

- To paste the copied value: $\boxed{\text{MENU}} \boxed{1}$
- Only one value can be saved. The copied value is retained until copying a new value or turning the power off.
- A copied value can be pasted in the entry field of note, the mail composition screen, etc. any number of times. You can also copy up to the first 8 one-byte digits of a value in the entry field of notes, the mail composition screen, etc. and paste it on the calculator screen.
- You cannot enter additional digits after the value pasted on the calculator screen.

INFORMATION

- An error is generated and "E" is displayed when division by 0 is attempted or the integral part of the calculation result exceeds 8 digits. To cancel, press $\boxed{\text{C}}$. When the value including a decimal point exceeds 8 digits, any decimals that do not fit in the display are rounded up or rounded down.

Composing notes

Notepad

- Notes can be recorded up to 50 items.

1 $\boxed{\text{MENU}} \boxed{7} \boxed{2} \boxed{\rightarrow} \boxed{\text{M}} \boxed{\rightarrow} \text{Set each item} \boxed{\rightarrow}$

Category icons:

Select an category icon.

Note content:

You can enter up to 2,000 one-byte or 1,000 two-byte characters.

- To register, a content of note must be entered.

Due date:

Select a due date on notes.

ON: Select the date field and enter the due date. You can switch between completed/uncompleted items on the list of notes.

- You can set dates up to December 31, 2050.

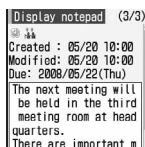
Checking notes

1 $\boxed{\text{MENU}} \boxed{7} \boxed{2}$

The list of notes screen appears. You can select 1-row or 2-row display on the list.

2 Highlight a note $\boxed{\rightarrow} \boxed{\text{M}} \boxed{\rightarrow}$

The notepad view screen appears.



- If the note data contains phone numbers, mail addresses and URLs, Phone To (AV Phone To), Mail To and Web To functions can be used.

■ Editing notes: $\boxed{\text{M}} \boxed{\rightarrow} \text{Edit each item} \boxed{\rightarrow}$

■ Composing mail from the note:

$\boxed{\text{MENU}} \boxed{5}$

Other Convenient Functions

Notepad (3/50 items)
List of notes (1/1)
Welcome party is...
No due date
Project general ...
2008/05/20 (Tue)
The next meeting...
2008/05/22 (Thu)

 : Completed
 : Uncompleted (2 or more days before the due date)
 : Uncompleted (1 day before or on the due date)
 : Uncompleted (after the due date)
 No icon: No due date

4 Due date (This is not displayed for the 1-row display)

displays:

category): Highlight a category icon

- To return to display all:    

due date is set on: 5 1 - 3

You can select from *Display all*, *Completed* or *Uncompleted*.

By : Set the way to sort.
Order : Set the order to sort.

- To switch between completed/uncompleted items on the notepad view screen: ► **Completed** or **Uncompleted**

- To edit notes on the list of notes:  **Edit**
- To compose mail on the list of notes: Highlight the note to use for a mail message  **Compose message**

You can register the content of notes to Scheduler from the submenu in Notepad or from the note written in Date To format.

1 ► **Highlight a note** ►

The contents of the note is registered to the item of schedule as shown below:

Note content:

Registered to *Note*. Up to 600 one-byte or 300 two-byte characters can be registered.

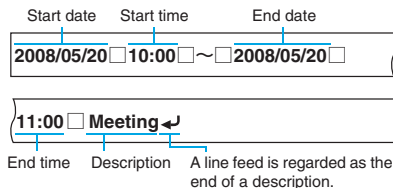
Due date:

Registered to *Start time/End time*.

If the due date is not set, the date of schedule is set as current day.

- Category Icon or completed/uncompleted icon are not registered.

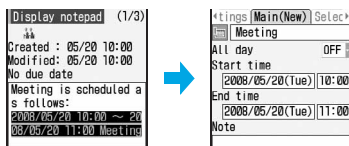
Date To format is formed by the letter string below. All items are requisite.



- ☐ represents one-byte space. It is not actually displayed.
- Only one-byte characters can be used for date and time. The description can contain up to 200 one-byte or 100 two-byte characters. Any character exceeding the maximum number is deleted.
- The year is based on the Christian era and the time is displayed by the 24-hour format. For a month and day from 1 to 9 or an hour and minute from 0 to 9, the preceding zero (0) can be omitted.

1 **[MENU]** **7** **2** **▶ Highlight the note written in Date To format ▶**

2 Highlight the string written in Date To format ▶ Save it as schedule



INFORMATION

- To register a schedule on the list of notes: Highlight a note to save to schedule ▶ **MENU** ▶ **Add to schedule**

Deleting notes

- MENU** **7** **2**
- Highlight a note ▶ **MENU** **3** **1** ▶ **Yes**
 - Deleting selected notes: **MENU** **3** **2** ▶ **Highlight notes** ▶ **MENU** **3** ▶ **Yes**
 - Deleting all notes: **MENU** **3** **3** ▶ **Enter the terminal security code** ▶ **Yes**
 - Deleting completed notes: **MENU** **3** **4** ▶ **Yes**

INFORMATION

- To delete one note on the notepad view screen: **MENU** ▶ **Delete**

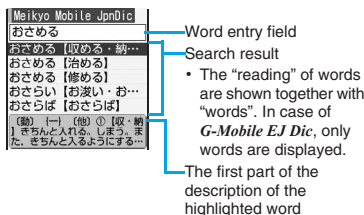
Using electronic dictionaries

- The following electronic dictionaries are stored:
 - Meikyo Mobile Japanese Dictionary
 - G-Mobile Japanese-English Dictionary
 - G-Mobile Japanese-Japanese Dictionary
- You can select a word to search for from the search record. Up to 20 words can be saved in the search record. When the number of words in the search records exceeds 20, the oldest record is overwritten.
- For legends, see **辞典機能** (Dictionaries) stored in the *Preinstalled* folder of *My Document*.

Example

Looking up “修める (cultivate)” in Meikyo Mobile Japanese Dictionary

- MENU** **7** **5** ▶ **Meikyo Mobile JpnDic**
- The entry field ▶ Enter “おさめる”
The search result is displayed.



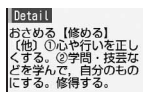
- Up to 40 one-byte or 20 two-byte characters can be entered.
- To enter another word to search for while highlighting a word from the search result, press **MENU**.
- Too long word is displayed partially.
- Some words may not be searched for correctly.

- Searching by using the search record: **MENU** **1** ▶ **Highlight a word** ▶ **MENU** **3** ▶ **Yes**



- To delete one word: Highlight a word ▶ **MENU** **1** ▶ **Yes**
- To delete selected words: **MENU** **2** ▶ **Highlight words** ▶ **MENU** **3** ▶ **Yes**
- To delete all words: **MENU** **3** ▶ **Enter the terminal security code** ▶ **Yes**
- Searching other dictionaries: **MENU** **2** ▶ **Highlight another dictionary** ▶ **MENU** **3** ▶ **Search**

- Highlight “おさめる [修める]” ▶ **MENU** **3**
- Check detail information



- To return to the search screen: **MENU** **3**
- To show the detail information of the previous and next words: **MENU** **3**

■ Copying:

①

② Highlight a start position of the copying range Highlight an end position

- To select all the text:
- To cancel the start position to select a new position:
- To move the cursor to the beginning or end of the text: or after specifying the start position

INFORMATION

- To search another dictionary in the detail screen: ▶ *Search other dict*

Enlarging complex characters

Dekanji

Enlarge complex characters such as kanji.

Example Displaying “瀟洒” (しょうしゃ)

1 ▶ **Entry field** ▶ **Enter the character string “瀟洒”**



- Up to 12 characters can be entered regardless of one-byte or two-byte.

Using the Earphone/Microphone with Switch

Earphone/Microphone with Switch

By connecting the optional Flat-plug Earphone/Microphone with Switch (including the Flat-plug Stereo Earphone Set) to the earphone/microphone jack, it is possible to make or receive voice/videophone calls simply by pressing the switch.

- Use the Earphone Plug Adapter P001 (optional) for the conventional earphone/microphone.

Connecting the Earphone/Microphone with Switch

To connect the Flat-plug Earphone/Microphone with Switch to the FOMA terminal, open the cover of the earphone/microphone jack and insert the connection plug of the Flat-plug Earphone/Microphone with Switch. ◀P24

- Do not wrap the cord of the Flat-plug Earphone/Microphone with Switch around the FOMA terminal. Reception level of radio waves may deteriorate.
- When the cord of the Flat-plug Earphone/Microphone with Switch is near the antenna of the FOMA terminal, a noise may be emitted.
- Insert the plug firmly. If it is not inserted completely, there may be audio disruption.

Making voice calls by pressing the switch

Pressing the switch on the Flat-plug Earphone/Microphone with Switch allows you to make a voice call to the party whose phone number is registered by Headset Key Control.

1 Hold down the switch for over a second until you hear two short beeps

A voice call will be made to the first registered phone number of the phonebook No. assigned by Headset Key Control.

2 Hold down the switch for over a second until you hear a short beep to end the call

INFORMATION

- If Secret Attribute has been set for the phonebook No. assigned by Headset Key Control, Secret Mode must be activated before operating.
- Even if you subscribe to Call Waiting Service and activate it, you cannot make another call during a call by entering the number of a third party and pressing the switch. Be aware that pressing the switch will terminate the first call.
- While transferring or copying data between the FOMA terminal and the microSD memory card, you cannot make calls by pressing the switch.
- When 2in1 is activated, making a call conforms to the setting of Phonebook 2in1 Setting.

Receiving calls by pressing the switch

- 1 When a call arrives, hold down the switch for over a second until you hear two short beeps
- 2 Hold down the switch for over a second until you hear a short beep to end the call

INFORMATION

- When you subscribe to Call Waiting Service is subscribed and activate it, you can receive an incoming voice call during a call by holding down the switch for over a second.

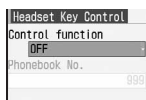
Setting the earphone/microphone switch operation

Headset Key Control

Set the number you call using the Flat-plug Earphone/Microphone with Switch by selecting the phonebook No. of the FOMA terminal.

1 [MENU] 8 4 4 3

2 Control function field ▶ 1



- To cancel: [2] ▶ [OK]

3 Phonebook No. field

4 Highlight the receiver ▶ [OK]

INFORMATION

- When the phonebook data of the phonebook No. set by this function is deleted or overwritten with other data, or the phonebook No. is changed, this setting is canceled.

Answering a call automatically with the earphone/microphone connected Auto Answer

When using the Flat-plug Earphone/Microphone with Switch, this setting allows you to receive an incoming call automatically.

When a voice/videophone call is automatically received, a party's voice is heard from the connected earphone/microphone.

- If an incoming call is received during a call, this function is not activated.
- This function does not work in Public mode (Driving mode).

1 [MENU] 8 4 4 2

2 Auto answering field ▶ 1

- To cancel: [2] ▶ [OK]

3 Delayed time(Sec) field ▶ Enter the time (0 to 120 sec) before answering automatically ▶ [OK]

INFORMATION

- When a videophone call is answered by Auto Answer, the substitute image set in Videophone Image Setting is sent and a videophone call is automatically started.
- When this function and Answer Machine, Voice Mail Service or Call Forwarding Service are set concurrently, the set ringing time determines which function will be used.
- The same time period cannot be set for both the delayed time of Auto Answer and the response time of Answer Machine.
- When the value set for the delayed time is within the time set by Mute Ring Time Setting, Auto Answer does not answer a call coming from a party not saved in the phonebook.

Hearing the ring alert only through the earphone

Alert Preference

When connecting the Flat-plug Earphone/Microphone with Switch, you can set the ring alert or alarm to sound only through the earphone of the headset.

1 [MENU] 8 4 4 1 ▶ 1 - 3

INFORMATION

- *HS, +SP after 20sec* alerts you with the sound through the speaker when 20 seconds pass without answering a voice call or stopping the alarm sound. However, even when *HS, +SP after 20sec* or *Headset + speaker* is set, you will hear the sounds listed below from the earphone of the headset. You will not hear the sound from the speaker.
- The alarm of Timer during silent mode, alarm clock sound and schedule alarm

- Melody, movie/i-motion, reproduce sound of music data

Sending the voice through the earphone/microphone

Microphone Setting

When connecting the Flat-plug Earphone/Microphone with Switch, you can send your voice through the earphone of the headset.

1 [MENU] [8] [4] [4] [4] ▶ [1] or [2]

INFORMATION

- When the Flat-plug Earphone/Microphone with Switch is not connected, the voice is sent through the microphone of the FOMA terminal regardless of this setting.

Reducing the start-up time after power-on

Quick Start-up

1 [MENU] [8] [6] [5] ▶ [1] or [2]

INFORMATION

- Even when you set to *ON*, it takes the normal time to start up in the following cases:
 - When the remaining battery level is 2 or lower
 - When the battery pack is replaced
 - When 24 hours passes after the power is turned off

Checking current settings of functions

Confirm Settings

- During Personal Data Lock, the specific setting of the item being locked is displayed as “---”.

1 [MENU] [8] [6] [6] [4]

2  to confirm the settings

- Press  to switch between pages.

Resetting functions

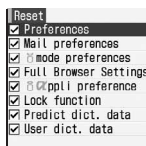
Reset

Restore the functions to their default settings.

- For the functions to be returned to the default settings by resetting, see “Menu list”. The following functions and data, even if not mentioned in “Menu list”, are also reset to the default settings:
 - When *Preferences* is selected:
 - Silent Mode, Public mode (Driving mode), the volume of melody setting, call cost icon, input history of face marks, symbols and pictograms
 - When *Full Browser Settings* is selected:
 - Cookie information
 - When *Predict dict. data* is selected:
 - Data recorded by using the input prediction function

1 [MENU] [8] [6] [6] [6]

2 Enter the terminal security code ▶ Highlight the item ▶ 



3  ▶ Yes

INFORMATION

- If you reset *i-mode preferences*, i-Channel information will not be displayed in a ticker on the standby display. If the i-Channel information is automatically updated or if you press [222] on the standby display to display the channel list, the latest information is received and available in a ticker on the standby display.

Deleting registered data collectively

Delete All Data

Delete the saved data and return the settings of the functions to the default.

- Protected data are also deleted.
- Delete All Data should be done with battery fully charged. If the battery power is not enough, the data may not be deleted collectively.
- The following data preinstalled by default are deleted:
 - i-applis other than, **iD 設定アプリ** and **DCMXクレジットアプリ**
 - Chara-den
 - Images in the **Deco-mail picture**, **Deco-mail pict** and **Item** folders in My Picture of Data Box
 - Machi-chara • Kisekai tool
- The following data saved or registered are deleted:
 - Chaku-moji message (including history of sent messages)
 - Mail template • Mail group
 - Bookmark • Entered URL
 - URL history • Screen memo
 - Last visited URL
 - i-Channel (received info)
 - i-appli
 - i-appli display history
 - Phonebook data
 - Phonebook communication log of Data Security Service
 - Received call history
 - Redial data • Voice memo
 - Data read by Bar Code Reader
 - ToruCa • Notepad
 - Call duration
 - Saved word/fixed phrase
 - Registered USSD
 - Recorded answering message
 - Own Number data (except for **My phone number**)
 - Search record of dictionaries
 - Created folders/albums
 - Message R/F • i-mode Mail
 - Chat mail • SMS message

- Recorded message (including the greeting)
- Data in folders other than the **Preinstalled** and **Mail attach melody** folders in Data Box
- Downloaded dictionaries
- Schedule
- Sound data for IC Card Lock setting
- Machi-chara • Kisekai tool
- Original certificate • Choku-den
- The functions*1 to be returned to the default by Reset and the following functions return to the default:
 - Sort Method • Answer Machine
 - Settings made in the chat mail screen
 - Still Camera • Movie Camera
 - Sound Recorder
 - Terminal security code
 - Privacy Mode Setting • Receive Display
 - Date and Time Setting • External Device
 - Reset Call Cost • Arrival Call Act
 - Menu Setting
 - Changed folder name
 - Custom Menu
 - i-mode Shortcut for bookmark
 - Settings made on the i-appli software list screen
 - Settings made on the phonebook screen
 - **Sync setting** of Data Security Service
 - Settings made with Scheduler
 - Settings for **My picture**, **i-motion**, **Melody**, **Chara-den** and **My Document**
 - Data Exchange Setting by infrared communication
 - Settings for Music Player
 - Alarm Clock
 - Software Update (Reserved Update)
 - 2in1 Setting
- *1 SMS settings other than **SMS report request** and the settings in Manage Certificate other than CA certificate 1 to 13 do not return to the default.

1      **▶ Enter the terminal security code ▶ Yes**

Data are deleted collectively during reboot.

INFORMATION

- The following data are not deleted. The default settings cannot be restored either.
 - Update notification icon, which will reappear if it is not shown.
 - Osaifu-Keitai compatible i-appli and related data
 - The data saved, registered or set in the UIM or the microSD memory card
 - Data communication setting set via PC
- If there are large capacity data to be deleted, about 1 minute may be required to reboot. Be careful not to turn off the power before completing the operation.
- If you perform Delete All Data, i-Channel information will not be displayed in a ticker on the standby display. If the i-Channel information is automatically updated or if you press  on the standby display to display the channel list, the latest information is received and available in a ticker on the standby display.
- When 2in1 is activated, data is deleted regardless of the mode.
- The preinstalled data or i-appli by default can be downloaded from i-mode site "My D-style" (●P282). Packet communication fee is required separately to download.

Character Entry

Entering characters	334
Setting input method	Input Method Setting 335
Entering characters using 5-touch Input Method	5-touch Input Method 335
Registering fixed phrases	Save Phrase 339
Copying/cutting and pasting characters	Copy Character 340
Entering characters using codes	KUTEN Code Input 341
Registering frequently used words	Save Word 341
Using the downloaded dictionary	Downloaded Dictionary 342
Entering characters using Slot Input Method	Slot Input Method 342

For Kuten Code List, see the list in PDF format in the attached CD-ROM. To view Kuten Code List (PDF format), Adobe® Reader® (version 6.0 or later recommended) is required. If it is not installed in your PC, you can install from the attached CD-ROM.

Entering characters

The FOMA terminal has many functions such as phonebook and mail that require entering characters.

- There are "5-touch Input Method" and "Slot Input Method" for entering characters.
 - In 5-touch Input Method, several characters are assigned to one key, and at each press the character switches. P381
 - In Slot Input Method, select characters from the upper and lower slots on the input board. P342
 - Two-byte katakana, two-byte alphabets and two-byte numeric are not available in Slot Input Method.
- There are 2 character types: one-byte characters and two-byte characters. 1 two-byte character, 1 two-byte blank or line feed is counted as 2 one-byte characters. For one-byte characters, voiced sound and semivoiced sound symbols are also counted as 1 character.
- Use KUTEN Code Input to enter characters whose readings you do not know.
- JIS level 1 and level 2 characters can be entered.
- Complex characters may be displayed in a changed or simplified form.
- In this manual, to enter characters including the operation of pressing Enter is referred to as "enter".

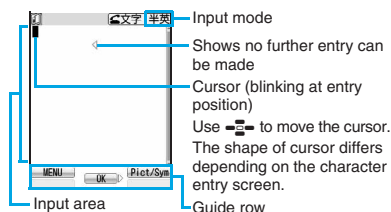
Character entry screen

There are 2 types of character entry: "full-screen entry" and "in-line entry".

- Each entry field determines whether you can select entry type or not.

Full-screen entry

Highlight the entry field and press Enter to display the full-screen entry area.



In-line entry

Highlight the entry field and press 1 - 9 , 0 , * and $\text{\#}$ to enable character entry directly. In hiragana or two-byte katakana mode, the character is fixed by pressing Enter .



Changing input modes

Example

Switching from one-byte alphabet mode to two-byte alphabet mode

1 Enter on the character entry screen



Input mode (current status)

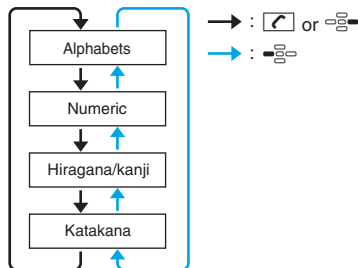
漢字 : Hiragana/kanji
 全角 : Two-byte katakana*1
 全英 : Two-byte alphabets*1
 全数 : Two-byte numeric*1
 半角 : One-byte katakana
 半英 : One-byte alphabets
 半数 : One-byte numeric*1

Input mode (the input mode being selected is highlighted)

漢 : Hiragana/kanji
 ア : Two-byte katakana*1
 A : Two-byte alphabets*1
 1 : Two-byte numeric*1
 アア : One-byte katakana
 Aa : One-byte alphabets
 12 : One-byte numeric*1

*1 You cannot switch to these modes in Slot Input Method.

2 or repeatedly to highlight "Aa"



3 to highlight "A"

INFORMATION

- The available input modes are different depending on the character entry screen.
- **全かな** is displayed for input mode when only hiragana can be entered.

Setting input method

Input Method Setting

1 ► Set each item

Input method:

Specifies **5-touch** or **Slot**.

- When **Slot** is set, items below are disabled.

Input prediction:

Specifies whether to display predictive conversion options.

Auto cursor:

Sets the time period before the cursor automatically moves to the right.

Slow: Moves the cursor in about 1.5 seconds.

Normal: Moves the cursor in about 1 second.

Fast: Moves the cursor in about 0.5 seconds.

- Auto cursor function is available in the following input modes:

- One-byte/two-byte alphabets
- Hiragana/kanji
- One-byte/two-byte katakana

You can perform the following operations after the automatic cursor function has moved the cursor to the right:

-  : Add voiced/semivoiced sound symbol
-  : Switch between upper/lower cases
-  : Return to the previous character

Changing the setting during character entry

- The submenu is not displayed before characters are fixed or on the Deco-mail decoration selection screen and in-line entry screen.

1 on the character entry screen ► Set input method ► -

- To switch between **Use 5-touch** and **Use Slot input**: 
- To switch between **Prediction ON** and **Prediction OFF**: 
- To set the time period before the cursor automatically moves:  ►  - 

Entering characters using 5-touch Input Method

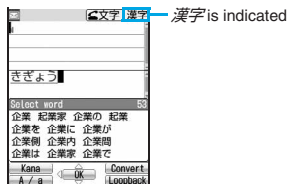
5-touch Input Method

Entering characters Kana/Kanji Conversion

Example Entering "企業" in the mail message

1 Enter "きぎょう" on the message text entry screen

- In English display, the alphabet mode is displayed first. Press  repeatedly to change to the hiragana/kanji mode.



き :  twice ►  (It is not necessary when the cursor was moved by the automatic cursor function.)

ぎ :  twice ► 

よ :  3 times ► 

う :  3 times

- **Deleting the character:**
- **Switching upper/lower case:** immediately after entering a character
- **Entering “” and “°”:** Enter the character
 - For characters that do not accept “” or “°”, they are entered as two-byte characters.
- **Returning to the previous character:** immediately after entering a character
 - The character appears in the reverse order of character switching every time is pressed (e.g. …→ 1 →お→え→う→い→あ→ 1 →…). When voiced or semivoiced sounds are entered, you cannot switch characters.
- **Fixing hiragana without conversion:** Go to Step 3 after entering the hiragana
- **Converting to katakana or alphanumeric:**
 - ▶ Highlight a conversion option ▶
 - ▶ Go to Step 3

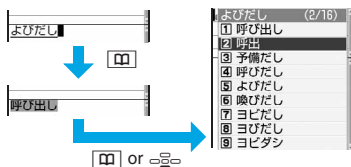
2



- also converts text to kana/kanji when predictive conversion options are not displayed.
- To restore the entry before conversion:

■ **Displaying the list of conversion options:**

When pressing fails to display the desired character, a list of conversion options is displayed by pressing or again. If the list of conversion options has multiple pages, you can switch to the next page and the previous page by pressing and , respectively. Highlight a conversion option by and press , or press dial key for the number of each option.



3

The characters are fixed.

- When *Input prediction* of Input Method Setting is *ON*, select 閉じる (Close).

■ **Inserting characters:**

Move the cursor to the insertion point by and enter the character. The entered character is inserted to the cursor position.

■ **Deleting characters:**

- When the cursor is inside an entered character string
Example: ドコモ太郎
 • : Delete a character at the cursor position.
 • (for over a second): Delete the character at the cursor position and all following characters.
- When the cursor is at the end of an entered character string
Example: ドコモ太郎
 • : Delete the character at the left of the cursor position.
 • (for over a second): Delete all entered characters.

■ **Entering line feed:**

- Some entry fields may not permit a line feed.

4

Character entry ends.

Block conversion of multiple clauses

- Up to 24 two-byte characters can be converted.

Example Entering “動物園に行きましょう。”

1 Enter characters ▶



Fixing all characters:

動物園に行きましょう。

Fixing converted portion:

動物園に行きましょう。

Changing conversion range:

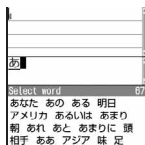
Entering characters using input prediction function

The input prediction function is to display a list of predictive conversion options that match the initial part of the reading when characters are entered.

- The following words and character strings are displayed as options:
 - Standard recorded words
 - Words entered by kana/kanji conversion
 - Character string converted and entered by Downloaded Dictionary
 - Character strings registered by Save Word
- Input predictive function is available only in hiragana/kanji mode. The function is not available for in-line entry or Slot Input Method.

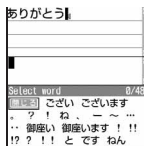
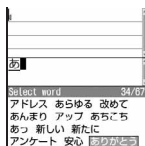
1 Enter characters

A list of predictive conversion options is displayed.



- By each character entered, more specific options appear.

2 to highlight an option



- While the predictive conversion option is highlighted, the following operations are enabled:

 or  : Switch to the previous/next page

 : Enable Kana/Kanji Conversion (Predictive conversion options disappear)

When a predictive conversion option is highlighted, if you enter another character, the highlighted option is fixed and the entered character's predictive conversion options appear.

3 閉じる (Close)

The predictive conversion options disappear.

Resetting the predictive dictionary data

Resetting the predictive dictionary data which is registered as the predictive conversion options.

1 8 6 2 3 Enter the terminal security code Yes

Entering face marks and fixed phrases

Enter face marks, previously registered sentences, or pictogram words.

Example Entering face marks

1 on the character entry screen 3

- To enter fixed phrases:  on the character entry screen  1

2 1 - 9

- For fixed phrases: 1 - 7



- You can select 1 when input history for face marks is available.
- When a created fixed phrase exists, you can select 7.

3 1 - 9

- For fixed phrases: 1 - 8

1	(-)	1/4
2	(-)	v
3	(o)	
4	(o)	o
5	(o)	o
6	(*)	*
7	(v)	v
8	(v)	v
9	(v)	v

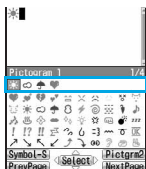
- To check details: Highlight a fixed phrase ►
- For input history of face marks, up to 18 items can be displayed. When the number of items exceeds the limit, the oldest one is deleted.

INFORMATION

- Face marks can be entered by entering the readings in kana/kanji mode. ◀P383
- List of fixed phrases ◀P382

Entering pictograms and symbols

1 on the character entry screen



The list of pictogram 1 is displayed.

Input history area (displayed only on the first pages of pictogram 1 and 2, or one-byte and two-byte symbols.)

- Each pressing of changes the mode as follows: Pictogram 2 → pictogram D → pictogram 1... However, pictogram D is displayed only for entry screen for mail message and signature edit screen.
- To switch one-byte or two-byte symbol:
- To switch pages: or
- Up to 10 pictograms or symbols can be displayed at the input history area. When the characters exceed the maximum number, the oldest one will be deleted.
- Pictogram D is displayed when registered in the *Deco-mail pict* folder of *My Picture*.

2 Highlight pictograms/symbols ►

- Pictograms or symbols can be entered subsequently.

3 クリア

INFORMATION

- Some symbols can be converted by entering readings in hiragana/kanji mode.

Readings	Symbols you can enter
ギリシア	Greek alphabets
ロシア	Russian alphabets
ずうじ	① to ⑳, I to X
けいせん	Ruled line symbols
きごう	Two-byte symbols other than above

- On the submenu in the character entry screen: ► *Pict/Symbol/Smiley* ► *Pictogram* or *Symbol*
 - Press on the list screen of pictograms or symbols to switch between pictogram 1, 2 and D (for character entry screen for mail message and signature edit only) or between one-byte and two-byte symbols.
 - When entering pictograms other than pictogram D or symbols continuously, press on the list screen of pictograms or symbols. The continuous input area is displayed over the history display area, you can input continuously up to 10 characters for pictogram and up to 20 one-byte characters or 10 two-byte characters for symbol. Pressing fixes pictograms or symbols displayed in the continuous input area and enter them to the text. Pictogram D cannot be entered continuously. Selecting the pictogram means fixing. Also, when the left element in the following brackets is selected, the right element is also automatically selected: e.g. selecting “{” also selects “}”.

{ } [] () () [] { } < >
< > [] [] [] []

- Pictogram can be converted by entering readings in kana/kanji mode. ◀P386
- Entered pictograms and symbols may not appear correctly if transferred by infrared communication, etc.
- While in Privacy Mode (*Authorized access* is set as *My Picture*), the downloaded Deco-mail pictograms are not displayed even pressing on the character entry screen. Only the Deco-mail pictograms registered by default are displayed. To display the downloaded Deco-mail pictograms, select on the decoration selection screen and cancel the Privacy Mode temporarily.
- When you insert pictogram D to the entry screen for mail message, it will be Deco-mail.

Quoting data to enter characters

You can enter characters by quoting phonebook data, Own Number information, the result of calculation with Calculator or text information of the data scanned with Bar Code Reader.

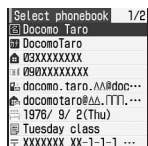
- Switch the character entry screen to full-screen entry according to the entry field.

Quoting phonebook data

- The phonebook entry cannot be quoted on the character entry screen of the phonebook.

1  **on the character entry screen ▶**
Phrase/Kuten/Quote ▶ [3] ▶ Highlight
phonebook data ▶ 

2 **Highlight the phonebook information ▶**

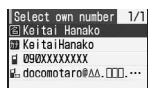
- Too long content is displayed partially. To check, highlight the content and press . It can be quoted by pressing .

Quoting Own Number data

- The Own Number data cannot be quoted on the character entry screen of Own Number.

1  **on the character entry screen ▶**
Phrase/Kuten/Quote ▶ [4]

2 **Enter the terminal security code ▶**
Highlight the Own Number information ▶

- Too long content is displayed partially. To check, highlight the content and press . It can be quoted by pressing .

Quoting a result calculated with Calculator

- The result can be quoted on the character entry screen of Scheduler and Notepad.

1  **on the character entry screen ▶**
Phrase/Kuten/Quote ▶ [5] ▶ Make
calculation ▶ 

Quoting data scanned with Bar Code Reader

- The data can be quoted on the URL entry screen of i-mode and Full Browser or the character entry screen displayed during i-mode or Full Browser.

1  **on the character entry screen ▶**
Phrase/Kuten/Quote ▶ [5] ▶ Scan JAN
code or QR code ▶ 

The string of the scanned data is entered.

Registering fixed phrases

Save Phrase

- Up to 50 phrases can be saved.
- A string of all blank spaces cannot be registered. In addition, blank spaces included in the fixed phrase are identified as follows:
 - Blank spaces before and after a character string: Blank spaces after a character string is invalid*1
 - Blank spaces between characters: Blank spaces are also valid
- *1 In the registration while entering characters, blank spaces before and after a character string are ignored.

1  **[8] [6] [2] [4] [7]**

2 **<New phrase>**

The fixed phrase edit screen appears.

- To edit the registered fixed phrase: Highlight a fixed phrase to edit ▶ 
- To check the registered fixed phrase: Highlight a fixed phrase ▶  ▶  to edit

■ Deleting fixed phrases: Highlight a fixed phrase ▶  **▶ Yes**

3 Message field ▶ Enter the fixed phrase (up to 128 one-byte or 64 two-byte characters) ▶

Fixed phrases are registered in *My phrase*.

- When you edit a registered fixed phrase, a confirmation screen appears.

Registering during character entry

Select entered characters and register as a fixed phrase.

1 on the character entry screen ▶ Save word/phrase ▶

2 Place the cursor at the start point ▶

- To select the whole sentence:  ▶ Go to Step 4
- To select whole sentence on the entry screen for mail message:  ▶ Go to Step 4

3 Place the cursor at the end point ▶

The characters in the selected range are displayed on the fixed phrase edit screen.

- To select from the start point to the beginning:  
- To select from the start point to the end:  

4

INFORMATION

- If the registering is performed when no character is input or an unfixed conversion exists during the entry of message text, the fixed phrase edit screen appears.
- If you need to register a new fixed phrase while the number of items reaches the maximum to save, delete a phrase from the list or edit a registered one.

Copying/cutting and pasting characters

Copy Character

Cut or copy a string from a character entry screen, paste it to another character entry screen.

- Copied and cut characters are retained until new item is copied/cut or the FOMA terminal is turned off, and you can paste them any number of times.

Copying/cutting characters

Example Copying characters

1 1 on the character entry screen

- To cut the characters:  2 on the character entry screen
- On the message text entry screen:  ▶ Copy or Cut

2 Place the cursor at the start point ▶

- To select the whole sentence:  
- To select whole sentence on the entry screen for mail message: 

3 Place the cursor at the end point ▶

The characters in the selected range are copied.

- To select from the start point to the beginning:  
- To select from the start point to the end:  

Pasting characters

1 Place the cursor at the location to paste on the character entry screen ▶ 3

- On the message text entry screen:  ▶ Paste

INFORMATION

- When the type of the copied/cut characters does not match the character type used in the destination field, pasting is disabled.
- When a character string containing a line feed is pasted to an entry screen that does not permit any line feeds, the entered line feeds are replaced by blank.
- When pasting or entering a fixed phrase, the excess over the maximum number of entered characters is deleted.

Entering characters using codes

KUTEN Code Input

Characters, numbers and symbols on the kuten code list are entered using 4-digit code.

- For codes, see Kuten Code List in PDF format in the attached CD-ROM.

1 on the character entry screen ▶ *Phrase/Kuten/Quote* ▶ ▶ Enter the 4-digit code ▶

- On the message text entry screen:   

Registering frequently used words

Save Word

Using registered readings makes it easy to convert characters.

- Up to 200 words can be saved.

1

2 <New word>

- To edit the registered word: Highlight a word ▶ 
- To check the registered word: Highlight a word ▶  ▶  to edit

■ Deleting words:

- Highlight a word to delete ▶ 
- Delete
 - To delete all: *Delete all*

3 *Word field* ▶ Enter the word to register (up to 24 one-byte or 12 two-byte characters)

4 *Reading field* ▶ Enter the reading (up to 8 two-byte characters)

- You can enter only hiragana.

5

- When editing registered words: *Overwrite* or *New*

Registering during character entry

You can select entered characters and register them as a word.

1 on the character entry screen ▶ *Save word/phrase* ▶

2 Place the cursor at the start point ▶

- To select the whole sentence:   ▶ Go to Step 4
- To select whole sentence on the entry screen for mail message:  ▶ Go to Step 4

3 Place the cursor at the end point ▶

The characters in the selected range is displayed in the *Word* field.

- To select from the start point to the beginning:  
- To select from the start point to the end:  

4 Enter the reading to register

- Follow the procedure from Step 4 in "Registering frequently used words".
▶ P341

INFORMATION

- If the registering is performed when no character is input or an unfixed conversion exists during the entry of message text, the word edit screen appears.
- Readings that contain characters other than hiragana, prolonged sound, voiced or semivoiced sound characters cannot be registered.
- When the following characters are the initial part of the reading, it cannot be registered:
を, ん, あ, い, う, え, お, つ, や, ゆ, よ, わ, "—" (prolonged sound symbol), "゛" (voiced sound symbol), "゜" (semivoiced sound symbol)
- Blank spaces can be entered for reading, but deleted after registered.
- Up to 5 words for the same reading can be registered. To register a new word, change the reading of the word.

Using the downloaded dictionary

Downloaded Dictionary

Set a dictionary downloaded from i-mode site to use for character conversion.

- Up to 5 dictionaries can be used.
- Procedure for downloading dictionaries ◀P154

1 Highlight the dictionary to use

- **Displaying the information of the downloaded dictionary:**

[MENU] [8] [6] [2] [2] ▶ Highlight the dictionary ▶ [✓]

- **Deleting the downloaded dictionary:**

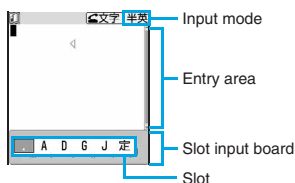
[MENU] [8] [6] [2] [2] ▶ Highlight the dictionary ▶ [✕] ▶ Yes

Entering characters using Slot Input Method

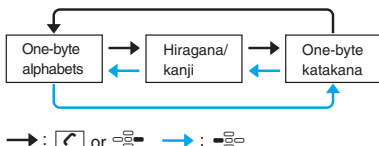
Slot Input Method

Use [Slot] to select characters displayed on the slot input board (upper/lower slot).

- Slot Input Method must be set up before using this function. ◀P335
- The predictive conversion function cannot be used in Slot Input Method.
- List of input slots and character assignments ◀P382



- After pressing [Slot], the input mode switches as shown below by the following operations:



- Even when *Use Slot input* is set, *Use 5-touch* screen will appear during in-line entry.
- When you are using the slot input board and want to use the entry area (for deleting characters, moving the cursor, etc.), press [✓]. Press [✓] again to use the slot input board.

Example Entering “企業” in the message text

1 Enter “きぎょう” on the message text entry screen

- In English display, the alphabet mode is displayed first. Press [Slot] to change to the hiragana/kanji mode.



き : [Slot] ▶ [Slot] ▶ [Slot]
ぎ : [Slot] ▶ [Slot] 4 times ▶ [Slot]
よ : [Slot] ▶ [Slot] twice ▶ [Slot] twice ▶ [Slot]
う : [Slot] 4 times ▶ [Slot] twice ▶ [Slot]

- To switch upper/lower slot: [Slot]
- To fix the characters as hiragana: [MENU]
- On the entry screen for mail message, slot input board appears if you enter [1] - [9], [0] or [✕].

2 [Slot]

The characters are converted.



- Characters are converted in the same way as in 5-touch Input Method.
- To restore characters before conversion: [Slot]

3 [Slot]

The characters are fixed.

4 [✓] ▶ [Slot]

Character entry ends.

- You can also perform the same operation by highlighting [Slot], pressing [MENU] and selecting *Exit*.

Network Services

Voice Mail Service	344
Call Waiting Service	345
Call Forwarding Service	346
Nuisance Call Blocking Service	347
Caller ID Request Service	347
Dual Network Service	347
Switching languages for the guidance	English Guidance 348
Service Dialing Number	348
Setting actions to receive incoming calls during a call	Arrival Call Act 348
Remote Control	349
Multi Number	349
2in1	350
OFFICEED	354
Registering new network services	Additional Service (Register USSD) 354

Available network services

- You can use network services provided by DoCoMo listed below on your FOMA terminal.

Service	Application	Monthly fee	Service	Application	Monthly fee
Voice Mail Service	Required	Charged	English Guidance	Not required	Free
Call Waiting Service	Required	Charged	Multi Number	Required	Charged
Call Forwarding Service	Required	Free	Public mode (Driving mode)*1	Not required	Free
Nuisance Call Blocking Service	Not required	Free	Public mode (power off)*1	Not required	Free
Caller ID Request Service	Not required	Free	2in1	Required	Charged
Dual Network Service	Required	Charged	OFFICEED	Required	Charged

*1 Public mode ●P57, P58

- Network services are not available when the terminal is outside the service area or the area where radio waves reach.
- For applications and inquiries, contact the DoCoMo Information Center listed on the back of this manual.
- Application is required for using the OFFICEED service. For more information, visit the DoCoMo website for business customers at <http://www.docomo.biz/d/212/> (in Japanese only).
- In this manual, the description of each network service is explained by the operation procedure using the menu of the FOMA terminal. For details, see "Mobile Phone User's Guide [Network Services]".

Voice Mail Service

This service answers incoming voice/videophone calls with an answering message and lets callers leave their messages to store in the Voice Mail Service Center even when you are in a place where radio waves do not reach, turn off your FOMA terminal or cannot answer the call.

- When both Answer Machine (P59) and Voice Mail Service are used simultaneously, set the ringing time for Voice Mail Service shorter than the response time for Answer Machine to give priority to Voice Mail Service.
- When Voice Mail Service is activated, unanswered voice/videophone calls are recorded as missed calls in the received call history and  1 is indicated on the standby display.
- Some functions of Voice Mail Service can be set and used separately in Number A and Number B of 2in1. You can activate/deactivate the service, play the recorded message, set Voice Mail Service and check the settings in each mode. Other settings and procedures are used in common in both Number A and Number B.

Basic flow of Voice Mail Service

Step 1: Activate the service

Step 2: The caller records a voice/videophone message

Step 3: Play back the voice/videophone message

Operation procedure

1  8 7 1

2 Perform the following operations

Voice Mail service; Activate

- 1 1 1
 - In the dual mode of 2in1: Highlight **Number A** or **Number B** 
- 2 Yes
 - When you select Number B in Step ① or the terminal is in the B mode, the procedure ends here.
- 3 Yes  Enter the ringing time (0 to 120 sec)

Voice Mail service; Set ring time

- 1 2  Yes  Enter the ringing time (0 to 120 sec)

Voice Mail service; Deactivate

- 1 1 3
 - In the dual mode of 2in1: Highlight **Number A** or **Number B** 
- 2 Yes

Voice Mail service; Check setting

- 1 1 4
 - In the dual mode or the B mode of 2in1: Highlight **Number A** or **Number B** 
 - 2 Yes
 - You can change the setting from the submenu. When you check Number B of 2in1, the settings cannot be changed.
- Activate Voice Mail :  1
 Deactivate Voice Mail :  2
 Set ring time :  3

Voice Mail service; Play messages

- When a new message arrives,  1 is indicated on the standby display.
-  1 (for incoming messages at Number B) and  2 (for incoming messages at Number A/B) are indicated in the dual mode of 2in1 as well.
- 1 1 5
 - In the dual mode of 2in1: Highlight **Number A** or **Number B** 
 - 2 Yes  Follow the voice guidance

Voice Mail service; Voice Mail setting

- 1 1 6
 - In the dual mode of 2in1: Highlight **Number A** or **Number B** 
- 2 Yes  Follow the voice guidance

Voice Mail service; Check messages

- Check if a new voice message arrives.
- 1 7  Yes

Tone/Vibration message notification

- You can set an alert tone to sound when the caller left a new message, or when the number of messages has increased at the time you perform **Check messages**.
- 2  Voice Mail alert field
 - 1
 - To disable the alert tone: 2  Go to Step ④
 - 3 Notification melody field  Highlight a folder  Highlight a melody 
 - 4 

Notify missed call; Activate

- When the FOMA terminal is turned on or within the service area, this function notifies you of the calls received with the FOMA terminal turned off or outside the service area using SMS.
- 3 1  Yes  Yes or No
- Yes: Notifies only the incoming calls with caller ID.
No: Notifies all the incoming calls.

Notify missed call; Deactivate

[3] [2] ▶ Yes

Notify missed call; Check setting

[3] [3] ▶ Yes

Hide Voice Mail icon

[4] ▶ Yes

The icon that indicates the number of voice messages disappears.

INFORMATION

- The saved voice messages are not included in the displayed number.
- Dial "1412" by a voice call to use Voice Mail Service on the videophone.
- When a call is connected to the Voice Mail Service Center while sending Chara-den on the videophone, switch to Send DTMF by selecting from the submenu to operate this service. ●P44
- When a new videophone message is stored, you are notified it by SMS.

Call Waiting Service

Call Waiting Service notifies you of incoming calls with the call waiting ring alert while you talk on the phone. You can put the current call on hold while you answer an incoming call. Also you can make another call while putting the current call on hold.

- You need to set *Arrival call act* (●P348) to *Answer* before using Call Waiting Service. When *Arrival call act* is set to any items other than *Answer*, you cannot answer the incoming voice calls during a voice call even after activating Call Waiting Service.

1 [MENU] [8] [7] [2] [1]

2 Perform the following operations

Activate

[1] ▶ Yes

Deactivate

[2] ▶ Yes

Check setting

[3] ▶ Yes

Putting the current call on hold to answer an incoming call

1 [] during a call

- *Multi connecting* appears on the screen.
- To switch the other parties: []
- To put the current call on hold: [] (Press [] again to release the hold.)
- To end the call on hold: [MENU] [1] during Call Waiting (multi-connection)

2 [] when you finish talking to the other party

The call is ended and the ring alert sounds.

- To resume the call on hold: []

Answering an incoming call after ending the current call

1 [] during a call

A ring alert sounds to indicate there is an incoming call.

2 []

You can answer a new call.

Holding the current call and making another call

1 Enter the phone number during a call

- You can select the other party's phone number from the received call history with [], from the redial data with [], or from the phonebook with [].

2 []

- *Multi connecting* appears on the screen.
- To switch the other parties: []
- To put the current call on hold: [] (Press [] again to release the hold.)
- To end the call on hold: [MENU] [1] during Call Waiting (multi-connection)

3 [] when you finish talking to the other party you called

The call is ended and the ring alert sounds.

- To resume the call on hold: []

INFORMATION

- During multi-connection, you cannot receive another incoming call. Unanswered calls are recorded as missed calls in the received call history.

Call Forwarding Service

Call Forwarding Service forwards automatically incoming voice/videophone calls to another phone number when you are outside the area where radio waves reach, turn off your FOMA terminal or cannot answer the call within the ringing time you have set.

- When both Answer Machine (P59) and Call Forwarding Service are used simultaneously, set the ringing time for Call Forwarding Service shorter than the response time for Answer Machine to give priority to Call Forwarding Service.
- When Call Forwarding Service is activated, unanswered voice/videophone calls are recorded as missed calls in the received call history.  1 is indicated on the standby display.
- Some functions of Call Forwarding Service can be set and used separately in Number A and Number B of 2in1. You can activate/deactivate the service and check the settings in each mode. Other settings and procedures are used in common in both Number A and Number B. When you check the settings in Number B, only activation and deactivation of Call Forwarding Service can be checked.

Basic flow of Call Forwarding Service

- Step 1:** Set the forwarding destination phone number
- Step 2:** Activate Call Forwarding Service
- Step 3:** Calls come in to your FOMA terminal
- Step 4:** The unanswered calls are automatically forwarded to the previously specified destination

Operation procedure

- 1  8 7 2 2

2 Perform the following operations

Activate

- ①  1
- In the dual mode of 2in1: Highlight **Number A** or **Number B** 
- ② Yes
- If you select Number B in Step ① or the terminal is in the B mode, the procedure ends here.
- ③ Yes  **Enter the forwarding destination phone number (up to 26 digits)**
- Before selecting the entry field for a phone number, you can set the phone number from the phonebook with , from the redial data with , or from the received call history with .
- ④  Yes  **Enter the ringing time (0 to 120 sec)**

Deactivate

- ①  2
- In the dual mode of 2in1: Highlight **Number A** or **Number B** 
- ② Yes

Register The Forwarding Number

- ①  3
- ② **Enter the forwarding destination phone number**  
- ③  1 or  2
- In the B mode:  1
 - When selecting  2 in the dual mode of 2in1: Highlight **Number A** 
- ④ Yes

Setting if forwarding number busy

- Set Voice Mail Service to handle calls when the forwarding destination is busy.
-  4  **Yes or No**

Check setting

- ①  5
- In the dual mode or the B mode of 2in1: Highlight **Number A** or **Number B** 
- ② Yes

Setting the forwarding guidance on/off

- 1  4  2  9   **Follow the voice guidance**

Nuisance Call Blocking Service

You can register to prevent nuisance calls such as crank calls. After registering a phone number as nuisance caller, you can automatically reject the call from the phone number and you can answer it with voice guidance.

- The calls from the phone numbers registered as nuisance callers are not recorded in the received call history and your FOMA terminal does not ring even when you receive them.

1 8 7 7 3

2 Perform the following operations

Register the caller
The phone number of the last call you answered is registered as nuisance caller. The call you did not answer such as a missed call cannot be registered.
▶ Yes
Register selected No
▶ Yes ▶ Enter the phone number (up to 22 digits) ▶ ▶ Yes
• Before selecting the entry field for a phone number, you can register the phone number from the phonebook with , from the redial data with , or from the received call history with .
Delete all entries
▶ Yes
Delete last entry
The last registered phone number is deleted. Repeating the same procedure, you can delete the registered phone number one by one from the last.
▶ Yes
Check the number of entries
▶ Yes

Caller ID Request Service

Caller ID Request Service allows you to answer incoming voice/videophone calls without caller ID with the guidance to request caller ID and disconnect the calls.

- The calls blocked by Caller ID Request Service are not recorded in the received call history and 1 is not displayed on the standby display.

1 8 7 4 2

2 Perform the following operations

Activate
▶ Yes
Deactivate
▶ Yes
Check setting
▶ Yes

Dual Network Service

You can use the mova terminal with the phone number of your FOMA terminal. You may choose to use the FOMA or mova terminal depending on which service area you are in.

- The FOMA terminal and mova terminal cannot be used at the same time.
- Switch for Dual Network Service from the terminal that is not currently used.

Enabling mova terminal to use

1 Dial "1540" on the mova terminal

2 Follow the voice guidance

Enabling FOMA terminal to use

Switch Dual Network Service that is being used by the mova terminal to FOMA terminal.

1 8 7 7 5

2 Perform the following operations

Dual Network Switching
▶ Yes ▶ Enter the network security code
Check setting
▶ Yes

Switching languages for the guidance

English Guidance

You can set the English voice guidance for setting each network services such as Voice Mail Service or informing that you are outside service area.

1 [MENU] [8] [7] [7] [4]

2 Perform the following operations

Guidance setting

① [1] ▶ Yes

② [1] or [2]

Japanese: Set the guidance to Japanese for you to hear at the time of calling.

English: Set the guidance to English for you to hear at the time of calling.

③ Yes ▶ [1] - [3]

Japanese: Set the guidance to Japanese for the other party to hear at the time of receiving.

Japanese+English: Set the guidance to Japanese followed by English for the other party to hear at the time of receiving.

English+Japanese: Set the guidance to English followed by Japanese for the other party to hear at the time of receiving.

Check setting

[2] ▶ Yes

Setting actions to receive incoming calls during a call

Arrival Call Act

If you have subscribed to Voice Mail Service, Call Forwarding Service and Call Waiting Service, you can set which service you use to receive the incoming voice/videophone calls or 64K data communication during a call.

- If you set **Answer** or **Voice Mail** for this function, it is not activated when you receive 64K data communication during a call.
- If you set **Answer** for this function, it is not activated when you receive a videophone call during a call.
- If you have not subscribed to Voice Mail Service, Call Forwarding Service and Call Waiting Service yet, you cannot answer the incoming calls while you are on the phone.
- To use **Arrival call act**, you need to set **Set arrival act** to **Activate**.

1 [MENU] [8] [7] [7]

Service Dialing Number

With Service Dialing Number, you can make a call to DoCoMo for Repairs or DoCoMo for General Inquiries.

- Different item or no item may be displayed on your FOMA terminal depending on the type of UIM.

1 [MENU] [8] [7] [7] [6]

2 Perform the following operations

ドコモ故障問合せ (DoCoMo for Repairs)

[1] ▶ Yes

Calls are made to DoCoMo for Repairs.

ドコモ総合案内・受付 (DoCoMo for General Inquiries)

[2] ▶ Yes

Calls are made to the DoCoMo Information Center.

2 Perform the following operations

Arrival call act

Set how incoming calls are handled during a call.

[9] ▶ [1] - [4]

Answer: If Call Waiting Service is set to *Activate*, it is enabled. If Call Waiting Service is set to *Deactivate*, following procedures are available.

- You can disconnect a voice call or 64K data communication and then answer the incoming voice call.
- Voice Mail Service or Call Forwarding Service can be used from the submenu to respond to or reject the incoming voice call during a voice call.
- If Voice Mail Service or Call Forwarding Service is set to *Activate*, each service is enabled.

Voice Mail: Allows you to respond incoming voice/ videophone calls during a call by Voice Mail Service.

Call Forwarding: Allows you to forward incoming voice/videophone calls or 64K data communication during a call.

- The incoming 64K data communication received during 64K data communication cannot be forwarded.

Call Rejection: Allows you to reject incoming voice/ videophone calls or 64K data communication during a call.

Set arrival act; Activate

Activate the response method selected by *Arrival call act*.

[8] [1] ▶ Yes

Set arrival act; Deactivate

[8] [2] ▶ Yes

Set arrival act; Check setting

[8] [3] ▶ Yes

INFORMATION

- Even if *Arrival call act* is set to any of the above, the call will be recorded in the received call history.

Remote Control

This service allows you to control Voice Mail Service or Call Forwarding Service from touch-tone general subscriber phones, payphones or DoCoMo mobile phones.

- You need to set Remote Control to *Activate* before using Voice Mail Service or Call Forwarding Service overseas.

1 [MENU] [8] [7] [7] [2]

2 Perform the following operations

Activate

[1] ▶ Yes

Deactivate

[2] ▶ Yes

Check setting

[3] ▶ Yes

Multi Number

Up to 2 additional numbers (Additional No.1 and Additional No.2) can be used for the phone number of your FOMA terminal as well as Basic Number.

- If you pull out the UIM or replace it by another UIM, the settings for Multi Number saved in the FOMA terminal (i.e. name or phone number) may be deleted. In this case, you can register them again.
- The names corresponding to the multi-numbers (Basic Number/Additional No.1/ Additional No.2) are displayed on the screen while you are making/receiving a call.
- When you make a call from the redial data or received call history, the multi-numbers used for the previous incoming/outgoing calls are displayed. You can make a new call from the multi-number.

1 [MENU] [8] [7] [7] [7]

2 Perform the following operations

Set Multi Number

You can set a number for making a call by switching multi-numbers in this setting.

[1] ▶ [1] - [3] ▶ Yes

Check setting

[2] ▶ Yes

Number Setting

Set the phone number subscribed to Multi Number.

[3] ▶ **Set each item** ▶ [0]

Name:

Setting is available for each *Additional No1/Additional No2* (up to 20 one-byte or 10 two-byte characters). For *Basic Number*, the name set in Own Number is displayed.

Phone number:

Set the subscribed phone number in *Additional No1/Additional No2*.

Multi number call:

Enable: Select the phone number that is notified to the other party from the submenu.

Incoming calls melody setting

Set items such as ring alert for each additional number.

[4] ▶ [1] or [2] ▶ **Set each item** ▶ [0]

Individual setting:

Select whether to set the incoming call setting individually.

Ring alert, Show image ➤ P84

Making calls by selecting the number to notify the other party

When making a call, you can select the number you want to show to the other party.

- Set *Multi number call* to *Enable* in *Number Setting* to select.

1 Enter a phone number ▶ [MENU] [4]

- To make a call from the redial data: 
 - ▶ Highlight a party ▶ [MENU] [3]
- To make a call from the received call history: 
 - ▶ Highlight a party ▶ [MENU] [3]

2 [1] - [3] ▶ [MENU]

INFORMATION

- When making a call from the redial data or received call history and the name corresponding to the multi-number used for making/receiving a call is not displayed, the multi-number specified in *Set Multi Number* will be used.
- The number can be selected by using Call Option. When Multi Number is set to *Unspecified* in Call Option, *Set Multi Number* is used.

2in1

This service provides 2 phone numbers and 2 mail addresses to 1 mobile phone, allowing you to use the phone just like two different phones by switching the mode.

- For more information, see “Mobile Phone User’s Guide [2in1]”.
 - For changing the UIM between 2 subscribers to the 2in1 service, make sure to turn off the 2in1 function before changing and then turn it on again after changing to receive correct Number B. ➤ P351
- When changing the UIM from the subscriber to the non-subscriber, turn off the 2in1 function before changing the UIM to update user information correctly.

2in1 modes

- **A mode**
You can make a call from your subscribed phone number (Number A) and send or receive i-mode mail (Address A). Also you can view the related data.
- **B mode**
You can make a call from the 2in1 phone number (Number B) and use WEB mail (Address B). Also you can view the related data.
- **Dual mode**
You can use both the A mode and the B mode in this mode.
- For functions for each mode ➤ P352

General notes

- With Address B, you can send and receive mail via the dedicated WEB mail site. ➤ P181
- With i-mode subscription, packet communication is possible even in the B mode.
- If you register phonebook without subscribing to the 2in1 service or when 2in1 is OFF or in the dual mode or the A mode, Phonebook 2in1 Setting is registered to *A*. If you register phonebook in the B mode, the setting is registered to *B*.

- In the B mode, you cannot compose or send mail/SMS or search for sent mails.
- In the B mode, the Mail To function is unavailable.
- When you make a call outside of Japan, the call is originated from Number A in the dual mode. With Number B, you cannot make a call.
- When deleting all items, folders or data in each functions, all data is deleted regardless of the 2in1 mode in use.
- i-Channel Ticker can be set in each mode.
- When using the phonebook in the dual mode, i-mode mail is sent from Address A and SMS is sent from Number A, regardless of Phonebook 2in1 Setting.
- As for displaying the number of i-mode mail, SMS or voice message of Voice Mail Service, those number of Number and Address A are displayed in the A mode, those of Number and Address B are displayed in the B mode and all of them are displayed in the dual mode or when 2in1 is OFF.
- For making a call from external devices, Number A is used, regardless of the mode.

1 8 7 6 ▶ Enter the terminal security code

- When the 2in1 function is OFF, a confirmation screen appears. When you select *Yes*, 2in1 is set to ON and the dual mode is set automatically.

2 Set each item

2in1 mode switching

Switch the 2in1 mode. Displays of the phonebook and received call history change according to the mode.

 ▶  - 

Phonebook 2in1 setting

Set the FOMA terminal phonebook entries to be displayed in each mode. When you set *Common*, the phonebook entry is displayed in both the A and B modes.

- This is available only for the FOMA terminal phonebook.

①  ▶ *A, B or Common*

② **Search the phonebook** ▶ **Highlight a party** ▶ 

- An icon of Phonebook 2in1 Setting appears in the phonebook list.

: Common : A : B

- To change the setting: 

③  ▶ *Yes*

Stand-by display setting for each mode

Set the standby display for the dual mode and the B mode.

 ▶  or  ▶ **Highlight an image** ▶ 

Setting procedure ◀ P90

- Still image, animation and created animation can be set.

Set call/receive No.

■ Ring alert for Number B:

Set ring alert for an incoming call to Number B.

  ▶  or  ▶ **Set each item** ▶ 

Setting procedure ◀ P85

■ Number B display:

With Number B, you can enclose the string shown on the screen while dialing/receiving call or talking, such as *Talking*, with << >>. For example, talking is displayed as <<Talking>>.

  ▶  or 

2in1 function OFF

Set the 2in1 function to OFF.

 ▶ *Yes*

Different functions for each mode

Only the functions which differ for each mode are described below (excluding the functions that operate in common with the A mode).

Service	A mode	B mode	Dual mode
Voice/Videophone Calls			
Calling	Number A	Number B	Selectable when calling*1
Called*2	All		
Phonebook			
Display*3, *4	A and Common	B and Common	All
Display of names*5	A and Common	B and Common	All
Phonebook 2in1 Setting when registering new data	A	B	A
Infrared/IC Communication			
Receiving all	Phonebook 2in1 Setting of the sending side is used*6		
Receiving one item	A	B	A
Restoring/Copying from the microSD memory card to the FOMA terminal			
Restoring	Phonebook 2in1 Setting for backup is used*6		
Copying one item	A	B	A
UIM phonebook			
Copying from the FOMA terminal to the UIM	Common (Phonebook 2in1 Setting cannot be used for the UIM phonebook .)		
Copying from the UIM to the FOMA terminal	A	B	A
Redial	Calling from Number A	Calling from Number B	All calling
Received Calls	Receiving at Number A	Receiving at Number B	All receiving
Mail/SMS			
Display*3	[FOMA terminal] Mail/SMS sent/received at Address/Number A	[FOMA terminal] • Mail to Address B that are saved in the terminal (saved by <i>Store in the handset</i> on the WEB mail site), new arrival notification mail and alarm notification mail • SMS received at Number B [WEB mail site] Mail sent/received at Address B	[FOMA terminal] • Mail sent/received at Address A, mails to Address B that are saved in the terminal, new arrival notification mail and alarm notification mail • SMS sent/received at Number A • SMS received at Number B [WEB mail site] Mail sent/received at Address B
Sending	[FOMA terminal] Mail/SMS sent from Address/Number A	[FOMA terminal] Mail/SMS sending unavailable [WEB mail site] Mail sent from Address B	[FOMA terminal] Mail/SMS sent from Address/Number A*7 [WEB mail site] Mail sent from Address B

Service	A mode		B mode	Dual mode
Mail/SMS				
Receiving				
Mail to Address A/SMS received at Number A				
	Alert sound	No alert sound	Alert sound	
Mail to Address B that is saved in the terminal, new arrival notification mail, alarm notification mail/SMS received at Number B				
	No alert sound	Alert sound	Alert sound	
Infrared/iC Communication				
Receiving all		Status of the sending side is used* ⁶		
Receiving one item		Copying as Address/Number A		
Restoring/Copying from the microSD memory card to the FOMA terminal				
Restoring		Status for a backup is used* ⁶		
Copying one item		Copying as Address/Number A		
UIM (SMS only)				
Copying/Moving from the FOMA terminal to the UIM		Copying/Moving after deleting information of your phone number		
Copying/Moving from the UIM to the FOMA terminal		Copying/Moving as Number A for all		
i-appli	All available	Available* ⁸		Available* ⁹
Own Number display	Number/Address A	Number/Address B		Numbers A and B Addresses A and B

*1 As for making a call from the phonebook, when Phonebook 2in1 Setting is *A* or *Common*, Number A is used for the call; when the setting is *B*, Number B is used. Besides that, calling by Quick Dial or the earphone switch is same as from the phonebook. In the dual mode of 2in1, you can select the number for making a call from *Own number* in Call Option.

*2 Reject/Accept Call is used for only phonebook data displayed by Phonebook 2in1 Setting. Reject Unregistered Caller is used for phonebook data not displayed by Phonebook 2in1 Setting.

*3 The phonebook data set to Secret Attribute is not displayed when Secret Mode is not set, regardless of the 2in1 mode.

*4 The phonebook data, mail and SMS in the microSD memory card are displayed, regardless of the 2in1 mode.

*5 When the phone number or mail address is registered in the phonebook, the name registered in the phonebook is displayed on the screen while making a call from the number and talking. The name is also displayed for the sender of received mail or receiver of sent/unsent mail.

*6 When the sending side or the device used for backup dose not support 2in1, *A* is set for Phonebook 2in1 Setting for all items. For mail/SMS, Address/Number A is restored.

*7 Note that Address/Number A is used for mail/SMS sent to the phonebook entries with *B* of Phonebook 2in1 Setting.

*8 i-appli using mail function and the i-appli standby display cannot be used.

*9 The i-appli standby display cannot be used.

OFFICEED

OFFICEED is the flat rate service in a group provided by specified IMCS (Inbuilding Mobile Communication System). You need to separately subscribe to use OFFICEED.

For more information, visit the DoCoMo website for business customers at <http://www.docomo.biz/d/212/> (in Japanese only).

Registering new network services

Additional Service (Register USSD)

When a new network service is provided by DoCoMo, you can use the service by registering it in the menu.

1 [MENU] 8 7 7 1

2 Perform the following operations

Register USSD

■ Registering/Changing:

[1] ▶ Highlight the number to record/change the service ▶ [OK] ▶ USSD code field ▶ Enter ▶ Name field ▶ Enter the service name (up to 20 one-byte or 10 two-byte characters) ▶ [OK]

- Up to 10 services can be registered.
- Enter the service code provided by DoCoMo in the USSD code field. The service code is used for settings network services. The service code is registered as the USSD code in the FOMA terminal.

■ Using the registered services:

[1] ▶ [1] - 8

The registered code is transmitted to the Service Center.

■ Deleting the registered services:

[1] ▶ Highlight a service ▶ [MENU] 1 (To delete all the services: [MENU] 2) ▶ Yes

Record reply message

Register the message corresponding to the code that will be returned from the Service Center when an added service is executed. This message is displayed when the recorded code is returned as a reply.

■ Registering:

[2] ▶ [1] - 8 ▶ USSD code field ▶ Enter ▶ Reply message field ▶ Enter the message (up to 20 one-byte or 10 two-byte characters) ▶ [OK]

- Up to 10 messages can be registered.

■ Deleting the registered messages:

[2] ▶ Highlight a message ▶ [MENU] 1 (To delete all the messages: [MENU] 2) ▶ Yes

PC connection setting

Data communication	356
Before usage	356
Flow of setup for data communication	358
AT command	358
CD-ROM	359
DoCoMo keitai datalink	360

For details of data communication, refer to the attached CD-ROM or “Manual for PC connection setting” (PDF version) on the DoCoMo website.

To see the PDF version of “Manual for PC connection setting”, Adobe® Reader® is required. If Adobe® Reader® is not installed in your PC, please install Adobe® Reader® in the attached CD-ROM. For details on how to use, refer to the Help menu of Adobe Reader.

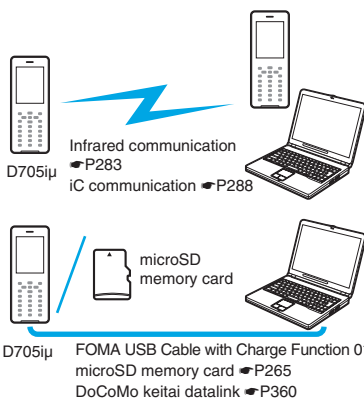
Data communication

Available data communication by connecting a PC to the FOMA terminal is classified as follows: data transfer (OBEX), packet communication and 64K data communication.

- The FOMA terminal does not support fax communication or the Remote Wakeup.
- Data communication can be executed by connecting the FOMA terminal to DoCoMo's PDA, "musea", "sigmarion II" or "sigmarion III". To use "musea" or "sigmarion II", update is required. For details on update, etc., visit the DoCoMo website.
- Packet communication or 64K data communication cannot be used overseas on this FOMA terminal.
- This FOMA terminal does not support IP connection.

Data transfer (OBEX)

Data of images, music, the phonebook, mails, etc is sent and received between another FOMA terminal or a PC.



Packet communication

Packet communication is a communication mode which charges are based on the amount of data sent and received (maximum reception speed 384 kbps, maximum transmission speed 64 kbps). You need to use access points that support packet communication on FOMA, such as DoCoMo's "mopera U/ mopera" Internet connection service. Note that communications of large-size data such as for viewing and downloading websites containing images will require high charges.

64K data communication

The 64K data communication is a communication mode which charges are based on the duration of the connection to the network (maximum communication speed 64 kbps). You need to use access points that support FOMA 64K data communication such as DoCoMo's "mopera U/mopera" Internet connection service or ISDN synchronized 64K access points.

Note that communicating for long time will require high charges.

Before usage

Checking operating environment

For data communication, the operating environment of PC is as follows:

Item	Requirements
PC*1	PC/AT compatible computer
OS*2	The Japanese version of Windows 2000, Windows XP or Windows Vista
Memory requirements	Windows 2000: 64 MB or more Windows XP: 128 MB or more Windows Vista: 512 MB or more
Hard disk capacity	5 MB or more free disk space

*1 USB port (conform to USB specification 1.1/2.0) is required.

*2 The operation from OS upgrading is not covered by the warranty.

- For the **FOMA D705iμ CD-ROM** screen, the recommended operating environment is Microsoft Internet Explorer 6.0 or later for Windows 2000 or Windows XP and Microsoft Internet Explorer 7.0 or later for Windows Vista.
- Note that utilization may not be possible in certain operating environments. Furthermore, operation will not be guaranteed in an environment other than that described above or by upgrading the OS and DoCoMo assumes no responsibility for operation under such conditions.

Required devices

The following hardware and software are required in addition to the FOMA terminal and a PC:

- FOMA USB Cable with Charge Function 01 (optional) or FOMA USB Cable (optional)
- Attached CD-ROM "CD-ROM for FOMA D705ip"

INFORMATION

- A USB cable for PC cannot be used because the shape of the connector does not fit. In this manual, FOMA USB Cable with Charge Function 01 (optional) is used for explanation.
- In case of using a USB HUB, operation may not be performed properly.

Usage precautions

Internet service provider usage charge

When using the Internet from PC, usage charge to your Internet service provider (hereinafter called provider) is generally required. This charge is paid directly to the provider, and is separate from the FOMA service charge. For details on usage charges, contact your provider.

- DoCoMo provides 2 Internet connection services: mopera U and mopera. The mopera U service requires subscription and a monthly fee. It allows you to use broadband Internet connection services. There is also a plan that requires a monthly fee only when you use the service. The mopera service allows you to access the Internet without subscription and monthly fee. You can make a connection with Internet immediately. For details on charges, etc., visit the DoCoMo website.

Setting the dialup connection (provider, etc.)

Different dialup connections are required for packet communication and 64K data communication. When performing packet communication, use the dialup connection for FOMA packet communication. When performing 64K data communication, use the dialup connection for FOMA 64K data communication or ISDN synchronized 64K data communication.

- You cannot connect to access points of PHS 64K/32K data communication such as PIAFS or DoPa access points.

User authentication during network access

Some dialup connections require user authentication before a connection can be established. If user authentication is required, you must use your communication software or dialup network to enter your ID and password before connection. Your ID and password will be assigned by the provider or network administrator. For details, contact your provider or network administrator.

Access authentication when using PC browser

To authenticate FirstPass (user certificate), you must install FirstPass PC software from the attached CD-ROM and configure it. For details, refer to "FirstPassManual" (PDF format) in the CD-ROM. Adobe® Reader® (version 6.0 or later recommended) is required to view it. If Adobe® Reader® is not installed in your PC, please install Adobe® Reader® in CD-ROM mentioned above beforehand. For details on how to use, refer to the Help menu of Adobe Reader.

Conditions of packet communication and 64K data communication

To perform data communication from the FOMA terminal, the following conditions must be satisfied:

- You must be within the FOMA service area.
 - Packet communication requires an access point that supports FOMA packet communications.
 - 64K data communication requires an access point that supports FOMA 64K or ISDN synchronized 64K data communication.
- Even when the above requirements are satisfied, you may not be able to perform data communication if base station traffic is heavy, or the signal quality is poor.

Flow of setup for data communication

Flow of setup for data transfer (OBEX)

In case of using FOMA USB Cable with Charge Function 01 (optional), install the FOMA communication configuration file.

Download and install the FOMA communication configuration file

- Install via the attached CD-ROM
or
- Download and install via the DoCoMo website



Data transfer

Flow of setup for packet communication or 64K data communication

The setup work needed to connect the FOMA terminal to a PC to perform packet or 64K data communication is as follows:

- ① Download and install the FOMA communication configuration file
 - Install via the attached CD-ROM
or
 - Download and install via the DoCoMo website
- ② Connect the FOMA terminal to a PC
- ③ Check the FOMA communication configuration file



Install the FOMA PC configuration software

(Easy Setup) Packet
communication
setup

(Easy Setup) 64K
data communication
setup

Execute communication



Set up communications without using
FOMA PC configuration software



Connect

FOMA communication configuration file

Install the FOMA communication configuration file on a PC from the attached CD-ROM, before connecting the FOMA terminal to a PC to perform data communication.

FOMA PC configuration software

When the FOMA PC configuration software (found on the attached CD-ROM) is installed on a PC, a number of settings required for packet communication or 64K data communication via connection between the FOMA terminal and PC can be made from the PC by simple operation.

AT command

AT commands are commands for setting FOMA terminal functions using a PC.

FOMA terminals comply with AT commands and support some extended commands and proprietary AT commands.

For details of AT command, see "Manual for PC connection setting" in attached CD-ROM.

The attached CD-ROM contains the software used for the data communication via the FOMA terminal and the PDF version of "Manual for PC connection setting" and "Kuten Code List". For details, refer to the attached CD-ROM.

■ Contained software/ PDF

- FOMA communication configuration file
- FOMA PC configuration software
- FOMA byte counter
- Guidance of DoCoMo keitai datalink
- FirstPass PC software
- Guidance of mopera U (mopera U start up tool/mopera U connection & setting tool/ mopera U requesting original data/FOMA byte counter)
- Guidance of Napster®
- PDF version of "Manual for PC connection setting"
- PDF version of Kuten Code List
- Adobe® Reader®

When the warning screen appears

When the attached CD-ROM is inserted into the PC, the following warning screen may appear. This warning is displayed according to the security setting of Microsoft Internet Explorer, but this will not cause a problem. Click はい (Yes).

- The screen shown below is for the case of using Windows XP. It may differ depending on the PC environment.



- For Windows Vista, when the attached CD-ROM is inserted into the PC, the auto play screen may appear. Click *rundll32.exe* の実行 (Execute rundll32.exe).

"DoCoMo keitai datalink" is a software which edits the data of the phonebook or mail messages in your mobile phone after backing up to PC. It is provided on the DoCoMo website and you can see the website below for details and downloading. In addition, you can access the website below from the attached CD-ROM as well.

<http://datalink.nttdocomo.co.jp/> (in Japanese only)

For details on how to download, transferable data, operation environment including supported OS, installation, operating procedure and restrictions, refer to the website above.

Besides, for the operating procedure after installation, refer to Help within the software. In addition, the FOMA USB Cable (optional) is required to use DoCoMo keitai datalink.

Overseas Use

Overview of the WORLD WING international roaming service	362
Services available overseas	362
Check required before overseas use	364
Using your FOMA terminal overseas	365
Making calls from overseas	366
Receiving calls	367
Setting the procedure for searching service providers	Network Search Mode 367
Setting a service provider to be connected with priority	PLMN Setting 368
Displaying the name of service provider during roaming	Operator Name Display 368
Displaying the world clock automatically outside Japan	Two Time Zone Clocks 369
Starting roaming guidance	Roaming Guidance 369
Rejecting incoming calls during roaming	Call Barring in Roaming 369
Using network services during roaming	Overseas Services 370

Overview of the WORLD WING international roaming service

The WORLD WING international roaming service allows you to use phone calls and i-mode overseas as well by using the networks of overseas service providers.

- The domestic phone numbers and mail addresses can also be used overseas as well.
- If you subscribed to the FOMA service on and after September 1, 2005, no subscription is required to use WORLD WING. However, if you requested not to subscribe to it at the time of subscription to the FOMA service or have canceled the subscription, a subscription is required.
- If you subscribed to the FOMA service on and before August 31, 2005 but have not subscribed to WORLD WING, a subscription is required.
- The WORLD WING compatible UIM (FOMA card) (other than blue) must be inserted to your FOMA terminal.
- Some billing plans may not be available.
- The service area is limited to DoCoMo's overseas roaming area*1. For details about the service area and usage fees, visit the DoCoMo International Services website.

*1 This FOMA terminal supports only 3G roaming area. Your FOMA terminal cannot be used in the GSM/GPRS service area.

Country codes of major countries

When making international calls or setting Int'l Call Assist, you should use the following country codes (as of December, 2007):

Service area	Country code	Service area	Country code
United States of America	1	China	86
United Kingdom	44	Germany	49
Italy	39	Turkey	90
India	91	Japan	81
Indonesia	62	New Caledonia	687
Egypt	20	New Zealand	64
Australia	61	Norway	47
Austria	43	Hungary	36
Netherlands	31	Fiji	679
Canada	1	Philippines	63
Korea	82	Finland	358
Greece	30	France	33
		Brazil	55

Service area	Country code	Service area	Country code
Singapore	65	Vietnam	84
Switzerland	41	Peru	51
Sweden	46	Belgium	32
Spain	34	Hong Kong	852
Thailand	66	Macau	853
Taiwan	886	Malaysia	60
Tahiti (French Polynesia)	689	Maldives	960
Czech	420	Russia	7

- For other country codes and related information, visit the DoCoMo International Services website.

Services available overseas

The communication services and functions available overseas are different from those available domestically. They also depend on which service provider you use overseas.

- For details of the communication services available during international roaming, see the international service guides, such as "Mobile Phone User's Guide [International Services]".

Communication services available overseas

- You can use the following communication services overseas. Some communication services may be unavailable depending on the service providers or areas.
 - Voice call*1
 - Videophone call*1,*2
 - i-mode Mail
 - SMS
 - i-mode (including Full Browser)
 - i-Channel*3,*4

*1 You cannot make a call by Number B of 2in1. When using Multi Number, you cannot make a call from the additional number.

*2 You can make international videophone calls with users of specified overseas 3G service providers or users of the FOMA terminal service in Japan.

*3 When there is a connection with an overseas service provider, automatic update is automatically stopped temporarily. You need to make i-Channel settings overseas. You are charged with a packet communication fee in addition to the monthly fee.

*4 At the time of overseas use, a communication fee is also required for automatic update of Basic channel. (It is included in the monthly service fee in Japan).

- The packet communication and 64K data communication with PC connected cannot be used overseas.

INFORMATION

- During international roaming, the following capabilities are unavailable: reception of Message F, transmission/reception of Chaku-moji, pattern definition update and automatic update settings of Virus Scan Function and Software Update. However, you can delete any data that is likely to cause problems and interrupt the startup of applications.
- The call/standby time may be reduced to about half, depending on the situation of networks in the country where you are staying.

Sending and receiving SMS

- You can also send and receive SMS to/from users of overseas service providers other than DoCoMo. For the countries where the service is available and the details of overseas service providers, see the DoCoMo International Services website.
- When sending SMS to users of overseas service providers, you should specify the addresses as shown in the following table. However, if your message contains any characters not supported by the other party, note that these characters may not be displayed correctly. For more information, refer to "Mobile Phone User's Guide [International Services]" or any other international service guides.

Other party	SMS address to be specified
DoCoMo (FOMA terminal)	As with the domestic procedure, enter the other party's phone number as it is.
Other overseas service providers	When sending SMS, the other party's phone number should be preceded by the plus sign (+) and the country code. You can also enter "010", the country code and the other party's mobile phone number in that order (if the phone number starts with a zero (0), then omit the first zero). When you reply to any overseas SMS received, enter "010".

Network service setting operations

When using a network service in your stay overseas, you may sometimes encounter problems such as restrictions on the contents of a service or inability to use the service itself even when the startup and stop procedures are possible.

For more information, see "Mobile Phone User's Guide [Network Services]", "Mobile Phone User's Guide [International Services]" or any other international service guide.

- The FOMA network enables all the network service settings listed below.

Service name	Description
Chaku-moji	Service cannot be used.
Voice Mail Service	May not be set in some service areas.
Call Waiting Service	
Call Forwarding Service	
Nuisance Call Blocking Service	
Caller ID Notification Service	May not be set in some service areas. In addition, the caller ID may not be notified correctly.
Caller ID Request Service	May not be set in some service areas.
Public mode (Driving mode)	Can be set, but the service cannot be used. Overseas, cancel the setting.
Dual Network Service	Cannot be set.
English Guidance	May not be set in some service areas.

Service name	Description
Multi Number	May not be set in some service areas. A call cannot be made by an additional number. A call can be received to the additional number, but you may be unable to distinguish the reception to which number it is.
Roaming Guidance Setting	May not be set in some service areas.
Call Barring in Roaming	
Voice Mail Service (Overseas)	Can be set and service can be used.
Call Forwarding Service (Overseas)	
Caller ID Request Service (Overseas)	
Roaming Guidance (Overseas)	
Remote Control (Overseas)	

Check required before overseas use

Before using your FOMA terminal overseas, you should also refer to "Mobile Phone User's Guide [Network Services]" and "Mobile Phone User's Guide [International Services]".

- You are charged with any usage fee overseas together with the monthly usage fee. However, there are cases in which you are charged about 1 month behind the schedule for reasons on the side of overseas service providers.
- For overseas usage, the value indicated by Call Cost covers both the sent and received calls. Note, however, that the indicated call cost may be different from the actual call cost.

When making inquiries overseas

If your FOMA terminal is lost or stolen overseas or if you have to pay the cumulative value of usage or cope with a failure encountered overseas, see "Loss or theft of FOMA terminal or payment of cost overseas" or "Failures encountered overseas" on the back of this manual. Note that any call or communication charges incurred after the UIM is stolen will be borne by the customer.

- For the latest information of international phone access numbers and international phone IDs for universal numbers, see the DoCoMo International Services website.

International access numbers for major countries (Table 1)

The international phone access numbers for major countries are listed below (as of August, 2007):

Service area	Access number	Service area	Access number
Ireland	00	Denmark	00
United States of America	011	Germany	00
United Arab Emirates	00	Turkey	00
United Kingdom	00	New Zealand	00
Italy	00	Norway	00
India	00	Hungary	00
Indonesia	001	Philippines	00
Australia	0011	Finland	00
Netherlands	00	France	00
Canada	011	Brazil	0041/ 0014
Korea	001	Vietnam	00
Greece	00	Belgium	00
Singapore	001	Poland	00
Switzerland	00	Portugal	00
Sweden	00	Hong Kong	001
Spain	00	Macau	00
Thailand	001	Malaysia	00
Taiwan	002	Monaco	00
Czech	00	Luxembourg	00
China	00	Russia	810

■ International phone IDs for universal numbers (Table 2)

The international phone IDs for universal numbers for major countries are listed below (as of August, 2007):

Service area	Intl. ID number	Service area	Intl. ID number
Ireland	00	China	00
United States of America	011	Denmark	00
Argentina	00	Germany	00
United Kingdom	00	New Zealand	00
Israel	014	Norway	00
Italy	00	Hungary	00
Australia	0011	Philippines	00
Austria	00	Finland	990
Netherlands	00	France	00
Canada	011	Brazil	0021
Korea	001	Peru	00
Colombia	009	Belgium	00
Singapore	001	Portugal	00
Switzerland	00	Hong Kong	001
Sweden	00	Malaysia	00
Spain	00	Republic of South Africa	09
Thailand	001	Luxembourg	00
Taiwan	00		

- There are cases in which some numbers cannot be used.
- Universal numbers are applicable to only the countries listed here.
- When making a call from a hotel overseas, you may sometimes be separately charged with the phone usage fee from the hotel. You should check with the hotel before making a call.
- Note that the universal number may not be used from a mobile phone, a payphone, a hotel, etc.

Charging

- Precautions for handling the AC adapter
☛P19
- How to charge using the AC adapter ☛P35, P36

Preparations before departure

- To display the i-mode site overseas: **iMenu** ▶ **English iMenu** ▶ **Options** ▶ **International Settings** ▶ **i-mode services Settings**

- Before using Voice Mail Service or Call Forwarding Service from overseas, you need to subscribe to them and set Remote Control to **Activate** in advance. ☛P349
- For some overseas service providers, you may find it impossible to set or check network services. Before departure, you should read "Mobile Phone User's Guide [International Services]" or "Mobile Phone User's Guide [Network Services]".

INFORMATION

- Details about the preparations and settings are found in "Mobile Phone User's Guide [i-mode] FOMA version", "Mobile Phone User's Guide [International Services]" and "Mobile Phone User's Guide [Network Services]".

Using your FOMA terminal overseas

In the default setting, your FOMA terminal automatically identifies available service providers when you turn on FOMA after your arrival. ☛P367

- This FOMA terminal supports only 3G roaming area.

Display information and the date and time information

While you are using your FOMA terminal overseas, the name of the service provider connected appears on the standby display.

- Displaying the name of the service provider in use can be set in Operator Name Display.
- If you want to have the standby display show the time in the city where you are staying, you need to set Two Time Zone Clocks to **ON** or set the design to **World time clock** in Clock Display Format.

Settings required after returning home

If you turn on your FOMA terminal when returning to Japan, available networks are automatically searched to set the FOMA network. Set **Auto** for Network Search Mode again if you cannot connect to the FOMA network.

Making calls from overseas

The international roaming service allows you to make voice calls and videophone calls from overseas.

- When you and the other party use the service provider which supports a videophone call of the FOMA terminal, videophone call can be used. For the countries where the service is available and the details of overseas service providers, see the DoCoMo International Services website.
- For a videophone call, the image of the other party displayed on your FOMA terminal may be distorted or connection may not be established depending on the terminal at the other end.
- Even when Caller ID Notification is set to *Notify*, *Unavailable* or *User Unset* may be displayed instead of the phone number.

Making calls to Japan or another country from overseas

You can make such a call by entering the plus sign (+) or using Call Option.

Using “+” to make a call

- 1 (for over a second) ▶ Enter a country code ▶ Area code (city code) ▶ Phone number

- To enter “+”: (for over a second)
- Use 81 as the country code when making a call to Japan from overseas.
- If the area code (city code) begins with a zero (0), omit the zero when dialing it (however, you must not omit the zero for general subscriber phones in Italy).

- 2 (for a voice call) or (for a videophone call)

Using Call Option to make a call

- 1 Enter an area code (city code) ▶ Phone number ▶

- Making a videophone call: *Call type* field ▶

- 2 *Intn'l call field* ▶

- 3 *Country code field* ▶ Highlight the country code ▶

- 4 ▶ *Yes*

- When *V.phone* is selected for the call type, press and select *Yes* or *No, use original* to select Chara-den that is to be displayed during a call and make a videophone call.

Using the phonebook to make a call

- Available only when the phone number registered in the phonebook starts with a zero (0).
- You need to set *Country code* in Int'l Call Assist to *ON* and set *Country code setting* to the country to make the call to.

- 1 Search the phonebook ▶ Highlight a party

- 2 (for a voice call) or (for a videophone call) ▶ *Yes*

Making calls to the same country from overseas

You can make calls with the same procedure as that used in Japan.

- If the other party in the country where you are staying also uses the WORLD WING service, you can follow the procedure for making international calls to Japan.

- 1 Enter an area code (city code) ▶ Phone number

- 2 (for a voice call) or (for a videophone call) ▶ *No, use original*

Making calls to the user of WORLD WING overseas

For the precautions of the operation for entering phone numbers, see "Making a call to Japan or another country from overseas". P366

Using "+" to make a call

1 (for over a second)
Enter 90XXXXXXX or 80XXXXXXX

2 (for a voice call) or (for a videophone call)

Using Call Option to make a call

1 Enter 90XXXXXXX or 80XXXXXXX

Making a videophone call: *Call type* field

2 *Intn'l call field*

3 *Country code field* (Japan)

4 Yes

INFORMATION

- You can also use the phonebook to make a call.

Receiving calls

You can receive calls with the same procedure as that used in Japan.

1 A call arrives

- You can also press to receive a videophone call.

Having the other party make a call from Japan

Have the other party enter your phone number to make a call, as in Japan.

1 Dial 090XXXXXXX or 080XXXXXXX

Having the other party make a call from a country other than Japan

Have the other party make a call by entering the international access code for the originating country and 81 as the country code for Japan, followed by your phone number (a zero (0) omitted).

1 Enter the international access code for the originating country 90XXXXXXX or 80XXXXXXX

INFORMATION

- When there is an incoming call during international roaming, the call is received as an international call from Japan. The caller is charged for a call to Japan and the receiver is charged for an international call.

Setting the procedure for searching service providers

Network Search Mode

When the current network of the service provider is out of the service area, this function sets whether to automatically search for a network and reconnect to another service provider.

- The setting may not be available depending on the signal condition or the network situation.
- As of December, 2007, service providers other than NTT DoCoMo cannot be selected in Japan.
- In case of out of service area after returning to Japan, confirm that Network Search Mode is set to *Auto*.

1 -

Auto: The setting is automatically made to a connectable network.

Manual: A list of connectable networks is displayed. Select the connection destination.

- To search for a network again: on the network list

Network re-search: Searches for a connectable network again.

- When *Auto* is set, you are automatically connected to the network.

- When **Manual** is set, a list of connectable networks is displayed. Select the connection destination.

Setting a service provider to be connected with priority

PLMN Setting

Add service providers and set priority of a service provider that is to be connected when Network Search Mode is set to **Auto**.

- Priority may not be given to the service providers as the priority set by this function depending on the signal condition or the network situation.

Registering the service providers

- The service providers are registered as a priority network list designated by DoCoMo. Any service provider that is already registered cannot be registered again.
- Up to 20 service providers can be registered.

1 [MENU] [8] [8] [1] [3]

2 [MENU] [1] ▶ **Select a registration method**

■ Manual registration:

- ① [1] ▶ **MCC field ▶ Enter a country code (3 digits)**
- ② **MNC field ▶ Enter an operator code (up to 2 or 3 digits)** ▶ []

■ Registering from the list of service providers:

- ① [2]
- ② **Highlight a country name** ▶ []
 - **All Countries:** Display all the service providers.
- ③ **Highlight a service provider** ▶ []
 - To display the detail information: Highlight a service provider ▶ []

■ Selecting from available service providers: [3] ▶ **Highlight a service provider** ▶ []

3 **Highlight an insert position** ▶ [] ▶ []

The service provider is added just before the selected line.

- To add the service provider at the end of the list: **<Insert last>**

Changing the priority of service providers

1 [MENU] [8] [8] [1] [3]

2 **Highlight a service provider** ▶ [MENU] [2]

3 **Highlight an insert position** ▶ [] ▶ []

The service provider is added just before the selected line.

- To add the service provider at the end of the list: **<Insert last>**

Deleting a service provider

1 [MENU] [8] [8] [1] [3]

2 **Highlight a service provider** ▶

[MENU] [3] [1]

■ **Deleting selected items:** [MENU] [3] [2]

▶ **Highlight service providers** ▶ [] ▶ []

[]

■ **Deleting all:** [MENU] [3] [3] ▶ **Enter the terminal security code**

3 **Yes** ▶ []

Displaying the name of service provider during roaming

Operator Name Display

Set whether to display the name of the service provider being currently connected on the standby display.

1 [MENU] [8] [8] [1] [2] ▶ [1] or [2]

INFORMATION

- Even if **display ON** is set, when the network of DoCoMo is used or you are outside the service area, the name of the operator is not displayed.

Displaying the world clock automatically outside Japan

Two Time Zone Clocks

- The display format other than *Day* depends on Clock Display Format.
- When the time information by the network of the service provider to which your terminal is connected is received while *Adjust time/time diff* is set to *ON*, the two time zone clocks are displayed.

1 [MENU] [8] [8] [3] ▶ [1] or [2]

INFORMATION

- In the following cases, the two time zone clocks are not displayed:
 - When movie/i-motion or Chara-den is set on the standby display
 - When the i-appli standby display is set

Starting roaming guidance

Roaming Guidance

Set whether to play a guidance that notifies the other party of the current status of international roaming when there is a voice call or videophone call during international roaming.

- You need to make the setting in Japan.

1 [MENU] [8] [7] [5]

2 Perform the following operations

Activate
[1] ▶ Yes
Deactivate
[2] ▶ Yes
Check setting
[3] ▶ Yes

INFORMATION

- The ringing alert differs depending on the setting of Call Forwarding Service.
- The setting may not be available depending on the service providers.
- When Roaming Guidance is not set, the ringing alert set by the service provider sounds.

Rejecting incoming calls during roaming

Call Barring in Roaming

Set whether to reject all incoming calls or incoming videophone calls.

- The setting may not be available depending on the overseas service provider.

1 [MENU] [8] [8] [1] [9]

2 Perform the following operations

Bar incoming call
① [1] ▶ [1] or [2] All barrings: All the incoming calls are rejected. Data calls barring: Incoming videophone calls are rejected. • 64K data communication cannot be used.
② Yes ▶ Enter the network security code
Accept incoming call
[2] ▶ Yes ▶ Enter the network security code
Check setting
[3] ▶ Yes

Some network services such as Voice Mail Service or Call Forwarding Service, can be used from overseas. You need to set Remote Control to *Activate* in advance.

- The setting operation of Overseas Services cannot be performed outside the service area. Operate the terminal in locations with good signal condition.
- When you operate the service from overseas, you are charged at the international call rate for the country in which the service is used.
- For details of network services, see "Mobile Phone User's Guide [Network Services]" or "Mobile Phone User's Guide [International Services]".

1 MENU 8 8 1

2 Perform the following operations

Voice mail (Int.)	
①	4 ▶ 1 - 5 1 : Start 2 : Stop 3 : Play 4 : Set 5 : Set ringing time ② Yes
Call forwarding (Int.)	
①	5 ▶ 1 - 3 1 : Start 2 : Stop 3 : Set ② Yes
Remote control (Int.)	
	6 ▶ Yes
Caller ID request (Int.)	
	7 ▶ Yes
Roaming guidance (Int.)	
	8 ▶ Yes

3 Follow the guidance

Appendix/External Devices/ Troubleshooting

Menu list	372
List of dial keys and character assignments (5-touch Input Method)	381
List of input slots and character assignments (Slot Input Method)	382
List of fixed phrases	382
List of face marks	383
List of symbols	386
List of pictograms	386
Combination of operations during Multiaccess	390
Combination of functions during Multitask	391
Services available for the FOMA terminal	392
Options and related devices	392
Data Interchange using external devices	
About Movie playing software	393
Troubleshooting	
Troubleshooting	393
Example of Error messages	Error Message 397
Warranty and After-Sales Service	404
Diagnostic site of i-mode trouble	405
Updating software	Software Update 406
Protecting the FOMA terminal from hazardous data	Virus Scan Function 412
Main specification	414
Number of saved, registered and protected items in D705iμ	416
SAR certification information and other information	416
Export Administration Regulations	417

- The menu differs depending on the menu display style (Menu Setting).
- One-byte and two-byte characters shown on the display may differ from those below.

: When the settings have been changed, the default settings are not restored by performing Reset.

■ Mail

Menu item	Page
1 1 Inbox	P186
1 2 Compose message	P171
1 3 Chat mail	P201
1 4 Unsent messages	P186
1 5 Outbox	P186
1 6 Retrieve/WEBmail	
1 6 1 i-mode message	P181
1 6 2 SMS	P206
1 6 3 Receive option	P181
1 6 4 Message retrieval	
selected (all)	P198
1 6 5 WEBmail	P181
1 7 SMS	
1 7 1 Compose SMS	P204
1 7 2 Received SMS	P207
1 7 3 Sent SMS	P207
1 7 4 SMS settings	
Font type: Japanese	
SMS report request: Not request	
Keep in SMS center: 3 days	
SMSC: DoCoMo	
Address: 81903101652	
Type of Number: international	
1 8 Template	P177
1 9 Mail settings	
1 9 1 Mail alert	
Ring alert: Melody/メール・メロディ A (Mail, melody A)	
Light alert: ON/Free step(fast)	
Vibrate alert: OFF	
Ring time (sec): 10	
1 9 2 Chat mail alert	
Alert setting: Customize	
Ring alert: Melody/メール・メロディ B (Mail, melody B)	
Light alert: ON/Free step(fast)	
Vibrate alert: OFF	
Ring time (sec): 10	
1 9 3 Sort method	
ON (all)	P196

Menu item	Page
1 9 4 Signature	
Auto add: ON	
Edit signature: not recorded	P198
1 9 5 Reply setting	
1 9 5 1 Reply format	
Quote: Yes	
Quote characters: >	P199
1 9 5 2 Activate quick reply	
ON	P199
1 9 5 3 Quick reply presets	
OKです。(OK)	
NGです。(No good)	
ありがとう！(Thank you！)	
ゴメンなさい！(Sorry!)	
後ほど連絡します。(Get in touch later.)	P199
1 9 6 Mail group	P199
1 9 7 Display settings	
1 9 7 1 Display priority	
Show message	P200
1 9 7 2 Receive option	
OFF	P198
1 9 7 3 Incoming msg. attach	
selected (all)	P200
1 9 7 4 Attachment auto-play	
Auto play	P200
1 9 7 5 Message list	
Display 2 rows	P200

■ i-mode

Menu item	Page
2 1 iMenu	P144
2 2 Bookmark	P149
2 3 Go to location	
2 3 1 Enter URL	P148
2 3 2 URL history	P148
2 3 3 Last visited URL	P145
2 4 Screen memo	P151
2 5 i-mode message	P181
2 6 MessageR&F	
2 6 1 MessageR	P160
2 6 2 MessageF	P160
2 6 3 Message settings	

Menu item	Page
2.6.3.1 Auto-display MessageR preferred	P159
2.6.3.2 Message retrieval selected (all)	P198
2.6.3.3 Attachment auto-play Auto play	P200
2.6.3.4 MessageR alert Ring alert: Melody/メロディ・メロディ C (Mail, melody C) Light alert: ON/Free step(fast) Vibrate alert: OFF Ring time (sec): 10	P84
2.6.3.5 MessageF alert Ring alert: Melody/メロディ・メロディ C (Mail, melody C) Light alert: ON/Free step(fast) Vibrate alert: OFF Ring time (sec): 10	
2.7 i-Channel	
2.7.1 i-Channel list	P167
2.7.2 i-Channel ticker Show ticker: Yes Ticker speed: Moderate	P167
2.7.3 Reset i-Channel	P168
2.8 i-mode settings	
2.8.1 i-mode shortcuts Not recorded	P150
2.8.2 Connection timeout 60 seconds	P157
2.8.3 Display light Terminal setting	P158
2.8.4 Certificate	
2.8.4.1 Manage certificate*1 valid (all)	P161
2.8.4.2 Certificate download	P162
2.8.4.3 Certificate host DoCoMo	P164
2.8.4.4 Skip password Yes	P162
2.8.5 Image & Effect Image, Animation: Display Use phone information: Yes Sound effect setting: ON	P158
2.8.6 i-motion Auto Play ON	P166
2.8.7 Host selection i-mode(UIM)	P157
2.9 Full Browser	

Menu item	Page
2.9.1 Home	P240
2.9.2 Bookmark	
2.9.3 Go to location	
2.9.3.1 Enter URL	
2.9.3.2 URL history	P240
2.9.3.3 Last visited URL	
2.9.4 Browser settings	
2.9.4.1 Home URL http://www.google.co.jp	P245
2.9.4.2 Cookie set/delete Cookie: Valid Notify: Sending/receiving	P245
2.9.4.3 Script setting Script Setting: Valid Window Open Guard: Invalid	P246
2.9.4.4 Display mode setting Mobile mode	P246
2.9.4.5 Image display Display (all)	P246
2.9.4.6 Access setting No	P246
2.9.4.7 Referrer setting Send	P246
2.9.4.8 Screen view setting With menu icon view	P246

i-appli

Menu item	Page
3.1 Software list	P211
3.2 i-appli settings	
3.2.1 Sort software By access time	P226
3.2.2 Auto start ON	P223
3.2.3 Software info disp. OFF	P211
3.2.4 Display light Terminal Setting	P214
3.2.5 Vibrate effect ON	P214
3.2.6 i-appli shortcuts Not recorded	P223
3.3 Display history	P213 P224 P225

*1 Certificates saved in the UIM are also reset to the default (all valid) by performing Reset.

■ Phonebook & Logs

Menu item	Page
4 1 Phonebook	P72
Show all names	
4 2 Phonebook new entry	P69
4 3 Phonebook(UIM) new entry	P71
4 4 Received calls	P46
4 5 Redial	P46
4 6 Ans.Machine & Voice memo	
4 6 1 Answer machine	P59
Deactivate	
4 6 2 Recorded messages	P61
4 6 3 Record voice memo	P321
4 6 4 Voice memos	P322
4 7 Mail logs	
4 7 1 Sent msg log	P195
4 7 2 Received msg log	P195
4 8 Own number	P40 P320
My phone number:	
subscribed phone number	
Other than that: not recorded	

■ Data Box

Menu item	Page
5 1 My Picture	P248
5 2 Music	P297
5 3 i-motion	P254
5 4 Melody	P264
5 5 My Document	P289
5 6 Chara-den	P261
5 7 Machi-chara	P264
5 8 Kisekai Tool	P99
not set	

■ LifeKit

Menu item	Page
6 1 Bar code reader	P139
6 2 Ir/iC/PC connection	
6 2 1 Receive Ir data	P285
6 2 2 Send all Ir data	P284
6 2 3 Send all via iC	P288
6 2 4 Save received data	P286
6 2 5 Data exchange settings	P287
End alert: OFF	
Auto authentication: OFF	
Ph.book image sending: ON	
6 2 6 USB mode settings*2	P275
Communication mode	

Menu item	Page
6 3 ToruCa	P233
6 4 IC card	
6 4 1 IC card content	P231
6 4 2 Lock/Unlock	P236
OFF	
6 4 3 Timed lock	P238
OFF	
6 4 4 IC lock(power-off)	P238
Remain lock status	
6 4 5 IC card lock setting	P237
Security code	
6 5 microSD	P272
6 6 Camera	
6 6 1 Still camera	P126
6 6 2 Movie camera	P129
6 7 Sound recorder	P130
6 8 Data Center	
6 8 1 Access Data Center	P81
6 8 2 Synchronization log	P81
6 8 3 Sync setting	P82
OFF	

■ Accessory

Menu item	Page
7 1 Scheduler	P310
7 2 Notepad	P325
7 3 Alarm clock	P308
not set	
7 4 Calculator	P324
7 5 Dictionaries	P327
7 6 Dekanji	P328

■ Settings & NW services

Menu item	Page
8 1 Alerts & Sounds	
8 1 1 Set sound	
8 1 1 1 Call ring alert	P85
8 1 1 1 1 Call ring alert	
Melody/SKY	
8 1 1 1 2 V.phone ring alert	
Melody/電話・メロディ A (Phone, melody A)	P117
8 1 1 1 3 Anonymous caller	
Disable settings (all)	
8 1 1 2 Mail/Msg ring alert	

*2 In case the FOMA USB Cable with Charge Function 01 (optional) is connected to the external device, the default settings are not restored by performing Reset.

Menu item	Page
8 1 1 2 1 Mail ring alert Melody/メール・メロディ A (Mail, melody A)	P85
8 1 1 2 2 Chat M ring alert Melody/メール・メロディ B (Mail, melody B)	
8 1 1 2 3 Msg.R ring alert Melody/メール・メロディ C (Mail, melody C)	
8 1 1 2 4 Msg.F ring alert Melody/メール・メロディ C (Mail, melody C)	
8 1 1 3 Alarm sound	P87
8 1 1 3 1 Alarm clock sound Melody/アラーム・メロディ (Alarm, melody)	
8 1 1 3 2 Schedule reminder Alarm on time: Melody/アラーム・女性ボイス (Alarm, female voice) Alarm in advance: Melody/パターン4 (Pattern 4)	
8 1 1 4 System sound	
8 1 1 4 1 Keypad sound Keypad sound1	P87
8 1 1 4 2 Shutter sound Shutter sound1	P88
8 1 1 4 3 Movie camera sound Shutter sound1	
8 1 1 5 Charge alert ON	P89
8 1 1 6 Call session	P57
8 1 1 6 1 Status message Standard	
8 1 1 6 2 On-hold tone 保留音・ボイス (On-hold tone, voice)	P57
8 1 1 6 3 Quality alarm Alarm OFF	P89
8 1 1 6 4 Reconnect alarm Alarm OFF	P53
8 1 1 6 5 Low Battery alert ON	P37
8 1 2 Adjust volume	P88
8 1 2 1 Call alert volume LEVEL 4	
8 1 2 2 Mail/Msg alert vol. LEVEL 4	
8 1 2 3 Listen volume LEVEL 4	
8 1 2 4 Alarm volume	

Menu item	Page
8 1 2 4 1 Alarm clock sound LEVEL 4	P88
8 1 2 4 2 Schedule reminder LEVEL 4	
8 1 2 5 i-appli effect sound LEVEL 4	
8 1 2 6 ToruCa receive alert LEVEL 4	
8 1 2 7 Melody effect sound LEVEL 4	P88
8 1 3 Vibrate alert/effect	
8 1 3 1 Call vibrate alert	
8 1 3 1 1 Call vibrate alert OFF	
8 1 3 1 2 V.phone vibrate alert OFF	
8 1 3 2 Mail/Msg vibrate alert	
8 1 3 2 1 Mail vibrate alert OFF	
8 1 3 2 2 Chat M vibrate alert OFF	
8 1 3 2 3 Msg.R vibrate alert OFF	
8 1 3 2 4 Msg.F vibrate alert OFF	
8 1 3 3 Alarm vibrate	
8 1 3 3 1 Alarm clock OFF	
8 1 3 3 2 Schedule reminder OFF	
8 1 3 4 i-appli effect ON	
8 1 4 Silent mode General	P90
8 1 5 Set mute ring time OFF	P118
8 2 Display	
8 2 1 Stand-by display	P90
8 2 1 1 Image/i-appli use Style Theme setting	
8 2 1 2 Clock format Style, Time format, Clock layout, Day: use Style Theme setting Interior clock: ON	P103
8 2 1 3 Battery icon use Style Theme setting	P98
8 2 1 4 Signal level icon use Style Theme setting	

Menu item	Page
8 2 1 5 Info/calendar layout	P93
Pattern 4 (Set Area1, Set Area2: not registered Set Area3: Key guidance)	
8 2 1 6 i-Channel ticker	P167
Show ticker: Yes Ticker speed: Moderate	
8 2 2 Menu preference	
8 2 2 1 Menu setting*3	P96
Normal: use Style Theme setting Custom: Tile display Describe function: ON Type of animation: use Style Theme setting Icon display effect: OFF Default MENU: Normal Active shortcut: Custom	
8 2 2 2 Customize shortcut	P316
Standard	
8 2 3 Color & Action image	
8 2 3 1 Color scheme	P96
use Style Theme setting	
8 2 3 2 Call image	
8 2 3 2 1 Outgoing call	P94
Display image: Default	
8 2 3 2 2 Incoming call	P95
Standard image	
8 2 3 2 3 Videophone dialing	P94
Display image: Default	
8 2 3 2 4 Videophone receiving	P95
Standard image	
8 2 3 2 5 Contact image	P95
ON	
8 2 3 2 6 Anonymous caller	P117
Disable settings (all)	
8 2 3 3 Mail image	
8 2 3 3 1 Outgoing message	P95
Display image: Default	
8 2 3 3 2 Incoming message	
Display image: Default	
8 2 3 3 3 Image message alert	P95
Display image: Default	
8 2 3 3 4 Message retrieval	P95
Display image: Default	
8 2 3 4 Videophone image	P64
Substitute image: Default Chara-den Answer machine image, Response hold image, On-hold image, Movie memo image: Default	

Menu item	Page
8 2 4 Display light	
8 2 4 1 Display light time	P95
Normal use: 10 sec AC adapter connected, i-mode session: Terminal setting Camera session, Movie camera session, i-motion: Always on i-appli: Terminal setting	
8 2 4 2 Light area	P96
Display + Key	
8 2 4 3 Brightness	P96
Normal	
8 2 5 Light alert	
8 2 5 1 Light alert	P101
Incoming Videophone, Incoming call: ON/Down(fast) Incoming Mail, Incoming Message R, Incoming Message F, Incoming Chat Mail: ON/Free step(fast) ToruCa receive: ON	
8 2 5 2 IC card light	P101
ON/Block(fast)	
8 2 5 3 Alarm/Other light	P101
Alarm clock, Schedule: OFF Play melody: ON/Rhythm(Normal)	
8 2 6 Indicator light	P102
ON	
8 2 7 Font & Language	
8 2 7 1 Font size	P102
Standard (all)	
8 2 7 2 Select language	P38
Japanese	
8 2 8 Style theme	P99
same as the color of the FOMA terminal	
8 2 9 Machi-chara setting	P101
ON/キューブ(cube)	
8 3 Security & Locks	
8 3 1 Locks	
8 3 1 1 All lock	P109
not set	
8 3 1 2 Personal data lock	P111
OFF	
8 3 1 3 IC card lock	P236
OFF	
8 3 1 3 1 Lock/Unlock	P238
OFF	

*3 If Reset is performed, *Normal* and *Type of animation* return to the default settings. And *Type of tile icons*; *Customized 1* and *Customized 2*, when an image is set, the image setting is canceled.

Menu item	Page
8 3 1 3 3 IC lock(power-off)	P238
Remain lock status	
8 3 1 3 4 IC card lock setting	P237
Security code	
8 3 1 4 Keypad dial lock	P112
OFF	
8 3 1 5 Key lock timer	P115
OFF	
8 3 2 Privacy mode setting	P112
PHbook/Logs/Choku-den, Mail, My Picture, i-motion, Schedule, i-appli: Show all Auto start: OFF	
8 3 3 Receive display	P114
Receiving call, show, Receiving message, show: Privacy mode	
8 3 4 Secret mode	P115
not set	
8 3 5 UIM	P107
PIN code, PIN2 code: 0000 PIN code ON/OFF: OFF	
8 3 6 Change security code	P107
0000	
8 3 7 Scanning function	P413
8 3 7 1 Update	
8 3 7 2 Set auto-update	P412
8 3 7 3 Set scan	
Valid (all)	P414
8 3 7 4 Version	P94
8 4 Call & Answer	
8 4 1 Sound & Image	P84
8 4 1 1 Outgoing call	
Display image: Default	P117
8 4 1 2 Call alert	
Ring alert: Melody/SKY Show image: Standard image Vibrate alert: OFF Light alert: ON/Down(fast)	P55
8 4 2 Anonymous caller	
Disable settings (all)	P329
8 4 3 Any key answer	
ON	P329
8 4 4 Headset	
8 4 4 1 Alert preference	P330
Headset + speaker	
8 4 4 2 Auto answer	P329
OFF	
8 4 4 3 Headset key control	P330
OFF	
8 4 4 4 Headset mic. setting	P330
Headset microphone	

Menu item	Page
8 4 5 Reject/Accept call	P116
8 4 5 1 Specified caller	
Cancel settings	P118
8 4 5 2 Unregistered caller	
OFF	P56
8 4 6 Make/Receive call	
8 4 6 1 Priority comm mode	P52
No Set Up	
8 4 6 2 Prefix dialing	P52
009130010	
8 4 6 3 Sub address	P53
ON	
8 4 7 Noise reduction	P110
ON	
8 4 8 Self mode	P94
OFF	
8 5 Videophone & ToruCa	P84
8 5 1 Videophone	
8 5 1 1 V.phone dialing img.	P64
Display image: Default	
8 5 1 2 Videophone alert	P65
Ring alert: Melody/電話・メロディ A (Phone, melody A) Show image: Standard image Vibrate alert: OFF Light alert: ON/Down(fast)	
8 5 1 3 Operation	P66
Auto redial as voice: OFF Display setting: Both sides Sub screen: My side Screen size: Large Visual preference: Normal Display light: Always on(normal) Speakerphone: ON	
8 5 1 4 DataSession arv. act	P64
V.phone priority	
8 5 1 5 Image setting	P66
Substitute image: Default Chara-den Answer machine image, Response hold image, On-hold image, Movie memo image: Default	
8 5 1 6 External device	P65
Phone	
8 5 1 7 Notify switchable mode	P84
8 5 1 7 1 Indication ON	
8 5 1 7 2 Indication OFF	P84
8 5 1 7 3 Check Indication	
8 5 2 ToruCa	P84
8 5 2 1 ToruCa alert	
Light alert: ON Receive alert volume: Level4	

Menu item	Page
8 5 2 2 ToruCa settings	P235
ToruCa receive, Duplication check: ON Auto-sort, Auto-display: OFF	
8 5 2 3 ToruCa auto-read	P236
ON	
8 5 2 4 ToruCa sort rule	P235
8 6 Other	
8 6 1 Clock	
8 6 1 1 Date & time*4	P38
Adjust time/time diff: ON Offset: +, 00h00m	
8 6 1 2 Auto power ON	P307
OFF	
8 6 1 3 Auto power OFF	P307
OFF	
8 6 1 4 Clock display format	P103
Style, Time format, Clock layout, Day: use Style Theme setting Interior clock: ON	
8 6 1 5 Alarm auto power ON	P309
OFF	
8 6 2 Other	
8 6 2 1 Save word	P341
8 6 2 2 DL dictionary	P342
8 6 2 3 Reset prediction	P337
8 6 2 4 Save phrase	P339
8 6 2 5 Text input method	P335
Input method: 5-touch Input prediction: ON Auto cursor: Normal	
8 6 3 Font size	P102
Standard (all)	
8 6 4 Software update	P408
8 6 5 Quick start-up	P330
ON	
8 6 6 Info & Reset	
8 6 6 1 Call duration	P323
8 6 6 2 Call cost	
8 6 6 2 1 Last call cost	P323
8 6 6 2 2 Call cost limit	P324
Alert: OFF	
8 6 6 2 3 Hide call cost icon	P324
8 6 6 2 4 Reset call cost	P323
OFF	
8 6 6 3 Memory status	P282
8 6 6 4 Confirm	P330
8 6 6 5 Battery level	P37
8 6 6 6 Reset	P330

Menu item	Page
8 6 6 7 Delete all data	P331
8 6 6 8 Initial setting	P38
Date & time: ON (Adjust time/time diff)	
Password: 0000	
Keypad sound: Keypad sound1	
8 7 NW Services	
8 7 1 Voice Mail	
8 7 1 1 Voice Mail service	
8 7 1 1 1 Activate	P344
8 7 1 1 2 Set ring time	
8 7 1 1 3 Deactivate	
8 7 1 1 4 Check setting	
8 7 1 1 5 Play messages	
8 7 1 1 6 Voice Mail setting	
8 7 1 1 7 Check messages	
8 7 1 2 Tone/Vibration message notification	P344
Voice Mail alert: ON Notification melody: メール・メロディ B (Mail, melody B)	
8 7 1 3 Notify missed call	P345
8 7 1 3 1 Activate	
8 7 1 3 2 Deactivate	
8 7 1 3 3 Check setting	
8 7 1 4 Hide Voice Mail icon	
8 7 2 Call waiting/forward	
8 7 2 1 Call waiting	P345
8 7 2 1 1 Activate	
8 7 2 1 2 Deactivate	
8 7 2 1 3 Check setting	
8 7 2 2 Call forwarding	P346
8 7 2 2 1 Activate	
8 7 2 2 2 Deactivate	
8 7 2 2 3 Register The Forwarding Number	
8 7 2 2 4 Setting if forwarding number busy	
8 7 2 2 5 Check setting	
8 7 3 Chaku-moji	
8 7 3 1 Create message	P48
8 7 3 2 Message display settings	P49
Only with Caller ID	
8 7 4 Caller ID	
8 7 4 1 Caller ID notification	P40
8 7 4 1 1 Activate/Deactivate	
8 7 4 1 2 Check setting	
8 7 4 2 Caller ID request	

*4 After performing Reset, *Adjust time/time diff* (including *Time zone* and *Summer time*) and *Offset* return to the default.

Menu item	Page
87421 Activate	P347
87422 Deactivate	
87423 Check setting	
875 Roaming guidance	P369
8751 Activate	
8752 Deactivate	
8753 Check setting	
876 2in1 setting	P350
8761 2in1 mode switching	
Dual mode	
8762 Phonebook 2in1 setting	
8763 Stand-by display setting for each mode	
Dual mode: Black B mode: Loudspeakers	
8764 Set call/receive No.	
87641 Ringtone setting for Number B	
Call ring alert: Melody/パターン1(Pattern 1) Videophone ring alert: Melody/電話・メモ ディ C (Phone, melody C)	
87642 Number B display	
ON	
8765 2in1 function OFF	
877 Other	P354
8771 Additional service	
87711 Register USSD	
87712 Record reply message	P349
8772 Remote control	
87721 Activate	
87722 Deactivate	P347
87723 Check setting	
8773 Nuisance call barring	
87731 Register the caller	P347
87732 Register selected No	
87733 Delete all entries	
87734 Delete last entry	
87735 Check the number of entries	
8774 English guidance	P348
87741 Guidance setting	
87742 Check setting	P347
8775 Dual network	
87751 Dual Network Switching	P348
87752 Check setting	
8776 Service numbers	P348
87761 ドコモ故障問合せ (DoCoMo for Repairs)	
87762 ドコモ総合案内・受付 (DoCoMo for General Inquiries)	
8777 Multi number	

Menu item	Page
87771 Set Multi Number	P349
87772 Check setting	
87773 Number Setting	
Basic Number: 基本契約番号(Basic Number)/my phone number Additional No1: 付加番号1(Additional Number 1)/Not recorded Additional No2: 付加番号2(Additional Number 2)/Not recorded Multi number call: Disable	
87774 Incoming calls melody setting	P349
OFF	
8778 Set arrival act	P349
87781 Activate	
87782 Deactivate	
87783 Check setting	
8779 Arrival call act	
Answer	P367
88 Roaming/Call assist	
881 Int'l roaming	P368
8811 Network search mode	
Auto	P368
8812 Operator name disp.	
display ON	P368
8813 PLMN setting	
8814 Voice mail(Int.)	P370
88141 Activate	
88142 Deactivate	
88143 Play messages	
88144 Voice mail settings	
88145 Set ring time	P370
8815 Call forwarding(Int.)	
88151 Activate	
88152 Deactivate	
88153 Call fwd settings	
8816 Remote control(Int.)	P369
8817 Caller ID request(Int.)	
8818 Roaming guidance(Int.)	
8819 Bar calls at roaming	
88191 Bar incoming call	
88192 Accept incoming call	P51
88193 Check setting	
882 Int'l call assist	P51
8821 Auto switch	
Country code: ON Intn'l prefix: ON	P51
8822 Country code setting	
Country code: 81 Country name: 日本(Japan)	

Menu item	Page
8 8 2 3 Auto assist setting	P51
Name: World Call Intn'l prefix No.: 009130010	
8 8 3 Two time zone clocks	P369
ON	

■ Music player

Menu item	Page
9 Music player	P297

■ Own number

Menu item	Page
0 Own number	P40 P320
My phone number: subscribed phone number Other than that: not recorded	

Menu list of the simple menu

1 でんわ 1 電話帳検索 2 電話帳登録 3 リダイヤル 4 着信履歴 5 伝言メモ一覧 6 メール送受信履歴 7 自局番号 2 メール 1 受信メール 2 送信メール 3 未送信メール 4 新規メール 5 i モード問合せ	3 カメラ 1 カメラ 2 マイピクチャ 3 待受画面設定 4 i モード 1 i メニュー 2 ブックマーク 3 ラストURL 4 画面メモ 5 i チャンネル一覧 6 テロップ表示設定	5 i アプリ 1 ソフト一覧 2 待受画面設定 3 i アプリ設定 6 データBOX 1 マイピクチャ 2 i モーション 3 メロディ 4 マイドキュメント 5 キャラ電	7 設定/ステーション 1 音/バイブ 2 ディスプレイ 3 目覚まし 4 電卓 5 伝言メモ設定 6 情報表示/リセット 7 留守番電話 0 自局番号

List of dial keys and character assignments (5-touch Input Method)

Key	Hiragana/kanji mode (two-byte)*1	Katakana mode (one-byte/two-byte)*1	Alphabet mode (one-byte/two-byte)*1	Numeric mode (one-byte/two- byte)*2
1	あ い う え お 1	ア イ ウ エ オ 1	. / @ ~*3 - : _ [¥] * , { } 1	1
2	か き く け こ 2	カ キ ク ケ コ 2	a b c 2	2
3	さ し す せ そ 3	サ シ ス セ ソ 3	d e f 3	3
4	た ち っ て と 4	タ チ ッ テ ト 4	g h i 4	4
5	な に ぬ ね の 5	ナ ニ ヌ ネ ノ 5	j k l 5	5
6	は ひ ふ へ ほ 6	ハ ヒ フ ヘ ホ 6	m n o 6	6
7	ま み む め も 7	マ ミ ム メ モ 7	p q r s 7	7
8	や ゆ よ 8	ヤ ユ ヨ 8	t u v 8	8
9	ら り ゐ れ ろ 9	ラ リ ル レ ロ 9	w x y z 9	9
0	わ を ん ー 、 。 ? ! 「 」 □ 0	ワ を ん ー 、 。 ? ! 「 」 □ 0	! " # \$ % & ' () * + , ; < = > ? □ 0	0 +*5
* (star)	* *	* *	The following character strings can be entered only in one-byte alphabet mode: @docomo.ne.jp .com .or.jp .go.jp .ne.jp .co.jp .ac.jp http://www. www. .html .htm	* P*5
#	Line feed*6	Line feed*6	Line feed*6	# T*5

□: Indicates blank space. []: Press [] after entering a character to switch between upper and lower cases.

*1 Numeric characters other than those entered in the two-byte numeric mode are entered as one-byte characters.

2 In numeric mode, “”, “#”, “P”, “T” and “+” can only be entered in the entry field that supports them.

*3 This character is entered as “~” in the one-byte alphabet mode.

*4 Upper and lower cases are switched in case of two-byte characters only.

*5 Hold down the relevant key for over a second to enter the character.

*6 Line feed may not be possible depending on the entry field.

List of input slots and character assignments (Slot Input Method)

Input slot	Hiragana/kANJI mode (two-byte)	Input slot	Katakana mode (one-byte)	Input slot	Alphabet mode (one-byte)
Upper slot	あ あいうえおあいうえお 1	Upper slot	ア アイウエオアイウエオ 1	Upper slot	. / @ ~ _ : [¥] ^ ` 1
	か かきくけこ 2		カ カキクケコ 2		A ABC abc 2
	さ さしすせそ 3		サ サシスセソ 3		D DEF def 3
	た たちつてとっ 4		タ タチツテトツ 4		G GHI ghi 4
	な なにぬねの 5		ナ ナニヌネノ 5		J JKL jkl 5
Lower slot		Lower slot		Lower slot	定 @docomo.ne.jp .com .or.jp .go.jp .ne.jp .co.jp .ac.jp http://www. www. .html .htm
	は はひふへほ 6		ハ ハヒフヘホ 6		M MNO mno 6
	ま まみむめも 7		マ マミムメモ 7		P PQR Spqrs 7
	や やゆよ やゆよ 8		ヤ ヤリヨ ヤリヨ 8		T TUV tuv 8
	ら らりるれる 9		ラ ラリルレロ 9		W WXYZ wxyz 9
	わ わをんー、。?!「」□○		ワ ワヲンー、。?!「」□○		! ! " # \$ % & ' () * + , ; < = > ? □ ○
	↵ Line feed		↵ Line feed		↵ Line feed

□: Indicates two-byte space in hiragana/kANJI mode and one-byte space in katakana, alphabet mode.

- Numeric characters are entered as one-byte characters.
- "~" and "." are switched with every press of ⇐⇐ in hiragana/kANJI mode.

List of fixed phrases

Common (20 items)

おはよう	おやすみ
おはよう！今日も一日が んばりましょう。	昨日は、とっても楽しかった です。どうもありがとう。
連絡下さい。	今から電話してもいいで すか？
ごめんなさい、遅れます。	今日は○○の日です。早く 帰って来てね。
○○まで迎えに来て！お 願いします。	○○について知っている 人は○○までに○○に教 えて下さい。
もう少し待って！	留守電にメッセージをお 願いします。
いってらっしゃい。	ただいま電話にできるこ とができません。メールでこ 用件をお知らせ下さい。
○○で待ってます。	メールありがとう。
集合時間は○○、集合場所 は○○です。	○○の○○の写真です。
今日は外で食べて帰ります。 ご飯はいりません。	
○○の写真送ります。	

Pleasure (20 items)

今なにしてるの？電話か メールを下さい。	どこか、遊びに行こーよ！
電話ちょうだい！電話番 号は○○です。	おくれちゃう、ゴメン！
どこにいるの？	集合！
時間だよーん！！	トラブル発生！！
会いたい！	大好き！
みんなで飲みませんか？ ○○に○○。	今日○○に、○○へ行きま せんか？
○○の待ち合わせ時間と 場所、決めようよ。	○○に行かない？
○○のメンバー募集！詳しくは○○まで連絡下さい。	
今度みんなで○○へ行きましょ う。○○までで、都合 の良い日を教えて下さい。	
今度みんなで○○へ行きましょ う。いいところがあり ましたら、お知らせ下さい。	
○○しませんか？日時：○○、場所：○○。出欠をご 連絡下さい。	
メッセージ下さい！！	○○の時の写真だよ。

■ Business (20 items)

本日の〇〇会議は、〇〇となりました。	本日の〇〇訪問は、〇〇となりました。
〇〇へ直行します。	〇〇へ直帰します。
電車遅延のため、〇〇遅れます。	至急TEL下さい。
予定変更！ TEL下さい。	待ち合わせ変更！ 場所：〇〇、時間：〇〇
〇〇頃まで、携帯電話の電源を切ります。	振込口座：〇〇銀行〇〇支店、口座番号〇〇、名義人名〇〇です。
〇〇の件、よろしくお願い致します。	FAX確認願います。
今日、一杯どうですか？連絡下さい。	変更します。
次の指示を待て。	中止します。
延期します。	今わかりません。
〇〇での写真送ります。	あとで連絡します。

■ Answer (20 items)

Thank you!	Good!
OKです。	NGです。
いいよ。	行きます。
了解。	ダメ！
ごめんネ・・・	スミマセン、無理です。
本当？	おまかせっ！
関係ないね！	うらやましー。

お疲れさま。	反対。
賛成。	待ってました！
それは残念。	写真届きました。

■ Others (20 items)

またねー！	今どこ？
お誕生日おめでとう。	おめでとう。
まじでー！？	まかせなさい！！
キャンセル。	いってきます。
頑張って！	ありがとう！
www.	.ne.jp
.co.jp	.or.jp
.ac.jp	.net
.com	.org
.html	http://

■ Pictogram words (20 items)

■ My phrase (up to 50 items)

- The registered fixed phrases are displayed.

List of face marks

Entering one of the following readings in hiragana/kanji mode allows you to convert it. Entering “かお” or “かおもじ” also allows converting for face marks shown as .

■挨拶・返事(Greetings/Answer)

Face mark	Readings
(^-)/^^	ばい あいさつ
(^ ^)/^	ばいばい あいさつ
(^-)/~	ばいばい あいさつ
^ (^ ^) ^ byebye!!	ばいばい あいさつ
(^^)/	おーい じゃあ どーも よろしく あいさつ
(^-)/	おーい じゃあ どーも よろしく あいさつ
(^^)/^^~	ばいばい あいさつ
(^-)/	おーい あいさつ
(// ^ ^ ^ ^) f ^	にこっ あいさつ

Face mark	Readings
~(' ^ ^*)	やあ あいさつ
(* ^ ^)/	ちわっ あいさつ
^ (' ^ ^ ^ = ' ^ ^ ^)/	おはよう あいさつ
(o ^ ^ ^) b	ぐっ ぐー へんじ
(≥ ^ ^ ^) b	ぐっ ぐー へんじ
(^ ^ ^ ^ ^ ^)	はい へんじ
(' ^ ^ ^) ok	おっけー へんじ
(^ ^ ^ ^ ^ ^) 了解!	りょうかい へんじ
(^ ^ ^ ^ ^ ^)	やあ あいさつ
(= ^ ^ ^ ^ ^ ^)	やあ あいさつ

■ 笑う・うれしい(Smile/Glad)

Face mark	Readings
(^~^)	にこっ わらう
(^-^)^	にこっ うれしい
(^o^)	うほほ にこっ わーい うれしい
o(^o^)o	うきうき うれしい
(o^_^o)	にこっ うれしい
(*^_^*)	にこっ うれしい
(・v・)	きたー にこっ わらう
∇(^∇^)/	わーい うれしい
∖(´ー´)/	わーい うれしい
(*∇∇*)	にこっ うれしい
(☆▽☆)	きらーん うれしい
(^^)^	やったね ぴーす にこっ ぶい うれしい
(=￣￣=)	にこっ うれしい
(´v`)	にこっ うれしい
(≥v≤)	うれしい
:)	にこっ すまいる わらう
V(^o^)	びーす うれしい
(^o^)/チツ	ちゅっ にこっ わらう
((o(^-^o))	わくわく うれしい
(^^)	にこっ わらう
v(^o^)	いえい ぶい ぴーす うれしい
(^_)v	やったね ぴーす にこっ ぶい うれしい
(^o^)	にこっ わらう
(^o^)	わーい わらう
(^o^)/	おーい はーい わらう
(^o^)^	やったね ぴーす にこっ ぶい わらう
)^o^(	ほっぺがおちる わらう
∖(^o^)/	わーい わらう
:~)	にこっ すまいる わらう
∖(≥∇≤)/	きゃー うれしい
d(^o^)=b	ぐー うれしい
ε=∇(*^∇^)/	きゃー うれしい
(@^o^@)	うれしい
(´ 艸 `)	むふふ うれしい

■ 照れる・怒る(Shy/Angry)

Face mark	Readings
(^^s	ぼりぼり てれる
f(^_`)	てへ てれる
(#.~#)	にこっ ぼっ てれる
(*.~*)	えへっ てれる
(//∇//)	てれ てれる

Face mark	Readings
(*'-')	てへっ てれる
(=° ω° =)	てへっ てれる
(*´ ㇏ `*)	こまる てれ てれる
:p	てへっ てれる
('▽')	うふふ てれる
∖(*´ ㇏ `)/	こら こるあ こるあ おこる
o~_)=O☆	ばんち おこる
(ノ~ノ)ノ~ノ	ちゃぶだい おこる
(~_#)	こらっ おこる
:-)	ふまん おこる
ψ(´◇´)ψ	こら おこる
(ノ´△´)/	こらっ おこる
(●´ε´●)	ぶんぶん むかつ おこる

■ 泣く・悲しい(Cry/Sorrow)

Face mark	Readings
(>_<)	あいた いたい いてー ひえー なく
(T_T)	うるうる なく
(T_T)	しくしく なく
(/_;)	しくしく なく
(+_+)	びくっ かなしい
(x_x;)	がっくり かなしい
(/_、)	くすん なく
(つ㇏`)	ぐすん なく
〇 _ _	がっくし かなしい
(´ω・`)	しょぼん かなしい
(;0;)	しくしく なく
(>_<)	なく
(;_;)	しくしく なく
(T-T)	なき うるうる なく
(TOT)	なき うるうる なく
(ノ_。)	いたい なく
:<	なく かなしい
(;´ ㇏ <)	なき ぐすん なく
°・(ノ㇏)°・	えーん なく

■ 驚き(Surprised)

Face mark	Readings
(*~*)	びくっ おどろき
(..?)	めがてん おどろき
(..;)	めがてん おどろき
(^-^)	うーん おどろき
(@_@)	びくっ おどろき
(-;-)	ぎくっ おどろき
(-☆)	きらーん おどろき
(□□;!!)	がーん おどろき

Face mark	Readings
(° 0° ;)	ぼかーん おどろき
Σ(□□)!	びっくり がーん ぎく おどろき
(□◇□;)	えっ おどろき
∧(° □° ;)ノ	えっ おどろき
(;° □°)	えっ おどろき
((((° ㏊° ;))))	がくがく おどろき
(=.=;)	ぎくっ てつや おどろき
(. . ;)	めがてん おどろき
(° 0°)	ぎくっ ぎょ おどろき
(° 0° ;)	ぎくっ ぎょ おどろき
(@_@_)	びくっ ぎょっ おどろき
(° ㏊°)	ぼかーん おどろき
(° _)	うーん おどろき
(. . ;)	めがてん おどろき
(. _)	めがてん おどろき
(. . ;)	めがてん おどろき
(. 0.)	めがてん おどろき
(° 0°)/	おおー びっくり おどろき
(° 0°;;)	ぎくっ おどろき
Σ(° □° ;)	がーん おどろき

■ 疑問・焦り (Question/Impatient)

Face mark	Readings
(^^;)	ぎくっ あせ あせり
(?_?)	なぜ ぎもん
(_-;)	ぎくっ あせ あせり
W(° 0°)=W	ばたばた ぎもん
σ(° _;)?	えっ ぎもん
(;□□)ジ-	じー ぎもん
0(><);(>>)0	あたふた あせり
(° ㏊° ;≡;° ㏊°)	あたふた あせり
^^;	ぎくっ あせり
(^^;;)	ぎくっ あせ あせり
(° _;)	ぎくっ あせ あせり
(° ~;)	ぎくっ あせ あせり
(° ~;)	ぎくっ あせ あせり
(¥_¥;)	ぎくっ あせ ぎもん
(*_*;)	びくっ あせり
^_~;	ぎくっ あせ あせり
(?_?;)	ぎくっ なぜ ぎもん
ε=□(° _;)-	にげる あせり
(° ▽° ;)	ぎくっ あせ えっ あせり
((○(>_<)○))	じたばた あせり
(;° 0°)	ぎくっ あせ あせり

■ その他(Others)

Face mark	Readings
(^▽^@)♪♪♪	うたう
(°◇°)ゞ	りょうかい おっけー らじや
m(_ _)m	ぺこり
(_)_	ぺこり
<(_ _)>	ありがと おねがい ごめん ぺこり
≡≡≡^(*-)/	いそぐ にげる
(° _;)))))))))コソコソ...	こそこそ
p(^-^)q	がんばれ ふあいと
;)	ういんく
(° _)	ういんく
(° ▽°)イイ	いい
(°人°)	かんしゃ ありがとう
!(^^)!	びんぼーん
∧(^^)	よしよし おい
(*≧m≦*)	ぶっ
(σ・▽・)σ	げっつ
(° _)	にやり
(° ▽°)っ	どうぞ
(° ~) ㏊~	どうぞ おちゃ
(㏊° □°)㏊	きて かもん おいで
♪~(°ε°)	くちぶえ
(° _)y~~~	たばこ
(° ω °)	しゃきーん
□(° ▽°)っ	せーふ
(° _;)y~~~~	いっぶく
(° _)y~~~~	いっぶく
(° ~)	うまい たべる
(°人°)	おねがい
(° ^)人(° ^)	かんばい なかま たっち
(i_i)\(° _)	よしよし
(° ▽°)σ)°0~	つんつん
~~(m° ㏊°)m	たずけて
~~(m° ▽°)m	いひひ
φ(° _)xεxε	めもめも かきかき
(° ▽°)] めめめ	もしもし
(° □°)	あーん
㏊(° ▽°); ㏊	やれやれ
(° ^ ^;)	はあ ためいき
(; _ _)=3	ためいき
(° ~;)	うーん
(° ^)	ふぶん じまん
(° ^)	よだれ
(° +°)㏊	ふっ
(° ~)	ほへー

Face mark	Readings
(~o~)	ほへー
(p_-)	むしめがね
(-_-)	じとっ
(-, -)	じとっ
(-, -)凸	ちちち
(..)	どれどれ
[壁]_-)	ちらっ
(+o+)	いたい
(-_-)zzz	ねてる ねる
(_ _)o0	ねむい

Face mark	Readings
(` _ > `)	ふーん
(UoU)	ねむい
(^ (I) ^)	くま
U^I^U	いぬ
ホ イツ(_ _)ノ	ぼい
ヽ (^ ▽ ^) ノ	よだれ
> °)))) ≧	さかな

- Some face marks above may look different from the displayed ones.

List of symbols

[illegible]

□: Indicates blank space (one-byte/two-byte).

- Some symbols above may look different from the displayed ones.

List of pictograms

Entering one of the following readings in hiragana/kanji mode allows you to convert it.

- Entering “えもじ” also allows converting for Pictogram 1.
- Entering “えもじに” also allows converting for Pictogram 2.
- In case of sending i-mode Mail including pictograms to mobile phones of other companies (au/SoftBank/Tu-Ka), they are converted to similar pictograms on the recipient's phones automatically.
 - Pictograms may not be displayed correctly depending on the model or function of the mobile phone used by the recipient.
 - In case there are no corresponding pictograms in the recipient's, they are converted to any character or “ ”.
- Pictogram 2 used in mail may not be displayed correctly on some other terminals.
- When you send SMS,  is replaced by  and pictograms other than ,  or  are replaced by one-byte space.

Pictogram	Readings
♥	はーと
♥	はーと
♥	しつれん はーと
♥	はーと
😊	うれしい にこ かお
✕	おこる いかり むか かお
△	がっかり かなしい かお
△	かなしい かお
☁	ふらふら かお
🐱	いぬ どうぶつ
🐱	ねこ どうぶつ
☀	はれ てんき たいよう
☁	くもり てんき くも
☂	あめ てんき かさ
🕒	ゆき てんき
⚡	かみなり てんき
🌀	たいふう てんき うずまき
☀	きり てんき
🕒	こさめ てんき かさ
🎵	るんるん おんぶ おながく
🎵	むーど おんぶ おながく
👤	おんせん ふろ おふる
👤	かわいい はな
👤	きすまーく きす くち
👤	びかびか きらきら
👤	ひらめき でんきゅう びかびか
👤	むか いかり おこる
👤	ばんち て ぐー
👤	ばくだん
zzz	ねむい ねむり すいみん ねる
!	びっくり
!?	びっくり はてな
!!	びっくり
💣	どん しょうげき
👤	あせ

Pictogram	Readings
👤	あせ
👤	だっしゅ
👤	ちょうおん
👤	ちょうおん
👤	けつてい おーけー おっけー
↗	みぎうえ みぎなめう え やじるし
↘	みぎした みぎなめし た やじるし
↖	ひだりうえ ひだりなめ うえ やじるし
↙	ひだりした ひだりなめ した やじるし
↻	ぐっと やじるし
↻	ばつど やじるし
👤	め
👤	みみ
👤	ぐー て
👤	ちょき ぶい びーす て
👤	ばー て
👤	あし
♥	はーと とらんぶ
♠	すべーど とらんぶ
♦	だいや とらんぶ
♣	くらぶ くらーばー とらんぶ
👤	でんしゃ のりもの てつどう
👤	ちかてつ のりもの
👤	しんかんせん のりもの
👤	くるま のりもの じどうしゃ
👤	くるま のりもの じどうしゃ
👤	ばす くるま のりもの
👤	ふね のりもの
👤	ひこうき のりもの くうこう
👤	りぞーと よっと のりもの
👤	くりすます つりー
👤	いえ じたく

Pictogram	Readings
👤	びる かいしゃ
👤	ゆうびんきょく ゆうびん
👤	びょういん
👤	ぎんこう
👤	えーていーえむ ぎんこう
👤	ほてる
👤	こんびにえんすすとあ こんびに
👤	がそりんすたんど がそりん がすた がそすた
👤	ちゅうしゃじょう ばーきんぐ ばーく
👤	しんこう
👤	といれ
👤	れすとらん しょくじ ごはん
👤	きつさてん こーひー かつび かぶえ
👤	ばー かくてる さけ
👤	びーる さけ
👤	ふあーすとふーど はんばーがー
👤	ぶていっく くつ ひーる
✂	びょういん はさみ とこや
👤	からおけ まいく
👤	えいが
👤	ゆうえんち もくば
👤	おながく へつどはん
👤	あーと
👤	えんげき
👤	いべんと
👤	ちけつと きつび
👤	すぽーつ しゃつ
👤	やきゅう すぽーつ ぼーる
👤	ごるふ すぽーつ
👤	てにす すぽーつ
👤	さっかー すぽーつ ぼーる

Pictogram	Readings
	すきー すぼ一つ
	ばすけっとぼーる ばすけ ばすけっと すぼ一つ
	もたーすぼ一つ ふらっぐ はた すぼ一つ
	ぼけっとべる ぼけべる
	きつえん たばこ
	きんえん たばこ
	かめら
	かばん ばっぐ
	ほん
	りぼん
	ぶれぜんと
	ばーすでー ろうそく たんじょうび
	でんわ
	でんわ けいたいでんわ けいたい けーたい
	めーる
	めも
	てれび
	げーむ
	しーでいー おんがく
	くつ すにーがー
	めがね
	くるまいす
	おひつじざ せいざ
	おうしざ せいざ
	ふたござ せいざ

Pictogram	Readings
	かにざ せいざ
	ししざ せいざ
	おとめざ せいざ
	てんびんざ せいざ
	さそりざ せいざ
	いてざ せいざ
	やぎざ せいざ
	みすがめざ せいざ
	うおざ せいざ
	しんげつ つき
	つき
	はんげつ つき
	みかづき つき
	まんげつ つき
	でんわ けいたいでんわ けいたい けーたい
	めーる
	ふあつくす
	あいもーど
	あいもーど
	どこも
	どこも
	ゆうりょう えん おかね かね
	むりょう ふりー
	あいでいー
	ばすわーど かぎ ろっく
	りたーん えんたー

Pictogram	Readings
	くりあ
	さーち むしめがね
	にゅー
	いちじょうほう はた ふらっぐ
	ふりーだいやる
	しゃーぶだいやる
	もばきゅー
	いち すうじ
	に すうじ
	さん すうじ
	よん し すうじ
	ご すうじ
	ろく すうじ
	なな しち すうじ
	はち すうじ
	きゅー きゅう く すうじ
	ぜろ れい すうじ
	かちんこ えいが
	ふくろ
	べん
	ひとかげ ひと
	いす
	よる つき
	すーん
	おん
	えんど おわり
	とけい じかん

Pictogram 2

Pictogram	Readings
	じてんしゃ のりもの
	れんち こうぐ しゅうり
	ばそこん びーしー
	えんびつ
	くりっぶ
	さゆう やじるし
	じょうげ やじるし
	りさいくる

Pictogram	Readings
	えぬじー
	まるひ ひみつ
	きんし
	くうしつ くうせき くうしゃ あき
	こうかく
	まんしつ まんせき まんしゃ まん

Pictogram	Readings
	きけん けいこく びつくり
	こびーらいと しー
	とれーどまーく ていーえむ
	れじすたーどとれーどまーく あーる
	あいあぶり
	あいあぶり

Pictogram	Readings
	どるぶくろ おかね かね
	うでどけい とけい じかん
	すなどけい とけい
	おにぎり おむすび
	しょーとけーき けーき
	ぱん
	どんぶり らーめん
	ゆのみ おちゃ
	とっくり にほんしゅ さけ
	わいんぐらす わいん さけ
	ばなな くだもの
	りんご くだもの
	さくらんぼ くだもの
	くろーばー よつば は はっぱ
	ちゅーりっぷ はな
	め は はっぱ
	もみじ は はっぱ
	さくら はな
	かたつむり どうぶつ
	ひよこ とり どうぶつ
	ぺんぎん どうぶつ
	さかな どうぶつ
	うま どうぶつ

Pictogram	Readings
	ぶた どうぶつ
	ていーしゃつ しゃつ
	じーんず じーばん ずぼん
	けしょう くちべに
	ゆびわ りんぐ
	おうかん
	ちゃべる べる あらーむ
	どあ とびら
	がっこう
	なみ うみ
	ふじさん やま
	すのぼ すのーぼーど
	はしる ひと だっしゅ
	うーん かお
	ほっ にこ かお
	あせ かお
	あせ かお
	むっ むか かお
	ぼけ かお

Pictogram	Readings
	はーと かお
	あっかんべー べー かお
	ういんく かお
	うれしい にこ かお
	がまん かお
	ねこ どうぶつ かお
	えーん かなしい なく かお
	なみだ かなしい なく かお
	うまい おいしい かお
	うっしっし うれしい かお
	げっそり さけび かお
	おーけー ぐっど て おっけー
	らぶれたー てがみ めーる
	さいふ おかね かね

The following table shows whether or not a process that is generated or to be performed can be operated when any other operation is in progress:

- During i-mode or i-mode connection includes the communication via i-Channel (except receiving information) or Full Browser.
- Receiving i-mode Mail includes receiving Message R/F and receiving the information of i-Channel.

○: Available △: Available depending on conditions ×: Unavailable

Current status Processes that occur or are performed		During a voice call	During a videophone call	During i-mode	During packet communication connecting to PC	During 64K data communication
Voice call	Send	△*1	×	○	○	×
	Receive	△*1, 2, 3	△*2, 3, 4	○	○	△*2, 3, 5
Videophone call	Send	×	×	○*6	×	×
	Receive	△*2, 3, 4	△*2, 3, 4	△*8	△*7, 9	△*2, 3, 4
i-mode	Connect	○	×	×	×	×
i-mode Mail	Send	○	×	○	×	×
	Receive	○*10	×	○	×	×
SMS	Send	○	×	○	○	×
	Receive	○*10	○*10	○	○	○*10
Packet communication connecting to PC	Send	○	×	×	×	×
	Receive	○	×	×	×	×
64K data communication	Send	×	×	×	×	×
	Receive	△*3, 11	△*3, 11	△*11	△*11	△*11

*1 In case Call Waiting Service is used, you can make a call to another party or receive from another party during a call.

*2 Subscribers to Voice Mail Service or Call Forwarding Service can also use these services.

*3 When *Set arrival act* is activated, the process depends on *Arrival call act*.

*4 When Call Waiting Service is activated, the call is recorded as missed call.

*5 In case Call Waiting Service is active, you can select answering a call after finishing the current communication, rejecting the incoming call and so on.

*6 i-mode is disconnected.

*7 The call is recorded as missed call.

*8 Depends on the setting of Data Session Arrival Act.

*9 In case Voice Mail Service or Call Forwarding Service is activated and the ringing time is set to 0 seconds, each service is available.

*10 The ring alert does not sound.

*11 The call is recorded as missed call. When Call Forwarding Service is activated and the ringing time is set to 0 seconds, Call Forwarding Service is available.

Combination of functions during Multitask

The following table shows the availability of a call/communication and whether or not selections made in the *New Task* menu can be combined with the function in progress:

- Some operations may be unavailable depending on the status of the FOMA terminal even if the function can be activated.

○: Available ×: Unavailable

Menu item Function in progress	Voice call	Videophone call	Data communication	Dial	Mail	i-mode	i-appli	Phonebook & Logs	Data Box	LifeKit	Accessory	Adjust volume	Music player	Silent mode ON/OFF
During a voice call	Combination of Multiaccess P390			×	○	○	○	○*2	○*2	○*2	○	○*2	×	×
During a videophone call				×	×	×	×	×	×	×	○*2	○*2	×	×
During packet communication				○	×	×	○	○	○*2	○	○	○	×	○
During 64K data communication				×	○*2	×	○	○*2	○*2	○*2	○	○*2	×	×
Dial	○	○	○	×	○	○	○	○	○*2	○	○	○	×	○
Mail	○	○	○*2	○	○*2	○*2	○	○	○*2	○	○	○	○	○
i-mode	○	○	○*2	○	○*2	×	×	○	○*2	○*2	○	○	○	○
i-appli	○	○	○	○	○*2	×	×	○	×	○*2	○	○	×	○
Phonebook & Logs	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○*2	○*2	○*2	○	○	○*2	○
Data Box	○	○	○	○	○	○*2	○*2	○*2	○*2	×	○	○	○*2	○
LifeKit (except the infrared communication/iC communication)	○	○	○*2	○	○*2	○*2	○*2	○*2	○*2	○	○	○	○*2	○
Accessory	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○*2	○	○*2	○	○*2	○
Settings & NW services	○*2	○*2	○*2	○*2	○*2	○*2	×	○*2	○*2	○*2	○*2	○*2	○*2	○*2
Music player	○	○	○	○	○	○	×	○*2	×	×	○	○	×	○
Own number	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○*2	○*2	○	○	○	○	○

*1 Some functions can be activated depending on the functions in progress.

*2 Some functions cannot be activated depending on the functions in progress.

Services available for the FOMA terminal

Services available for the FOMA terminal	Phone number
Directory assistance (Service/call charges apply) * Unlisted phone numbers cannot be given.	104 (no area code)
Telegrams (charges apply)	115 (no area code)
Time (charges apply)	117 (no area code)
Weather (charges apply)	Area code + 177
Police emergencies	110 (no area code)
Fire and ambulance	119 (no area code)
Marine emergencies and accident reports	118 (no area code)
Disaster Voice Mail Service (charges apply)	171 (no area code)
Collect call (Service/call charges apply)	106 (no area code)

INFORMATION

- If you use the collect call service (106), the call charge is billed to the receiver together with a commission of 90 yen (94.5 yen with tax included) per call. (as of December 2007)
- If you use the directory assistance service (104), a service charge of 100 yen (105 yen with tax included) is billed together with the call charge. Note that this service is available free from charge for those who are under special conditions. For further information, inquire at 116 (NTT sales center) from a general subscriber phone. (as of December 2007)
- A general subscriber phone, when it is set for "Call Forwarding", can forward an incoming call to a mobile phone. In this case, even when the receiver's side is busy, is outside the service area, is in Self Mode or is not turned on, the caller may still hear ringing alert. It is due to some optional setting applied to the caller's or receiver's side.
- You may not be able to call 116 (NTT sales center), Dial Q², Message Dial and make credit card calls. However, credit card calls can be made from a general subscriber phone/pay phone to the FOMA terminal.

- This FOMA terminal supports "Emergency Location Report".

When you make emergency calls (110, 118 or 119), your current location information is automatically notified to the emergency organization such as the police.

The emergency organization may not be able to confirm your correct location depending on your location or the condition of radio waves received. In addition, if you have not sent caller ID for each call by attaching "184" before the phone number, your location information and phone number are not notified, but the organization may obtain the location information and phone number regardless of your settings in case of necessity because of the protection of lives. In addition, areas or the time for introduction of "Emergency Location Report" differs depending on the circumstances of preparation for each emergency organization.

- In case of calls to 110, 119 or 118 from the FOMA terminal, since the police or fire department authorities may call you to confirm, inform them that you are calling from a mobile phone, give your number and detailed information of your whereabouts. To make sure that you are not cut off during the call, stay in one place when you make the call and do not turn off the phone after the call, but keep it on for about 10 minutes.
- Depending on the area you are calling from, you may not be connected to the local police or fire department. Use a public payphone or general subscriber phone if you cannot get in touch with the local authorities.

Options and related devices

Combining the FOMA terminal with optional accessories supports a wide variety of uses from personal use to business use. Some products are unavailable depending on the region. For details, contact DoCoMo Shops.

For details about the optional accessories, refer to the instruction manual for each device.

- Battery Pack D08
- Back Cover D21
- Desktop Holder D11
- FOMA AC Adapter 01/02*1
- FOMA AC Adapter 01 for Global use*1
- FOMA DC Adapter 01/02
- FOMA Dry Battery Adapter 01

- FOMA Portable Charging Adapter 01
 - Flat-plug Earphone/Microphone with Switch P01/P02
 - Flat-plug Stereo Earphone Set P01
 - Earphone Plug Adapter P001
 - Earphone/Microphone with Switch P001*2/ P002*2
 - Stereo Earphone Set P001*2
 - Earphone Terminal P001*2
 - FOMA USB Cable*3
 - FOMA USB Cable with Charge Function 01*3
 - FOMA Indoor Booster Antenna*4
 - FOMA Indoor Booster Antenna (Stand Type)*4
 - In-Car Hands-Free Kit 01*5
 - FOMA In-Car Hands-Free Cable 01
 - In-Car Holder 01
 - Carry Case L 01
 - Bone conduction microphone/receiver
- *1 How to charge for AC adapter ➡ P34, P36
 *2 The Earphone Plug Adapter P001 is required.
 *3 In case of using a USB HUB, operation may not be performed properly.

*4 Make use of it in Japan.

*5 FOMA In-Car Hands-Free Cable 01 is required for USB connection/charging with FOMA D705iμ.

About Movie playing software

Playing movies (MP4 file) on a PC requires QuickTime Player (free of charge) ver. 6.4 or later (or ver. 6.3 + 3GPP), which is provided by Apple Computer Inc.

QuickTime Player can be downloaded from the website below:

<http://www.apple.com/jp/quicktime/download/>

- For details including the operating environment, downloading procedure and operation instructions, visit the website shown above.
- Downloading the software requires a PC with Internet access. Communication charges are separately required for downloading.

Troubleshooting

Check if updating software is required first and perform Software Update if necessary. ➡ P406

Power supply and charging

The FOMA terminal cannot be turned on (the terminal cannot be used).

- Is the battery pack connected properly? ➡ P33
- Is the battery depleted? ➡ P36
- When the FOMA terminal is on when using Dual Network Service, the FOMA terminal service is not available. Check whether or not the FOMA terminal is on. For details, see "Mobile Phone User's Guide [Network Services]".

The icon on the top of the display flashes and a rapid beep alarm is heard.

The battery is almost discharged. Charge the battery. ➡ P34, P36

The FOMA terminal cannot be charged.

- Is the battery pack connected properly? ➡ P33
- Is the charger terminal dirty? Clean the terminal with dry cotton swab, etc.
- Is the AC adapter (optional) connector securely inserted to the FOMA terminal's external connection terminal or the Desktop Holder (optional) connection terminal? ➡ P36
- Is the FOMA terminal correctly mounted on the Desktop Holder (optional)? ➡ P36
- In case the temperature of the FOMA terminal is high, charging may not work. When some functions are used, terminate them and charge again later after the temperature of the FOMA terminal is low.

The charging indicator flashes in red during charging.

End any calls or communications immediately. Disconnect the optional AC adapter (Desktop Holder) or DC adapter from the FOMA terminal. Then connect all the devices correctly and start over. P36

If the problem still persists, contact "Repairs" listed on the back of this manual.

Phone call

Calls cannot be made using the dial keys.

- Have you set All Lock? P109
- Have you set Keypad Dial Lock? P112
- Have you set Self Mode? P110
- Have you set Omakase Lock (Remote Lock)? P110

図外 (outside service area) is indicated on the display and you hear busy tones.

Are you outside the service area or in an area with poor signal strength? P37

After dialing a number, you hear busy tones and cannot establish your call.

- Have you dialed the area code?
- Do you hear the dial tone before entering a phone number?
- Is 図外 indicated? P37

The ring alert does not sound.

- Is Ring Alert Volume set to *SILENT*? P88
- Is the following function set?
 - Reject/Accept Call P116
 - Anonymous Caller P117
 - Mute Ring Time Setting P118
 - Reject Unregistered Caller P118
- Have you set Public mode (Driving mode)? P57
- Have you set Silent Mode? P89
- Have you set Self Mode? P110
- Is the ringing time for Voice Mail Service or Call Forwarding Service set to 0 seconds? P344, P346
- Is Response Time Setting set to 0 seconds? P60
- Is *Delayed time(Sec)* in Auto Answer Setting set to 0? P329

During a voice call, the other party's voice is hard to listen or too loud.

Has the earpiece volume setting been changed? Adjust it appropriately. P55, P88

When there is an incoming call, a name recorded in the phonebook is not displayed or the ring alert registered in the phonebook is not generated.

- Is the phone number notified by the other party? P54
- Does the phone number of the other party match the phone number registered in the phonebook?
- Is more than 1 phone number registered in the same FOMA terminal phonebook or is the same phone number registered in the FOMA terminal phonebook and the UIM phonebook? P68
- Is Privacy Mode activated? P112
- Is Receive Display set? P114

When there is an incoming call, a ring alert not set sounds.

- The ring alert set in multiple functions sounds depending on the priority levels. P87
- Is Privacy Mode activated? P112

When there is an incoming call, an image not set appears.

- When movie/i-motion containing sound and image is set as ring alert for Call Alert, the set movie/i-motion is used as the image.
- When call images are set in multiple functions, the image appears depending on the priority levels. P95
- Is Privacy Mode activated? P112

When there is an incoming call, the keys light/flash in a lighting pattern not set.

- If a lighting pattern is set for multiple functions, the keys light/flash depending on the priority levels. P102
- Is Privacy Mode activated? P112

Settings and operations

図 is displayed instead of menu icon or characters are dimmed and icon cannot be selected.

In case some functions cannot be activated because of various lock functions or the UIM not inserted, their icons change to 図 or characters are dimmed and cannot be selected.

The keypad sound is not generated.

- Is Keypad Sound set to *OFF*? P87
- Have you set Silent Mode? P89

A message *Insert UIM* is displayed when the FOMA terminal is powered on.

The UIM may not be properly attached or may be damaged. Check to see if the UIM is properly attached. ●P31

All locked. appears on the display.

All Lock is set. Cancel All Lock. ●P109

Omakase Lock active. is displayed and cannot operate the terminal.

Omakase Lock (Remote Lock) is set. ●P110

Nothing is indicated on the display.

- Is *Normal use of Display light time* in Display Light Setting set to other than *Always*? Screen display disappears after about 90 seconds have elapsed without any operation. ●P95
Display reappears by any key operation.
- Have you set Key Lock? Display on the screen disappears while Key Lock is on. ●P115

Pressing keys has no effect.

The keys cannot be used because Key Lock is set. Cancel Key Lock. ●P115

The day of the week appears in Japanese.

- Is *Day* for Clock Display Format set to *Japanese*? ●P103
- Is Select Language set to 日本語 (Japanese)? ●P38

The display is dim.

Is *Brightness* in Display Light Setting set to *Low*? ●P95

The lighting for the display and dial keys does not go on.

- Is *Normal use of Display light time* in Display Light Setting set to *0 sec*? ●P95
- Have you set Key Lock? ●P115

Date and time has been deleted.

When automatic time correction in Date and Time Setting is set to *OFF*, if the battery pack is removed or is not charged for a while after the battery has been depleted, date and time may be deleted. Please make the setting of date and time again. ●P38

When Auto Power ON is set, the FOMA terminal cannot be turned on at the specified time.

If the power is turned off in a manner other than the power-off operation or Auto Power OFF function (battery pack came off, for example), this function is not activated.

Even if Alarm Clock or the schedule is set, the alarm does not operate at the specified date and time when the power is turned off.

- If the power is turned off in a manner other than the power-off operation or Auto Power OFF function (battery pack came off, for example), this function is not activated.
- Set Alarm Auto Power ON to *ON*. ●P309

Call cost has not been charged.

The total cost for the UIM may exceed the limit (about 16,770,000 yen).

You can reset to 0 yen. ●P323

Mail and data**Still images and movie taken with the camera are blurred.**

When shooting an object nearby, use macro mode and switch to normal mode when shooting an object at a distance. ●P132

Names are not displayed or ring alert does not sound at the time of mail reception even though they have been registered in the phonebook.

- Does the mail address or number of the other party match that registered in the phonebook? Register correct phone numbers and mail address in the phonebook. ●P68
- Is more than 1 mail address or phone number registered in the same FOMA terminal phonebook, or is the same mail address or the phone number registered in the FOMA terminal phonebook and the UIM phonebook? ●P68
- Is Privacy Mode activated? ●P112
- Is Receive Display set? ●P114

Mail reception is announced by other ring alert than that set for incoming mail.

- When the mail ring alert is set for multiple functions, the ring alert sounds depending on the priority levels. ●P87
- When multiple mails are received at the same time, the mail ring alert sounds depending on the conditions set for the last mail received.
- Is Privacy Mode activated? ●P112

When mail is received, the keys light/flash in other lighting pattern than those set for incoming mail.

- When the incoming mail lighting pattern are set for multiple functions, the keys light/flash depending on the priority levels. ●P102
- When multiple mails are received at the same time, the keys light or flash in the incoming mail lighting pattern corresponding to the last mail received.
- Is Privacy Mode activated? ●P112

The image and movie is displayed as and .

If the data has been destroyed, it cannot be correctly displayed and  or  appears.

The screen reacts slowly when a key is pressed.

While transferring large-size data between the FOMA terminal and microSD memory card, reactions on the FOMA terminal screen may have a delay.

Overseas use

(out of service area) is indicated on the standby display and International Roaming services cannot be used.

- Are you outside the International Roaming service area or in an area with poor signal strength?
- Confirm if you are within the service area or the service provider is available referring to international service guides including "Mobile Phone User's Guide [International Services]".
- Search the service provider which supports the service in Network Search Setting ●P367
- When using the FOMA terminal for the first time after moving to foreign countries from Japan, turn the power on anew.

Voice calls or video-phone calls cannot be received.

Have you set Call Barring in Roaming? ●P369

A videophone call, i-mode or SMS cannot be used.

Confirm if you are within the service area or the service provider is available referring to international service guides including Mobile Phone User's Guide [International Services].

The other party's phone number is not notified./The phone number different from the other party's is notified./The contents registered in the phonebook or the function using Caller ID is not activated.

Even if the other party notifies the Caller ID, it is not displayed in case the Caller ID is not notified from your network or service provider. In addition, the phone number different from the other party's may be notified depending on your network or service provider.

Other

Function of IC card is disabled.

- Have you set IC Card Lock set to ON? ●P236, P238
- If the battery pack is not connected properly or removed, the function of IC card is disabled regardless of IC Card Lock Setting. Check if the battery pack is connected properly and turn power off and then back on. ●P33

Data transmission is unavailable.

Is a USB HUB used? In case of using a USB HUB, operation may not be performed properly.

Main error messages displayed on the FOMA terminal are shown in the alphabetical order as follows:

- The “(number)” or “(XXX)” in error messages is a code used to distinguish the error sent from the i-mode Center.

Address is not valid. (451)

Make sure if the address is correct.

Authentication type is not supported. (401)

The authentication type is not supported and connection to the specified i-mode sites or websites are disabled.

Cannot save to a microSD. Saving to phone memory.

The still image/movie with recorded Chara-den downloaded for which *Rec. file restriction* has already been set to *File restricted* cannot be saved to a microSD memory card. The *Rec. file restriction* setting cannot be changed.

Caution ! This SMS includes Phone Nos. or URLs. Be careful if you do not recognize the sender.

In case *Message scan* is set to *Valid* in Scanning Setting, when received SMS messages contain the phone number or URL, this message appears when the SMS message is tried to be displayed first.

Certificate is rejected. (tampered)

The site certificate is altered. Connection is suspended.

Check address.

Failed to transmit SMS. Make sure if the address is correct.

Check address.

The mail address in the mail group contains error or no mail address is entered. Check the mail address.

Check SMS center setting.

SMS setting at *SMSC* is incorrect. ➡P206

Connection failed.

Failed to connect to the i-mode Center. Please move to another location with good radio reception and retry.

Connection failed. (403)

Failed to connect due to some cause such as connection was rejected.

Connection failed. (503)

Failed to connect because of the maintenance of the server or congestion of the line. Please retry after a while.

Connection failed. (562)

Failed to connect to the i-mode Center. Please move to another location with good radio reception and retry.

Connection interrupted.

Please move to another location with good radio reception and retry. If the error persists, try again later.

Contains bad data.

i-appli cannot be started from invalid data read with Bar Code Reader.

Content length exceeds maximum size for i-motion.

Reception was suspended because the data exceeded the maximum size when downloading i-motion data.

Continue using i-appli and transmit data?

i-appli tried to transmit again after the message *Data transmission is frequent. Continue transmission?* was displayed.

Corrupted data or microSD.

The microSD memory card cannot be accessed because the data saved in the microSD memory card or microSD memory card has a problem. Initialize the microSD memory card or insert a new microSD memory card. ➡P274, P266

Corrupted data. Restore default setting?

The data contains error. Select *Yes* to return to the default setting. Starting is unavailable without restoring the default setting.

Corrupted data or microSD. Saving to phone memory.

When *microSD* has been set as the destination for saving still images or movies but the microSD memory card cannot be accessed, the destination automatically switched to *Phone*.

Database error. To play this track, sync your phone to your PC.

Cannot be played because the replay expiration of the data has expired or it cannot be confirmed.

To play, confirm that it is within the replay expiration on PC and synchronize by connecting the FOMA terminal to PC.

Data damaged. Unable to view log.

The log cannot be displayed because the log data of sent or received mail contains an error.

**Data in IC card is full.
Unable to download.
Delete service?**

New Osaifu-Keitai compatible i-appli cannot be downloaded because Osaifu-Keitai compatible i-appli registered already is deleted because the data in IC card is full. Select *Yes* and the Osaifu-Keitai compatible i-appli which saved already appears. Delete i-appli software registered already until free disk space required for IC card is secured.

- In case the message *IC card memory full. Delete unwanted item.* appears on the list, select i-appli to be deleted. When highlighting i-appli, in case *Start* is shown in the upper right part of the guide row, select after activating i-appli by pressing  and delete the data in IC card.
- In case the message *xxxx byte need to delete.* appears on the list, the data size used in IC card is shown for i-appli respectively. Activate i-appli to be deleted and delete the data in IC card.

**Data in IC card is full.
Unable to run.**

Osaifu-Keitai compatible i-appli cannot be downloaded because the data in IC card is full. Select *Yes* and the i-appli list to be deleted appears. Delete Osaifu-Keitai compatible i-appli services registered already until free disk space required for IC card is secured.

**Data in IC card is full.
Unable to run. Delete service?**

Osaifu-Keitai compatible i-appli cannot be started because the data in IC card is full. Select *Yes* and the Osaifu-Keitai compatible i-appli which registered already appears. Follow the screen and start i-appli and then delete the data in IC card.

**Data in IC-card is full.
Unable to start.**

Osaifu-Keitai compatible i-appli cannot be started because the data in IC card is full. Delete Osaifu-Keitai compatible i-appli services registered already until free disk space required for IC card is secured.

**Data in IC card is full.
Unable to update. Delete service?**

Osaifu-Keitai compatible i-appli cannot be updated unless Osaifu-Keitai compatible i-appli registered already is deleted because the data in IC card is full. Follow the procedure described in the message of "Data in IC card is full. Unable to download. Delete service?".

Data transmission is frequent. Continue transmission?

Displayed in case the number of transmission is extremely large within the specified duration when using i-appli. Select *Yes* to use i-appli successively, *No* to continue i-appli after terminating i-appli transmission or *Terminate i-appli* to quit i-appli.

Delete software and IC card data?

Among the i-appli to delete, there is Osaifu-Keitai compatible i-appli of which the data within IC card are also deleted by deleting the i-appli. Select *Yes* to delete the i-appli and the data in IC card.

Download failed.

Communication was interrupted during reception. Please move to another location with good radio reception and retry. However, in case the data contains an error, it cannot be downloaded even though you retry. Contact the provider of the data.

**Error in IC card data.
Unable to delete software.**

Osaifu-Keitai compatible i-appli containing errors within IC card data cannot be deleted.

**Error in image.
Does not work correctly.**

Flash movie cannot be displayed because of the error in the image data.

**Error in ToruCa data.
Unable to save.**

The data of ToruCa is incorrect.

**Exceeds maximum size.
Unable to display.**

The contents of the attached file beyond the maximum size cannot be displayed.

**Exceeds maximum size.
Unable to play.**

The attached file beyond the maximum size cannot be played.

Failed to clear call cost information.

The UIM is not correctly installed or there is a fault.
●P31

Failed to read call cost information.

The UIM is not correctly installed or there is a fault.
●P31

Failed to switch to data transfer mode.

FOMA terminal is in data communication. Processing could not be performed because switching to data transfer mode was unavailable. Terminate the communication or retry the operation later.

File contains multiple data file. Unable to display.

The contents of the attached file containing multiple data cannot be displayed.

Folder is full.

Unable to receive Message R/F because the memory space is insufficient. Please read unread Message R/F, release protection or delete.

i-appli stand-by display canceled due to security error.

i-appli standby display has exited due to unpermitted operation.

**iC transmission
Connection interrupted**

Error has occurred during iC communication. Keep overlapping the FeliCa marks during sending.

**iC transmission
Failed to connect via authentication.**

Sending all data was failed because the authentication password is not correct. Enter the same authentication password between the sender and receiver.

**iC transmission
No response. Retry data exchange?**

The specified time has elapsed with no response from starting iC communication. Select *Yes* and overlap the FeliCa marks.

**iC transmission
No UIM. Unable to start requested software.**

Even when i-appli To is set in the data received by iC communication, starting is unavailable due to UIM operation restriction. ◀P32.

**iC transmission
Unable to switch to data transfer mode.**

FOMA terminal is in data communication. Processing cannot be performed because switching to data transfer mode is unavailable. Terminate the communication or retry the operation later.

Inbox full. Unable to retrieve new messages.

Unable to receive SMS because of insufficient storage space in the Inbox of the FOMA terminal or UIM. Please read unread mail, release mail protection or delete unnecessary mail.

Inbox is full.

Unable to receive i-mode Mail because there is insufficient memory space in the Inbox. Please read unread i-mode Mail, release protection or delete.

**Infrared
Connection interrupted.**

An error occurred during infrared communication. During infrared communications, do not move the FOMA terminal pointed at the other terminal's infrared data port before data sending and receiving is complete. ◀P283

**Infrared
Failed to connect via authentication.**

Sending all data was failed because the authentication password is not correct. Enter the same authentication password between sender and receiver.

**Infrared
No response. Retry data exchange?**

After entering into the infrared communication state, the specified time has elapsed with no other terminals for communications found. Point the FOMA terminal at the other terminal's infrared data port with a distance of 20 cm or less and select *Yes*. ◀P283

**Infrared
No UIM. Unable to start requested software.**

Even when i-appli To is set in the data received by infrared communication, starting is unavailable due to UIM operation restriction. ◀P32

**Infrared
Unable to switch to data transfer mode.**

FOMA terminal is in data communication. Processing cannot be performed because switching to data transfer mode is unavailable. Terminate the communication or retry the operation later.

Input error (205)

Input data for i-mode sites or websites contain error. Check the input data for errors.

Insufficient memory.

Operation is interrupted due to insufficient memory. In case this message appears frequently, turn power off and then back on.

Invalid data. Connection cannot be established. (400)

- Cannot be connected because of the error in i-mode sites or websites. The URL may be incorrect. Make sure that the URL is correct.
- Within service area, sending auto send mail was unsuccessful.

Invalid data. Failed to save.

Attached melodies or movie/i-motion files cannot be played because of the incorrect data.

Invalid microSD. Unable to use Digital Rights Management function.

The authentication area in the microSD memory card could not be referred due to some cause. The data of Movable Contents cannot be saved in the microSD memory card in which an error has occurred.

Invalid UIM or phone type. Unable to use.

Cannot be played because the different UIM from that used when saved is inserted or the model is different.

Invalid UIM, requested service not available.

Operation is unavailable due to the function of UIM operation restrictions. Insert the same UIM as used when those data or files were saved to use it.

Invalid UIM, requested software failed to start.

The specified i-appli cannot be started due to the function of UIM operation restrictions. Insert the same UIM as used when the i-appli was downloaded to use it.

Is the ToruCa automatic reading function in a mobile phone used through the reader/writer?

Select *Yes* to use ToruCa and make the setting of ToruCa Auto-read to *ON*.

Items in microSD limit reached. Saving to phone memory.

When the microSD memory card becomes full with *microSD* set as the destination for saving still images or movies recorded with the camera or Chara-den, the destination is automatically switched to *Phone*.

Memory full. Unable to save.

The FOMA terminal does not have enough memory space and SMS cannot be saved. Move SMS to UIM or delete i-mode Mail or SMS.

Memory shortage. Quit application.

The running function is terminated due to insufficient memory.

Message cannot be read. Still retrieving message data.

- The object mail data cannot be referenced because mail or folder is used for another processing.
- Mail data cannot be referenced in chat mail.

Message kept in center.

SMS messages have already been sent.

microSD memory full.

Because there is not enough available storage space in microSD memory card, data cannot be copied, moved, backed up or information update is unavailable. Delete unnecessary data. ◀P274

Name too long. Saved with incomplete name.

When registering an item selected from the display of a site, etc. to the phonebook, the number of characters has exceeded the specified value. Pressing  causes the phonebook registration screen to be displayed, with characters exceeding the limit deleted.

No content is available. (204)

Could not find data at the specified site.

No requested software.

The i-appli specified by the mail and external equipment is not stored in your FOMA terminal.

No response. (408)

Communication was disconnected because there was no response from i-mode sites or websites within the specified time. Retry later.

No space to attach signature.

- The signature cannot be inserted because of exceeding the maximum characters.
- The signature cannot be inserted in SMS because it is decorated.
- The signature cannot be inserted when *English* is set for *Font type* in SMS Setting. Change *Font type* to *Japanese*. ◀P206

Now calling. Unable to record movie.

When using the camera during a call, it cannot be switched to movie shooting and voice recording. End the call before switching to movie shooting and voice recording.

Out of service area.

Unable to execute because the terminal is in a place where radio waves do not reach or out of the service area.

Page is not found. (404)

Make sure that the URL is correct.

Password is not correct. (401)

The user name or password entered in the basic authentication screen of i-mode sites or websites is incorrect.

Please wait.

- The voice line/package communication equipment is damaged or the voice line network/package communication network is so congested. Please try again later.
- You can call the number 110, 119 and 118. However the call may not be connected depending on the status.

Please wait for a while (Packet)

The packet communication equipment is damaged or the packet communication network is so congested. Please try again later.

PUK blocked.

Inquire at DoCoMo Shops.

Receiving messages stopped. Some messages unreceived.

Unable to receive all SMS messages because an error occurred during reception. Please move to another location with good radio reception and execute Check SMS again. ◀P206

Registration is in progress. (554)

User registration with i-mode is in process. Please try again later.

Remotely Controllable services denied.

Voice Mail Service and Call Forwarding Service has not subscribed yet.

Requested software unavailable.

The i-appli cannot be started because of an error in i-appli. Starting specified i-appli by i-appli To function from a site, mail or an external device is disabled if there is a problem in i-appli operation settings or start-up conditions.

Root certificate has expired. Connect?

The term of validity of CA certificate is premature or overdue. This message may be displayed when the date and time have not been set or are incorrect. Set the date and time correctly. ●P38

Root certificate is not valid.

The certificate in the FOMA terminal is invalid. To establish a connection, change the setting. ●P161

Run software and delete data on IC card. Then delete software.

This i-appli cannot be deleted without deleting the data in IC card. Delete the i-appli after activating the i-appli and deleting the data in IC card.

Save unsaved data to phone memory or delete.

The number of items to be saved is full in INBOX for infrared/iC communications. Save the data in Inbox into the FOMA terminal or delete it. ●P286

Service is not registered.

- You are not an i-mode subscriber. Apply to use the i-mode service.
- If you have subscribed to i-mode after purchasing the FOMA terminal, once turn the FOMA terminal power off and then turn on.

Service is used by the previous software. Unable to download. Delete a service?

Unless Osaifu-Keitai compatible i-appli registered already is deleted, the similar Osaifu-Keitai compatible i-appli cannot be downloaded. Select **Yes** to delete the registered Osaifu-Keitai compatible i-appli.

Service is used by the previous software. Unable to update. Delete a service?

Unless Osaifu-Keitai compatible i-appli registered already is deleted, upgrade is unavailable. Select **Yes** to delete the registered Osaifu-Keitai compatible i-appli.

Service unavailable.

SMS is not available.

Size of this page is not supported.

- Downloading has stopped because the size of i-mode sites or websites was larger than the limit size. Press  to display the data already downloaded normally.
- Reception was interrupted because the data size exceeds maximum size while downloading.

Software ended due to security error.

i-appli has exited due to unpermitted operation. It is recorded in Security Error History.

Some data are needed to update replay period. Send phone/terminal and UIM ID, and connect to site?

Some data of Chaku-Uta Full® downloaded by Uta-hodai when playing on Music Player are needed to update replay period. For handling ●P298

SSL session cannot be established.

SSL communication was interrupted due to an SSL communication error or an error on the server concerning the client authentication.

SSL session failed.

A problem was detected with the authentication process during SSL communication. Connection is suspended.

SSL/TLS session cannot be established.

SSL/TLS communication was interrupted due to a SSL/TLS communication error or an error on the server concerning the client authentication.

SSL/TLS session failed.

A problem was detected with the authentication process during SSL/TLS communication. Connection is suspended.

Syntax error. (XXX)

- Dose not support the specified i-mode sites or websites.
- Make sure that the URL is correct.
- Unable to display because there is an error in the received data.
- Within service area, sending auto send mail was unsuccessful.

Terminal memory full.

Cannot be executed because the number of saved items in the FOMA terminal is full or the memory is not enough. Delete corresponding unnecessary data.

This certificate has expired. Connect?

The term of validity of the site certificate is premature or overdue.

This certificate is not valid for this URL. Connect?

CN name (server name) of the site certificate does not match the actual server name.

This site is not certified. Connect?

The site certificate is not supported by the FOMA terminal.

This software contains an error. Unable to download.

Unable to download because the i-appli data contains an error.

This software is currently unavailable for use.

Using the i-appli is stopped by IP (Information Provider).

This software is not supported by this phone.

The i-appli cannot be downloaded because the FOMA terminal is not compatible with it.

This UIM cannot be recognized.

The UIM is not correctly installed or there is a fault. Check if the UIM is installed correctly. ●P31

Time out

The i-mode Center is busy. Please try again later.

Time reset. Unable to download data. Set auto time adjustment*1 ON in Date & Time and restart phone.

When you set *Adjust time/time diff* to *OFF* in Date and Time Setting and set the date and time, the date and time may be deleted in case the battery pack is removed or has not been charged for a long while. Set the date and time and download again.

*1 *auto time adjust* is displayed depending on the function.

Time reset. Unable to play data. Set auto time adjustment*1 ON in Date & Time and restart phone.

When you set *Adjust time/time diff* to *OFF* in Date and Time Setting and set the date and time, the date and time may be deleted in case the battery pack is removed or has not been charged for a long while. Set the date and time and replay.

*1 *auto time adjust* is displayed depending on the function.

Too much data was entered.

Unable to transmit data because too many characters were entered in the entry field of i-mode sites or websites. Please reduce the number of characters and retry transmission.

Transmission failed.

Failed to transmit the SMS. Please move to another location with good radio reception and retry transmission.

Transmission failed. (XXX)

Failed to transmit the i-mode Mail due to the error of i-mode Center. Please try to send again later.

UIM full.

UIM does not have enough storage space and SMS cannot be saved. Delete SMS from the UIM (●P208) or move to the FOMA terminal (●P208).

UIM not inserted. Unable to use.

The UIM is not inserted. Please use your FOMA terminal after inserting the UIM. ●P31

UIM not recognized. Unable to use.

Cannot be executed because UIM is not inserted. To play the movie/i-motion, insert the same UIM as that used when saved.

Unable to check new messages.

Please move to another location with good radio reception and retry. If the error persists, try again later.

Unable to delete some applications on IC card. Delete others?

Among the i-appli, Osaifu-Keitai compatible i-appli which cannot be deleted exists because the data within IC card cannot be deleted. Select *Yes* to delete other i-appli than that.

Unable to display this Chara-den.

Chara-den cannot be displayed due to insufficient memory.

Unable to download data.

Failed to download ToruCa (details). Retry the operation. In case the same error occurs again, downloading may be unavailable due to the error in ToruCa data, etc.

Unable to download. Data exceeds maximum size. (452)

Reception is disabled because the size of i-mode sites or websites exceeds the maximum size.

Unable to move specified page.

When an i-motion ticker contains a link to a site (Web To), etc., in case the URL exceeds a fixed length or downloading was interrupted, the linked page cannot be displayed.

Unable to obtain data due to replay restriction data error.

Cannot obtain because the replay restriction data is incorrect.

Unable to retrieve the requested URL. (504)

Failed to connect to the requested URL due to some cause.

Unable to save specified image.

The image cannot be saved because the image contains error.

Unable to shoot serially.

You cannot shoot continuously because memory or the number of items to be saved in *My Picture* is full. Continuous shoot is canceled automatically.

Unable to switch to data transfer mode.

The FOMA terminal is communicating. Processes cannot be performed because switching to data transfer mode is unavailable. Terminate communicating or retry again later.

Unable to update pattern definitions.

Updating the definition file has failed. Stop all other functions currently running and retry the update in a place with strong radio wave signals.

Unable to use data type.

Data in a file format incompatible with the FOMA terminal cannot be copied or moved from a microSD memory card to the FOMA terminal or searched for.

Unable to use this function.

Mail composition is unavailable when 2in1 is in the B mode.

Unsupported Content.

Operation is unavailable because the contents are not compatible with the FOMA terminal.

URL address changed. (301)

i-mode sites or websites forward URL automatically or URL is changed.

URL is too long to register.

Unable to register as a bookmark because the URL exceeds the number of characters that can be registered.

Usage is currently restricted. Try again later.

Displayed in case extremely large data communication is executed within the specified duration only when using i-mode packet fixed sum service. Connection may be unavailable for a certain period of time, so use i-mode/Full Browser a little while later.

You have no certificate. Connect?

The user certificate has not been downloaded.

Your certificate has expired. Connect?

The user certificate has expired.
P161

以下の宛先にはメール送信できませんでした (561) Mails could not be sent to following address. (561) ●●@△△△.ne.jp

* Displayed mail address differs depending on the receiver side.

Sending i-mode Mail is failed for some receivers. Pressing  displays the receiver that the transmission failed. Check to see if the address of the receiver is correct and retry transmission at another location with good radio wave condition.

“●▲■.ne.jp” 宛のメールが混み合っているため、送信することができません (555) Unable to send. “●▲■.ne.jp” is not available temporarily. (555)

* Displayed domain name differs depending on the receiver side.

Mails addressed to the displayed domain name are congested. Please try again later.

Warranty

- A written warranty is provided with every FOMA terminal; make sure that you receive it. Store the warranty in a safe place when you have read it and checked that it contains the "shop name/date" you purchased it. If it does not contain the necessary information, contact the shop where you bought it. The warranty is valid for a period of 1 year from the date of purchase.
- This product and all accessories are subject to change, in part or whole, for the sake of improvement without prior notice.
- Data registered in the phonebook, etc. may be lost or become corrupted due to failure, repair or other handlings of the FOMA terminal. It is recommended that you make a note of the data in the phonebook, etc. When your FOMA terminal is repaired and so on, downloaded information via i-mode or i-appli (except some data) are not forwarded to a repaired FOMA terminal according to the copyright laws.
 - * In this FOMA terminal, the phonebook data, etc. can be saved in the microSD memory card.
 - * In this FOMA terminal, i-motion files or i-appli data can be saved to the microSD memory card.
 - * In this FOMA terminal, the phonebook data, etc. can be saved in Data Center by subscribing to Data Security Service (which is a pay service and requires a subscription).
 - * If you have a PC, you can use DoCoMo keitai datalink (P360) and FOMA USB Cable with Charge Function 01 (optional) or FOMA USB Cable (optional) to transfer and store the contents registered in the phonebook, etc. on a PC.

After-Sales Service

■ When problems occur

Before requesting service, read the section "Troubleshooting". P393
If the problem still persists, contact "Repairs" on the back of this manual.

■ If the result of inquiries indicates that a repair is required

Take your FOMA terminal to a repair office designated by DoCoMo. Be sure to check the opening hours of the repair office before you go. Note that you must present the warranty.

● In the warranty period

- The FOMA terminal will be repaired at no charge subject to the conditions of the warranty.
- The written warranty must be presented to receive warranty service. The subscriber will be charged for the repairs without presentation of the written warranty or repairs of defects resulting from misuse, accident or neglect, etc. even during the warranty period.
- The subscriber is charged even during the warranty period for the repair of failures caused by the use of devices or consumable items that are not DoCoMo-specified.
- The subscriber is charged for the repairs of the damaged LCD or connector after the purchase.

● Repairs may not be possible in the following cases:

Repair may not be possible when corrosion due to exposure to moisture, condensation or perspiration is detected in a moisture seal reaction or test, or if any of the internal boards are damaged or deformed. Since these conditions are outside the scope of the warranty, a repair, if at all possible, will be charged.

● After expiration of the warranty

All repairs that are requested are charged.

● Replacement parts

Basically, the FOMA terminal's replacement parts (parts required to maintain product function) will be kept in stock for at least 6 years after termination of production. Please keep in mind that it may not be possible to repair your phone

depending on the nature of the required repair because of a lack of parts, etc. It may still be possible to repair your phone depending on the nature of the required repair even after this period. Contact "Repairs" listed on the back of this manual.

■ Notes

- Do not modify the FOMA terminal or its accessories.
 - Fire, injury or damage may result.
 - If the equipment is modified, it will be repaired with your consent that the modified parts have been restored to the condition at the time of purchase. However, repair may be refused depending on the nature of modification. The following cases may be regarded as the modification:
 - Stickers are attached on the part of the LCD or button.
 - The FOMA terminal is decorated using the adhesive.
 - The exterior is replaced by other than the condition at the time of purchase.
 - Repair of failures or damage caused by modification are charged even during the warranty period.
- Do not remove any inscription stickers attached to your FOMA terminal. The inscription stickers certify that the FOMA terminal satisfies specific technical standards. Note that if stickers are removed intentionally or are reattached in such a way that confirmation of the sticker's contents is impossible, repair or servicing may be refused because confirmation of whether or not the phone conforms to relevant technical standards cannot be made.
- The function settings, the information of total calls duration, etc. may be cleared (reset) by failure, repair or other handling processes. Should this happen, set up the functions again.
- Magnetic components are used in the earpiece and speaker of the FOMA terminal. Do not allow cash cards or other devices that are vulnerable to magnetism to come into contact with the phone.

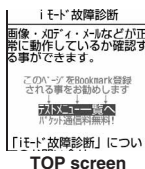
- If your FOMA terminal becomes wet or moist, turn the power off and remove the battery pack immediately and bring it to a repair office as soon as possible. However, repair may not be possible depending on the condition of your FOMA terminal.

■ Phonebook data or downloaded data

- Maintain a separate record of the data you registered or saved in your FOMA terminal. DoCoMo will not accept any liability and responsibility whatsoever for changes or loss of information.
- Data created, imported or downloaded by the subscriber may become corrupted or be lost when changing the model or repairing the FOMA terminal. DoCoMo will not accept any responsibility for that. Also, DoCoMo may, at its option, repair the FOMA terminal by replacing it. Regarding this FOMA terminal, the downloaded data in the FOMA terminal including images and incoming melodies and the data you have created can be transferred only when repairing (some data cannot be transferred and transferring may be unavailable depending on the degree of malfunctions.)
 - * It may take some time to transfer or transferring may be unavailable depending on the capacity of the data stored in the FOMA terminal.

Diagnostic site of i-mode trouble

You can check your FOMA terminal about whether sending/receiving mail or downloading images/melodies operates correctly.



■ To access “iモード故障診断サイト” (Diagnostic site of i-mode trouble) (only in Japanese)

i-mode site: **iMenu ▶ お知らせ(Notice) ▶ サービス・機能(Services/Function) ▶ iモード(i-mode) ▶ iモード故障診断**
(Diagnostic site of i-mode trouble)



QR code for
site connection

- Packet communication for the diagnosis of i-mode trouble is free of charge.
 - Access overseas will be charged.
- Test items differ depending on the model of FOMA terminal. In addition, test items may be changed.
- When checking the operation by test items, read carefully the precautions described on the site before testing.
- When connecting to the diagnostic site of i-mode trouble or executing the test of sending mail, your private information concerning FOMA terminal (model name, mail address, etc.) is automatically sent to the server (the server for the diagnostic site of i-mode trouble). DoCoMo does not use the sent information for purposes other than the diagnosis of i-mode trouble.
- In case there is the possibility of malfunctions after checking, contact “Repairs” indicated on the back of this manual.

Updating software

Software Update

This function checks connecting to the network for the necessity for updating FOMA terminal software and downloads part of the software as required through packet communication*1 to make updates of the software.

When software update is required, the information will be posted on the DoCoMo website or お知らせ (Notice) in iMenu.

*1 Packet communication for software update is free of charge.

• Software may be updated in the following two methods:

• Immediate Update:

Update on the spot as desired.

• Reserved Update:

Reserve a day and time-slot for automatic update of the software in the specified day and time.

INFORMATION

- Do not remove the battery pack while updating software. Update fails.
- Software update can be done while various data, such as the phonebook entries registered in the FOMA Terminal, camera images, downloaded data are retained; however, note that data protection sometimes cannot be secured depending on the conditions of your FOMA terminal (such as malfunction, damage, or water leak). DoCoMo recommends backing up necessary data. However, note that some data such as downloaded data may not be backed up.

Usage precautions

- Software cannot be updated in the following cases:
 - During All Lock
 - While executing other functions
 - When the date and time are not set
 - When the UIM is not inserted
 - When the battery is not fully charged
 - When PIN1 code is being entered
 - When PIN1 code is locked
 - When 圏外 is indicated
 - During Personal Data Lock
 - The power is off
 - In Self Mode on
 - While talking
 - During Omakase Lock (Remote Lock)
 - During packet communication connecting with a PC
 - During 64K data communication

- At the time of updating software, the unique information of your FOMA terminal (model or serial number, etc.) will be automatically sent to the server (the server for updating software managed by DoCoMo). DoCoMo will not use the sent information for any other purpose than software update.
- Software update (downloading or rewriting) may take time.
- If software update is executed when *ON* is set for PIN1 Code On/Off, the PIN code entry screen will be displayed at the time of automatic reload after completion of software updating. You cannot make/receive calls and operate communication functions if the incorrect PIN1 code is entered.
- While software is being updated, making/receiving calls, various communication functions or other functions are not available (Incoming voice calls can be answered while downloading).
- Any incoming videophone call cannot be answered during download. Unanswered calls are recorded as missed ones in the received call history.
- Even if an alarm clock or any alarm is set while software is being updated, the updating continues without activating the alarm clock or the alarm.
- For software update, SSL session is established to the server (our site). Enable SSL certificate in Manage Certificate. Configured as valid by default. 
- Software update should be done with battery fully charged and enough battery power (.
- It is recommended that software update be executed when good signal quality is obtained, 3 bars of the signal level icon () are displayed and the terminal is not being moved.
 - If radio wave signals become weaker during software downloading or downloading has stopped, retry software update in a place with strong radio wave signals.
- A displayed icon for the message stored at i-mode Center disappears after software update.
 - If Receive Option Setting is set to *ON* and mail arrives during software updating, the screen that notifies an arrival of mail in the i-mode Center may not appear after the software update being completed.
- When software update has failed, the message *Rewrite failed* appears and all the operations are unavailable. In such a case, please bring the FOMA terminal to a repair office designated by DoCoMo.
- Software update is unavailable when using the terminal overseas.
- In case updating is not required, when checking the necessity of software update, a message is displayed indicating update is not necessary, so use as it is.
- Software update is available even if Host Selection is set to other than i-mode.

Receiving the notice of software update

Update Notification

Enable *Update notification* in advance to display an update notification icon  on the standby display in case the software update is needed.

1

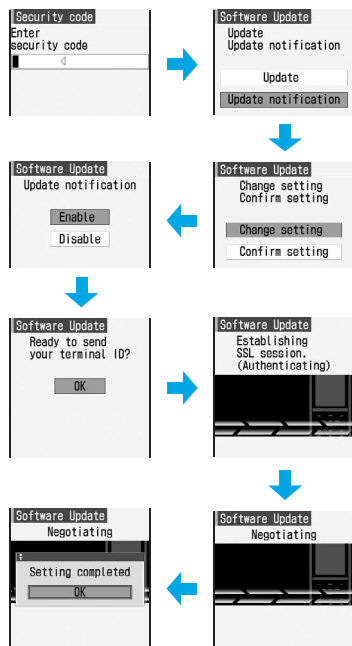
   

2

Enter the terminal security code ▶

Update notification ▶ *Change setting* ▶

Enable ▶ 



■ **Confirming the setting:** Display the *Change setting/Confirm setting screen* ➤ *Confirm setting* ➤

INFORMATION

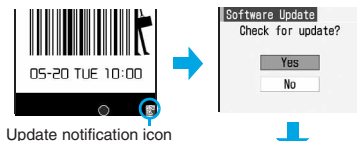
- Update notification icon is displayed in the following cases:
 - When there is a notification from DoCoMo
 - When Reserved Update has failed
 - When Reserved Update has been canceled
 - When Delete All Data is executed
 - When the software update screen is displayed
 - When the FOMA terminal has been purchased (Update notification icon may not be displayed.)

Starting software update

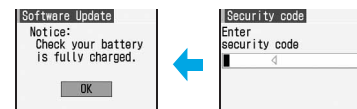
You can start software update by selecting update notification icon on the standby display or by executing from the menu screen.

Starting software update by selecting update notification icon

- 1 ➤ **Highlight update notification icon**
 ➤ ➤ **Yes** ➤ **Enter the terminal security code**



Update notification icon

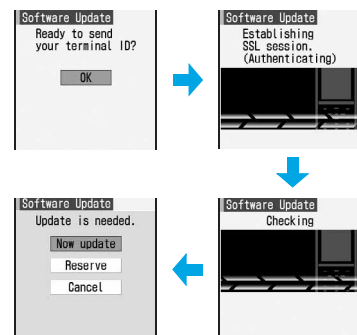


- The terminal security code by default is set to "0000".

- 2 ➤ **after confirming precautions**



- 3 ➤ **Confirm whether software update is required**



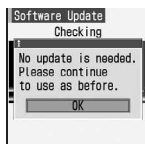
Selection screen for the update procedure

- Pressing on the confirmation screen for sending terminal ID makes connection to the server and your private information concerning the mobile phone (such as model, serial number) is sent.

■ Setting Update notification to Disable:

A confirmation screen asking whether to set to *Enable* appears after the screen for checking. In case of selecting *Yes*, after communicating, press  on a confirmation screen asking whether to continue updating. When the setting is completed, the screen for checking reappears.

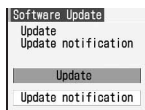
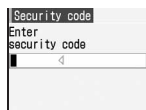
■ When updating is not necessary:



If software updating has been found to be unnecessary as a result of checking for the necessity of updating, the screen as shown on the left is displayed. Press  to use the FOMA terminal as it is.

Starting software update from the menu screen

1 [MENU] 8 6 4 ▶ Enter the terminal security code ▶ Update



- Follow the procedure from Step 2 in “Starting software update by selecting update notification icon” ▶P408

Updating software immediately

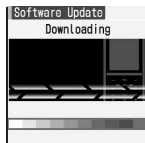
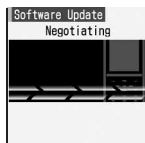
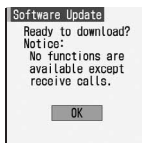
Immediate Update

- Immediate update may not be available when the server is busy.

1 Display the selection screen for the update procedure ▶P408 ▶ Now update

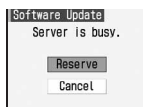


Downloading is started and the key flashes.



- Downloading starts in about 5 seconds without pressing .
- After starting downloading, updating process is executed without the operation of selecting the menu.
- Press  to cancel downloading. If downloading is canceled halfway during communication or downloading, the data downloaded up to then is deleted.

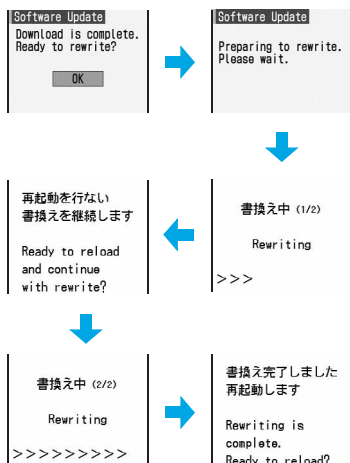
■ When the server is busy:



- Select *Reserve* and reserve a date and time for update.

2 after completion of downloading

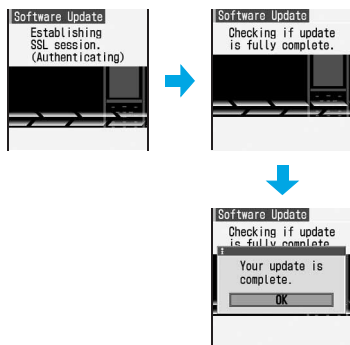
During rewriting, the key flashes.



- Rewriting is started in about 5 seconds without pressing  after downloading.
- All key operations are disabled while software is being rewritten. Updating operation cannot be canceled.

3 Automatically reloaded after the completion of rewriting

After reload, wait while communicating again with the server.



4

Update is completed and the standby display appears.

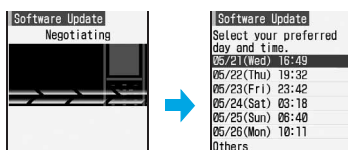
Updating software at pre-specified time

Reserved Update

When downloading takes time or the server is busy, you can choose to set the time to start software update in advance by communicating with the server.

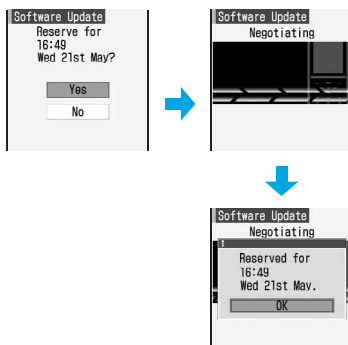
1 Display the selection screen for the update procedure Reserve

Inquire the options for preferred day and time by communicating with the server.



- Available date and time for reservation will be shown by the time of the server.

2 Highlight preferred day and time Yes

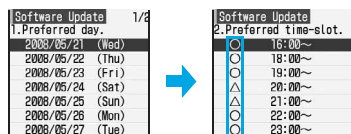


- If there are more than 1 option page for preferred day and time, switch to the next or previous page with .

■ Selecting from other than options displayed:

① Others

② Highlight preferred day and time-slot ▶



Availability for reservation at each time-slot will be shown:

○: available

△: barely available

③ Highlight preferred day and time-slot ▶

Connection is made to the server and the options close to preferred day and time-slot are displayed.

- If there are more than 1 option page for preferred time-slot, switch to the next or previous page with  or .
- Press  to display the description of the symbol on the left of time-slot.

④ Highlight preferred day and time ▶

 ▶ Yes

- If there are more than 1 option page for preferred day and time, switch to the next or previous page with  or .

3

Reservation is completed and the menu is displayed.

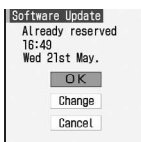
-  is shown on the standby display when reservation is made.

Checking/changing/canceling reserved day and time

1 8 6 4

2 Enter the terminal security code ▶

Update ▶ Check the contents



- To stop checking:
Highlight **OK** ▶



■ Changing reservation:

① Change

A confirmation screen for sending your terminal ID is displayed.

②

The option selection screen is displayed.

- Follow the procedure from Step ② in "Selecting from other than options displayed". ➡ P411
- Pressing  on the confirmation screen for sending your terminal ID makes connection to the server and your private information concerning the mobile phone (such as model, serial number) is sent.

■ Canceling reservation:

① Cancel ▶ Yes

A confirmation screen for sending your terminal ID is displayed.

②

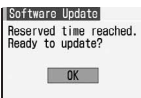
The reservation is canceled and the menu is displayed.

- Pressing  on the confirmation screen for sending your terminal ID makes connection to the server and your private information concerning the mobile phone (such as model, serial number) is sent.

When the reserved time arrives

When the reserved time arrives, the screen as shown below is displayed and updating software is started automatically after about 5 seconds. Before the reserved time, make sure that the battery is fully charged and the handset is in a location where radio waves reach and then show the standby display.

When downloading is completed, rewriting software is automatically started, followed by reload.



- To cancel the software update:
- ▶ *Yes*

INFORMATION

- Note that updating software may not be activated even though the reserved time arrives in case of using the other functions. In case the reserved time arrives while talking or receiving messages, updating software starts after finishing talking or receiving messages.
- If software update is executed when *ON* is set for PIN1 Code On/Off, the PIN code entry screen will be displayed at the time of automatic reload after completion of software updating. You cannot make/receive calls and operate communication functions if the incorrect PIN1 code is entered.
- If an alarm clock or any alarm is set for the same time, the alarm clock or the alarm takes precedence and the software update may not be started.
- In case Delete All Data (P331) is executed after completing reservation, software update is not started even though the reserved time arrives. Make a reservation for software update again.

Protecting the FOMA terminal from hazardous data

Virus Scan Function

Update pattern definition first to keep the pattern definition up-to-date.

For the data or program downloaded via a website or received i-mode Mail/SMS, this function detects data that may cause troubles and then deletes it or inhibits activation of applications in order to protect the FOMA terminal from viruses.

- Pattern definition is used for checking. Update pattern definition because it is updated whenever a new trouble is detected. In case Auto-update Setting is set to *Enable*, updating is performed automatically when pattern definition is updated.

- Virus Scan Function is for preventing the data that cause some problem to mobile phone from invading when viewing websites or receiving mail. Please note that if pattern definition corresponding to specific troubles has not been downloaded to the mobile phone or such pattern definition does not exist, this function cannot prevent the trouble from happening.
- Pattern definition is different depending on the model of mobile phone. Please keep in mind that DoCoMo may stop distributing the pattern definition for the models that have been on the market for 3 years or more.
- When updating pattern definition, your private information concerning the mobile phone (model, serial number, etc.) is automatically sent to the server (the server for the scan function managed by DoCoMo). DoCoMo does not use the sent information for purposes other than the scan function.

Setting Virus Scan Function Scanning Setting

If this setting is set to *Valid*, data or program is checked automatically when it is displayed or executed.

-
- Highlight each item** ▶

Scan:

When setting to *Valid*, in case of detecting the data that may cause troubles, a message is displayed in one of 5 warning levels. P414

Message scan:

When setting to *Valid*, in case SMS contains a phone number or URL, a warning message indicating a phone number or URL is contained appears when the SMS is displayed first.

- In case the missed call notice of mopera mail or Voice Mail is received in SMS, a confirmation screen does not appear.
- To cancel:

- ▶ *Yes*

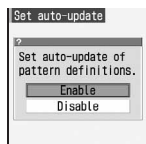
Updating pattern definition automatically

Auto-update Setting

Pattern definition can be set to be updated automatically.

1 8 3 7 2

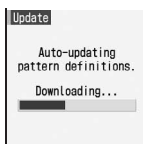
2 **Enable** ▶ **Yes** ▶ **Yes**



- To cancel: **Disable** ▶ **Yes**

3

When a new pattern definition is distributed



- When a new pattern definition is distributed, the screen on the left appears and updating pattern definition is performed automatically.
- In case of succeeding updating, is displayed on the standby display. Select an icon and select OK after confirming a message.
- In case of failing updating, appears on the standby display. Update a pattern definition manually after selecting an icon, confirming a message and selecting **OK**.
- To stop updating pattern definition: ▶ **Yes**

Updating pattern definition Immediately

Update Definition

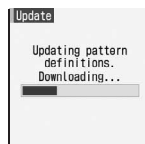
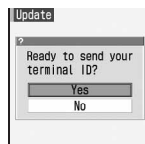
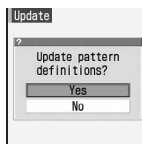
Update a pattern definition manually in case Auto-update Setting is set to **Disable** or Auto-update fails.

- Set the date of the FOMA terminal correctly.

1 8 3 7 1

2 **Yes** ▶ **Yes**

The pattern definition is updated.



3

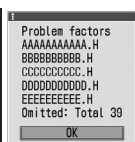
- If pattern definition update has been found to be unnecessary as a result of checking for the necessity of updating, the message meaning that the pattern definition is up-to-date is displayed. Please use the FOMA terminal as it is.

INFORMATION

- Updating pattern definition is stopped with a voice call arrived. When there is a videophone call or data is received using an external device or the infrared communication function, updating is not interrupted.
- If the date/time set for an alarm clock or a schedule alarm is reached, the screen for notifying the date and time is displayed during updating of pattern definition and the alarm clock or the alarm sounds, but updating is continued.

Displaying the scan result

When displaying a list of detected problem elements



1 Display a warning message ▶ Detail

The list of the name of problem elements detected by scan is displayed.

- When 6 or more problem elements have been detected, the names of the 6th and subsequent problem elements are omitted and the total count of the detected problem elements is displayed.

Display of the scan result

Warning level/ Message	Handling method
Warning Level 0 	OK : Continues processing of the started application. Detail : Lists names of the detected problem elements.
Warning Level 1 	Yes : Stops processing of the started application that may cause troubles. No : Continues processing of the started application. Detail : Lists names of the detected problem elements.
Warning Level 2 	OK : Stops processing of the started application that may cause troubles. Detail : Lists names of the detected problem elements.
Warning Level 3 	Yes : Deletes data that may cause troubles. No : Stops processing of the started application that may cause troubles. Detail : Lists names of the detected problem elements.
Warning Level 4 	OK : Deletes data that may cause troubles. Detail : Lists names of the detected problem elements.

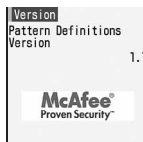
INFORMATION

- In case some problem is detected through scan in the i-appli set as the i-appli standby display and activating i-appli is stopped, the i-appli standby display is canceled.
- Detail** may not be displayed depending on the problem elements.

Checking the pattern definition version

Scan Version

1 [MENU] 8 3 7 4



Main specification

FOMA terminal

Item		FOMA D705jp
Size		122 mm (H) x 47 mm (W) x 10.3 mm (D)
Weight		Approx. 82 g (with battery pack)
Continuous standby time	FOMA/3G	While standing still: Approx. 420 hours While moving: Approx. 300 hours
	FOMA/3G	During a voice call: Approx. 150 minutes During a videophone call: Approx. 90 minutes
Charging time		AC adapter: Approx. 120 minutes DC adapter: Approx. 120 minutes
LCD (liquid crystal display)	System	TFT 262,144 colors
	Size	Approx. 2.2 inches
	Pixels	76,800 (240 x 320 dots)
Image device	Type	CMOS
	Size	1/4 inches
	Effective pixels	Approx. 1.3 M

Camera	Record pixels (Max.)	Approx. 1.2 M
	Zoom (digital)	Still image Approx. up to 10.0 times, Movie Approx. up to 6.0 times
Recording part	Still images to save	Approx. 463*1
	Still image continuous recording	2 to 9
	Still image file type	JPEG
	Movie recording time	For saving to phone: Approx. 35 minutes*2 For saving to microSD memory card (64MB): Approx. 106 minutes*2
	Movie file type	MP4
Playing music	Continuous playing time	WMA file: Approx. 480 minutes*3 AAC file format i-motion: Approx. 315 minutes Chaku-Uta Full®: Approx. 465 minutes*3
Storage space	Chaku-Uta®	Approx. 27.3 MB*4
	Chaku-Uta Full®	

*1 Image size: Sub-QCIF (128 x 96 dots)

Quality: Standard File size: 10 Kbytes

*2 Maximum movie recording time for one item that can be saved in the following conditions:

image size: Sub-QCIF (128 x 96 dots)

File size restrictions: None

Quality: Standard Type: Movie + voice

*3 Supports the background playing.

*4 About 10.0 Mbytes storage space is secured for Chaku-Uta® exclusively, about 7.3 Mbytes storage space is secured for Chaku-Uta Full® exclusively and about 10.0 Mbytes storage space is mutually secured for Chaku-Uta® and Chaku-Uta Full®.

- Continuous call time is an estimate of call time of the FOMA terminal when it can send or receive signals normally.

- Continuous standby time is an estimate of operation time of the FOMA terminal when it is able to receive signals normally. The call/standby time may be reduced to about half, depending on the amount of charge in the battery, the function settings, the ambient temperature and signal conditions (radio waves do not or hardly reach). Using i-mode communication reduces the call (communication)/standby time. Even if you do not make a call or use i-mode, the call (communication)/standby time will be reduced by composing i-mode Mail, or starting downloaded i-appli software or the i-appli standby display.

- Continuous standby time (while standing still) is the average operation time of the FOMA terminal when it is standing still and able to receive signals normally.

- Continuous standby time (while moving) is the average operation time of the FOMA terminal that is standing still, moving and outside the service area and able to receive signals normally.

- Alternatively, if you perform data communication or Multiaccess, use the camera, play movie/i-motion or play music, the call (communication)/standby time will be reduced.

- The battery pack can be charged regardless of whether the FOMA terminal is turned on or off. However, charging takes longer with the power turned on.

Battery Pack

Item	Battery Pack D08
Battery type	Lithium ion battery
Nominal voltage	3.7 V
Nominal capacity	600 mAh

Number of saved, registered and protected items in D705ip

SAR certification information and other information

Type		Max number of saved/registered items	Max number of protected items
Phonebook	FOMA terminal*1	1,000	—
	UIM	50	—
Scheduler	Schedule	300	—
	Days off	30	—
	Holidays	5	—
Mail	Received mail*1, *2	1,000	500
	Sent mail*1, *2	200	100
	Unsent mail*1, *2	200	100
	Template*1	100	—
SMS in the UIM*3		20	—
Message R*1		100	50
Message F*1		50	25
Bookmark	i-mode	100	—
	Full Browser	100	—
Screen memo*1		100	50
i-appli*4		100	—
Image*1		1,000	—
Movie/i-motion, sound recorded with Sound Recorder*1		100	—
Melody*1		500	—
Chara-den*1		50	—
PDF data*1		100	—
Kisekae tool*1		36	—
Machi-chara*1		16	—
ToruCa*1, *5		100	—

*1 Depending on the size of data, the actual number of items that can be saved and registered may be fewer.

*2 The total number of i-mode Mail and SMS.

*3 The total number of sent and received SMS. The number of delivered report is not included.

*4 Up to 5 items of Message i-appli (included in the 100 items, maximum number of i-appli that can be saved) can be saved. Depending on the i-appli size, the actual number of items that can be saved may be fewer.

*5 The number does not include used ToruCa.

INFORMATION

- Depending on the function, the displayed size of data in FOMA terminal may differ slightly.

SAR certification information

This model phone FOMA D705ip meets the MIC's*1 technical regulation for exposure to radio waves.

The technical regulation established permitted levels of radio frequency energy, based on standards that were developed by independent scientific organizations through periodic and through evaluation of scientific studies. The regulation employs a unit of measurement known as the Specific Absorption Rate, or SAR. The SAR limit is 2 watts/kilogram (W/kg)*2 averaged over ten grams of tissue. The limit includes a substantial safety margin designed to assure the safety of all persons, regardless of age and health. The value of the limit is equal to the international guidelines recommended by ICNIRP*3.

All phone models should be confirmed to comply with the regulation, before they are available for sale to the public. The highest SAR value for this model phone, FOMA D705ip is 1.39 W/kg. It was taken by the Telecom Engineering Center (TELEC) and the test for SAR was conducted in accordance with the MIC testing procedure using standard operating positions with the phone transmitting at its highest permitted power level in all tested frequency bands. While there may be differences between the SAR levels of various phones and at various positions, they all meet the MIC's technical regulation. Although the SAR is determined at the highest certified power level, the actual SAR of the phone during operation can be well below the maximum value.

For further information about SAR, please see the following websites:

World Health Organization (WHO):
<http://www.who.int/peh-emf/>
 ICNIRP: <http://www.icnirp.de/>
 MIC: <http://www.tele.soumu.go.jp/e/ele/body/index.htm>
 TELECOM: http://www.telecom.or.jp/ENG/Index_e.htm
 NTT DoCoMo: <http://www.nttdocomo.co.jp/english/product/>
 MITSUBISHI ELECTRIC:
<http://www.MitsubishiElectric.co.jp/mobile/>

- *1 Ministry of Internal Affairs and Communications
- *2 The technical regulation is provided in Article 14-2 of the Ministry Ordinance Regulating Radio Equipment.
- *3 International Commission on Non-Ionizing Radiation Protection

Declaration of Conformity

The product "FOMA D705ip" is declared to conform with the essential requirements of European Union Directive 1999/5/EC Radio and Telecommunications Terminal Equipment Directive 3.1(a), 3.1(b) and 3.2.

This mobile phone complies with the EU requirements for exposure to radio waves. Your mobile phone is a radio transceiver, designed and manufactured not to exceed the SAR* limits** for exposure to radio-frequency (RF) energy, which SAR* value, when tested for compliance against the standard was 1.39 W/kg. While there may be differences between the SAR* levels of various phones and at various positions, they all meet*** the EU requirements for RF exposure.

- * The exposure standard for mobile phones employs a unit of measurement known as the Specific Absorption Rate, or SAR.

** The SAR limit for mobile phones used by the public is 2.0 watts/kilogram (W/kg) averaged over ten grams of tissue, recommended by The Council of the European Union. The limit incorporates a substantial margin of safety to give additional protection for the public and to account for any variations in measurements.

*** Tests for SAR have been conducted using standard operating positions with the phone transmitting at its highest certified power level in all tested frequency bands. Although the SAR is determined at the highest certified power level, the actual SAR level of the phone while operating can be well below the maximum value. This is because the phone is designed to operate at multiple power levels so as to use only the power required to reach the network. In general, the closer you are to a base station antenna, the lower the power output.

Export Administration Regulations

This product and its accessories may be subject to the Japan Export Administration Regulations ("Foreign Exchange and Foreign Trade Law" and its related laws). In case of exporting this product and its accessories, take the required procedure under your responsibility and at your expenses. For detailed procedures, contact the Ministry of Economy, Trade and Industry.

MEMO

[illegible]

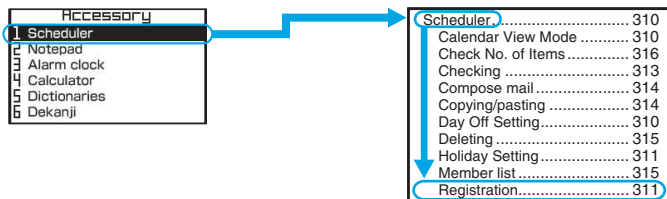
Index/Quick Manual

Index.....	420
Quick Manual.....	426

Using the index

Use the index if you want to search for a page from a function name displayed on the FOMA terminal screen or you have already known a function or service name.

Example When you want to register a schedule



A		Auto Answer.....329	Change images (Incoming Call).....95
Access Setting.....	246	Auto authentication.....287	Call Barring in Roaming....369
Add receivers	172	Auto Power ON/OFF.....307	Call Cost
Additional Service	354	Auto-display.....159	Call Cost Limit.....324
Adjust All.....	136	Automatic time/time difference adjustment.....39	Checking.....322
Adjust Volume	88	Auto-send.....178	Hide Call Cost Icon.....322
After-Sales Service.....	404	AV Phone To (☛Phone To)	Reset Call Cost.....323
Alarm Auto Power ON.....	309		Call Duration
Alarm Clock.....	308		Checking.....322
Alarm clock sound	87		Continuous call time.....35
Alarm sound.....	87		Call Forwarding Service....346
Album.....	278		Overseas.....370
Alert Preference.....	329		Call Image.....94
Alert/Image by Group.....	72		Priority of incoming images
All Lock.....	109		95
Anonymous Caller.....	117		Priority of outgoing images
Answer Machine.....	59		94
Greeting Message Setting			Call Option.....50
.....	60		Call Ring Alert.....85
Play/delete messages.....	61		Call Waiting Service.....345
Quick Record Message.....	59		Caller ID Notification.....40
Response Time Setting.....	60		Set for each call.....49
Any Key Answer.....	55		Caller ID Request Service
Arrival Call Act.....	348		347
Set arrival act.....	349		Overseas.....370
AT command.....	358		Caller ID Setting.....79
Attachment			Camera.....122
Attaching files.....	175		Adjust All.....136
Auto-play.....	200		Auto timer.....132
Changing/removing.....	177		Brightness.....134
Deleting.....	186		Color density.....134
Display and save from			Continuous shoot.....128
Message R/F.....	160		Dual Play Mode.....137
Display/Play/Save			File name/format.....124
Attachment.....	183		Flicker adjustment.....136
Incoming Msg. Attach.			Four-frame shooting.....128
.....	200		Frame.....134

Enter characters (☛Characters entry)	25	Image		Input prediction function.....	337
Enter key	25	Adjusting	253	Interior design clock	103
Error Message	397	Change brightness and tone	252	International call	50
External connection terminals	24	Change size	251	International roaming service	362
External Device	66	Clipping	251	Internet Connection	148
F		Copying	279	Int'l Call Assist	51
Face mark		Created animation	249	ISP Connection	
Entering	337	Cutting	253	Communication	157
List	383	Deleting	281	i-appli	210
FeliCa	230	Displaying	248	Auto Start	223
FirstPass	162	Editing	250	Auto Start Info Setting	223
Fixed phrase		Effects	252	Auto-starting failure history	224
Entering	337	Frames	252	Create/delete folders	225
List	382	Moving	278	Deleting	226
Save Phrase	339	Paste Text	252	Display Light	214
Flash movie displays	146	Reversing/rotating	252	Downloading	210
Flat-plug Earphone/		Save Image	152	i-appli To	224
Microphone with Switch		Send images via mail	249	microSD Data	227
(☛Earphone/Microphone with Switch)		Set to standby display	249	Moving	225
Focus Mode (☛UIM)	30	Settings	250	Preinstalled i-appli	214
FOMA card (☛UIM)		Shooting	126	Quitting	211
Font size	191	Size limitation	253	Security error history	213
Font Size Setting	102	Slide show	249	Settings	213
Forward Mail	182, 183	Sort	282	Software in Folder	226
Full Browser	240	Stamps	252	Software Info Display	211
Browser Setting	245	View/Edit Detail Info	279	Software Information	227
Functions of keys	25	Image Display	246	Software list screen	212
G		Image & Effect Setting	158	Sort Software	226
Group Search	74	i-melody	153	Starting	211
Group Setting	71	i-mode	144	Trace display	212
H		i-mode FeliCa	230	Upgrade	225
Headset Key Control	329	i-mode Mail (☛Mail)		Use Bar Code Reader	228
Home URL	245	i-mode password	106	Use infrared communication	228
Host Selection	157	Change i-mode Password	148	Use the camera	227
Certificate Host	164	i-mode Setting	157	Vibrate Effect	214
I		i-mode Shortcut	150	i-appli Standby Display	
IC card function	230	i-motion	164	Abnormal exit history	225
IC Card Lock	236	Setting	166	Operation	224
IC Card Lock Setting	237	i-motion (in Data Box)	254	Setting	92
IC Lock (power-off)	238	Deleting	281	K	
Timed Lock	238	Sort	282	Kana/Kanji Conversion	335
Voiceprint authentication	237	Use albums	278	Key guidance	94
iC Communication	288	Inbox	186	Key Lock	115
iC transfer service	231	In-car Handsfree	53	Timer	115
i-Channel	166	Incoming Msg. Attach.	200	Keylock switch	25
Channel List	167	Indicator Light	102	Keypad Dial Lock	112
i-Channel Ticker	167	Info/Calendar Layout	93	Kisekai tool	
Reset i-Channel	168	Infrared communication	283	Deleting	281
J		INBOX	286	Downloading	155
Join	166	Receive Ir Data	285	Moving	278
Join	166	Remote control function	287	Setting	99
Join	166	Send Ir Data	283	Sort	282
Join	166	Infrared Communication Mode	286	Use the folder	278
Join	166	Infrared data port	283	View/Edit Detail Info	279
Join	166	Initial Setting	38	KUTEN Code Input	341
Join	166	Input Method Setting	335		

L	
Light Alert Setting	101
Priority of lighting.....	102
Light setting (●Display Light Setting)	
Listen Volume.....	55
Low Battery Alert	37

M	
Machi-chara	
Deleting	281
Displaying	264
Downloading	155
Machi-chara Setting.....	101
Moving.....	278
Sort	282
Use folders.....	278
View/Edit Detail Info	279
Macro mode switch	132
Mail	170
Add receivers	172
Add/delete folders	189
Auto Receive.....	179
Auto-send	178
Change read/unread status	190
Check number of items	189
Compose from phonebook	73
Compose from schedule	314
Compose Message.....	171
Composing and sending	171
Copy message text.....	193
Deco-mail	172
Delete Mail.....	192
Delete Msg. Log	196
Display Priority	200
Display Type	191
Editing	179
Folder list screen	187
Font size	191
Forward Mail	182
List screen	187
Move Mail	190
Msgs. in Folder.....	189
Phone Call	193
Quick Mail	179
Quick Reply Setting	199
Received Msg. Log	195
Receiving	179
Register items in phonebook	194
Register URL in Bookmark	194
Save Mail.....	178

Search from phonebook	73
Search from schedule	315
Sent Msg. Log	195
Set ring alert	85
Sort	190
View screen	188
Mail Alert.....	84
Mail Group	
Enter addresses using group	171
Setting.....	199
Mail Image	95
Mail Reply Format	199
Mail setting.....	196
Mail templates	177
Mail To.....	155
Mail/Msg Ring Alert	85
Melody.....	264
Deleting.....	281
List	87
Moving	278
Playing	264
Saving	153
Send melodies via mail	265
Set as ring alert.....	265
Settings	265
Sort	282
Use albums	278
View/Edit Detail Info	279
Member list	315
Memory Status	282
Menu	29
Create design	98
List.....	372
Setting.....	96
Submenu	30
Message R/F.....	158
Delete Message	161
Display by Type	161
Display Priority	200
Displaying.....	160
Message R/F Alert	84
Protect Message	160
Receive Message R/F	158
Set ring alert	85
Sort	161
Microphone	24
Microphone Setting.....	330
microSD memory card	265
Backing up.....	271
Copy/move data from the FOMA terminal.....	269
Copy/move data to the FOMA terminal.....	270
Create/use the folder.....	273
Deleting.....	274
Displaying/playing	272

Folder structure and file names	276
Format	274
Inserting/removing	266
Locations to save.....	267
Memory Status	274
Restoring	271
Scan Card	275
Sync Data Info	274
Use from PC.....	275
microSD memory card slot	24
microSD mode	275
Missed call.....	47
Movable Contents	
Chaku-Uta Full®	299
i-motion.....	270
Movie Memo	321
Movie/i-motion	
Attach to mail	256
Capture	257
Copying	279
Custom Edit.....	258
Deleting	281
Edit by Size	258
Edit Ticker	258
Editing	257
Moving	278
Playing.....	254
Playlist	259
Recording	129
Set bookmark	255
Set to standby display	256
Settings.....	257
Sort.....	282
View/Edit Detail Info	279
MTP mode	275
Multi Number	349
Multiaccess.....	306
Combination	390
Multi-address transmission	172
Multitask	306
Combination	391
Music playback	294
Music Player	294
Delete All WMA files	302
Deleting	299
Folder structure	296
Intro Playing	299
Moving	299
Playing	297
Playlist	302
Save music files.....	294
Set as ring alert	300
Settings.....	303
Sort.....	300
Viewing the Music Player screens	296

Reconnect Alarm	53
Redial	46
Deleting	47
Referer Setting	246
Register USSD	354
Reject Unregistered Caller	
.....	118
Reject/Accept Call	116
Remote Control	349
Overseas	370
Remote control function	287
Reply to Mail	182
Reset	330
Response and Hold	56
Ring alert.....	85
Priority of ring alerts.....	87
Ring Alert Volume	56
Roaming Guidance	369
Overseas	370

S

SAR.....	416
Save Word	341
Schedule reminder.....	87
Scheduler.....	310
Calendar View Mode	310
Check No. of Items	316
Checking.....	313
Compose mail	314
Copying/pasting	314
Day Off Setting.....	310
Deleting	315
Holiday Setting.....	311
Member list	315
Registration	311
Reminder Option	313
Search mail.....	315
Secret Attribute	316
When the set time comes	
.....	313
Screen Memo	151
Displaying	151
Saving	151
Screen View Setting.....	246
Script Setting.....	246
Secrecy Search	80
Secret Attribute	
Phonebook.....	80
Schedule	316
Secret Code Setting	79
Secret Mode	115
Security code	106
Security Scan (☛Virus Scan Function)	
Select Language.....	38
Self Mode.....	110
Send DTMF.....	44
Sent mail (☛Mail)	
Service Dialing Number....	348

Short Message (☛SMS)	
Show All Names	74
Shutter key.....	25
Shutter sound.....	88
Signal Level Icon	98
Signature	198
Silent Mode	89
Simple menu	96
List.....	381
Site	
Connect to SSL page	145
Display URL of site.....	147
Displaying.....	144
Last Visited URL	145
Operating	146
Reload.....	147
Slot Input Method	342
SMS	170
Check SMS	206
Compose from phonebook	
.....	73
Compose SMS.....	204
Delete from UIM.....	208
Delete Mail	192
Delivered report	170
Display Priority.....	200
Insert signature	205
List screen	187
Quick Mail	179
Receive SMS.....	205
Save SMS to UIM	207
Setting.....	206
Sort Method.....	196
View screen.....	188
Software Update.....	406
Immediate Update	409
Reserved Update	410
Update Notification.....	407
Sort Method	196
Priority.....	197
Sound Recorder	130
Sound Setting	85
Speaker	24
Speakerphone function	44
Setting (Videophone).....	64
Speed Menu.....	319
SSL communication	
Connecting	145
Standby display	37
Standby Display Setting	90
Clock Display Format	103
Standby time	35
Standby Voice Memo.....	321
Status Message	57
Still image (☛Image)	
Style Theme	99
Sub Address	52
Submenu	30

Symbol	
Entering	338
List.....	386

T

Talking Voice Memo.....	321
TASK key	25
Template	177
Deleting	178
Downloading	154
Load Template	177
Save template	177
Terminal security code	106
Change Security Code	
.....	107
Timed pause	45
Timer.....	307
ToruCa	231
Auto-read	236
Check information.....	234
Create/delete folders.....	234
Deleting	235
Displaying	233
Downloading	154
Moving/copying	234
Obtaining	232
Searching.....	234
Setting	235
Sort.....	234
Sort Rule.....	235
ToruCa Alert.....	84
Transmitting tone signals....	44
Troubleshooting	393
Two Time Zone Clocks	369
Two-key Shortcut	223

U

UIM (FOMA card)	
Functional differences	33
Inserting/removing	31
Operation restriction function	
.....	32
Register phonebook data	
.....	71
Security codes.....	32
Unblock PIN lock.....	108
Unsent mail (☛Mail)	
<i>Unsent messages</i> folder	187
URL	
Copying	156
Displaying	147
Entering	148
History	148
Last Visited URL.....	145
Register in phonebook	
.....	157
USB Mode Setting.....	275
Uta-hodai.....	8

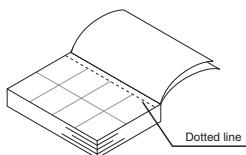
V	Screen settings	63	Voiceprint authentication	237
Vibrator Setting	Send camera-off image	63		
i-appli	Send still image	63	W	
Priority of vibrator	Settings	64	Warranty	404
Videophone	Substitute image setting	65	WEB Mail	181
Brightness/color density	Switch outgoing images	62	Web To	155
.....	Switch to voice call	46	WMA file	
Call Option	Transmit tone signals	44	Playing	297
Camera Setting	Zoom	63	Saving	295
Change images	Videophone Alert	84	WORLD CALL	50
(Videophone Image Setting)	Change images		WORLD WING	33
.....	(Videophone Receiving)	95	Overview (International roaming)	362
Chara-den	Videophone Dialing (Call Image)	94		
Flicker adjustment	Virus Scan Function	412	Others	
Frame	Auto-update Setting	413	186/184	49
Make calls	Scan Version	414	2in1	350
Make calls from overseas	Scanning Setting	412	5-touch Input Method	335
.....	Update Definition	413	64K data communication	356
Quality of outgoing/incoming images	Voice call (☎Phone)			
Receive calls	Voice Mail Service	344		
Receive calls overseas	Overseas	370		
.....	Voice Memo	321		
Scene Mode/Effect				

Quick Manual

How to use Quick Manual

Use Quick Manual included in this manual as follows.

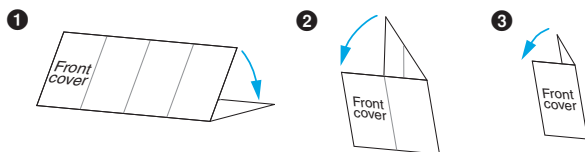
Please refer to Quick Manual (For Overseas Use) in case of using International Roaming (WORLD WING) overseas.



Cut along the dotted line.

● Be careful not to hurt yourself when cutting.

Fold the sheet along the line so that the front cover is on top.



0120-005-250 (toll free)

* Can be called from mobile phones and PHSs
(In Japanese only)

☎ No prefix 151 (toll free)

Repairs.

(In Japanese only)

☎ No prefix 113 (toll free)

0120-800-000 (toll free)

* Can be called from mobile phones and PHS.

Registering entries in the phonebook

■ Registering

1 MENU 4 2 or 3

2 Enter a name  Set each item 

- registering 11 on the local data of received call history

1 or **▶ Highlight the entry to register**

2 Set each item  

- Updating the registered entry: Highlight the entry to update   Set each item   *Overwrite or New entry*

■ Changing input modes

- ✓ several times during character inputs

Deleting characters

- **When the cursor is in the text**

⌘Y: Deleting characters at the cursor position
(for over a second): **⌘Y**

- When the cursor is in the end of the text

⌘: Deleting character at the left of cursor position
⌘ (for over a second):

Editing the phonebook entries

1. Switched the spreadsheet: ☐ B ☐ 3

- Switching the phonebook: **[E]**
- 2 Highlight the entry to edit **[MENU]** **[3]** **[1]**
 - For the UIM phonebook: Highlight the entry

3 Edit *Overwrite or New entry*

Searching the phonebook entries

menu 4 1

2. For the LMA spreadsheet: $\boxed{1} - \boxed{7}$ $\boxed{1}$ $\boxed{4}$

■ Entering pictograms, symbols and face marks

1 while entering **Pict/Symbol/Smiley**

2 Highlight a pictogram or symbol

Character entry

Entering and converting characters (5-touch Input Method)

＜Example＞ Entering “企業”

1 Enter characters in hiragana/kanji mode
 変: 2 twice  (it is not necessary
 when the cursor was moved by

automatic cursor function.)

- Available operation before converting the entered characters

- : Converts to katakana, alphabetical characters etc.
- : Changes upper/lower case
- : Return to a previous character

Camera

Shooting still image/movie

● **Shooting still image**

1  (for over a second) ▶ Point the camera at the object and  or  ▶  or 

■ Displaying still image/playing movie

- **Displaying a still image**
 - 1                                  

● **Playing movie**

1 **Camera** **Highlight movie**

- **Operations during movie playback**
- : Adjust the volume**
- : Rewind and play/play fast forward**
- : Pause/play**
- : Stop**

Playing music

- 1   1  Highlight a folder/Playlist 

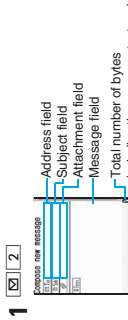
CC

- 1** A mail is received

The mail ring alert sounds, the keys light/flashes and the reception result screen is displayed
- 2** Highlight a folder Highlight a mail

1 ☒ (for over a second)

i-mode Mail



- 2 The address field ▶ Highlight an input method ▶  ▶ Enter or select
- 3 The subject field ▶ Enter the subject
- 4  ▶ Enter the message
• Composing Deco-mail: ☒ ▶ Select a decoration method and set ▶ Enter characters

2 1 Home	2 8 2 Connection timeout
2 1 Menu	2 8 3 Display light
2 2 Bookmark	2 8 4 Certificate
2 3 Go to location	2 8 5 Image & Effect
2 3 1 Enter URL	2 8 6 i-motion
2 3 2 URL history	2 8 7 Host selection
2 3 3 Last visited URL	2 8 7 Full Browser
2 4 Screen memo	2 9 1 Home
2 5 i-mode message	2 9 2 Bookmark
2 6 Message R&F	2 9 3 Go to location
2 6 1 MessageR	2 9 4 Browser settings
2 6 2 MessageF	3 1 i-urppl
2 6 3 Message settings	3 1 Software list
2 7 i-channel	3 2 i-appli settings
2 7 1 i-channel list	3 2 1 Sort software
2 7 2 i-channel ticker	3 2 2 Auto start
2 7 3 Reset i-channel	3 2 3 Software info disp.
2 8 i-mode shortcuts	

13

Press **MENU** and input the number of each item.
 <Example> Displaying a sent mail

11/17/13	Sent SMS	11/17/13	Sent SMS
11/17/14	SMS settings	11/17/14	SMS settings
11/18	Template	11/18	Template
11/19	Mail settings	11/19	Mail settings
11/21	Mail alert	11/21	Mail alert
11/22	Chat mail alert	11/22	Chat mail alert
11/19/13	Sort method	11/19/13	Sort method
11/19/14	Signature	11/19/14	Signature
11/19/15	Reply setting	11/19/15	Reply setting
11/19/16	Mail group	11/19/16	Mail group
11/19/17	Display settings	11/19/17	Display settings

13

11

- Saving mail: 3
- Auto-send: 2

Attaching files

- The attachment field on the mail composition screen ▶ Highlight an attachment type  ▶ Shooting and attaching a still image: *Image* ▶ Activate *camera*

 - Recording and attaching movie: *imotion* ▶ Activate *camera*
 - Recording and attaching sound: *Record voice*
- Highlight a saved location  ▶ Highlight a file  ▶ Removing attachment: Highlight the file name ▶  ▶ Yes

11

3.12.2.5	Vibrate effect
3.12.6	1-rppli shortcuts
3.13	Display history
3.4	Phonebook & Logs
4.1	Phonebook
4.2	Phonebook new entry
4.3	Phonebook(UIM) new entry
4.4	Received calls
4.5	Redial
4.6	Ans. Machine & Voice memo
4.11	Answer machine
4.12	Recorded messages
4.13	Record voice memo
4.14	Voice memos
4.17	Mail logs

15

Cut here

6.2.1.4	Save received data	6.8.1.1	Access Data Center
6.2.1.5	Data exchange settings	6.8.1.2	Synchronization log
6.2.1.6	USB mode settings	6.8.1.3	Sync setting
6.3.1	Touca	7.1	Accessory
6.4.1	IC card	7.1.1	Scheduler
6.4.1.1	IC card content	7.1.2	Notepad
6.4.1.2	Lock/Unlock	7.1.3	Alarm clock
6.4.1.3	Timed lock	7.1.4	Calculator
6.4.1.4	IC back(power-off) setting	7.1.5	Dictionaries
6.4.1.5	IC card lock	7.1.6	DejaVu
6.5	microSD	8	Settings & NW services
6.6	Camera	8.1	Alerts & Sounds
6.6.1.1	Still camera	8.1.1.1	Set sound
6.6.1.2	Movie camera	8.1.1.2	Adjust volume
6.7	Sound recorder	8.1.1.3	Vibrate alert ¹ effect
6.8	Data Center	8.1.1.4	Silent mode

16

8.1.1.5	Set mute ring time	8.3.1.6	Change security code
8.2	Display	8.3.1.7	Scanning function
8.2.1.1	Stand-by display	8.4	Call & Answer
8.2.1.2	Menu preference	8.4.1.1	Sound & Image
8.2.1.3	Color & Action image	8.4.1.2	Anonymous caller
8.2.1.4	Display light	8.4.1.3	Any key answer
8.2.1.5	Light alert	8.4.1.4	Headset
8.2.1.6	Indicator light	8.4.1.5	Reject/Accept call
8.2.1.7	Font & Language	8.4.1.6	Make/Receive call
8.2.1.8	Style theme	8.4.1.7	Noise reduction
8.2.1.9	Match-chara setting	8.4.1.8	Self mode
8.3	Security & Locks	8.5	Videophone & Toruca
8.3.1.1	Locks	8.5.1.2	Videophone
8.3.1.2	Privacy mode setting	8.5.1.3	Toruca
8.3.1.3	Receive display effect	8.6	Other
8.3.1.5	Secret mode		

17

8.6.1.1	Clock	9	Music player
8.6.1.2	Other	9.1	Own number
8.6.1.3	Font size		
8.6.1.4	Software update		
8.6.1.5	Quick start-up		
8.6.1.6	Info & Reset		
8.7	NW Services		
8.7.1.1	Voice Mail		
8.7.1.2	Call waiting ¹ forward		
8.7.1.3	Chalk-moji forward		
8.7.1.4	Caller ID		
8.7.1.5	Roaming		
8.7.1.6	2nt1 setting		
8.7.1.7	Other		
8.7.1.8	Roaming/Call assist		
8.8	Int'l roaming		
8.8.1.2	Int'l call assist		

18

Network services

Voice Mail Service

Separate application (pay) is required.

1 [Red] 8 [7] 1

2 Perform the following operations:

Attitude	[1] [3] ▶ Yes ▶ Yes ▶ Enter the ringing time (0 to 120 sec)
Debiture	[1] [3] ▶ Yes
Play messages	When a new voice message arrives, [Red] is displayed on the standby display. [1] [5] ▶ Yes ▶ Follow the voice guidance

20

Function	Operation procedure (from the standby display)
Activating/canceling Privacy Mode ²	To activate: [Red] (for over a second) ▶ Enter the terminal security code
Redial	To set: [Red] (for over a second) ▶ Yes (for over a second) ▶ Enter the terminal security code ³
Setting/canceling IC Card Lock	To cancel: [Red] (for over a second) ▶ Enter the terminal security code ³
Phonebook	[Red] (for over a second)
Scheduler	[Red] (for over a second)
Mail menu	[Red] (for over a second)
Checking for i-mode Mail	[Red] (for over 2 seconds)
Power ON/OFF	[Red] (for over 2 seconds)

21

Function	Operation procedure (from the standby display)
Setting/canceling Silent Mode	[#] (for over a second)
Speed Menu	[*] (for over a second) ¹ or [*] (for over a second)
Channel list	[2/2] (for over a second) ▶
Setting/canceling Self Mode	[*] (for over a second)
Setting/canceling Public mode (Driving mode)	[*] (for over a second)
Activate i-a-ppl set for One-key Shortcut	[*] (for over a second)
Data Box menu	[*] (for over a second)
i-mode menu	[*] (for over a second)
i-a-ppl folder list	[*] (for over a second)
Received Calls	[*] (for over a second)

19

Call Waiting Service

Separate application (pay) is required.

● Activating/deactivating the service

1 [Red] 8 [7] [2] [1] ▶ [1] or [2] ▶ Yes

● Answering another call

[Red] during a call

● Switching the other parties: [Red]

● Making another call

Enter phone number during a call ▶ [Red]

● Switching the other parties: [Red]

● Ending a call

[Red] to end another call

● Call resumption with on-hold person: [Red]

23

Cut here

Call Forwarding Service

Separate application (free) is required.

1 **Menu** 8 7 2 2

2 Perform the following operations:

Activate	
1	Menu 8 7 2 2 Yes ▶ Enter the forwarding destination phone number (up to 26 digits) ▶ 2 Yes ▶ Enter the ringing time (0 to 120 sec)
Before selecting the entry field for a phone number, you can set the phone number from the phonebook by [Menu] , from the redial data by [F5] , or from the received call history by [F6] .	
Deactivate	
2	2 Yes

24

5 **Speakerphone function ON**

6 **Connecting to handsfree compatible device**

7 **Secret Mode is set**

8 **Status of unread mail**

9 **Unread Message R status**

10 **Unread Message F status**

11 **Mail storage status in i-mode Center**

12 **During SSL page display**

13 **Auto-send failure mail exists**

14 **Auto-send mail exists**

15 **i-appli/i-appli DX running**

16 **i-appli standby display on**

17 **i-appli DX standby display on**

18 **i-appli Auto Start failed**

28

Caller ID Request Service

Separate application is not required (free).

● **Activating/deactivating the service**

1 **Menu** 8 7 4 2 ▶ **1** or **2** ▶ **Yes**

25

Bottom of the display



1 **Missed calls**

2 **Recorded messages**

3 **Voice mail messages**

4 **Unread mail**

5 **Unread ToruCa**

6 **General silent mode is set**

7 **Personalized silent mode is set**

8 **Call alert volume is set to SILENT**

9 **Vibrator for incoming voice call is set**

10 **Call alert volume is set to SILENT**

11 **Vibrator for incoming voice call is set**

12 **Public mode (Driving mode) is set**

29

Services available from the FOMA terminal

Services	Phone No.
Directory assistance (service/call charges apply) * Unlisted phone numbers cannot be given.	104
Telegrams (charged)	115
Time (charged)	117
Weather (charged)	Area code +177
Police (emergency calls)	110
Fire and ambulance (emergency calls)	119
Emergency calls at sea	118
Disaster Voice Mail Service (charged)	171
Collect calls (service/call charges apply)	106

26

9 **Answer Machine is set**

10 **Recorded messages full**

11 **Keypad Dial Lock is set**

12 **Personal Data Lock is set**

13 **Reading the UIM**

14 **IC Card Lock is set**

15 **Effective Easy Selector Plus keys in Focus Mode**

16 **Alarm Clock is set**

17 **Schedule alarm is set**

18 **Alarm Clock and schedule alarm are set at the same time**

19 **Status of USB Mode Setting and microSD memory card**

20 **Connected to external device via the FOMA USB Cable with Charge Function 01 (optional)**

21 **Software Update reserved**

22 **Update notification icon**

23 **Success or failure of auto-update of the latest pattern definition**

30

Reading display

Top of the display



1 **Battery level icon**

2 **Signal level icon**

3 **Self Mode is set**

4 **During data transfer**

5 **In i-mode communication (during i-mode connection)**

6 **In i-mode communication (during packet communication)**

7 **During infrared communication**

8 **Key Lock is set (in gray when Key Lock is temporarily released)**

9 **Total call cost exceeds the limit**

27

Emergency contact in case your phone is lost

Omakase Lock (Remote Lock)

* Omakase Lock is a pay service. Application is free if made at the same time as application for service suspension or during service suspension.

Setting/canceling Omakase Lock

0120-524-360

Accepted for 24 hours

Other contact information

Phone number:

Phone number:

Phone number:

* Please confirm the phone number before you dial.

31

Cut here

Loss or theft of FOMA terminal or payment of cost overseas
<DoCoMo Information Center> (Available 24 hours a day)

International access number for the country where you are staying (Table 1)

-81-3-5366-3114* (toll free)
* If you make a call by a general subscriber phone, you are charged according to the call rate for Japan.
* If you use the D705i, you should dial the number +81-3-5366-3114 to dial +, hold down the "V" key for over a second).

From general subscriber phones <Universal numbers>

International phone ID for universal number (Table 2)

-800-0120-0151*
* You may be charged according to the call rate for the country where you are staying.
* See P.12 for international access numbers assigned to major countries (Table 1) and P.14 for international phone IDs for universal numbers (Table 2).

Network Search Mode

1

- Select the search method
 - Automatic switching:
 - Manual switching: Highlight the connection destination
 - Search for a network again:
- Highlight the connection destination if Manual is set

PLMN Setting

1

- Highlight a service provider
- Highlight an insert position

Operator Name Display

1

4

Failures encountered overseas
<Network Technical Operation Center>
(Available 24 hours a day)

From DoCoMo mobile phones

International access number for the country where you are staying (Table 1)

-81-3-6718-1414* (toll free)
* If you make a call by a general subscriber phone, you are charged according to the call rate for Japan.
* If you use the D705i, you should dial the number +81-3-6718-1414 to dial +, hold down the "V" key for over a second).

From general subscriber phones <Universal numbers>

International phone ID for universal number (Table 2)

-800-5531-8600*
* You may be charged according to the call rate for the country where you are staying.
* See P.12 for international access numbers assigned to major countries (Table 1) and P.14 for international phone IDs for universal numbers (Table 2).

1

Settings required after returning home

If you turn on your FOMA terminal when returning to Japan, available networks are automatically searched to see the FOMA network. Set *Auto* for Network Search Mode again if you cannot connect to the FOMA network. P.4

Making calls

When the other party uses WORLD WING, make a call as an international call to Japan.

Making calls to Japan or another country from overseas

Using "+" to make a call

- (for over a second) Enter a country code Area code (city code) Phone number
 * Entering "+", (for over a second)
 * Use 81 as the country code when making a call to Japan from overseas.

5

Preparations for overseas use

Settings for overseas use

i-mode setting (In Japan)

1

- English Menu Options International Settings i-mode services Settings Yes under *Activate?*

3 Enter the i-mode password Select

i-mode setting (Overseas)

1

- International Settings i-mode service Settings Yes under *Activate?*

3 Enter the i-mode password Select

Setting Remote Control (In Japan)

1

2

- If the area code (city code) begins with a zero (0), omit the zero when dialing it (although you must not omit the zero for general subscriber phones in Italy).

2 (for a voice call) or (for a videophone call)

Using Call Option to make a call

1 Enter an area code (city code) Phone number

2 Making a videophone call *Call type* field

2 *Int'l call* field

3 *Country code* field Highlight the country code

4 Yes

Using the phonebook to make a call

- Search the phonebook Highlight a party (for a voice call) or (for a videophone call) Yes

6

Setting Remote Control (Overseas)

1

Services available overseas

This FOMA terminal supports only 3G roaming area. However, the services may not be available depending on the service providers or the areas.

Service	Availability
Voice call	☐
i-mode service call	☐
i-mode Mail	☐
SMS	☐
i-mode (including Full Browser)	☐
i-channel	☐
Data communication (The packet communication and 64k data communication with PC connected)	☒

3

Making calls to the same country from overseas

If the other party in the country where you are staying also uses WORLD WING, make a call as an international call to Japan.

1 Enter an area code (city code) Phone number

2 (for a voice call) or (for a videophone call) No, use original

Receiving calls

Receiving voice calls

1 A voice call arrives

Receiving videophone calls

1 A videophone call arrives or

7

Cut here

■ Having the other party make a call

- Having the other party make a call from Japan to the country where you are staying
Dial 090XXXXXXX or 080XXXXXXX
- Having the other party make a call from a country other than Japan to the country where you are staying
Enter the international access code for the originating country ➤ 81 ➤ Dial 90XXXXXXX or 80XXXXXXX

- 1 Enter the international access code for the originating country ➤ 81 ➤ Dial 90XXXXXXX or 80XXXXXXX

■ Setting the operation during roaming

- Setting Roaming Guidance (Overseas)
You need to make the setting in Japan

- 1 [8] [7] [5]
- 2 Perform the following operations

Activate	[1] [1] ➤ Yes

8

Service area	Country code	Service area	Country code
Greece	30	France	33
Singapore	65	Brazil	55
Switzerland	41	Vietnam	84
Sweden	46	Peru	51
Spain	34	Belgium	32
Thailand	66	Hong Kong	852
Taiwan	886	Macau	853
Tahiti (French Polynesia)	689	Malaysia	60
		Maldives	960
Czech	420	Russia	7

- For other country codes and related information, visit the DoCoMo International Services website.

International access numbers for major countries (Table 1)

(As of August, 2007)

Service area	Number	Service area	Number
Ireland	00	Germany	00
United States of America	011	Turkey	00

12

Deactivate	[2] [2] ➤ Yes
Check setting	[3] [3] ➤ Yes

■ Setting the handling of incoming calls

- The setting may not be available depending on the overseas service provider.

- 1 [8] [8] [1] [9]
- 2 Perform the following operations

Run incoming call	[1] [1] [1] [1] or [2]
All warnings: All the incoming calls are rejected. Data calls barring: Incoming videophone calls are rejected. ● 64K data communication cannot be used.	
Accept incoming call	[2] [2] ➤ Yes

9

Service area	Number	Service area	Number
United Arab Emirates	00	New Zealand	00
United Kingdom	00	Norway	00
Italy	00	Hungary	00
India	00	Philippines	00
Indonesia	001	Finland	00
Australia	0011		
Netherlands	00	France	00
Canada	011	Brazil	0041/0014
Korea	001	Vietnam	00
Greece	00		
Singapore	001	Belgium	00
Switzerland	00	Poland	00
Sweden	00	Portugal	00
Spain	00	Hong Kong	001
Thailand	001	Macau	00
Taiwan	002	Malaysia	00
Czech	00	Monaco	00
China	00	Luxembourg	00
Denmark	00	Russia	810

13

Check setting	[3] [3] ➤ Yes

Network Services

For using network services from overseas, you need to set Remote Control to Activate in advance.

- 1 [8] [8] [8] [1]
 - 2 Perform the following operations
- | | |
|--------------------------|--|
| Voice mail (Int.) | [4] [4] [5] [5] ➤ Yes |
| Call forwarding (Int.) | [1] [1] [2] [2] [3] [3] : Play
[4] [4] [5] [5] : Set ringing time |
| Call forwarding (Int.) | [5] [5] [3] [3] ➤ Yes |
| Caller ID request (Int.) | [1] [1] [2] [2] [3] [3] : Set |
| Roaming guidance (Int.) | [7] [7] ➤ Yes |
| | [8] [8] ➤ Yes |

10

International phone IDs for universal numbers (Table 2)

(As of August, 2007)

Service area	Number	Service area	Number
Ireland	00	China	00
United States of America	011	Denmark	00
Argentina	00	Germany	00
United Kingdom	00	New Zealand	00
Israel	014	Norway	00
Italy	00	Hungary	00
Australia	0011	Philippines	00
Austria	00	Finland	990
Netherlands	00	France	00
Canada	011	Brazil	0021
Korea	001	Peru	00
Colombia	009	Belgium	00
Singapore	001	Portugal	00
Switzerland	00	Hong Kong	001
Sweden	00	Malaysia	00

14

3 Follow the guidance

Country codes of major countries

(As of December, 2007)

Service area	Country code	Service area	Country code
United States of America	1	China	86
United Kingdom	44	Germany	49
Italy	39	Turkey	90
India	91	Japan	81
Indonesia	62	New Caledonia	687
Egypt	20	New Zealand	64
Australia	61	Norway	47
Austria	43	Hungary	36
Netherlands	31	Fiji	679
Canada	1	Philippines	63
Korea	82	Finland	358

11

Service area	Number	Service area	Number
Spain	00	Republic of South Africa	09
Thailand	001	Luxembourg	00
Taiwan	00		

Making inquiries

If your FOMA terminal is lost or stolen overseas or if you have to adjust the payment or cope with a failure encountered overseas, contact to "Loss or theft of FOMA terminal or payment of cost overseas" on the front page of Quick Manual (For Overseas Use) or "Failures encountered overseas" on P1.

- At the beginning of the phone number, you need to enter the number in "International access numbers for major countries (Table 1)" or "International phone IDs for universal numbers (Table 2)" assigned to the country where you are staying.

15

Cut here

Access DoCoMo e-site for procedures to change your address or billing plan and for request of information materials.

From i-mode

iMenu ▶ 料金 & お申込・設定 (Charges & Applications/Setting) ▶ 各種手続き (ドコモeサイト) (Application procedure (DoCoMo e-site)) [Packet communication charges free]

From PC

My DoCoMo (<http://www.mydocomo.com/>) ▶ 各種手続き (ドコモeサイト) (Application procedure (DoCoMo e-site))

- You will need your "network ID" to access e-site from i-mode.
- No packet communication charges are incurred when accessing e-site from i-mode. Accessing from overseas will incur charges.
- You will need your "DoCoMo ID/password" to access e-site from PC.
- If you do not have or you have forgotten your "network ID" or "DoCoMo ID/password", contact the DoCoMo Information Center listed on the back of this manual.
- DoCoMo e-site may not be available depending upon the content of your subscription.
- You may not be able to access some e-site services due to system maintenance, etc.

Mobile phone etiquette

When using your FOMA terminal, always be considerate of your environment and those around you.

Turn the power off in the following situations

In prohibited areas

Use of mobile phones in the following places is prohibited. You must turn off your FOMA terminal.

- Airplanes
- Hospitals

You must also turn the power off when in lobbies or waiting rooms of hospitals as there could be people in such areas who could be adversely affected by mobile phone signals.

While driving

Driving while holding a mobile phone in your hand is subject to penalties.

If you need to answer a call, tell the caller that you will call back using a handsfree device. Stop the vehicle in a safe place before using the phone to make a call.

On crowded trains or in other areas where there could be a person with an implanted cardiac pacemaker or defibrillator

Operating a mobile phone could interfere with implanted cardiac pacemakers or defibrillators.

When visiting live events, movie theaters, museums or other public places

The ringing of your phone and your telephone conversations could disturb others around you in quiet public places.

Be considerate of your location and those around you with respect to the volume of your speaking voice and your FOMA terminal's ring alert

When using a mobile phone in a restaurant, hotel lobby or other quiet places, always remember to lower your voice.

When using a mobile phone on the street, find a place that does not interfere with passing traffic.

Be considerate of privacy



Please be considerate of the privacy of individuals around you when taking and sending photos using camera-equipped mobile phones.

Functions convenient for public etiquette

You may select a mode to reject incoming calls, turn off all sounds generated by your FOMA terminal, etc. from many modes to keep from disturbing those around you.

● **Silent Mode/Customize Silent Mode**

Keypad sound, ring alerts and all other sounds generated by the FOMA terminal are turned off (Silent Mode). ◀P89

The user is allowed to change Silent Mode operations (Customize Silent Mode). ◀P90

Even in Silent Mode, the shutter sound is heard while shooting.

● **Public mode (Driving mode/power off)**

When a call is received, an announcement informs the caller that you are driving or in an area where use of the mobile phone should be refrained from or that you are in an area where the phone should be turned off, and the call is then disconnected. ◀P57, P58

● **Vibrator**

When a call is received, the FOMA terminal vibrates instead of ringing. ◀P88

● **Answer Machine**

When you cannot answer a call, the caller can leave a brief message. ◀P59

You may also use optional services such as Voice Mail Service or Call Forwarding Service. ◀P344, P346

This printed matter is recyclable. Please recycle this manual when you no longer need it for reference purposes.

General Inquiries <DoCoMo Information Center>

(In English)

 **0120-005-250** (toll free)

* Can be called from mobile phones and PHSS.

(In Japanese only)

 **(No prefix) 151** (toll free)

* Can only be called from DoCoMo mobile phones and PHSS.

Repairs

(In Japanese only)

 **(No prefix) 113** (toll free)

* Can only be called from DoCoMo mobile phones and PHSS.

(In Japanese only)

 **0120-800-000** (toll free)

* Can be called from mobile phones and PHSS.

* Please confirm the phone number before you dial.

* For further information, refer to the "Nationwide Service Station List" included with your FOMA terminal and other devices.

Loss or theft of FOMA terminal or payment of cost overseas <DoCoMo Information Center> (Available 24 hours a day)

From DoCoMo mobile phones

International access number for the country where you are staying (Table 1) **-81-3-5366-3114*** (toll free)

* If you make a call by a general subscriber phone, you are charged according to the call rate for Japan.

* If you use the D705ij, you should dial the number +81-3-5366-3114 (to dial "+", hold down the "0" key for over a second).

From general subscriber phones

<Universal numbers>

International phone ID for universal number (Table 2) **-800-0120-0151***

* You may be charged according to the call rate for the country where you are staying.

* See P364 for international access numbers assigned to major countries (Table 1) and P365 for international phone IDs for universal numbers (Table 2).

• If your FOMA terminal is lost or stolen, suspend the service immediately.

• If your FOMA terminal fails during stay overseas, bring the terminal to a repair office designated by DoCoMo after returning to Japan.

Failures encountered overseas

<Network Technical Operation Center> (Available 24 hours a day)

From DoCoMo mobile phones

International access number for the country where you are staying (Table 1) **-81-3-6718-1414*** (toll free)

* If you make a call by a general subscriber phone, you are charged according to the call rate for Japan.

* If you use the D705ij, you should dial the number +81-3-6718-1414 (to dial "+", hold down the "0" key for over a second).

From general subscriber phones

<Universal numbers>

International phone ID for universal number (Table 2) **-800-5931-8600***

* You may be charged according to the call rate for the country where you are staying.

* See P364 for international access numbers assigned to major countries (Table 1) and P365 for international phone IDs for universal numbers (Table 2).



Do not forget your cellular phone
... or your manners!

When using your portable phone in a public place, do not forget to show common courtesy and consideration for others around you.

Sales: NTT DoCoMo Group

NTT DoCoMo Hokkaido, Inc.

NTT DoCoMo Tokai, Inc.

NTT DoCoMo Chugoku, Inc.

NTT DoCoMo Tohoku, Inc.

NTT DoCoMo Hokuriku, Inc.

NTT DoCoMo Shikoku, Inc.

NTT DoCoMo, Inc.

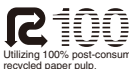
NTT DoCoMo Kansai, Inc.

NTT DoCoMo Kyushu, Inc.

Manufacturer: MITSUBISHI ELECTRIC CORPORATION



To prevent damage to the environment, bring used battery packs to an NTT DoCoMo service counter, an NTT DoCoMo agent or a recycle center.



This manual is printed using an ink based on soy bean oil.



* 8 6 0 0 2 6 6 A *

'08.1 (Edition 1.2)

FOMA[®] D705iμ

Manual for PC connection setting

Data communication	1
Before usage	1
Flow of setup for data communication	3
Connecting the FOMA terminal to a PC	4
Installation of the FOMA communication configuration file	5
Communicating using the FOMA PC configuration software on Windows XP/ Windows 2000	7
Communicating using the FOMA PC configuration software on Windows Vista	17
Communicating without using the FOMA PC configuration software	24
AT command	33

■ About Manual for PC connection setting

In this manual, the important items which are needed for data communication by FOMA D705iμ and the method of installing “FOMA communication configuration file” and “FOMA PC configuration software” are explained.

A part of the operations or screens may differ depending on the environment.

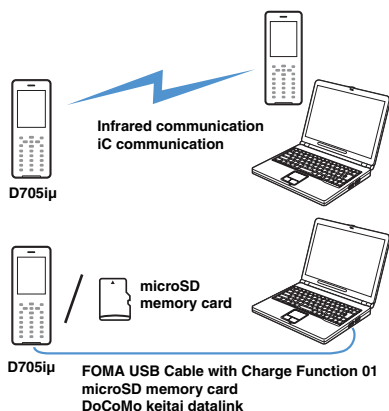
Data communication

Available data communication by connecting a PC to the FOMA terminal is classified as follows: data transfer, OBEX, packet communication and 64K data communication.

- The FOMA terminal does not support fax communication or the Remote Wakeup.
- Data communication can be executed by connecting the FOMA terminal to DoCoMo's PDA, "musea", "sigmarion II" or "sigmarion III". To use "musea" or "sigmarion II", update is required. For details on update, etc., visit the DoCoMo website.
- Packet communication and 64K data communication overseas is unavailable on this FOMA terminal.
- This FOMA terminal does not support IP connection.

■ Data transfer (OBEX)

Data of images, music, the phonebook, mails, etc is sent and received between another FOMA terminal or a PC.



■ Packet communication

Packet communication is a communication mode which charges are based on the amount of data sent and received (maximum reception speed 384 kbps, maximum transmission speed 64 kbps). You need to use access points that support packet communication on FOMA, such as DoCoMo's "mopera U/mopera" Internet connection service. Note that communications of large-size data such as for viewing and downloading websites containing images will require high charges.

■ 64K data communication

The 64K data communication is a communication mode which charges are based on the duration of the connection to the network (maximum communication speed 64 kbps). You need to use access points that support FOMA 64K data communication such as DoCoMo's "mopera U/mopera" Internet connection service or ISDN synchronized 64K access points.

Note that communicating for long time will require high charges.

Before usage

Operating environment

For data communication, the operating environment of PC is as follows:

Item	Requirements
PC*1	PC/AT compatible computer
OS*2	The Japanese version of Windows 2000, Windows XP or Windows Vista
Memory requirements	Windows 2000: 64 MB or more Windows XP: 128 MB or more Windows Vista: 512 MB or more
Hard disk capacity	5 MB or more free disk space

*1 USB port (conform to USB specification 1.1/2.0) is required.

*2 The operation from OS upgrading is not covered by the warranty.

INFORMATION

- Note that utilization may not be possible in certain operating environments. Furthermore, operation will not be guaranteed in an environment other than that described above or by upgrading the OS and DoCoMo assumes no responsibility for operation under such conditions.
- For the **FOMA D705iμ CD-ROM** screen, the recommended operating environment is Microsoft Internet Explorer 6.0 or later.*1 When the **FOMA D705iμ CD-ROM** screen does not appear even though CD-ROM is set, operate in the following steps:
 - ① Click スタート (Start) and マイコンピュータ (My computer)
 - For Windows 2000: Double-click マイコンピュータ on the desktop
 - For Windows Vista: Click (Start) and コンピュータ (Computer)

- ② Right-click the CD-ROM icon and click 開く (Open)
- ③ Double-click *index (index.html)*

*1 For Windows Vista, the recommended operating environment is Microsoft Internet Explorer 7.0 or later.

When the warning screen appears

When the attached CD-ROM is inserted into the PC, the following warning screen may appear. This warning is displayed according to the security setting of Microsoft Internet Explorer, but this will not cause a problem. Click はい (Yes).

- The screen shown below is for the case of using Windows XP. It may differ depending on the PC environment.



- For Windows Vista, when the attached CD-ROM is inserted into the PC, the auto play screen may appear.
Click *rundll32.exe* の実行 (Execute rundll32.exe).

Required devices

The following hardware and software are required in addition to the FOMA terminal and a PC:

- FOMA USB Cable with Charge Function 01 (optional) or FOMA USB Cable (optional)
- Attached CD-ROM "CD-ROM for FOMA D705ij"

INFORMATION

- A USB cable for PC cannot be used because the shape of the connector does not fit. In this manual, FOMA USB Cable with Charge Function 01 (optional) is used for explanation.
- In case of using a USB HUB, operation may not be performed properly.

Usage precautions

Internet service provider usage charge

When using the Internet from PC, usage charge to your Internet service provider (hereinafter called the provider) is generally required. This charge is paid directly to the provider, and is separate from the FOMA service charge. For details on usage charges, contact your provider.

- DoCoMo provides 2 Internet connection services: mopera U and mopera.

The mopera U service requires subscription and a monthly fee. It allows you to use broadband Internet connection service, etc. There is also a plan that requires a monthly fee only when you use the service. The mopera service allows you to access the Internet without subscription and monthly fee. You can make a connection with Internet immediately. For details such as on charges, visit the DoCoMo website.

Setting the dialup connection (provider, etc.)

Different dialup connections are required for packet communication and 64K data communication. When performing packet communication, use the dialup connection for FOMA packet communication. When performing 64K data communication, use the dialup connection for FOMA 64K data communication or ISDN synchronized 64K data communication.

- You cannot connect to access points of PHS 64K/32K data communication such as PIAFS or DoPa access points.

User authentication during network access

Some dialup connections require user authentication before a connection can be established.

If user authentication is required, you must use your communication software or dialup network to enter your ID and password before connection. Your ID and password will be assigned by the provider or network administrator of in-house LAN, etc. For details, contact your provider or network administrator.

Access authentication when using PC browser

To authenticate FirstPass (user certificate), you must install FirstPass PC software from the attached CD-ROM and configure it. For details, see "簡易操作マニュアル (Simple User's Manual)(FirstPassManual.pdf)" in the CD-ROM.

Conditions of packet communication and 64K data communication

- You must be within the FOMA service area.
- Packet communication requires an access point that supports FOMA packet communications.
- 64K data communication requires an access point that supports FOMA 64K or ISDN synchronized 64K data communication.

However, even when the above requirements are satisfied, you may not be able to perform data communication if base station traffic is heavy, or the signal quality is poor.

Glossary of data communication

- **Administrator privilege**
A user level that provides complete access to all OS functions. There must be at least 1 user that has administrator privileges for each PC. A user that has no administrator privileges is not normally allowed to install/uninstall drivers and software.
- **APN (Access Point Name)**
String to identify a provider, etc. to connect by packet communication. The APN for mopera U is "mopera.net" and mopera is "mopera.ne.jp".
- **cid (Context Identifier)**
The registration number when writing packet communication dialup connection (APN) information to the FOMA terminal. 10 numbers from 1 to 10 are available for the FOMA terminal.
By default, "mopera.ne.jp" is registered in cid1, and "mopera.net" in cid3.

Flow of setup for data communication

Flow of setup for data transfer (OBEX)

In case of using FOMA USB Cable with Charge Function 01 (optional), install the FOMA communication configuration file.

- Download and install the FOMA communication configuration file ➡P5
- Install via the attached CD-ROM
 - or
 - Download and install via the DoCoMo website

Data transfer

Flow of setup for packet communication or 64K data communication

The setup work needed to connect the FOMA terminal to a PC to perform packet or 64K data communication is as follows:

- ① Download and install the FOMA communication configuration file ➡P5
 - Install via the attached CD-ROM
 - or
 - Download and install via the DoCoMo website
- ② Connect the FOMA terminal to a PC ➡P4
- ③ Check the FOMA communication configuration file ➡P6

Install the FOMA PC configuration software

- Windows XP/Windows 2000 ➡P7
- Windows Vista ➡P17

(Easy Setup)
Packet communication setup

- mopera U/mopera
 - Windows XP/Windows 2000 ➡P8
 - Windows Vista ➡P18
- Other providers
 - Windows XP/Windows 2000 ➡P10
 - Windows Vista ➡P19

(Easy Setup)
64K data communication setup

- mopera U/mopera
 - Windows XP/Windows 2000 ➡P11
 - Windows Vista ➡P20
- Other providers
 - Windows XP/Windows 2000 ➡P12
 - Windows Vista ➡P21

Execute communication

- Windows XP/Windows 2000 ➡P13
 - Windows Vista ➡P22
- Disconnect
- Windows XP/Windows 2000 ➡P14
 - Windows Vista ➡P23

Set up communications without using the FOMA PC configuration software ➡P24

Connect ➡P32/Disconnect ➡P33

FOMA communication configuration file

Install the FOMA communication configuration file on a PC from the attached CD-ROM before connecting the FOMA terminal to a PC to perform data communication.

FOMA PC configuration software

When the FOMA PC configuration software (found on the attached CD-ROM) is installed on a PC, a number of settings required for packet communication or 64K data communication via connection between the FOMA terminal and PC can be made from the PC by simple operation.

Before installation/uninstallation

- Installing/uninstalling the FOMA communication configuration file or the FOMA PC configuration software can only be performed by a user with administrator privileges. Attempts made by other users may result in errors. For Windows Vista, when the screen of ユーザーアカウント制御 (User account control) appears, click 許可 (Permit) or 続行 (Continue). For details on PC administrator privileges, refer to the instruction manual of the PC or contact your PC manufacturer or Microsoft Corporation.
- Before starting operation, make sure that no other program is running. If there is any active program, save and exit the program before operation.

Connecting the FOMA terminal to a PC

The connection should be made with the PC and the FOMA terminal both switched on.

- Be sure to install the FOMA communication configuration file before connection. ●P5

Setting to Communication mode

In case *USB mode setting* is set to *microSD mode* or *MTP mode*, set this to *Communication mode*.

① [MENU] [6] [2] [6] [1] ▶ Yes

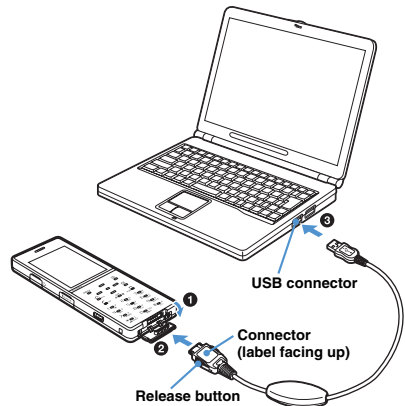
Connecting to PC

Connect by using the FOMA USB Cable with Charge Function 01 (optional).

- ① Open the cap on the FOMA terminal's external connection terminal
- ② Insert one end of the FOMA USB Cable with Charge Function 01 into the FOMA terminal's external connection terminal until it clicks

③ Insert the other end of the FOMA USB Cable with Charge Function 01 into the PC USB connector

- When a PC and the FOMA terminal are connected, appears on the screen of the FOMA terminal. does not appear before installing the FOMA communication configuration file.
- If you connect the FOMA terminal to a PC before installing the FOMA communication configuration file, the detecting wizard screen of new hardware will be displayed. In that case, remove the FOMA terminal and click キャンセル (Cancel) to exit the wizard.



■ Removing FOMA USB Cable

Pull the connector for PC out from the side of PC. Be sure to press release buttons on both sides of the connector for the FOMA terminal. Forcing to pull it out may cause a malfunction.

INFORMATION

- Do not remove the FOMA USB Cable with Charge Function 01 (optional) during data communication, or give shock to the FOMA terminal. It may cause the interruption of charging or data communication, malfunction or failure of PC or the FOMA terminal, or loss of data.

Installation of the FOMA communication configuration file

Installing the FOMA communication configuration file

Before operation, read "Before installation/uninstallation". P4

- Perform Steps 1 to 4 first, and then connect the FOMA terminal to a PC.

Example For Windows XP

1 Insert the attached CD-ROM into the PC The FOMA D705iμ CD-ROM screen appears.



2 データリンクソフト・各種設定ソフト (Datalink software, configuration software) ▶ Click インストール (Installation) of FOMA 通信設定ファイル (USBドライバ) (FOMA communication configuration file (USB driver))



3 Double-click FOMAIinst(FOMAIinst.exe)



4 Click インストール開始 (Start installing)



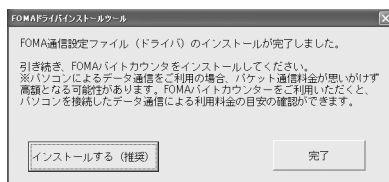
A screen requesting to connect the FOMA terminal to the PC appears.

5 Connect the FOMA terminal to the PC P4

When the installation of FOMA communication configuration file is completed and click 終了 (Completed), a confirmation screen appears indicating that the FOMA byte counter will be installed.

- Connect the FOMA terminal while the power is on.

6 Click インストールする (推奨) (Install (recommended))



- When not installing the FOMA byte counter, click 完了 (Done).

7 Click 次へ (Next) on the screen of FOMA バイトカウンタ セットアップへようこそ (Welcome to FOMA byte counter setup)

8 Confirm precautions ▶ Click 次へ

9 Confirm the license agreement ▶ Select 使 用許諾契約の全条項に同意します (Agree to all the terms of the license agreement) if you agree to the agreement ▶ Click 次へ

10 Confirm the installation path ▶ Click 次へ

11 Click インストール (Installation)

12 Click 完了 (Done)

13 Click OK and make the setting of options

- For the procedures of the option setting or usage of FOMA byte counter, refer to FOMA / バイトカウンタ操作マニュアル (FOMA byte counter User's Manual).

14 Click 完了 on the screen of FOMA ドライバインストールツール (FOMA driver installation tool) in Step 6

- Go to "Checking the FOMA communication configuration file", and check the name of the device installed.

INFORMATION

- Installation may take a few minutes.
- When Windows rebooting is prompted on the screen, follow the instruction and reboot.
- If a PC and the FOMA terminal are connected before the FOMA communication configuration file is installed, another driver may be automatically installed. When this happens, performing the operation in Step 2 displays a message saying that the installed driver must be uninstalled. Uninstall the driver following instruction shown on the display and install the FOMA communication configuration file.

Checking the FOMA communication configuration file

When the PC does not detect the FOMA terminal correctly, settings and communication cannot be performed.

Example For Windows XP

1 Click スタート, コントロールパネル (Control panel), パフォーマンスとメンテナンス (Performance and maintenance) and システム (System)

The システムのプロパティ (System properties) screen appears.

■ For Windows 2000:

- Click スタート, 設定 (Setting) and コントロールパネル
- Double-click システム

■ For Windows Vista:

- Click (Start), コントロールパネル, システムとメンテナンス and デバイスマネージャ (Device manager) ▶ Go to Step 3

2 Click the ハードウェア (Hardware) tab ▶ Click デバイスマネージャ

The デバイスマネージャ screen appears.

3 Double-click each device type ▶ Check the name of the installed device

Check that all the device names described in the following list are shown.

Device type	Device name
USB (Universal Serial Bus) Controller	FOMA D705iμ
Port (COM and LPT)	- FOMA D705iμ Command Port (COMx)*1 - FOMA D705iμ OBEX Port (COMx)*1
Modem	FOMA D705iμ

*1 "x" of COMx varies by PC to be used.

Uninstalling the FOMA communication configuration file

Before operation, read "Before installation/uninstallation". ➡P4

Before uninstalling, make sure that the FOMA terminal is removed from the PC.

Example For Windows XP

1 Click スタート, コントロールパネル and プログラムの追加と削除 (Add/delete programs)

■ For Windows 2000:

- Click スタート, 設定 and コントロールパネル
- Double-click アプリケーションの追加と削除 (Add/delete applications)

■ For Windows Vista:

- Click (Start), コントロールパネル and プログラムのアンインストール (Uninstall the program)

2 Select FOMA D705iμ USB ▶ Click 変更と削除 (Update/delete)

■ For Windows 2000:

- Select FOMA D705iμ USB ▶ Click 変更と削除 (Update/delete)

■ For Windows Vista:

- Select FOMA D705iμ USB ▶ Click アンインストールと変更 (Uninstall and change)

3 Check the name of program and click はい

The FOMA communication configuration file is uninstalled.

4 Click OK

Communicating using the FOMA PC configuration software on Windows XP/Windows 2000

A number of settings are required when the FOMA terminal is connected to a PC to perform packet communication or 64K data communication. The FOMA PC configuration software allows you to easily perform the following settings:

■ Easy setup

Creating a dialup connection for FOMA data communication can be performed automatically by following the instructions in the guide.

■ Optimizing the communication settings

When using Windows XP or Windows 2000, optimize the settings in the PC before performing FOMA packet communication. Optimization of the communication settings is required to enable communication capability to maximum extent.

■ Dialup connection (APN) setup

Perform the dialup connection (APN) setup required for packet communication.

Unlike 64K data communication, phone numbers cannot be used as a dialup connection for FOMA packet communication. Set a dialup connection name called APN in the FOMA terminal for each dialup connection in advance, and enter the registration number (cid) in the phone number field of dialup connection. By default, "mopera.ne.jp" (APN) is registered in cid 1 to connect to mopera, and "mopera.net" (APN) for cid 3 to connect to mopera U, but the APN for connections to other providers and in-house LAN must be set.

Installing the FOMA PC configuration software

- Uninstall an old version of the FOMA PC configuration software (version 4.0.0), if already installed, before installing the FOMA PC configuration software. You can display the version from メニュー (Menu) → バージョン情報 (Version information) of the FOMA PC configuration software.
- If the following software (provided with the FOMA terminal released before this model) are installed, uninstall them in advance:
 - W-TCP environment configuration software
 - FOMA data communication configuration software
- Uninstall the FOMA PC configuration software in advance, if already installed, before installing the FOMA PC configuration software.
- Before operation, read "Before installation/uninstallation". ➡ P4

Example For Windows XP

- 1 Insert the attached CD-ROM into the PC**
The FOMA D705iμ CD-ROM screen appears.



- 2 Click データリンクソフト・各種設定ソフト (Datalink software, configuration software)**
- 3 Click インストール (Installation) of FOMA PC 設定ソフト (FOMA PC configuration software)**

When clicking インストール (Installation), the warning screen shown below may appear. This warning is displayed according to the security setting of Microsoft Internet Explorer, but this will not cause a problem.

- In case the screen of ファイルのダウンロード - セキュリティの警告 (Downloading file - security warning) is displayed
Click 実行 (For Windows 2000, click 開く (Open)).



- In case of the screen of Internet Explorer - セキュリティの警告 (Security warning) is displayed
Click 実行する (Execute).



4 Click 次へ (Next)

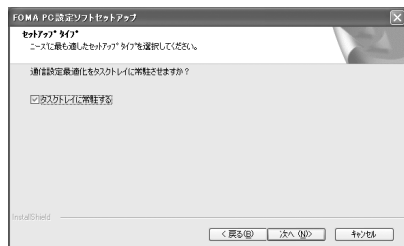
The FOMA PC configuration software license agreement appears.

5 Read the content of the screen and click はい if you agree to the agreement

6 Select タスクトレイに常駐する (Reside in task tray) and click 次へ

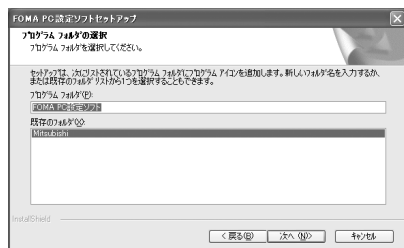
通信設定最適化 (Optimization of the communication settings) resides in the task tray after the setup.

- You can change the setting of resident software after the installation.



7 Check the installation path and click 次へ

8 Check the name of the program folder and click 次へ



9 Click 完了 (Done)

FOMA PC 設定ソフト (FOMA PC configuration software) is started up.

- Settings can be started from this screen.

INFORMATION

- When キャンセル or いいえ (No) is clicked during installation, the confirmation screen to cancel the installation appears. To continue the installation, click はい. To cancel, click はい and 完了.

Setting packet communication by easy setup

Before setup, make sure that the FOMA terminal and the PC are properly connected. ●P4

Starting the FOMA PC configuration software

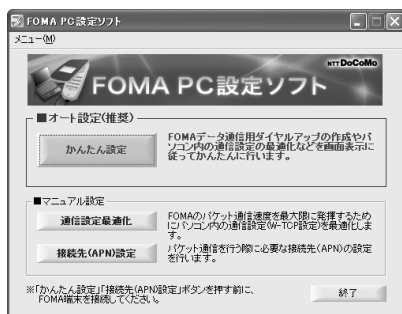
Example For Windows XP

1 Click スタート, すべてのプログラム (All programs), FOMA PC 設定ソフト and FOMA PC 設定ソフト

■ For Windows 2000:

① Click スタート, プログラム (Programs), FOMA PC 設定ソフト and FOMA PC 設定ソフト

The FOMA PC configuration software is started up.



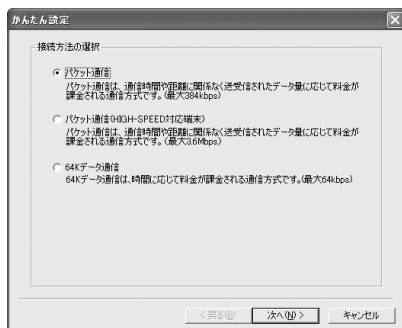
Using mopera U/mopera

- Using other providers ●P10

Example For Windows XP

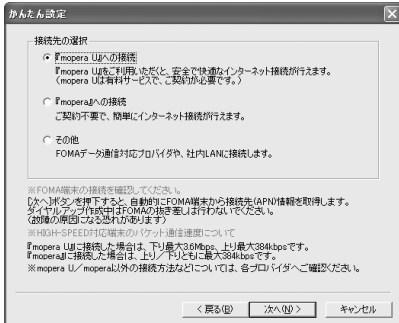
1 Start the FOMA PC configuration software ▶ Click かんたん設定 (Easy setup)

2 Select パケット通信 (Packet communication) ▶ Click 次へ



3 Select 『mopera U』への接続(mopera U connection) or 『mopera』への接続(mopera connection) ▶ Click 次へ

- When mopera U is selected, a confirmation message of agreement appears. If the subscription is completed, click **はい**.



4 Click OK on the FOMA 端末設定取得 (Get the FOMA terminal settings) screen

"Dialup connection (APN) information" is obtained from the FOMA terminal. Please wait.

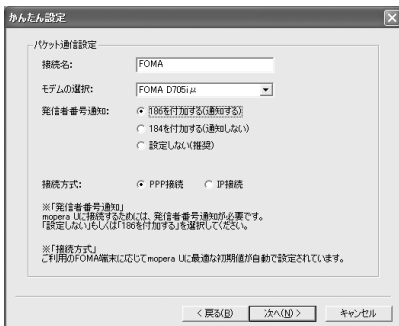
5 Set any connection name and each item ▶ Click 次へ

- The following one-byte characters cannot be entered for 接続名 (Connection name):
¥ / : * ? ! < > | "

- For 発信者番号通知 (Caller ID Notification), select 186 を付加する (通知する) (Add 186 (notify)) or 設定しない (推奨) (Not set (recommended)).

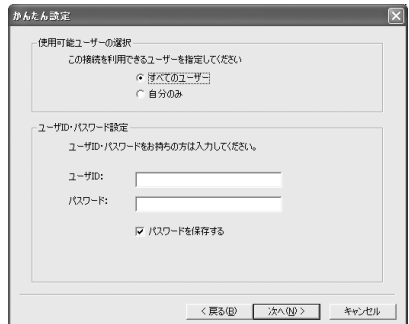
You need to notify the caller ID to connect to mopera U or mopera.

- For 接続方式 (Connection procedure), the optimum item is set automatically.



6 Set each item ▶ Click 次へ

- The entry for ユーザID (User ID) or パスワード (Password) is not required for connection.
- If you select **すべてのユーザー** (All users) for 使用可能ユーザーの選択 (Select allowable user), all users that are allowed to logon to Windows can access the connection.

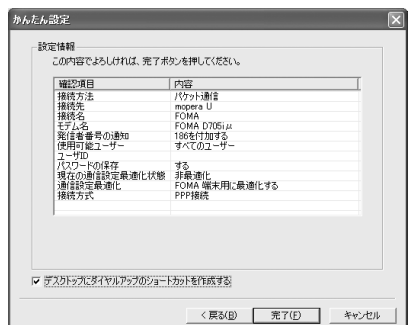


7 Check that 最適化を行う (Optimize) is selected and click 次へ

- This screen is not displayed if optimization has already been performed.



8 Check the settings and click 完了



9 Click OK

Click **はい** when a window prompts you to reboot the PC.

- Performing communication ◀P13

Using other providers

- Using mopera U/mopera ◀P8

Example For Windows XP

1 Perform Steps 1 to 4 of “Using mopera U/mopera” of “Setting packet communication by easy setup” ◀P8

- Select **パケット通信** (Packet connection) for the connection procedure in Step 2.
- Select **その他** (Others) in Step 3 for the dialup connection.

2 Enter any connection name ▶ Click **接続先 (APN) 設定** (Set dialup connection (APN))

- The following one-byte characters cannot be entered for **接続名**:
¥ / : * ? ! < > | ”
- For **発信者番号通知** (Caller ID Notification), follow the instructions given by your provider.



■ Advanced setting (TCP/IP setting):

Click **詳細情報の設定** (Set detail info) to display the **IPアドレス** (IP address) and **ネームサーバー** (Name server) setting screens.

- When dialup information such as address is required, register it based on the information assigned by the provider, etc.

3 Set the dialup connection (APN)

By default, “mopera.ne.jp” is registered in cid1, and “mopera.net” in cid3. Register a dialup connection (APN) for cid 2 or 4 to 10.

① Click **追加** (Add)

The **接続先 (APN) の追加** (Add dialup connection (APN)) screen appears.

② Set a dialup connection (APN) of your provider, etc., which supports the FOMA packet communication and the connection procedure ▶ Click OK

The display returns to the **接続先 (APN) 設定** screen.

- Only one-byte alphanumeric characters, hyphens (-) and periods (.) can be entered for **接続先 (APN)**.
- This terminal supports only PPP connection, so select **PPP 接続** (PPP connection) for **接続方式** (Connection procedure). For the compatible connection procedure, inquire your provider.



4 Click OK

The display returns to the screen in Step 2. Dialup connection (APN) and the connection procedure set in Step 3 appear in **接続先 (APN) の選択** (Select dialup connection (APN)).

5 Check the dialup connection (APN) of **接続先 (APN) の選択** and click **次へ**

6 Set each item ▶ Click 次へ

- Enter the user ID and password assigned by the provider, etc. correctly. Be careful about the upper/lower case of each character.
- If you select **すべてのユーザー** for **使用可能ユーザーの選択**, all users that are allowed to logon to Windows can access the connection.

7 Check that 最適化を行う is selected and click 次へ

- This screen is not displayed if optimization has already been performed.

8 Check the settings and click 完了

9 Click OK

The PC must be rebooted for the changes to take effect. Click **はい** when a window prompts you to reboot the PC.

- If optimization has already been performed, rebooting is not required.
- Performing communication ◀P13

Setting 64K data communication by easy setup

Before setup, make sure that the FOMA terminal and the PC are properly connected. ◀P4

Using mopera U/mopera

- Using other providers ◀P12

Example For Windows XP

1 Perform Steps 1 to 3 of “Using mopera U/ mopera” of “Setting packet communication by easy setup” ◀P8

- Select **64K データ通信** (64K data communication) in Step 2 for the connection procedure.
- Select **「mopera U」への接続** (mopera U connection) or **「mopera」への接続** (mopera connection) in Step 3.

2 Set any connection name and each item ▶ Click 次へ

- The following one-byte characters cannot be entered for **接続名**:
¥ / : * ? ! < > | " ' `
- Check that **FOMA D705iμ** is set for **モデムの選択** (Modem selection).
- Select if caller ID is notified at dialup connection. You need to notify the caller ID to connect to mopera U or mopera.

3 Set each item ▶ Click 次へ

- The entry for ユーザID or パスワード is not required for connecting.
- If you select 全てのユーザー for 使用可能ユーザーの選択, all users that are allowed to logon to Windows can access the connection.

4 Check the settings and click 完了

5 Click OK

- Performing communication ◀P13

Using other providers

- Using mopera U/mopera ◀P11

Example For Windows XP

1 Perform Steps 1 to 3 of “Using mopera U/ mopera” of “Setting packet communication by easy setup” ◀P8

- Select 64K データ通信 in Step 2 for the connection procedure.
- Select その他 in Step 3 for the dialup connection.

2 Set an optional connection name and each item ▶ Click 次へ

- The following one-byte characters cannot be entered for 接続名: ¥ / : * ? ! < > | " ' .
- Check that FOMA D705μ is set for モデムの選択 (Modem selection).
- For 電話番号 (Phone number) and 発信者番号通知 (Caller ID Notification), follow the instructions given by your provider.

■ Advanced setting (TCP/IP setting):

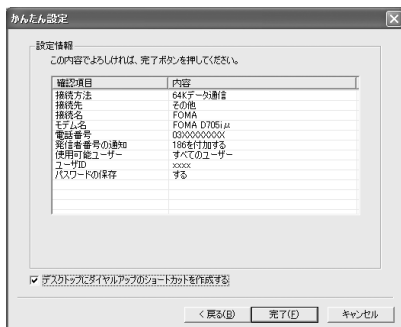
Click 詳細情報の設定 to display the IPアドレスとネームサーバー設定 screens.

- When dialup information such as address is required, register it based on the information assigned by the provider, etc.

3 Set each item ▶ Click 次へ

- Enter the user ID and password assigned by the provider, etc. correctly. Be careful about the upper/lower case of each character.
- If you select 全てのユーザー for 使用可能ユーザーの選択, all users that are allowed to logon to Windows can access the connection.

4 Check the settings and click 完了



5 Click OK

- Performing communication ◀P13

Performing communication

Starting communication set with the FOMA PC configuration software and disconnection are explained here.

Example For Windows XP

1 Connect the FOMA terminal to a PC ◀P4

2 Double-click the connection icon on the desktop



- The icon varies depending on the OS.

- When there is no connection icon made on desktop, start from the スタート menu.

Starting from the スタート menu of Windows XP:

- Click スタート, すべてのプログラム(All programs), アクセサリ (Accessories), 通信 (Communication), and ネットワーク接続 (Network connection)

- Double-click the dialup connection

Starting from the スタート menu of Windows 2000:

- Click スタート, プログラム, アクセサリ, 通信 and ネットワークとダイヤルアップ接続 (Network and dialup connections)
- Double-click the dialup connection

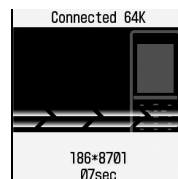
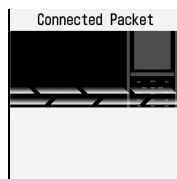
3 Check each item and click ダイアル(Dial)

- When moperla U/moperla is selected, the entry for ユーザー名 or パスワード is not required for connection.
- If required by the instructions of a subscribed provider, enter the user name and the password according to the input instruction information, and then click ダイアル.
- The connection established screen may be displayed depending on the OS. Click OK.



■ FOMA terminal screen while communicating

The FOMA terminal displays a connecting screen when you execute packet or 64K data communication. The following screens are displayed when a connection has been established:



INFORMATION

- The transmission speed displayed on your PC may differ from actual speed.
- Data communication is available only with the FOMA terminal that was connected when the connection icon was created.
- When connecting the FOMA terminal other than D705iμ, installation of the FOMA communication configuration file for your FOMA terminal is needed.

Disconnecting communication

Just exiting the browser may not disconnect the connection. To ensure disconnection, perform the following operation.

Example For Windows XP

- 1 Click  in the task tray
- 2 Click **切断 (Disconnect)**



Optimizing packet communication setup

Optimize the PC packet communication setup for FOMA network by means of "Optimization of the communication settings". "Optimization of the communication settings" is a TCP parameter tuning tool for optimizing TCP/IP transmission capacity during packet communication in the FOMA network. To enable communication capability of the FOMA terminal to maximum extent, this optimization of the communication settings is required.

For Windows XP

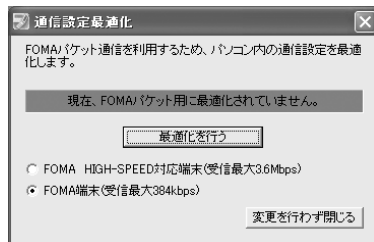
System optimization can be performed for each dialup connection.

- 1 Start **FOMA PC 設定ソフト** ◀P8 ▶ Click **通信設定最適化**

■ Starting from the task tray: Click 

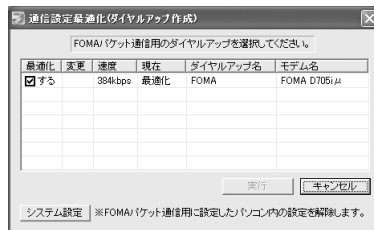
- 2 Perform the following operations:

- When the system has not been optimized:
The following screen is displayed.



- ① Select **FOMA 端末(受信最大384kbps)** (FOMA terminal (Maximum reception: 384kbps)) and click **最適化を行う**
- ② Select the dialup connection to be optimized ▶ Click **実行 (Execute)**
Optimization of the system settings and dialup settings are performed respectively.

- When the system has been optimized:
The following screen is displayed. Change the check box and click **実行 (Execute)** if changes are to be made.



- 3 Reboot the PC following the screen

- The settings take effect after rebooting the PC.

For Windows 2000

- 1 Start **FOMA PC 設定ソフト** ◀P8 ▶ Click **通信設定最適化**

■ Starting from the task tray: Click 

- 2 Click **最適化を行う**

- 3 Reboot the PC following the instruction shown on the screen

- The settings take effect after rebooting the PC.

Canceling optimization

- Cancel optimization in case of executing 64K data communication or when communicating via other than the FOMA terminal.

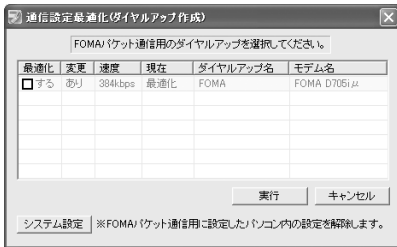
For Windows XP

1 Start FOMA PC 設定ソフト ➡ P8 ▶ Click 通信設定最適化

- Starting from the task tray: Click 

2 Remove the check of the dialup connection to cancel optimization ▶ Click 実行

- When the system is optimized for 3.6Mbps, this screen is not displayed. Click 最適化を解除する (Cancel optimization).



3 Click OK

For Windows 2000

1 Start FOMA PC 設定ソフト ➡ P8 ▶ Click 通信設定最適化

- Starting from the task tray: Click 

2 Click 最適化を解除する (Cancel optimization)

3 Reboot the PC following the instruction shown on the screen

- The settings take effect after rebooting the PC.

Setting dialup connections (APNs)

Set the dialup connection (APN) for packet communication.

Up to 10 dialup connections (APNs) can be set, which are to be registered under registration numbers (cid) 1 to 10 for management.

By default, "mopera.ne.jp" is set for cid1 and "mopera.net" for cid3.

- Before setup, make sure that the FOMA terminal and the PC are properly connected. ➡ P4

- For dialup connections (APNs) other than mopera U/mopera, inquire your provider or network administrator.

Example For Windows XP

1 Start FOMA PC 設定ソフト ➡ P8 ▶ Click 接続先 (APN) 設定

The FOMA 端末設定取得 screen appears.

2 Click OK

The FOMA terminal is accessed for reading the registered dialup connection (APN) information.

3 Make the dialup connection (APN) settings



- Adding dialup connections (APNs): Click 追加

- Editing or correcting registered dialup connections (APNs): Select the dialup connection (APN) from the list ▶ Click 編集 (Edit)

- Deleting the registered dialup connections (APNs): Select the dialup connection (APN) from the list ▶ Click 削除 (Delete)

- The dialup connection registered in cid1 and cid3 cannot be deleted. (Selecting cid1 or cid3 and clicking 削除 do not actually delete, but return to the previous status.)

- Saving settings as file: Click ファイル (File) and 名前を付けて保存 (Save as...) or 上書き保存 (Overwrite)

- Save the settings as a file to back up the dialup connection (APN) settings registered in the FOMA terminal or save the dialup connection (APN) settings during editing.

- Importing settings from file: Click ファイル (File) and 開く (Open)

- Import settings from a file to edit the dialup connection (APN) settings saved on the PC or write them to the FOMA terminal.

- **Importing dialup connection (APN) information from the FOMA terminal:** Click **ファイル and FOMA 端末から設定を取得 (Import settings from the FOMA terminal)**
Access manually to the FOMA terminal to import the registered dialup connection (APN) settings.

- **Writing dialup connection (APN) information to the FOMA terminal:** Click **FOMA 端末へ設定を書き込む (Write settings to the FOMA terminal)**
The displayed dialup connection (APN) settings are written to the FOMA terminal.

- **Creating dialup connections:**

- ① **Select an added or edited dialup connection (APN) ▶ Click *ダイヤルアップ作成 (Create dialup connection)***
The **FOMA 端末設定書き込み (Write setting to the FOMA terminal)** screen appears.
- ② **Click *はい* ▶ Click *OK***
The **パケット通信用ダイヤルアップの作成 (Create dialup connection for packet communication)** screen appears.
- ③ **Enter any connection name and select the way of notifying caller ID ▶ Click *ユーザID・パスワードの設定 (Set user ID and password)***
- ④ **Set each item ▶ Click *OK***
 - Not required for mopera U/mopera for connection.
 - If you select **すべてのユーザー for 使用可能ユーザーの選択**, all users that are allowed to logon to Windows can access the connection.
 - Some providers may request you to enter IP and DNS information settings. Should this be the case, click **詳細情報の設定** in the **パケット通信用ダイヤルアップの作成** screen, register the required information and click **OK**.
- ⑤ **Click *OK* ▶ Click *OK***
- ⑥ **Click *FOMA 端末へ設定を書き込む***
A confirmation screen appears asking whether to overwrite.
- ⑦ **Click *はい* ▶ Click *OK***

INFORMATION

- Since the dialup connection (APN) setting is information saved in the FOMA terminal, re-register the APN when connecting another FOMA terminal (terminal replaced by repair, etc.).
- To continue to use the dialup connection (APN) saved in the PC, save the registration number (cid) of the same APN to the FOMA terminal.

Uninstalling the FOMA PC configuration software

Before operation, read "Before installation/uninstallation". ●P4

Uninstall preparations

Right-click  in the task tray, and click **終了** (Do not reside) to terminate the optimization of the communication settings.

Uninstalling

Example For Windows XP

- 1 **Click *スタート, コントロールパネル and プログラムの追加と削除***

- **For Windows 2000:**

- ① **Click *スタート, 設定 and コントロールパネル***
- ② **Double-click *アプリケーションの追加と削除***

- 2 **Select *NTT DoCoMo FOMA PC 設定ソフト (NTT DoCoMo FOMA PC configuration software)* ▶ Click *削除***

- **For Windows 2000:**

- ① **Select *NTT DoCoMo FOMA PC 設定ソフト* ▶ Click *変更と削除***

- 3 **Check that you have selected the correct program to delete and click *はい***

The uninstallation of the FOMA PC configuration software starts.

- **Canceling the optimization of communication settings:**

A confirmation screen appears when the communication settings have been optimized.

- Usually, click **はい** and deactivate the optimization.
- Select whether to reboot immediately and click **完了** when Windows prompts you to reboot the PC.
- Canceling the optimization of communication settings is performed after the PC is rebooted.

- 4 **Click *完了***

Communicating using the FOMA PC configuration software on Windows Vista

A number of settings are required when the FOMA terminal is connected to a PC to perform packet communication or 64K data communication. The FOMA PC configuration software allows you to easily perform the following settings:

■ Easy setup

Creating a dialup connection for FOMA data communication can be performed automatically by following the instructions in the guide.

■ Dialup connection (APN) setup

Perform the dialup connection (APN) setup required for packet communication. Unlike 64K data communication, phone numbers cannot be used as a dialup connection for FOMA packet communication. Set a dialup connection name called APN in the FOMA terminal for each dialup connection in advance, and enter the registration number (cid) in the phone number field of dialup connection. By default, "mopera.ne.jp" (APN) is registered in cid 1 to connect to mopera, and "mopera.net" (APN) for cid 3 to connect to mopera U, but the APN for connections to other providers and in-house LAN must be set.

Installing the FOMA PC configuration software

Before operation, read "Before installation/uninstallation". ●P4

1 Insert the attached CD-ROM into the PC

The *FOMA D705iμ* CD-ROM screen appears.

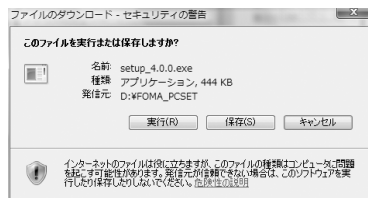


2 Click データリンクソフト・各種設定ソフト (Data Link software, configuration software)

3 Click インストール (Installation) of FOMA PC 設定ソフト (FOMA PC configuration software)

When clicking インストール (Installation), the warning screen shown below may appear. This warning is displayed according to the security setting of Microsoft Internet Explorer, but this will not cause a problem.

• In case the screen of ファイルのダウンロード - セキュリティの警告 (Downloading file - security warning) is displayed
Click 実行 (Execute).



4 Click 次へ

The FOMA PC configuration software license agreement appears.

5 Read the content of the screen and click はい if you agree to the agreement

6 Check the installation path and click 次へ

7 Check the name of the program folder and click 次へ



8 Click 完了 (Done)

FOMA PC 設定ソフト (FOMA PC configuration software) is started up.

• Settings can be started from this screen.

INFORMATION

- When キャンセル or いいえ (No) is clicked during installation, the confirmation screen to cancel the installation appears. To continue the installation, click はい . To cancel, click はい and 完了 .

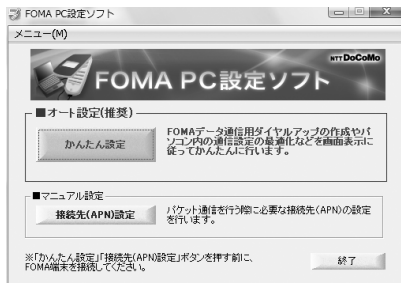
Setting packet communication by easy setup

Before setup, make sure that the FOMA terminal and the PC are properly connected. P4

Starting the FOMA PC configuration software

1 Click (Start), すべてのプログラム, FOMA PC 設定ソフト and FOMA PC 設定ソフト

The FOMA PC configuration software is started up.



Using mopera U/mopera

- Using other providers ➡ P19

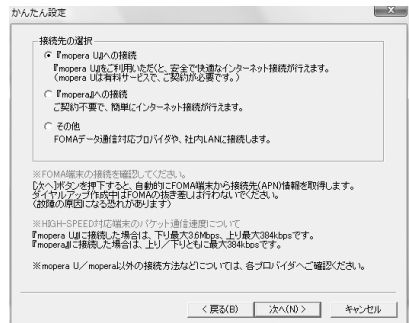
1 Start the FOMA PC configuration software ▶
Click *かんたん設定* (Easy setup)

2 Select パケット通信(Packet communication) ▶ Click 次へ



3 Select 『mopera U』への接続 (mopera U connection) or 『mopera』への接続 (mopera connection) ▶ Click 次へ

- When mopera U is selected, a confirmation message of agreement appears. If the subscription is completed, click はい).



4 Click *OK* on the *FOMA* 端末設定取得 (Get the FOMA terminal settings) screen

"Dialup connection (APN) information" is obtained from the FOMA terminal. Please wait.

5 Set any connection name and each item ▶
Click 次へ

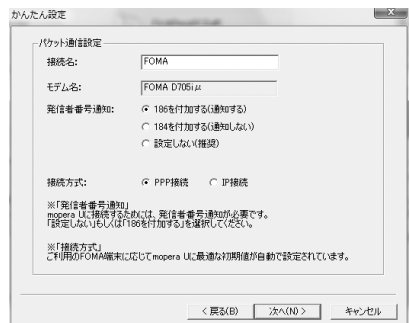
- The following one-byte characters cannot be entered for 接続名:

¥ / : * ? ! < > | ”

- For 発信者番号通知 (Caller ID Notification), select 186 を付加する (通知する) (Add 186 (notify)) or 設定しない (推奨) (Not set (recommended)).

You need to notify the caller ID to connect to mopera U or mopera.

- For 接続方式 (Connection procedure), the optimum item is set.



6 Set each item ▶ Click 次へ

- The entry for ユーザID (User ID) or パスワード (Password) is not required for connection.

7 Check the settings and click 完了

設定項目	内容
接続方法	パケット通信
接続先	mopera U
接続名	FOMA
モジュール名	FOMA D705iμ
発信番号通知	196を付加する
ユーザID	
パスワードの保存	する
接続方式	PPP接続

8 Click OK

- Performing communication ◀P22

Using other providers

- Using mopera U/mopera ◀P18

1 Perform Steps 1 to 4 of “Using mopera U/ mopera” of “Setting packet communication by easy setup” ◀P18

- Select パケット通信 (Packet connection) for the connection procedure in Step 2.
- Select その他 (Others) in Step 3 for the dialup connection.

2 Enter any connection name ▶ Click 接続先 (APN) 設定 (Set dialup connection (APN))

- The following one-byte characters cannot be entered for 接続名:

¥ / : * ? ! < > | "

- For Caller ID Notification setting, follow the instructions given by your provider.

■ Advanced setting (TCP/IP setting):

Click 詳細情報の設定 (Set detail info) to display the IPアドレス (IP address) and ネームサーバー (Name server) setting screens.

- When dialup information such as address is required, register it based on the information assigned by the provider, etc.

3 Set the dialup connection (APN)

By default, “mopera.ne.jp” is registered in cid1, and “mopera.net” in cid3. Register a dialup connection (APN) for cid 2 or 4 to 10.

① Click 追加 (Add)

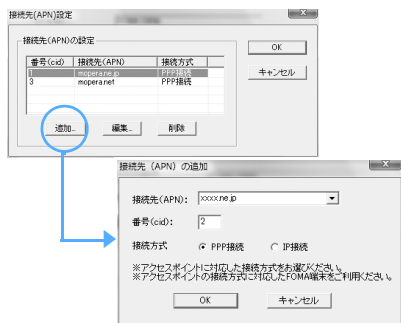
The 接続先 (APN) の追加 (Add dialup connection (APN)) screen appears.

② Set a dialup connection (APN) of your provider, etc., which supports the FOMA packet communication and the connection procedure ▶ Click OK

The display returns to the 接続先 (APN) 設定 screen.

- Only one-byte alphanumeric characters, hyphens (-) and periods (.) can be entered for 接続先 (APN).

- This terminal supports only PPP connection, so select **PPP 接続**(PPP connection) for **接続方式**(Connection procedure). For the compatible connection procedure, inquire your provider.



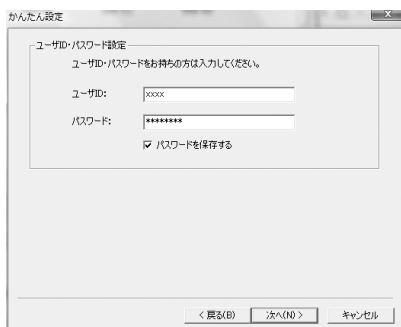
4 Click OK

The display returns to the screen in Step 2. Dialup connection (APN) and the connection procedure set in Step 3 appear in **接続先 (APN) の選択**(Select dialup connection (APN)).

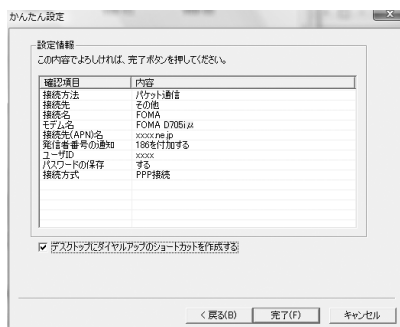
5 Check the dialup connection (APN) of 接続先 (APN) の選択 and click 次へ

6 Set each item ▶ Click 次へ

- Enter the user ID and password assigned by the provider, etc. correctly. Be careful about the upper/lower case of each character.



7 Check the settings and click 完了



8 Click OK

- Performing communication ◀P22

Setting 64K data communication by easy setup

Before setup, make sure that the FOMA terminal and the PC are properly connected. ◀P4

Using mopera U/mopera

- Using other providers ◀P21

1 Perform Steps 1 to 3 of “Using mopera U/ mopera” of “Setting packet communication by easy setup” ◀P18

- Select **64K データ通信**(64K data communication) in Step 2 for the connection procedure.
- Select **/mopera U/ への接続**(mopera U connection) or **/mopera/ への接続**(mopera connection) in Step 3.

2 Set any connection name and each item ▶ Click 次へ

- The following one-byte characters cannot be entered for **接続名**:
¥ / : * ? ! < > | ”
- Check that **FOMA D705iμ** is set for **モデムの選択**(Modem selection).

- Select if caller ID is notified at dialup connection. You need to notify the caller ID to connect to mopera U or mopera.

3 Set each item ▶ Click 次へ

- The entry for ユーザID or パスワード is not required for connecting.

4 Check the settings and click 完了

設定項目	内容
接続方法	64Kデータ通信
接続先	mopera U
接続名	FOMA
モデム名	FOMA D705iμ
発信者番号の通知	186を付加する
ユーザID	
パスワードの保存	する

5 Click OK

- Performing communication ◀P22

Using other providers

- Using mopera U/mopera ◀P20

1 Perform Steps 1 to 3 of “Using mopera U/mopera” of “Setting packet communication by easy setup” ◀P18

- Select 64K データ通信 in Step 2 for the connection procedure.
- Select その他 in Step 3 for the dialup connection.

2 Set an optional connection name and each item ▶ Click 次へ

- The following one-byte characters cannot be entered for 接続名:
¥ / : * ? ! < > | " ' "
- Check that FOMA D705iμ is set for モデムの選択 (Modem selection).
- For 電話番号 (Phone number) and 発信者番号通知 (Caller ID Notification), follow the instructions given by your provider.

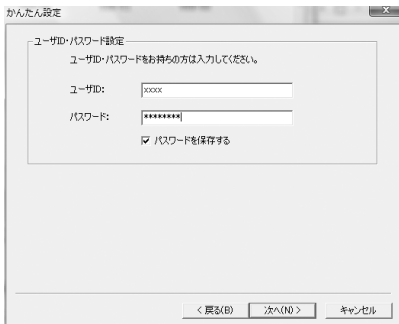
■ Advanced setting (TCP/IP setting):

Click 詳細情報の設定 to display the IPアドレス and ネームサーバー setting screens.

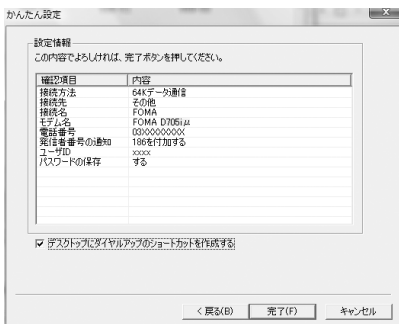
- When dialup information such as address is required, register it based on the information assigned by the provider, etc.

3 Set each item ▶ Click 次へ

- Enter the user ID and password assigned by the provider, etc. correctly. Be careful about the upper/lower case of each character.



4 Check the settings and click 完了



5 Click OK

- Performing communication ◀P22

Performing communication

Starting communication set with the FOMA PC configuration software and disconnection are explained here.

1 Connect the FOMA terminal to a PC ◀P4

2 Double-click the connection icon on the desktop



- When there is no connection icon made on desktop, start from the スタート (Start) menu.
 - ① Click (Start) and 接続先 (Dialup connection)
 - ② Double-click the dialup connection

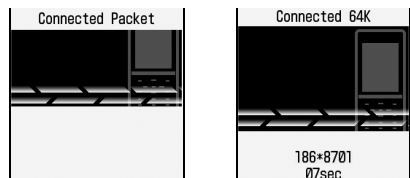
3 Check each item and click ダイアル(Dial)

- When mopera U/mopera is selected, the entry for ユーザー名 (User name) or パスワード (Password) is not required for connection.
- If required by the instructions of a subscribed provider, enter the user name and the password according to the input instruction information, and then click ダイアル (Dial).



■ FOMA terminal screen while communicating

The FOMA terminal displays a connecting screen when you execute packet or 64K data communication. The following screens are displayed when a connection has been established:



INFORMATION

- The transmission speed displayed on your PC may differ from actual speed.
- Data communication is available only with the FOMA terminal that was connected when the connection icon was created.
- When connecting the FOMA terminal other than D705iμ, installation of the FOMA communication configuration file for your FOMA terminal is needed.

Disconnecting communication

Just exiting the browser may not disconnect the connection. To ensure disconnection, perform the following operation:

- 1 Click  (Start) and 接続先
- 2 Select the connected dialup ▶ Click 切断 (Disconnect)



- 3 Click 閉じる (Close)

Setting dialup connections (APNs)

Set the dialup connection (APN) for packet communication.

Up to 10 dialup connections (APNs) can be set, which are to be registered under registration numbers (cid) 1 to 10 for management.

By default, "mopera.ne.jp" is set for cid1 and "mopera.net" for cid3.

- Before setup, make sure that the FOMA terminal and the PC are properly connected. ●P4
- For dialup connections (APNs) other than mopera U/mopera, inquire your provider or network administrator.

- 1 Start FOMA PC設定ソフト●P18 ▶ Click 接続先 (APN) 設定

The FOMA端末設定取得 screen appears.

- 2 Click OK

The FOMA terminal is accessed for reading the registered dialup connection (APN) information.

3 Make the dialup connection (APN) settings



- Adding dialup connections (APNs): Click 追加
- Editing or correcting registered dialup connections (APNs): Select the dialup connection (APN) from the list ▶ Click 編集 (Edit)
- Deleting the registered dialup connections (APNs): Select the dialup connection (APN) from the list ▶ Click 削除 (Delete)
 - The dialup connection registered in cid1 and cid3 cannot be deleted. (Selecting cid1 or cid3 and clicking 削除 do not actually delete, but return to the previous status.)
- Saving settings as file: Click ファイル (File) and 名前を付けて保存 (Save as...) or 上書き保存 (Overwrite)
 - Save the settings as a file to back up the dialup connection (APN) settings registered in the FOMA terminal or save the dialup connection (APN) settings during editing.
- Importing settings from file: Click ファイル and 開く (Open)
 - Import settings from a file to edit the dialup connection (APN) settings saved on the PC or write them to the FOMA terminal.
- Importing dialup connection (APN) information from the FOMA terminal: Click ファイル and FOMA 端末から設定を取得 (Import settings from the FOMA terminal)
Access manually to the FOMA terminal to import the registered dialup connection (APN) settings.
- Writing dialup connection (APN) information to the FOMA terminal: Click FOMA 端末へ設定を書き込む (Write settings to the FOMA terminal)
The displayed dialup connection (APN) settings are written to the FOMA terminal.

■ Creating dialup connections:

- 1 Select an added or edited dialup connection (APN) ▶ Click **ダイヤルアップ作成** (Create dialup connection)

The **FOMA 端末設定書き込み** (Write setting to the FOMA terminal) screen appears.

- 2 Click **はい** ▶ Click **OK**

The **パケット通信用ダイヤルアップの作成** (Create dialup connection for packet communication) screen appears.

- 3 Enter any connection name and select the way of notifying caller ID ▶ Click **ユーザID・パスワードの設定** (Set user ID and password)

- 4 Set each item ▶ Click **OK**

- Not required for mopera U/mopera for connection.
- Some providers may request you to enter IP and DNS information settings. Should this be the case, click **詳細情報の設定** in the **パケット通信用ダイヤルアップの作成** screen, register the required information and click **OK**.

- 5 Click **OK** ▶ Click **OK**

- 6 Click **FOMA 端末へ設定を書き込む**

A confirmation screen appears asking whether to overwrite.

- 7 Click **はい** ▶ Click **OK**

INFORMATION

- Since the dialup connection (APN) setting is information saved in the FOMA terminal, re-register the APN when connecting another FOMA terminal (terminal replaced by repair, etc.).
- To continue to use the dialup connection (APN) saved in the PC, save the registration number (cid) of the same APN to the FOMA terminal.

Uninstalling the FOMA PC configuration software

Before operation, read "Before installation/uninstallation". ◀P4

- 1 Click **スタート** (Start), **コントロールパネル** and **プログラムのアンインストール**
- 2 Select **NTT DoCoMo FOMA PC 設定ソフト** (NTT DoCoMo FOMA PC configuration software) ▶ Click **アンインストール** (Uninstall)

3 Check that you have selected the correct program to delete and click **はい**

The uninstallation of the FOMA PC configuration software starts.

4 Click **完了**

Communicating without using the FOMA PC configuration software

The method of dialup network setup for packet communication/64K data communication without using the FOMA PC configuration software is explained here.

Operation procedures for setup

- 1 Download and install the FOMA communication configuration file ◀P5
 - Install via the attached CD-ROM or
 - Download and install via the DoCoMo website
- 2 Connect the FOMA terminal to a PC ◀P4
- 3 Check the FOMA communication configuration file ◀P6

Set the dialup connection (APN)*1 ◀P25
(Not required for 64K data communication and for packet communication via mopera U/mopera)

Set to show/hide caller ID ◀P26 (Set as required)

Other settings (AT commands)*1 ◀P33
(Set as required)

Dialup network setup

OS	Settings	
	Dialup connection	TCP/IP
Windows XP	P27	P28
Windows 2000	P28	P30
Windows Vista	P31	P31

- For details on settings, inquire your provider or network administrator.

Connect ◀P32/Disconnect ◀P33

*1 For Windows Vista, communication software is required to enter AT command.

INFORMATION

- When the message appears meaning of setting the fixed Telnet program in the process of the operation, click はい(Yes) or いいえ(No).
- When the screen of 所在地情報(Location information) appears in the process of the operation, set the dial information of your location and click **OK**. The dial information you have set appears on the screen of 電話とモデムのオプション(Option of the phone and modem), so click **OK**.

Setting the dialup connection (APN) for packet communication

Communication software to input AT commands is required for making settings. The method of setting using "HyperTerminal" that comes with Windows XP/Windows 2000 is explained here. Windows Vista does not support "HyperTerminal". In case of using Windows Vista, use the software supporting Windows Vista for setting (Follow the setting procedure of software which you use).

Default cid1: mopera.ne.jp
cid3: mopera.net
cid2, 4 to 10: not recorded

Example For Windows XP

- 1 **Connect the FOMA terminal to a PC** ←P4
- 2 **Click スタート, すべてのプログラム, アクセサリ, 通信 and ハイパーターミナル (HyperTerminal).**
 - For Windows 2000, プログラム is displayed for すべてのプログラム.
- 3 **Enter any connection name in 名前 (Name)**
 - ▶ **Click OK**



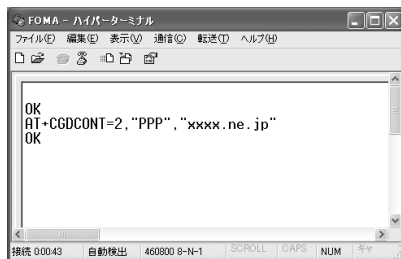
- 4 **Enter a fictional phone number (such as a zero (0)) for 電話番号, select FOMA D705μ from 接続方法 (Connection procedure) ▶ Click OK**
 - Since 市外局番 (Area code) does not effect dialup connection (APN) setting, it is not necessary to change.



- 5 **Click キャンセル when the connection screen appears**
- 6 **Enter the dialup connection (APN) ▶ Press**
 - Enter in the format "AT+CGDCONT=<cid>," "PPP", "APN".



- Enter in the format "AT+CGDCONT=<cid>," "PPP", "APN".
- <cid> : Enter any number between 2 or 4 to 10.
- "PPP": Enter "PPP".
- "APN": Enter the dialup connection (APN) in quotation marks.



If **OK** is displayed, the dialup connection (APN) has now been set.

Resetting dialup connection (APN) settings:

AT+CGDCONT=

Resets all cids.

- The settings are restored to the default settings for <cid> = 1 and 3, and the settings for <cid> = 2 or 4 to 10 are cleared.

AT+CGDCONT=<cid>

Resets the specified cid.

- Checking dialup connection (APN) settings:

AT+CGDCONT? [↵]

- When nothing is displayed even if AT command is entered: ATE1 [↵]

• For details ◀P37

7 Check that OK is displayed and click ファイル and ハイパーターミナルの終了 (End HyperTerminal)

- After 現在、接続されています。切断してもよろしいですか? (Connecting now. Disconnect?) appears, click はい.
- “XXX”と名前付けされた接続を保存しますか? (Save the connection named “XXX”?) or セッション“XXX”を保存しますか? (Save session “XXX”?) appears. Click はい.

Dialup connection (APN) and registration number (cid)

The dialup connection (APN) for packet communication can be set for registration numbers between cid1 to 10 in the FOMA terminal. By default, “mopera.ne.jp” is set for cid1 and “mopera.net” for cid3. For connecting to other providers or corporate LANs, register the dialup connection (APN) for cid2 or 4 to 10.

- For the dialup connection (APN), inquire your provider or network administrator.
- The dialup connection settings can be considered as phonebook registration for packet communication. The comparison between dialup connection settings and the FOMA terminal phonebook entries is as follows:

Dialup connection settings	FOMA terminal phonebook entries
Registration number (cid)	Registration number (Phonebook No.)
APN	Party's phone number

- The registered cids become the connection numbers of dialup connection setting.

Setting to show/hide caller ID

Take care when disclosing your caller ID since it is important information.

- Settings must be “show” for using mopera U/ mopera.

Default not set

Example For Windows XP

1 Perform Steps 1 to 5 of “Setting the dialup connection (APN) for packet communication” ◀P25

2 Set to show (186)/hide (184) caller ID during packet communication

Enter in the format “AT * DGPIR=<n>”.

AT * DGPIR=1 [↵]

When packet communication connection is established, “184” is added to connect to the dialup connection (APN).

AT * DGPIR=2 [↵]

When packet communication connection is established, “186” is added to connect to the dialup connection (APN).

- When nothing is displayed even if AT command is entered: ATE1 [↵]

• For details ◀P37

3 Check that OK is displayed and click ファイル and ハイパーターミナルの終了

- After 現在、接続されています。切断してもよろしいですか? appears, click はい.
- “XXX”と名前付けされた接続を保存しますか? or セッション“XXX”を保存しますか? appears. Click はい.

Setting to show/hide caller ID by dialup network settings

The dialup network settings can also be used to append “186” (show) or “184” (hide) to the dialup connection number.

If “186” (show) or “184” (hide) is set by both the AT * DGPIR command and dialup network settings, the show/hide caller ID setting is as follows:

Setting made by AT * DGPIR command Dialup network setting (<cid>=3)	Setting made by AT * DGPIR command		
	Not set	Hide	Show
* 99 * * * 3#	Caller ID is sent.	Caller ID is not sent.	Caller ID is sent.
184 * 99 * * * 3#	Caller ID is not sent.		
186 * 99 * * * 3#	Caller ID is sent.		

- To reset the show/hide setting made by the AT * DGPIR command to the default (not set), enter “AT * DGPIR=0”.

Setting dialup network for Windows XP

- Operate after connecting the FOMA terminal to a PC. ➡ P4

Setting the dialup connection

1 Click スタート, すべてのプログラム, アクセサリ, 通信 and ネットワーク接続
The ネットワーク接続 screen appears.

2 Click 新しい接続を作成する (Create new connection) in ネットワークタスク (Network task)

The 新しい接続ウィザード (New connection wizard) screen appears.

3 Click 次へ

A screen for selecting the type of network connection appears.

4 Select インターネットに接続する (Connect to Internet) ➡ Click 次へ

The setup screen appears.

5 Select 接続を手動でセットアップする (Set up connection manually) ➡ Click 次へ

The Internet connection screen appears.

6 Select ダイヤルアップモデムを使用して接続する (Use dialup modem to connect) ➡ Click 次へ

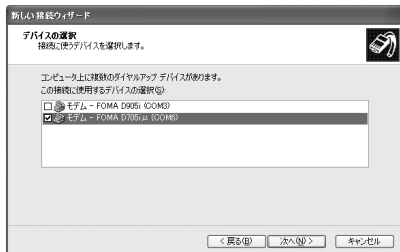
The device selection screen appears.

- If there is only one modem installed, the device selection screen is not displayed. Go to Step 8.

7 Select モデム - FOMA D705iμ (COMx)*1 (Modem: FOMA D705iμ (COMx)) ➡ Click 次へ

- Check that only モデム - FOMA D705iμ (COMx)*1 is selected.

*1 "x" of COMx varies by PC to be used.

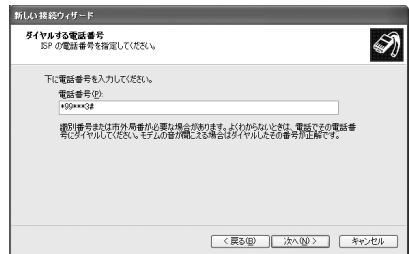


8 Enter any connection name in ISP名 (ISP name) ➡ Click 次へ



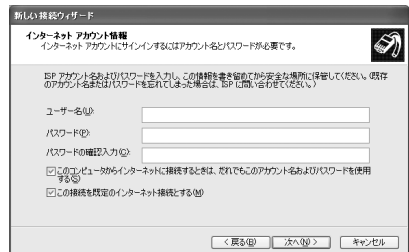
9 Enter the number of the dialup connection (one-byte) in 電話番号 ➡ Click 次へ

- For packet communication, enter “ * 99 * * * <cid># ”.
 - For <cid>, enter the cid number registered in “Setting the dialup connection (APN) for packet communication” (➡ P25). Enter “ * 99 * * * 3# ” for mopera U and “ * 99 * * * 1# ” for mopera.
- For 64K data communication, enter the dialup connection phone number.
 - Enter “ * 8701 ” for mopera U and “ * 9601 ” for mopera.



10 Set each item ➡ Click 次へ

- When the dialup connection is mopera U/ mopera, the entry for ユーザー名、パスワード and パスワードの確認入力 (Reenter the password) is not required for connection. Set other items as required.



11 Click 完了

12 Check the settings and click キャンセル

- Check the settings without connecting to the Internet immediately.

Setting TCP/IP protocol

1 Select the created dialup connection ▶

Click ファイル and プロパティ (Properties)



2 Check the setting of each item in the 全般 (General) tab

- When multiple modems are installed in the PC, select モデム - FOMA D705iμ (COMx)*1 in 接続方法.
- Check that only モデム - FOMA D705iμ (COMx)*1 is selected.
*1 "x" of COMx varies by PC to be used.
- Uncheck (☐) ダイアル情報を使う (Use dial information).



3 Click the ネットワーク (Network) tab ▶

Check the setting of each item

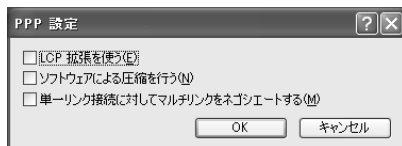
- Set PPP: Windows 95/98/NT4/2000, Internet as 呼び出すダイヤルアップサーバーの種類 (Type of dialup server to call).
- Select only インターネットプロトコル (TCP/IP) (Internet protocol (TCP/IP)) in この接続は次の項目を使用します (Use these items for this connection). QoS/パケットスケジューラ (QoS packet scheduler) can not be changed.



4 Click 設定

5 Uncheck (☐) all items and click OK

The dialup connection properties screen reappears.



6 Click OK

Setting dialup network for Windows 2000

- Operate after connecting the FOMA terminal to a PC. ➡ P4

Setting the dialup connection

1 Click スタート, プログラム, アクセサリ, 通信 and ネットワークとダイヤルアップ接続

The ネットワークとダイヤルアップ接続 screen appears.

2 Double-click 新しい接続の作成 (Create new connection)

The ネットワークの接続ウィザード (Network connection wizard) screen appears.

3 Click 次へ

A screen for selecting the type of network connection appears.

4 Select インターネットにダイヤルアップ接続する (Use dialup connection to Internet) ▶ Click 次へ

The start screen of インターネット接続ウィザード (Internet connection wizard) appears.

5 Select インターネット接続を手動で設定するか、またはローカルエリアネットワーク (LAN) を使って接続します (Connect by setting the Internet connection manually or using local area network (LAN)) ▶ Click 次へ

The Internet connection setting screen appears.

6 Select 電話回線とモデムを使ってインターネットに接続します (Connect to Internet using phone line and modem) ▶ Click 次へ

The modem selection screen appears.

- This screen is not displayed if multiple modems are not installed. Go to Step 8.

7 Check that インターネットへの接続に使うモデムを選択する (Select modem to use for connection to Internet) is set to FOMA D705iμ and click 次へ

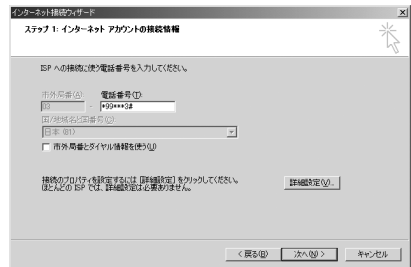
The Internet account connection information screen appears.

- If FOMA D705iμ is not set, set FOMA D705iμ.

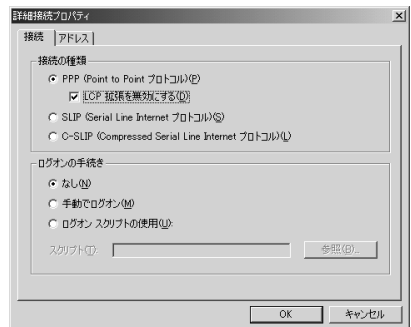
8 Enter the number of dialup connection (one-byte) in 電話番号 ▶ Click 詳細設定 (Detailed settings)

- Uncheck (☐) 市外局番とダイヤル情報を使う (Use area code and dial information).
- For packet communication, enter “ * 99 * * * <cid># ”.
 - For <cid>, enter the cid number registered in “Setting the dialup connection (APN) for packet communication” (P25). Enter “ * 99 * * * 3# ” for mopera U and “ * 99 * * * 1# ” for mopera.

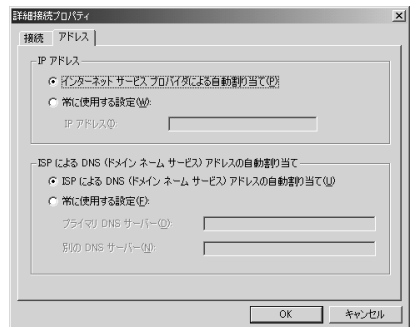
- For 64K data communication, enter the dialup connection phone number.
 - Enter “ * 8701 ” for mopera U and “ * 9601 ” for mopera.



9 Set each item in the 接続 (Connection) tab as shown below



10 Click the アドレス (Address) tab ▶ Set each item as shown below



11 Click OK

The Internet account connection information screen reappears.

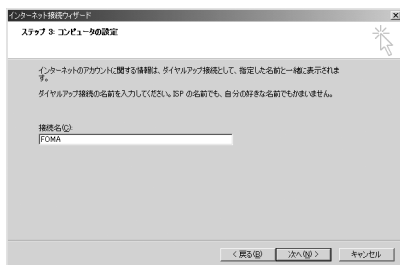
12 Click 次へ

The Internet account logon information screen appears.

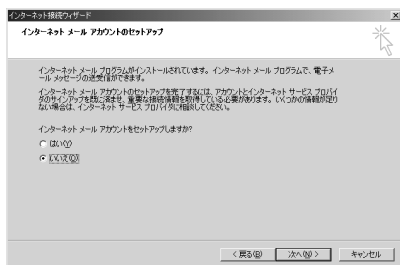
13 Set each item ▶ Click 次へ

- When the dialup connection is moperla U/mopera, the entry for ユーザー名 or パスワード is not required for connection. When a confirmation screen for no entry appears, click はい.

14 Enter any connection name in 接続名 ▶ Click 次へ



15 Select いいえ ▶ Click 次へ



16 Click 完了

The ネットワークとダイヤルアップ接続 screen reappears.

Setting TCP/IP protocol

1 Select the icon of the created dialup connection ▶ Click ファイル and プロパティ



2 Check the setting of each item in the 全般 tab

- If multiple modems are installed in the PC, select モデム - FOMA D705iμ (COMx)*1 in 接続の方法 (Connection procedure).

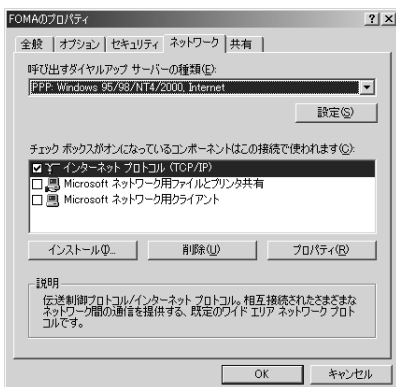
When the modem is changed, all items in 電話番号 are initialized. Re-enter the dialup connection phone number in that case.

- Check that only モデム - FOMA D705iμ (COMx)*1 is selected.
*1 "x" of COMx varies by PC to be used.
- Uncheck () ダイヤル情報を使う.



3 Click the ネットワーク tab ▶ Check the setting of each item

- Set PPP: Windows 95/98/NT4/2000, Internet as 呼び出すダイヤルアップサーバーの種類 (Call-up server type).
- Select only インターネット プロトコル (TCP/IP) for component.



4 Click 設定

5 Uncheck all items (☐) and click **OK**

The dialup connection properties screen reappears.



6 Click **OK**

Setting dialup network for Windows Vista

- Operate after connecting the FOMA terminal to a PC. ➡ P4

Setting dialup connections

1 Click (Start) and **接続先**

2 Click **接続またはネットワークをセットアップします (Connect or set up network)**

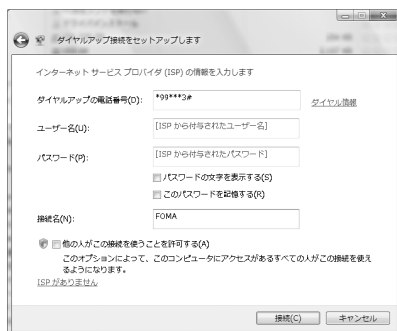
3 Select **ダイヤルアップ接続をセットアップします (Set up the dialup connection)** ➡ Click **次へ**



- In case the message of **どのモデムを使いますか? (Which modem do you use?)** appears:
Click **FOMA D705iμ モデム**

4 Set each item ➡ Click **接続**

- Enter the dialup connection for **ダイヤルアップの電話番号 (Dialup phone number)**.
 - For packet communication, enter “* 99 * * * <cid>#”.
 - For <cid>, enter the cid number registered in “Setting the dialup connection (APN) for packet communication” (➡ P25). For motopra U, enter “* 99 * * * 3#” and “* 99 * * * 1#” for motopra.
 - For 64K data communication, enter the dialup connection phone number.
 - For motopra U, enter “* 8701” and “* 9601” for motopra.
- In case the dialup connection is motopra U/ motopra, connecting is available without entering **ユーザー名** and **パスワード**.
- The following one-byte characters cannot be entered for **接続名**:
¥ / : * ? < > |



5 When the message appears meaning of **connecting**, click **スキップ**

- Perform only setting without connecting here.

6 On the screen of **インターネット接続テストに失敗しました (Failed in the Internet connection test)**, click **接続をセットアップします (Set up the connection)**

7 Click **閉じる (Close)**

Setting TCP/IP protocol

1 Click (Start) and **接続先**

2 Right-click the created dialup connection and click **プロパティ**

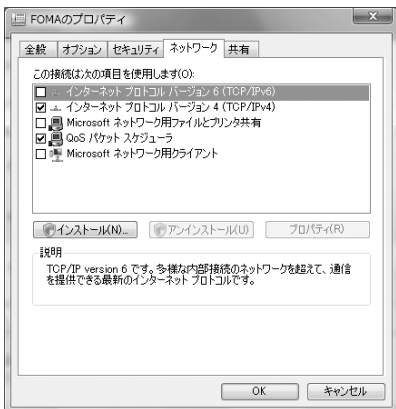
3 Check the setting of each item in the 全般 tab

- In case multiple modems are installed, select
モデム - FOMA D705iμ (COMx)*1 of 接続の方法
- Confirm that only モデム - FOMA D705iμ (COMx)*1 is checked.
*1 "x" of COMx varies by PC to be used.
- Uncheck (☐) ダイアル情報を使う.



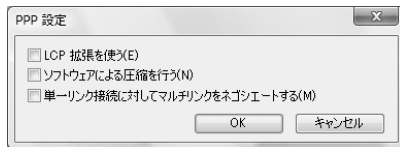
4 Click the ネットワーク tab ▶ Set each item

- Uncheck (☐) インターネットプロトコルバージョン (Internet protocol version) 6 (TCP/IP v6).
- In case the settings of IP and DNS information are specified by the provider, select インターネットプロトコルバージョン 4 (TCP/IP v4), click プロパティ and set each information.
- Select QoS パケットスケジューラ as required according to the instructions of a provider.



5 Click the オプション (Option) tab ▶ Click PPP 設定 (PPP setup)

6 Uncheck (☐) all items ▶ Click OK



7 Click OK

Connecting through dial-up

The method of dialup connection for packet communication/64K data communication is explained here.

Example For Windows XP

1 Connect the FOMA terminal to a PC ◀ P4

2 Click スタート, すべてのプログラム, アクセサリ, 通信 and ネットワーク接続

The ネットワーク接続 screen appears.

■ For Windows 2000:

- ① Click スタート, プログラム, アクセサリ, 通信 and ネットワークとダイヤルアップ接続

■ For Windows Vista:

- ① Click (Start) and 接続先

3 Double-click the dialup connection

4 Check each item and click ダイアル

- The number of dialup connection set for the dialup network is shown in ダイアル.
- When the dialup connection is mopera U/ mopera, the entry for ユーザー名 or パスワード is not required for connection.
- The connection established screen may be displayed depending on the OS. Click OK.



Disconnecting communication

Just exiting the browser may not disconnect the connection. To ensure disconnection, perform the following operation.

Example For Windows XP

1 Click in the task tray ▶ click 切断

■ For Windows 2000:

- 1 Click  in the task tray ▶ click 切断

■ For Windows Vista:

- 1 Click  (Start) and 接続先
- 2 Select the connected dialup ▶ Click 切断

AT command

AT commands are commands for setting the FOMA terminal functions from a PC. FOMA terminals comply with AT commands and support some extended commands and proprietary AT commands.

About the AT command

■ AT command input format

“AT” must be entered before each AT command. Commands must be entered in one-byte alphanumeric characters. An input example is as follows:

ATD * 99 * * * 3# 

Command Parameter Press Enter key.

AT commands and their parameters (numbers or symbols) must be entered on a single line. Enter all the characters from the first character to the character just before  in a single line. Up to 160 characters (including “AT”) can be entered in each line.

■ AT command input mode

To operate the FOMA terminal using AT commands, the PC must be in the terminal mode. Terminal mode is a mode that lets the PC operate as a single communication terminal. Characters entered from the keyboard are sent to the device or line connected to the communication port.

• Offline mode

The FOMA terminal in standby status. Usually, the FOMA terminal must be in this status to use AT commands to control it.

• Online data mode

The FOMA terminal is in the communication mode. If you enter AT commands when the FOMA terminal is performing communication, the received characters are sent directly to the communication receiver and may cause the receiver's modem to malfunction. Do not enter AT commands while the FOMA terminal is performing communication.

• Online command mode

AT commands allow you to operate the FOMA terminal even when the FOMA terminal is in the communication mode. This mode makes it possible to execute AT commands without interfering with the connection to the communication receiver, and normal communication can be continued after the commands have finished executing.

INFORMATION

- In case of executing 64K data communication or videophone call via external connection devices, a call is made with Number A regardless of 2in1 mode.

Switching between the online data mode and online command mode

To switch the FOMA terminal from the online data mode to online command mode, you can use either of the following procedures:

- Enter the “+++” command or the code set in the “S2” register.
- Turn the RS-232C*1 ER signal off when set in “AT&D1”.

To switch from the online command mode to the online data mode, enter “ATO .

*1 The USB interface emulates an RS-232C signal line, so RS-232C signal control using communication applications is possible.

AT command list

- When AT commands are input, entering “¥” may cause “\” to appear depending on the font settings for the PC or communication software in use.
- If the battery pack is removed from the FOMA terminal before the terminal power is turned off, the setting values may not be recorded.
- AT commands that can be used via the FOMA D705iµ Modem Port are described in this list.

*1 : Returns the setting to default with the AT&F command.

*2 : Stores the command setting into the FOMA terminal with the AT&W command and restores it with the ATZ command.

None : Indicates the AT command does not include any display command or test command.

[] : Indicates the parameter can be omitted.

Command		Description & Parameter					
AT		When this command is enabled, "OK" is displayed.					
	ex.	Enter	AT	Display	None	Test	None
AT%V		Shows the version of your FOMA terminal in the format of "Verx.xx".					
	ex.	Enter	AT%V	Display	None	Test	None
AT&C [n]		Selects the operational conditions of the circuit CD signal outgoing to DTE. n=0: The circuit CD signal is always on. (when parameter omitted) n=1: The circuit CD signal varies depending on the other party's modem. (default)					
	*1, *2	ex.	Enter	AT&C1	Display	None	Test
AT&D [n]		Determines an action to be taken when the circuit ER signal coming from DTE changes from on to off in the online data mode. n=0: Ignores the ER signal condition (always on). (when parameter omitted) n=1: Switches the mode to the online command mode when the ER signal changes from on to off. n=2: Disconnects the circuit and switches the mode to the offline mode when the ER signal changes from on to off. (default)					
	*1, *2	ex.	Enter	AT&D1	Display	None	Test
AT&E [n]		Selects type of speed display used when connection is made. This command is effective only when the ATX command is other than "n=0". n=0: Displays communication speed of wireless zone. n=1: Displays communication speed between PC and the FOMA terminal. (default)					
	*1, *2	ex.	Enter	AT&E1	Display	None	Test
AT&F [0]		Resets all FOMA terminal state to the default. When executed while receiving a call, it resets the FOMA terminal state to the default without affecting the call. When executed during communication, the terminal state returns to default after it disconnects ("NO CARRIER" displayed) the communication.					
		ex.	Enter	AT&F0	Display	None	Test
AT&S [n]		Determines the control of the DR signal the FOMA terminal outputs. n=0: Always on. (default and when parameter omitted) n=1: The DR signal turns on when the line is connected.					
	*1, *2	ex.	Enter	AT&S0	Display	None	Test
AT&W [0]		Writes the current settings into the FOMA terminal.					
		ex.	Enter	AT&W0	Display	None	Test
AT*DANTE		Shows the signal strength (reception level) in the format of "*DANTE:m". m=0: Outside the service area m=1 to 3: Number of antennas displayed on the FOMA terminal (m=1:0 or 1)					
		ex.	Enter	AT*DANTE	Display	AT*DANTE?	Test
AT*DGANSM=n		Specifies whether to reject or accept an incoming packet call. n=0: Sets both the incoming call rejection and the incoming call acceptance off. (default) n=1: Sets the incoming call rejection on. n=2: Sets the incoming call acceptance on.					
		ex.	Enter	AT*DGANSM=0	Display	AT*DGANSM?	Test
AT*DGAPL=n [cid]		Specifies dialup connections (APNs) to accept incoming packet calls from them. For an APN, use the cid parameter defined with "+CGDCONT". n=0: Adds the APN defined with the cid parameter to the call acceptance list. n=1: Deletes the APN defined with the cid parameter from the call acceptance list. When you omit the cid parameter, all cids will be added or deleted.					
		ex.	Enter	AT*DGAPL=0,1	Display	AT*DGAPL?	Test
AT*DGARL=n [cid]		Specifies dialup connections (APNs) to reject incoming packet calls from them. For an APN, use the cid parameter defined with "+CGDCONT". n=0: Adds the APN defined with the cid parameter to the call rejection list. n=1: Deletes the APN defined with the cid parameter from the call rejection list. When you omit the cid parameter, all cids will be added or deleted.					
		ex.	Enter	AT*DGARL=0,1	Display	AT*DGARL?	Test

Command		Description & Parameter				
AT+DGPIR= <i>n</i>		Specifies whether to notify the caller ID for packet communication. This specification is effective both for incoming and outgoing calls. <i>n</i> =0: The APN is used as it is when a packet communication is established. (default) <i>n</i> =1: Adds "184" to the APN when a packet communication is established. <i>n</i> =2: Adds "186" to the APN when a packet communication is established.				
	ex.	Enter	AT+DGPIR=0	Display	AT+DGPIR?	Test AT+DGPIR=?
AT+DRPW		Shows the level of power reception in the format of "+DRPW: <i>m</i> ", where the value of <i>m</i> ranges from 0 to 75.				
	ex.	Enter	AT+DRPW	Display	None	Test AT+DRPW=?
+++		Changes the FOMA terminal mode from the online data to the online command. The duration of escape guard is fixed to 1 sec.				
	ex.	Enter	+++	Display	None	Test None
AT+CAOC		Displays last call cost.				
	ex.	Enter	AT+CAOC	Display	AT+CAOC?	Test AT+CAOC=?
AT+CBC		Displays the FOMA terminal's battery level in the "+CBC:bcs,bcl" format. bcs=0: Powered by the battery pack bcs=1: Not powered by the battery pack bcs=2: Battery pack removed bcs=3: Power-supply error bcl=0: No battery remained or battery pack removed bcl=1 to 100: Battery remained				
	ex.	Enter	AT+CBC	Display	None	Test AT+CBC=?
AT+CBST= <i>n</i> ,1,0		Sets the line to use (Setting of bearer service). <i>n</i> =116: 64K data communication (default) <i>n</i> =134: 64K videophone				
	*1, *2	ex.	Enter AT+CBST=116,1,0	Display	AT+CBST?	Test AT+CBST=?
AT+CEER		Shows a disconnection reason of the previous communication. ●P39				
	ex.	Enter	AT+CEER	Display	None	Test AT+CEER=?
AT+CGDCONT		Specifies the APN for packet communication. ●P39				
AT+CGEQMIN		Specifies the criteria for judging whether to approve the QoS (Quality of Service) level provisioned by the network when the packet communication is established. ●P39				
AT+CGEQREQ		Specifies the QoS level requested to the network when transmission is performed during packet communication. ●P40				
AT+CGMR		Shows the version of your FOMA terminal with a 16-digit number.				
	ex.	Enter	AT+CGMR	Display	None	Test AT+CGMR=?
AT+CGREG= [<i>n</i>]		Determines whether to notify the network registration state. Either "inside the service area" or "outside the service area" is notified. <i>n</i> =0: Not notified. (default and when parameter omitted) <i>n</i> =1: Notified in the format of "+CGREG: <i>n</i> , <i>stat</i> ". stat=0: Outside the service area stat=1: Inside the service area (home) stat=4: Unknown stat=5: Inside the service area (visitor)				
	*1, *2	ex.	Enter AT+CGREG=1	Display	AT+CGREG?	Test AT+CGREG=?
AT+CGSN		Shows the manufacturer's serial number of the FOMA terminal.				
	ex.	Enter	AT+CGSN	Display	None	Test AT+CGSN=?
AT+CLIP= [<i>n</i>]		Specifies whether to show the caller ID of an incoming 64K data communication on the PC's screen. <i>n</i> =0: Does not show the information. (default and when parameter omitted) <i>n</i> =1: Shows the information. If you enter "AT+CLIP?", it shows "+CLIP: <i>n</i> , <i>m</i> ". m=0: The network setting that does not show caller ID to the other party when originating a call. m=1: The network setting that shows caller ID to the other party when originating a call. m=2: Unknown				
	*1, *2	ex.	Enter AT+CLIP=0	Display	AT+CLIP?	Test AT+CLIP=?
AT+CLIR= [<i>n</i>]		Specifies whether to show your caller ID to the other party when you originate a 64K data communication. <i>n</i> =0: In accordance with the service agreement. (when parameter omitted) <i>n</i> =1: Does not notify the caller ID. <i>n</i> =2: Notifies the caller ID. (default) If you enter "AT+CLIR?", it shows "+CLIR: <i>n</i> , <i>m</i> ". m=0: CLIR is not activated. (caller ID always notified) m=1: CLIR is activated. (caller ID always not notified) m=2: Unknown m=3: CLIR temporary mode (default for "not notified") m=4: CLIR temporary mode (default for "notified")				
	ex.	Enter	AT+CLIR=0	Display	AT+CLIR?	Test AT+CLIR=?

Command		Description & Parameter																													
AT+CMEE= [n]		Specifies the error report format of the FOMA terminal. ☛P39 n=0: Shows "ERROR". (default and when parameter omitted) n=1: Shows in the format of "+CME ERROR:xxxx". (xxxx=numbers) n=2: Shows in the format of "+CME ERROR:xxxx". (xxxx=characters)																													
*1, *2	ex.	Enter	AT+CMEE=0	Display	AT+CMEE?	Test	AT+CMEE=?																								
AT+CNUM		Shows the Own Number data of the FOMA terminal in the format of "+CNUM:,"number",type". number: Phone number type=129: Does not show "+81". type=145: Shows "+81".																													
	ex.	Enter	AT+CNUM	Display	None	Test	AT+CNUM=?																								
AT+COPS=n,2,oper		Sets search method for network operator to connect. n=0: Auto (Searches network automatically to connect.) (default) n=1: Manual (Connects to the network operator specified as oper.) n=2: Cancels (Disconnects) the connection with the operator. n=3: No mapping n=4: When you cannot connect to the operator specified as oper, search automatically to connect. oper: Sets PLMN Number in hexadecimal value.																													
	ex.	Enter	AT+COPS=1	Display	AT+COPS?	Test	AT+COPS=?																								
AT+CPAS		Displays whether the FOMA terminal can send and receive AT commands to external devices in "+CPAS:n" format. n=0: Possible n=1: Impossible n=2: Unknown n=3: Possible and receiving n=4: Possible and communicating																													
	ex.	Enter	AT+CPAS	Display	None	Test	AT+CPAS=?																								
AT+CPIN="pin" [, "newpin"]		Enters these codes when entry of PIN/PIN2 code or PUK is requested. Entry of "AT+CPIN?" displays the current status in the "+CPIN:code" format. Execute AT+CPIN="pin[, "newpin"] by specifying pin or newpin depending on the value of code as follows:																													
		<table><tr><th>Code</th><th>Status</th><th>pin</th><th>newpin</th></tr><tr><td>READY</td><td>Entry of code not requested</td><td></td><td></td></tr><tr><td>SIM PIN</td><td>Entry of PIN code waited</td><td>PIN code</td><td>None</td></tr><tr><td>SIM PIN2</td><td>Entry of PIN2 code waited</td><td>PIN2 code</td><td>None</td></tr><tr><td>SIM PUK</td><td>PIN locked</td><td>PUK</td><td>New PIN code</td></tr><tr><td>SIM PUK2</td><td>PIN2 locked</td><td>PUK</td><td>New PIN2 code</td></tr></table>						Code	Status	pin	newpin	READY	Entry of code not requested			SIM PIN	Entry of PIN code waited	PIN code	None	SIM PIN2	Entry of PIN2 code waited	PIN2 code	None	SIM PUK	PIN locked	PUK	New PIN code	SIM PUK2	PIN2 locked	PUK	New PIN2 code
Code	Status	pin	newpin																												
READY	Entry of code not requested																														
SIM PIN	Entry of PIN code waited	PIN code	None																												
SIM PIN2	Entry of PIN2 code waited	PIN2 code	None																												
SIM PUK	PIN locked	PUK	New PIN code																												
SIM PUK2	PIN2 locked	PUK	New PIN2 code																												
	ex.	Enter	AT+CPIN="0000"	Display	AT+CPIN?	Test	AT+CPIN=?																								
AT+CR= [n]		Specifies whether to display the communication type (packet communication or 64K data communication) before CONNECT is displayed, during line connection. n=0: Does not show the information. (default and when parameter omitted) n=1: Shows the information in the format of "+CR:serv". serv=SYNC: 64K data communication serv=GPRS: Packet communication																													
*1, *2	ex.	Enter	AT+CR=0	Display	AT+CR?	Test	AT+CR=?																								
AT+CRING= [n]		Specifies whether to use result codes of "+CRING:type" for incoming calls. n=0: Does not use the result code of "+CRING:type". (default and when parameter omitted) n=1: Uses the result code of "+CRING:type". The example of codes are as follows: Packet communication... +CRING:GPRS "PPP", "mopera.net" 64K data communication... +CRING:SYNC																													
*1, *2	ex.	Enter	AT+CRING=0	Display	AT+CRING?	Test	AT+CRING=?																								
AT+CREG= [n]		Specifies whether to show the "inside/outside the service area" information. n=0: Does not show the information. (default and when parameter omitted) n=1: Shows the information. If you enter "AT+CREG?", it shows the information in the format of "+CREG:n,stat". stat=0: Outside the service area stat=1: Inside the service area (home) stat=4: Unknown stat=5: Inside the service area (visitor)																													
*1, *2	ex.	Enter	AT+CREG=0	Display	AT+CREG?	Test	AT+CREG=?																								
AT+CUSD=n,"str"[,0]		Inquires and sets for additional service (USSD) of Network Services. n=0: Does not answer mid result. (default) n=1: Displays mid result in "+CUSD:m,"str",0" format. m=0: Information not requested m=1: Information requested str: Service code provided by DoCoMo																													
	ex.	Enter	AT+CUSD=1, " *148 *1 *0000#",0	Display	AT+CUSD?	Test	AT+CUSD=?																								
AT+FCLASS=0		Sets communication type supported by the FOMA terminal (The setting is not changeable). Only data supported.																													
*1, *2	ex.	Enter	AT+FCLASS=0	Display	AT+FCLASS?	Test	AT+FCLASS=?																								

Command		Description & Parameter				
AT+GCAP		Displays the range of AT commands supported by the FOMA terminal in the "+GCAP: n,n,n" format. n+=CGSM: Supports GSM commands (including the case for supporting a part). n+=FCLASS: Supports +FCLASS commands. n+=W: Supports +W commands.				
	ex.	Enter	AT+GCAP	Display	None	Test AT+GCAP=?
AT+GMI		Shows the manufacturer's name of the FOMA terminal.				
	ex.	Enter	AT+GMI	Display	None	Test AT+GMI=?
AT+GMM		Shows the FOMA terminal name.				
	ex.	Enter	AT+GMM	Display	None	Test AT+GMM=?
AT+GMR		Shows the version of the FOMA terminal.				
	ex.	Enter	AT+GMR	Display	None	Test AT+GMR=?
AT+IFC= [n,[m]]		Specifies the local flow control between the PC and FOMA terminal. n is for setting the DCE-by-DTE control. n=0: Does not use the flow control. n=1: Uses XON/XOFF flow control. n=2: Uses RS/CS (RTS/CTS) flow control. (default) m is for setting the DTE-by-DCE control. If you omit this parameter, the same value as n is assumed. m=0: Does not use the flow control. m=1: Uses XON/XOFF flow control. m=2: Uses RS/CS (RTS/CTS) flow control. (default) If you omit both parameters, "AT+IFC=2,2" is assumed.				
	*1, *2	ex.	Enter AT+IFC=2,2	Display	AT+IFC?	Test AT+IFC=?
AT+WS46= [22]		Specifies the radio network FOMA terminal uses to originate a call.				
	*1, *2	ex.	Enter AT+WS46=22	Display	AT+WS46?	Test AT+WS46=?
ATA		Specifies how to handle incoming packet or 64K data communications. For incoming packet communications, you can specify the following: ATA184: Receives an incoming call without the caller ID displayed ATA186: Receives an incoming call with the caller ID displayed				
	ex.	Enter	ATA	Display	None	Test None
A/		Reexecutes the previous command.				
	ex.	Enter	A/	Display	None	Test None
ATD		Originates a packet or 64K data communication. · Packet communication: Enter "ATD * 99 * * * cid#". If you omit cid parameter, "cid=1" is assumed. When you enter it in the format starting with "ATD184 * 99", 184 (hide caller ID) is attached to the call outgoing to the APN specified with cid parameter (186 (show caller ID) is treated in the same manner). · 64K data communication: Enter it in the format of "ATD phone number". · Redialing: Enter in the format of "ATDL" or "ATDN".				
	ex.	Enter	ATD phone number	Display	None	Test None
ATE [n]		Echoes back the characters sent from the PC. n=0: Gives no echo back. (when parameter omitted) n=1: Gives echo back. (default)				
	*1, *2	ex.	Enter ATE0	Display	None	Test None
ATH		Disconnects communication.				
	ex.	Enter	ATH	Display	None	Test None
ATI [n]		Shows the identification code. n=0: Shows "NTT DoCoMo". (when parameter omitted) n=1: Shows the model name of the FOMA terminal. n=2: Shows the version of the FOMA terminal.				
	ex.	Enter	ATI0	Display	None	Test None
ATO		Switches the mode from the online command to the online data.				
	ex.	Enter	ATO	Display	None	Test None
ATQ [n]		Specifies whether to show the result code on the PC. n=0: Shows the result code. (default and when parameter omitted) n=1: Does not show the result code.				
	*1, *2	ex.	Enter ATQ0	Display	None	Test None
ATV [n]		Specifies whether to show the result with numeric codes or text messages. n=0: Shows the result with numeric codes. (when parameter omitted) n=1: Shows the result with text messages. (default)				
	*1, *2	ex.	Enter ATV1	Display	None	Test None
ATX [n]		Specifies whether to detect busy tone and dial tone, and whether to display the communication speed. n=0: Busy tone not detected, dial tone not detected, communication speed not displayed. (when parameter omitted) n=1: Busy tone not detected, dial tone not detected, communication speed displayed. n=2: Busy tone not detected, dial tone detected, communication speed displayed. n=3: Busy tone detected, dial tone not detected, communication speed displayed. n=4: Busy tone detected, dial tone detected, communication speed displayed. (default)				
	*1, *2	ex.	Enter ATX1	Display	None	Test None

Command		Description & Parameter					
ATZ		Resets FOMA terminal settings to those stored in the non-volatile memory with the AT&W command. If you enter this command during receiving a packet or 64K data communication, the settings are reset without affecting the call reception. If you enter it during communication, it disconnects the communication first and resets the settings.					
	ex.	Enter	ATZ	Display	None	Test	None
ATS0= [n]		Specifies the number of ringing signals (RING) which triggers automatic call acceptance on the FOMA terminal. n=0: Does not accept calls automatically. (default and when parameter omitted) n=1 to 255					
	*1, *2	ex.	Enter	ATS0=0	Display	ATS0?	Test
ATS2= [n]		Specifies an escape character. n=0 to 127 (43: Default 0: When parameter omitted 127: To disable the escape processing)					
	*1	ex.	Enter	ATS2=43	Display	ATS2?	Test
ATS3= [13]		Specifies a carriage return (CR) character that indicates the end of AT command's character string (the setting is not changeable). It is attached to the end of the echoed back command string and the result code.					
	*1	ex.	Enter	ATS3=13	Display	ATS3?	Test
ATS4= [10]		Specifies the line feed (LF) character (the setting is not changeable). It follows the CR character when the result code is displayed with text.					
	*1	ex.	Enter	ATS4=10	Display	ATS4?	Test
ATS5= [8]		Specifies a backspace (BS) character that deletes the last character in the input buffer while you are entering an AT command (the setting is not changeable).					
	*1	ex.	Enter	ATS5=8	Display	ATS5?	Test
ATS6= [n]		Specifies the pause period before dialing. This command sets the register but no action will occur. n=2 to 10: 2 to 10 seconds. (5: default and when parameter omitted)					
	*1	ex.	Enter	ATS6=5	Display	ATS6?	Test
ATS8= [n]		Specifies the comma dialing function (pause time). This command sets the register but the pause time is fixed to 3 seconds. n=0 to 255: 0 to 255 seconds. (3: default 0: when parameter is omitted)					
	*1	ex.	Enter	ATS8=3	Display	ATS8?	Test
ATS10= [n]		Specifies the permissible delay time before automatic disconnection. This command sets the register but no action will occur. n=1 to 255: in 1/10 seconds. (1: default and when parameter omitted)					
	*1, *2	ex.	Enter	ATS10=1	Display	ATS10?	Test
ATS30= [n]		Specifies the time elapsed after the last data transmission to activate automatic disconnection. This command is effective for 64K data communication. n=1 to 255: 1 to 255 minutes. n=0: Does not disconnect. (default and when parameter omitted)					
	*1	ex.	Enter	ATS30=0	Display	ATS30?	Test
ATS103= [n]		Specifies a mark to be used to delimit a destination sub-address if attached. This command is effective for 64K data communication. n=0: * (when parameter omitted) n=1: / (default) n=2: ¥					
	*1	ex.	Enter	ATS103=0	Display	ATS103?	Test
ATS104= [n]		Specifies a mark to be used to delimit a caller sub-address if attached. This command is effective for 64K data communication. n=0: # (when parameter omitted) n=1: % (default) n=2: &					
	*1	ex.	Enter	ATS104=0	Display	ATS104?	Test
AT¥S		Shows the command settings and the contents of the S register.					
	ex.	Enter	AT¥S	Display	None	Test	None
AT¥V [n]		Selects whether to use the extended result code for connection. This command takes effect when the ATX command parameter is "n=1 to 4". n=0: Does not use the extended result code. (default and when parameter omitted) n=1: Uses the extended result code.					
	*1, *2	ex.	Enter	AT¥V0	Display	None	Test

Disconnection reason list

■ Packet communication

Value	Reason
26	APN is not present or is incorrect.
27	
30	Disconnected by network.
33	Terminal is not subscribed to packet communication.
36	Normal disconnection

■ 64K data communication

Value	Reason
1	Specified number does not exist.
16	Normal disconnection
17	Communication is impossible because remote device is busy.
18	You made a call but did not receive a response within the specified time.
19	A call was made to the other party, but no response.
21	The remote device rejected incoming calls.
63	The service and option of the network are not valid.
65	Unavailable processing speed was specified.
88	You made a call to a terminal or received a call from a terminal with different terminal properties.

Error messages list

No.	Text display	Reason
1	no connection to phone	The FOMA terminal is not connected.
10	SIM not inserted	No UIM (FOMA card) is set.
15	SIM wrong	A SIM other than UIM (IC card equivalent to UIM) is inserted.
16	incorrect password	Incorrect password
100	unknown	Unknown error

Supplement to AT command

■ Command name: AT+CGDCONT=[parameter]

Sets the dialup connection (APN) for packet communication.

Format

AT+CGDCONT=[<cid>[, "PPP" [, "<APN>"]]]

Parameter description

<cid>: 1 to 10

"mopera.ne.jp" is registered in cid 1, and "mopera.net" in cid 3.

<APN>: Optional

Example of execution

The command used to register an APN named "abc" (when <cid>=2).

AT+CGDCONT=2, "PPP", "abc"

Operation performed when parameter is omitted

AT+CGDCONT=

Clears all <cid> settings. However, entry for "<cid>=1" and "<cid>=3" is restored to the default setting.

AT+CGDCONT=<cid>

Clears the specified <cid> settings. However, entry for "<cid>=1" and "<cid>=3" is restored to the default setting.

AT+CGDCONT=?

Displays a list of assignable values.

AT+CGDCONT?

Displays the current setting values.

■ Command name: AT+CGEQMIN=[parameter]

Registers the criteria for judging whether to approve QoS provisioned by the network when PPP packet communication is established.

Format

AT+CGEQMIN=[<cid>[,<Maximum bitrate UL>[,<Maximum bitrate DL>]]]

Parameter description

<cid>: 1 to 10

"mopera.ne.jp" is registered in cid 1 and "mopera.net" in cid 3.

<Maximum bitrate UL>: None or 64

<Maximum bitrate DL>: None or 384

For "Maximum bitrate UL" and "Maximum bitrate DL", the minimum communication speed (in kbps) is set for both upload and download traffic between the FOMA terminal and the base station. If the parameter is set to "None (default)", all speeds are permissible. However, if "64" and "384" are set, any connection at a speed less than the above limit is not permitted, and chances are that packet communication will not be connected.

Example of execution

- (1) Command used to permit all speeds both upload and download (when <cid>=2)
AT+CGEQMIN=2
- (2) Command used to permit only 64kbps upload and 384 kbps download (when <cid>=4)
AT+CGEQMIN=4,64,384
- (3) Command used to permit 64 kbps upload and all speeds download (when <cid>=5)
AT+CGEQMIN=5,,64

- (4) Command used to permit all speeds upload and only 384 kbps download (when <cid>=6)
AT+CGEQMIN=6,,,384

Operation performed when parameter is omitted

AT+CGEQMIN=

Clears all <cid> settings.

AT+CGEQMIN=<cid>

Returns the specified <cid> to the default setting.

AT+CGEQMIN= ?

Displays a list of assignable values.

AT+CGEQMIN ?

Displays the current settings.

■ **Command name: AT+CGEQRREQ=[parameter]**

Sets QoS requested to the network when transmission is performed during PPP packet communication.

Format

AT+CGEQRREQ=[<cid>]

Parameter description

Only commands that require connection at 64 kbps upload/384 kbps download can be set. The contents are set by default for each cid.

<cid>: 1 to 10

“mopera.ne.jp” is registered in cid 1, and
“mopera.net” in cid 3.

Example of execution

(when <cid>=2)

AT+CGEQRREQ=2

Operation performed when parameter is omitted

AT+CGEQRREQ=

Returns all <cid> to the default setting.

AT+CGEQRREQ=<cid>

Returns the specified <cid> to the default setting.

AT+CGEQRREQ= ?

Displays a list of assignable values.

AT+CGEQRREQ ?

Displays the current settings.

Result codes

- When the ATV [n] command (P37) is set to “n=1”, the result code is displayed in the text display (default). When the command is set to “n=0”, the result code is displayed in the numeric display.

■ **Result codes**

No.	Text display	Meaning
0	OK	Operation performed normally
1	CONNECT	Terminal connected to remote device
2	RING	Incoming call
3	NO CARRIER	Line disconnected
4	ERROR	Unable to accept command
6	NO DIALTONE	Unable to detect dial tone
7	BUSY	Detecting the busy tone
8	NO ANSWER	Completion of connection timed out
100	RESTRICTION	The communication network is busy. Please wait for a while and retry.
101	DELAYED	Redialing restricted

■ **Extended result code**

No.	Text display	Connection speed between FOMA terminal and PC
5	CONNECT 1200	1,200 bps
10	CONNECT 2400	2,400 bps
11	CONNECT 4800	4,800 bps
13	CONNECT 7200	7,200 bps
12	CONNECT 9600	9,600 bps
15	CONNECT 14400	14,400 bps
16	CONNECT 19200	19,200 bps
17	CONNECT 38400	38,400 bps
18	CONNECT 57600	57,600 bps
19	CONNECT 115200	115,200 bps
20	CONNECT 230400	230,400 bps
21	CONNECT 460800	460,800 bps

INFORMATION

- To retain compatibility with a modem connected via conventional RS-232C on PC, communication speed is displayed, but it differs from the actual connection speed because the FOMA terminal is connected to the PC with a FOMA USB Cable with Charge Function 01 (optional).

■ Communication protocol result code

No.	Text display	Meaning
1	PPPOverUD	Connected via 64K data communication
3	AV64K	AV (videophone) connected via [64K]
5	PACKET	Connected with packet communication

■ Display example of result codes

When “ATX 0” is set

Regardless of the settings of the AT¥V command (P38), only **CONNECT** is displayed upon completion of connection.

Text display example:

```
ATD * 99 * * * 3#
CONNECT ("1" in numeric display)
```

When “ATX 1” is set

- When “ATX1”, “AT¥V0” is set (default)

Upon completion of connection, the result code is displayed in the following format: **CONNECT** <speed between the FOMA terminal and PC>

Text display example:

```
ATD * 99 * * * 3#
CONNECT 460800 ("1 21" in numeric display)
```

- When “ATX1”, “AT¥V1” is set*1

Upon completion of connection, the code is displayed in the following format:
CONNECT<speed between the FOMA terminal and PC><communication protocol><the dialup connection APN><upload top speed between the FOMA terminal and the wireless base station>/<download top speed between the FOMA terminal and the wireless base station>*2

Text display example:

```
ATD * 99 * * * 3#
CONNECT 460800 PACKET mopera.net/
64/384 ("1 21 5" in numeric display)
```

Indicates that speed between the FOMA terminal and PC is 460,800 bps and the terminal is connected to mopera.net providing a maximum upload speed of 64 kbps and a maximum download speed of 384 kbps.

- *1 When “ATX1” and “AT¥V1” are set at the same time, it is likely that dialup connection will fail.

It is recommended that this function be usually set to default, which is “ATX1” and “AT¥V0”.

- *2 When “AT¥V1” is set, <the dialup connection APN> and after that are displayed only when connected with packet communication.

Kuten Code List

- Some of the following may look different from the displayed ones.

1st to 3rd digit	4th digit figure of the JIS Kanji code	1st to 3rd digit	4th digit figure of the JIS Kanji code	1st to 3rd digit	4th digit figure of the JIS Kanji code
0 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9	0 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9	0 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9	0 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9	0 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9	0 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9
010 011 012 013 014 015 016 017 018 019 020 021 022 023 024 026 027 028 029 031 032 033 034 035 036 037 038 039 040 041 042 043 044 045 046 047 048	0 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9 ?				

Next ▶

4